

**FDsys:**  
**GPO's Federal Digital System**  
About FDsys  
Search Government Publications  
Browse Government Publications

- [Browse](#)
- [Simple Search](#)
- [Advanced Search](#)
  - [\\* Boolean](#)
  - [\\* Proximity](#)
- [Search History](#)
- [Search Tips](#)
- [Corrections](#)
- [Latest Updates](#)
- [User Info](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Agency List](#)
- [Incorporation by Reference](#)
- [e-CFR Main Page](#)

Related Resources

Download the **Code of Federal Regulations in XML**.

The **Electronic Code of Federal Regulations (e-CFR)** is a regularly updated, unofficial editorial compilation of CFR material and Federal Register amendments produced by the National Archives and Records Administration's Office of the Federal Register (OFR) and the Government Printing Office.

Parallel Table of Authorities and Rules for the Code of Federal Regulations and the United States Code  
[Text](#) | [PDF](#)

Find, review, and submit comments on Federal rules that are open for comment and published in the Federal Register using **Regulations.gov**.

**Purchase individual CFR titles** from the U.S. Government Online Bookstore.

Find issues of the CFR (including issues prior to 1996) at a local **Federal depository library**.

[1]

## ELECTRONIC CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

As of October 9, 2012, the e-CFR resides at a new URL. Please reset your bookmarks, favorites, links and desktop shortcuts to: [www.ecfr.gov](http://www.ecfr.gov).

e-CFR Data is current as of November 9, 2012

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

Title 2: Grants and Agreements

### PART 220—COST PRINCIPLES FOR EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS (OMB CIRCULAR A-21)

**Contents**

- [§ 220.5 Purpose.](#)
- [§ 220.10 Scope.](#)
- [§ 220.15 Policy.](#)
- [§ 220.20 Applicability.](#)
- [§ 220.25 OMB responsibilities.](#)
- [§ 220.30 Federal Agency responsibilities.](#)
- [§ 220.35 Effective date for changes.](#)
- [§ 220.40 Relationship to previous issuance.](#)
- [§ 220.45 Information contact.](#)

[Appendix A to Part 220—Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Grants, Contracts, and Other Agreements With Educational Institutions](#)

AUTHORITY: 31 U.S.C. 503; 31 U.S.C. 1111; 41 U.S.C. 405; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; E.O. 11541, 35 FR 10737, 3 CFR, 1966-1970, p. 939.

SOURCE: 70 FR 51881, Aug. 31, 2005, unless otherwise noted.

[Back to Top](#)

#### § 220.5 Purpose.

This part establishes principles for determining costs applicable to grants, contracts, and other agreements with educational institutions.

[Back to Top](#)

#### § 220.10 Scope.

The principles in this part deal with the subject of cost determination, and make no attempt to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of agency and institutional participation in the financing of a particular project. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this part.

[Back to Top](#)

#### § 220.15 Policy.

The principles in this part are designed to provide that the Federal Government bear its fair share of total costs, determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, except where restricted or prohibited by law. Agencies are not expected to place additional restrictions on individual items of cost. The successful application of cost accounting principles requires development of mutual understanding between representatives of educational institutions and of the Federal Government as to their scope, implementation, and interpretation.

[Back to Top](#)



§ 220.20    **Applicability.**

(a) All Federal agencies that sponsor research and development, training, and other work at educational institutions shall apply the provisions of Appendix A to this part in determining the costs incurred for such work. The principles shall also be used as a guide in the pricing of fixed price or lump sum agreements.

(b) Each federal agency that awards defense-related contracts to a Federally Funded Research and Development Center (FFRDC) associated with an educational institution shall require the FFRDC to comply with the Cost Accounting Standards and with the rules and regulations issued by the Cost Accounting Standards Board and set forth in 47 CFR part 99.

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 220.25    **OMB responsibilities.**

OMB is responsible for:

- (a) Issuing and maintaining the guidance in this part.
- (b) Interpreting the policy requirements in this part and providing assistance to ensure effective and efficient implementation.
- (c) Granting any deviations to Federal agencies from the guidance in this part, as provided in Appendix A to this part. Exceptions will only be made in particular cases where adequate justification is presented.
- (d) Conducting broad oversight of government-wide compliance with the guidance in this part.

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 220.30    **Federal Agency responsibilities.**

The head of each Federal agency that awards and administers grants and agreements subject to this part is responsible for requesting approval from and/or consulting with OMB (as applicable) for deviations from the guidance in Appendix A to this part and performing the applicable functions specified in Appendix A to this part.

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 220.35    **Effective date for changes.**

Institutions as of the start of their first fiscal year beginning after that date shall implement the provisions. Earlier implementation, or a delay in implementation of individual provisions, is permitted by mutual agreement between an institution and the cognizant Federal agency.

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 220.40    **Relationship to previous issuance.**

(a) The guidance in this part previously was issued as OMB Circular A-21. Designations of the attachment to the Circular and the appendices to that attachment have changed, as shown in the following table:

The portion of OMB Circular A-21 that was designated as . . .	Is designated in this part as . . .
(1) The Attachment to the circular, entitled "Principles For Determining Costs Applicable to Grants, Contracts, and Other Agreements with Educational Institutions,"	Appendix A to Part 220—Principles For Determining Costs Applicable to Grants, Contracts, and Other Agreements with Educational Institutions.
(2) Exhibit A in the attachment to the circular, entitled "List of Colleges and Universities Subject to Section J.12.h of Circular A-21,"	Exhibit A, List of Colleges and Universities Subject to Section J.12.h of Circular A-21, to Appendix A.
(3) Exhibit B in the attachment to the circular, entitled "Listing of Institutions that are eligible for the utility cost adjustment,"	Exhibit B, Listing of Institutions that are eligible for the utility cost adjustment, to Appendix A.
(4) Exhibit C in the attachment to the circular, entitled "Examples of 'major project' where direct charging of administrative or clerical staff salaries may be appropriate,"	Exhibit C, Examples of "major project" where direct charging of administrative or clerical staff salaries may be appropriate, to Appendix A.
(5) Appendix A to the attachment to the circular, entitled "CASB's Cost Accounting Standards (CAS),"	Attachment A, CASB's Cost Accounting Standards (CAS), to Appendix A.
(6) Appendix B to the attachment to the circular, entitled "CASB's Disclosure Statement (DS-2),"	Attachment B, CASB's Disclosure Statement (DS-2), to Appendix A.
(7) Appendix C to the attachment to the circular, entitled	Attachment C, Documentation Requirements for



"Documentation Requirements for Facilities and Administrative (F&A) Rate Proposals,"	Facilities and Administrative (F&A) Rate Proposals, to Appendix A.
--	--

(b) Historically, OMB Circular A-21 superseded Federal Management Circular 73-8, dated December 19, 1973. FMC 73-8 was revised and reissued under its original designation of OMB Circular No. A-21. The provisions of A-21 were effective October 1, 1979, except for subsequent amendments incorporated herein for which the effective dates were specified in these revisions (47 FR 33658, 51 FR 20908, 51 FR 43487, 56 FR 50224, 58 FR 39996, 61 FR 20880, 63 FR 29786, 63 FR 57332, 65 FR 48566 and 69 FR 25970).

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 220.45 Information contact.**

Further information concerning this part may be obtained by contacting the Office of Federal Financial Management, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, telephone (202) 395-3993.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Appendix A to Part 220—Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Grants, Contracts, and Other Agreements With Educational Institutions**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. Purpose and Scope	
1. Objectives	
2. Policy guides	
3. Application	
4. Inquiries	
B. Definition of Terms	
1. Major functions of an institution	
2. Sponsored agreement	
3. Allocation	
4. Facilities and administrative (F&A) costs	
C. Basic Considerations	
1. Composition of total costs	
2. Factors affecting allowability of costs	
3. Reasonable costs	
4. Allocable costs	
5. Applicable credits	
6. Costs incurred by State and local governments	
7. Limitations on allowance of costs	
8. Collection of unallowable costs	
9. Adjustment of previously negotiated F&A cost rates containing unallowable costs	
10. Consistency in estimating, accumulating and reporting costs	
11. Consistency in allocating costs incurred for the same purpose	
12. Accounting for unallowable costs	
13. Cost accounting period	
14. Disclosure statement	
D. Direct Costs	
1. General	
2. Application to sponsored agreements	



E. F&A Costs

- 1. General
- 2. Criteria for distribution

F. Identification and Assignment of F&A Costs

- 1. Definition of Facilities and Administration.
- 2. Depreciation and use allowances
- 3. Interest
- 4. Operation and maintenance expenses
- 5. General administration and general expenses
- 6. Departmental administration expenses
- 7. Sponsored projects administration
- 8. Library expenses
- 9. Student administration and services
- 10. Offset for F&A expenses otherwise provided for by the Federal Government

G. Determination and Application of F&A Cost Rate or Rates

- 1. F&A cost pools
- 2. The distribution basis
- 3. Negotiated lump sum for F&A costs
- 4. Predetermined rates for F&A costs
- 5. Negotiated fixed rates and carry-forward provisions
- 6. Provisional and final rates for F&A costs
- 7. Fixed rates for the life of the sponsored agreement
- 8. Limitation on reimbursement of administrative costs
- 9. Alternative method for administrative costs
- 10. Individual rate components
- 11. Negotiation and approval of F&A rate
- 12. Standard format for submission

H. Simplified Method for Small Institutions

- 1. General
- 2. Simplified procedure

I. Reserved

J. General Provisions for Selected Items of Cost

- 1. Advertising and public relations costs
- 2. Advisory councils
- 3. Alcoholic beverages
- 4. Alumni/ae activities
- 5. Audit and related services
- 6. Bad debts
- 7. Bonding costs
- 8. Commencement and convocation costs
- 9. Communication costs
- 10. Compensation for personal services



- 11. Contingency provisions
- 12. Deans of faculty and graduate schools
- 13. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringement
- 14. Depreciation and use allowances
- 15. Donations and contributions
- 16. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs
- 17. Entertainment costs
- 18. Equipment and other capital expenditures
- 19. Fines and penalties
- 20. Fund raising and investment costs
- 21. Gains and losses on depreciable assets
- 22. Goods or services for personal use
- 23. Housing and personal living expenses
- 24. Idle facilities and idle capacity
- 25. Insurance and indemnification
- 26. Interest
- 27. Labor relations costs
- 28. Lobbying
- 29. Losses on other sponsored agreements or contracts
- 30. Maintenance and repair costs
- 31. Material and supplies costs
- 32. Meetings and conferences
- 33. Memberships, subscriptions and professional activity costs
- 34. Patent costs
- 35. Plant and homeland security costs
- 36. Pre-agreement costs
- 37. Professional service costs
- 38. Proposal costs
- 39. Publication and printing costs
- 40. Rearrangement and alteration costs
- 41. Reconversion costs
- 42. Recruiting costs
- 43. Rental costs of buildings and equipment
- 44. Royalties and other costs for use of patents
- 45. Scholarships and student aid costs
- 46. Selling and marketing
- 47. Specialized service facilities
- 48. Student activity costs
- 49. Taxes
- 50. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements
- 51. Training costs
- 52. Transportation costs



53. Travel costs

54. Trustees

K. Certification of Charges

Exhibit A to Appendix A—List of Colleges and Universities Subject to Section J.12.h of Appendix A

Exhibit B to Appendix A—Listing of Institutions That are Eligible for the Utility Cost Adjustment

Exhibit C to Appendix A—Examples of “major project” Where Direct Charging of Administrative or Clerical Staff Salaries May Be Appropriate

Attachment A to Appendix A—Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) for Educational Institutions

Attachment B to Appendix A—CASB's Disclosure Statement (DS-2)

Attachment C to Appendix A—Documentation Requirements for Facilities and Administrative (F&A) Rate Proposals

A. PURPOSE AND SCOPE

1. Objectives. This Appendix provides principles for determining the costs applicable to research and development, training, and other sponsored work performed by colleges and universities under grants, contracts, and other agreements with the Federal Government. These agreements are referred to as sponsored agreements.

2. Policy guides. The successful application of these cost accounting principles requires development of mutual understanding between representatives of universities and of the Federal Government as to their scope, implementation, and interpretation. It is recognized that—

a. The arrangements for Federal agency and institutional participation in the financing of a research, training, or other project are properly subject to negotiation between the agency and the institution concerned, in accordance with such governmentwide criteria or legal requirements as may be applicable.

b. Each institution, possessing its own unique combination of staff, facilities, and experience, should be encouraged to conduct research and educational activities in a manner consonant with its own academic philosophies and institutional objectives.

c. The dual role of students engaged in research and the resulting benefits to sponsored agreements are fundamental to the research effort and shall be recognized in the application of these principles.

d. Each institution, in the fulfillment of its obligations, should employ sound management practices.

e. The application of these cost accounting principles should require no significant changes in the generally accepted accounting practices of colleges and universities. However, the accounting practices of individual colleges and universities must support the accumulation of costs as required by the principles, and must provide for adequate documentation to support costs charged to sponsored agreements.

f. Cognizant Federal agencies involved in negotiating facilities and administrative (F&A) cost rates and auditing should assure that institutions are generally applying these cost accounting principles on a consistent basis. Where wide variations exist in the treatment of a given cost item among institutions, the reasonableness and equitableness of such treatments should be fully considered during the rate negotiations and audit.

3. Application. These principles shall be used in determining the allowable costs of work performed by colleges and universities under sponsored agreements. The principles shall also be used in determining the costs of work performed by such institutions under subgrants, cost-reimbursement subcontracts, and other awards made to them under sponsored agreements. They also shall be used as a guide in the pricing of fixed-price contracts and subcontracts where costs are used in determining the appropriate price. The principles do not apply to:

a. Arrangements under which Federal financing is in the form of loans, scholarships, fellowships, traineeships, or other fixed amounts based on such items as education allowance or published tuition rates and fees of an institution.

b. Capitation awards.

c. Other awards under which the institution is not required to account to the Federal Government for actual costs incurred.

d. Conditional exemptions.

(1) OMB authorizes conditional exemption from OMB administrative requirements and cost principles for certain Federal programs with statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding, that are identified by a Federal agency and approved by the head of the Executive department or establishment. A Federal agency shall consult with OMB during its consideration of whether to grant such an exemption.

(2) To promote efficiency in State and local program administration, when Federal non-entitlement programs with common purposes have specific statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding and where most of the State agency's resources come from non-Federal sources, Federal agencies may exempt these covered State-administered, non-entitlement grant programs from certain OMB grants management requirements. The exemptions would be from all but the allocability of costs provisions of subsection C.3 of Appendix A to 2 CFR part 225 Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87), Section C, subpart 4 to 2 CFR part 220 Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (OMB Circular A-21), and subsection A.4 of Appendix A to 2 CFR part 230 Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations,” (OMB Circular A-122), and from all of the administrative



requirements provisions of 2 CFR part 215, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-110), and the agencies' grants management common rule (see § 215.5 of this subtitle).

(3) When a Federal agency provides this flexibility, as a prerequisite to a State's exercising this option, a State must adopt its own written fiscal and administrative requirements for expending and accounting for all funds, which are consistent with the provisions of 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87), and extend such policies to all subrecipients. These fiscal and administrative requirements must be sufficiently specific to ensure that: Funds are used in compliance with all applicable Federal statutory and regulatory provisions, costs are reasonable and necessary for operating these programs, and funds are not to be used for general expenses required to carry out other responsibilities of a State or its subrecipients.

#### 4. Inquiries.

All inquiries from Federal agencies concerning the cost principles contained in this Appendix to 2 CFR part 220, including the administration and implementation of the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) (described in Sections C.10 through C.13) and disclosure statement (DS-2) requirements, shall be addressed by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), Office of Federal Financial Management, in coordination with the Cost Accounting Standard Board (CASB) with respect to inquiries concerning CAS. Educational institutions' inquiries should be addressed to the cognizant agency.

### B. DEFINITION OF TERMS

1. Major functions of an institution refers to instruction, organized research, other sponsored activities and other institutional activities as defined below:

a. Instruction means the teaching and training activities of an institution. Except for research training as provided in subsection b, this term includes all teaching and training activities, whether they are offered for credits toward a degree or certificate or on a non-credit basis, and whether they are offered through regular academic departments or separate divisions, such as a summer school division or an extension division. Also considered part of this major function are departmental research, and, where agreed to, university research.

(1) Sponsored instruction and training means specific instructional or training activity established by grant, contract, or cooperative agreement. For purposes of the cost principles, this activity may be considered a major function even though an institution's accounting treatment may include it in the instruction function.

(2) Departmental research means research, development and scholarly activities that are not organized research and, consequently, are not separately budgeted and accounted for. Departmental research, for purposes of this document, is not considered as a major function, but as a part of the instruction function of the institution.

b. Organized research means all research and development activities of an institution that are separately budgeted and accounted for. It includes:

(1) Sponsored research means all research and development activities that are sponsored by Federal and non-Federal agencies and organizations. This term includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques (commonly called research training) where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function.

(2) University research means all research and development activities that are separately budgeted and accounted for by the institution under an internal application of institutional funds. University research, for purposes of this document, shall be combined with sponsored research under the function of organized research.

c. Other sponsored activities means programs and projects financed by Federal and non-Federal agencies and organizations which involve the performance of work other than instruction and organized research. Examples of such programs and projects are health service projects, and community service programs. However, when any of these activities are undertaken by the institution without outside support, they may be classified as other institutional activities.

d. Other institutional activities means all activities of an institution except:

(1) Instruction, departmental research, organized research, and other sponsored activities, as defined above;

(2) F&A cost activities identified in Section F of this Appendix; and

(3) Specialized service facilities described in Section J.47 of this Appendix. Other institutional activities include operation of residence halls, dining halls, hospitals and clinics, student unions, intercollegiate athletics, bookstores, faculty housing, student apartments, guest houses, chapels, theaters, public museums, and other similar auxiliary enterprises. This definition also includes any other categories of activities, costs of which are "unallowable" to sponsored agreements, unless otherwise indicated in the agreements.

2. Sponsored agreement, for purposes of this Appendix, means any grant, contract, or other agreement between the institution and the Federal Government.

3. Allocation means the process of assigning a cost, or a group of costs, to one or more cost objective, in reasonable and realistic proportion to the benefit provided or other equitable relationship. A cost objective may be a major function of the institution, a particular service or project, a sponsored agreement, or an F&A cost activity, as described in Section F of this Appendix. The process may entail assigning a cost(s) directly to a final cost objective or through one or more intermediate cost objectives.

4. Facilities and administrative (F&A) costs, for the purpose of this Appendix, means costs that are incurred for common or joint objectives and, therefore, cannot be identified readily and specifically with a particular sponsored



project, an instructional activity, or any other institutional activity. F&A costs are synonymous with “indirect” costs, as previously used in this Appendix and as currently used in attachments A and B to this Appendix. The F&A cost categories are described in Section F.1 of this Appendix.

### C. BASIC CONSIDERATIONS

1. Composition of total costs. The cost of a sponsored agreement is comprised of the allowable direct costs incident to its performance, plus the allocable portion of the allowable F&A costs of the institution, less applicable credits as described in subsection C.5 of this Appendix.

2. Factors affecting allowability of costs. The tests of allowability of costs under these principles are: they must be reasonable; they must be allocable to sponsored agreements under the principles and methods provided herein; they must be given consistent treatment through application of those generally accepted accounting principles appropriate to the circumstances; and they must conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles or in the sponsored agreement as to types or amounts of cost items.

3. Reasonable costs. A cost may be considered reasonable if the nature of the goods or services acquired or applied, and the amount involved therefore, reflect the action that a prudent person would have taken under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision to incur the cost was made. Major considerations involved in the determination of the reasonableness of a cost are: whether or not the cost is of a type generally recognized as necessary for the operation of the institution or the performance of the sponsored agreement; the restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as arm's-length bargaining, Federal and State laws and regulations, and sponsored agreement terms and conditions; whether or not the individuals concerned acted with due prudence in the circumstances, considering their responsibilities to the institution, its employees, its students, the Federal Government, and the public at large; and, the extent to which the actions taken with respect to the incurrence of the cost are consistent with established institutional policies and practices applicable to the work of the institution generally, including sponsored agreements.

#### 4. Allocable costs.

a. A cost is allocable to a particular cost objective ( *i.e.* , a specific function, project, sponsored agreement, department, or the like) if the goods or services involved are chargeable or assignable to such cost objective in accordance with relative benefits received or other equitable relationship. Subject to the foregoing, a cost is allocable to a sponsored agreement if it is incurred solely to advance the work under the sponsored agreement; it benefits both the sponsored agreement and other work of the institution, in proportions that can be approximated through use of reasonable methods, or it is necessary to the overall operation of the institution and, in light of the principles provided in this Appendix, is deemed to be assignable in part to sponsored projects. Where the purchase of equipment or other capital items is specifically authorized under a sponsored agreement, the amounts thus authorized for such purchases are assignable to the sponsored agreement regardless of the use that may subsequently be made of the equipment or other capital items involved.

b. Any costs allocable to a particular sponsored agreement under the standards provided in this Appendix may not be shifted to other sponsored agreements in order to meet deficiencies caused by overruns or other fund considerations, to avoid restrictions imposed by law or by terms of the sponsored agreement, or for other reasons of convenience.

c. Any costs allocable to activities sponsored by industry, foreign governments or other sponsors may not be shifted to federally-sponsored agreements.

#### d. Allocation and documentation standard.

(1) Cost principles. The recipient institution is responsible for ensuring that costs charged to a sponsored agreement are allowable, allocable, and reasonable under these cost principles.

(2) Internal controls. The institution's financial management system shall ensure that no one person has complete control over all aspects of a financial transaction.

(3) Direct cost allocation principles. If a cost benefits two or more projects or activities in proportions that can be determined without undue effort or cost, the cost should be allocated to the projects based on the proportional benefit. If a cost benefits two or more projects or activities in proportions that cannot be determined because of the interrelationship of the work involved, then, notwithstanding subsection b, the costs may be allocated or transferred to benefited projects on any reasonable basis, consistent with subsections C.4.d. (1) and (2) of this Appendix.

(4) Documentation. Federal requirements for documentation are specified in this Appendix, 2 CFR Part 215, “Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations,” and specific agency policies on cost transfers. If the institution authorizes the principal investigator or other individual to have primary responsibility, given the requirements of subsection C.4.d. (2) of this Appendix, for the management of sponsored agreement funds, then the institution's documentation requirements for the actions of those individuals ( *e.g.* , signature or initials of the principal investigator or designee or use of a password) will normally be considered sufficient.

#### 5. Applicable credits.

a. The term “applicable credits” refers to those receipts or negative expenditures that operate to offset or reduce direct or F&A cost items. Typical examples of such transactions are: purchase discounts, rebates, or allowances; recoveries or indemnities on losses; and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. This term also includes “educational discounts” on products or services provided specifically to educational institutions, such as discounts on computer equipment, except where the arrangement is clearly and explicitly identified as a gift by the vendor.



b. In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal Government to finance institutional activities or service operations should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items against related expenditures should be applied by the institution in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to sponsored agreements for services rendered whenever the facilities or other resources used in providing such services have been financed directly, in whole or in part, by Federal funds. (See Sections F.10, J.14, and J.47 of this Appendix for areas of potential application in the matter of direct Federal financing.)

6. Costs incurred by State and local governments. Costs incurred or paid by State or local governments on behalf of their colleges and universities for fringe benefit programs, such as pension costs and FICA and any other costs specifically incurred on behalf of, and in direct benefit to, the institutions, are allowable costs of such institutions whether or not these costs are recorded in the accounting records of the institutions, subject to the following:

- a. The costs meet the requirements of subsections C.1 through 5 of this Appendix.
- b. The costs are properly supported by cost allocation plans in accordance with applicable Federal cost accounting principles.
- c. The costs are not otherwise borne directly or indirectly by the Federal Government.

7. Limitations on allowance of costs. Sponsored agreements may be subject to statutory requirements that limit the allowance of costs. When the maximum amount allowable under a limitation is less than the total amount determined in accordance with the principles in this Appendix, the amount not recoverable under a sponsored agreement may not be charged to other sponsored agreements.

8. Collection of unallowable costs, excess costs due to noncompliance with cost policies, increased costs due to failure to follow a disclosed accounting practice and increased costs resulting from a change in cost accounting practice. The following costs shall be refunded (including interest) in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations:

- a. Costs specifically identified as unallowable in Section J of this Appendix, either directly or indirectly, and charged to the Federal Government.
- b. Excess costs due to failure by the educational institution to comply with the cost policies in this Appendix.
- c. Increased costs due to a noncompliant cost accounting practice used to estimate, accumulate, or report costs.
- d. Increased costs resulting from a change in accounting practice.

9. Adjustment of previously negotiated F&A cost rates containing unallowable costs. Negotiated F&A cost rates based on a proposal later found to have included costs that are unallowable as specified by law or regulation, Section J of this Appendix, terms and conditions of sponsored agreements, or, are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to sponsored agreements, shall be adjusted, or a refund shall be made, in accordance with the requirements of this section. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the proposals used to establish the rates and do not constitute a reopening of the rate negotiation. The adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (predetermined, final, fixed, or provisional).

a. For rates covering a future fiscal year of the institution, the unallowable costs will be removed from the F&A cost pools and the rates appropriately adjusted.

b. For rates covering a past period, the Federal share of the unallowable costs will be computed for each year involved and a cash refund (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable regulations) will be made to the Federal Government. If cash refunds are made for past periods covered by provisional or fixed rates, appropriate adjustments will be made when the rates are finalized to avoid duplicate recovery of the unallowable costs by the Federal Government.

c. For rates covering the current period, either a rate adjustment or a refund, as described in subsections a and b, shall be required by the cognizant agency. The choice of method shall be at the discretion of the cognizant agency, based on its judgment as to which method would be most practical.

d. The amount or proportion of unallowable costs included in each year's rate will be assumed to be the same as the amount or proportion of unallowable costs included in the base year proposal used to establish the rate.

10. Consistency in estimating, accumulating and reporting costs.

a. An educational institution's practices used in estimating costs in pricing a proposal shall be consistent with the educational institution's cost accounting practices used in accumulating and reporting costs.

b. An educational institution's cost accounting practices used in accumulating and reporting actual costs for a sponsored agreement shall be consistent with the educational institution's practices used in estimating costs in pricing the related proposal or application.

c. The grouping of homogeneous costs in estimates prepared for proposal purposes shall not per se be deemed an inconsistent application of cost accounting practices under subsection a when such costs are accumulated and reported in greater detail on an actual cost basis during performance of the sponsored agreement.

d. Attachment A to this Appendix also reflects this requirement, along with the purpose, definitions, and techniques for application, all of which are authoritative.

11. Consistency in allocating costs incurred for the same purpose.



a. All costs incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, are either direct costs only or F&A costs only with respect to final cost objectives. No final cost objective shall have allocated to it as a cost any cost, if other costs incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, have been included as a direct cost of that or any other final cost objective. Further, no final cost objective shall have allocated to it as a direct cost any cost, if other costs incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, have been included in any F&A cost pool to be allocated to that or any other final cost objective.

b. Attachment A to this Appendix reflects this requirement along with its purpose, definitions, and techniques for application, illustrations and interpretations, all of which are authoritative.

## 12. Accounting for unallowable costs.

a. Costs expressly unallowable or mutually agreed to be unallowable, including costs mutually agreed to be unallowable directly associated costs, shall be identified and excluded from any billing, claim, application, or proposal applicable to a sponsored agreement.

b. Costs which specifically become designated as unallowable as a result of a written decision furnished by a Federal official pursuant to sponsored agreement disputes procedures shall be identified if included in or used in the computation of any billing, claim, or proposal applicable to a sponsored agreement. This identification requirement applies also to any costs incurred for the same purpose under like circumstances as the costs specifically identified as unallowable under either this subsection or subsection a.

c. Costs which, in a Federal official's written decision furnished pursuant to sponsored agreement disputes procedures, are designated as unallowable directly associated costs of unallowable costs covered by either subsection a or b shall be accorded the identification required by subsection b.

d. The costs of any work project not contractually authorized by a sponsored agreement, whether or not related to performance of a proposed or existing sponsored agreement, shall be accounted for, to the extent appropriate, in a manner which permits ready separation from the costs of authorized work projects.

e. All unallowable costs covered by subsections a through d shall be subject to the same cost accounting principles governing cost allocability as allowable costs. In circumstances where these unallowable costs normally would be part of a regular F&A cost allocation base or bases, they shall remain in such base or bases. Where a directly associated cost is part of a category of costs normally included in a F&A cost pool that shall be allocated over a base containing the unallowable cost with which it is associated, such a directly associated cost shall be retained in the F&A cost pool and be allocated through the regular allocation process.

f. Where the total of the allocable and otherwise allowable costs exceeds a limitation-of-cost or ceiling-price provision in a sponsored agreement, full direct and F&A cost allocation shall be made to the sponsored agreement cost objective, in accordance with established cost accounting practices and standards which regularly govern a given entity's allocations to sponsored agreement cost objectives. In any determination of a cost overrun, the amount thereof shall be identified in terms of the excess of allowable costs over the ceiling amount, rather than through specific identification of particular cost items or cost elements.

g. Attachment A reflects this requirement, along with its purpose, definitions, techniques for application, and illustrations of this standard, all of which are authoritative.

## 13. Cost accounting period.

a. Educational institutions shall use their fiscal year as their cost accounting period, except that:

(1) Costs of a F&A function which exists for only a part of a cost accounting period may be allocated to cost objectives of that same part of the period on the basis of data for that part of the cost accounting period if the cost is material in amount, accumulated in a separate F&A cost pool or expense pool, and allocated on the basis of an appropriate direct measure of the activity or output of the function during that part of the period.

(2) An annual period other than the fiscal year may, upon mutual agreement with the Federal Government, be used as the cost accounting period if the use of such period is an established practice of the educational institution and is consistently used for managing and controlling revenues and disbursements, and appropriate accruals, deferrals or other adjustments are made with respect to such annual periods.

(3) A transitional cost accounting period other than a year shall be used whenever a change of fiscal year occurs.

b. An educational institution shall follow consistent practices in the selection of the cost accounting period or periods in which any types of expense and any types of adjustment to expense (including prior-period adjustments) are accumulated and allocated.

c. The same cost accounting period shall be used for accumulating costs in a F&A cost pool as for establishing its allocation base, except that the Federal Government and educational institution may agree to use a different period for establishing an allocation base, provided:

(1) The practice is necessary to obtain significant administrative convenience,

(2) The practice is consistently followed by the educational institution,

(3) The annual period used is representative of the activity of the cost accounting period for which the F&A costs to be allocated are accumulated, and

(4) The practice can reasonably be estimated to provide a distribution to cost objectives of the cost accounting period not materially different from that which otherwise would be obtained.



d. Attachment A reflects this requirement, along with its purpose, definitions, techniques for application and illustrations, all of which are authoritative.

#### 14. Disclosure Statement.

a. Educational institutions that received aggregate sponsored agreements totaling \$25 million or more subject to this Appendix during their most recently completed fiscal year shall disclose their cost accounting practices by filing a Disclosure Statement (DS-2), which is reproduced in Attachment B to this Appendix. With the approval of the cognizant agency, an educational institution may meet the DS-2 submission by submitting the DS-2 for each business unit that received \$25 million or more in sponsored agreements.

b. The DS-2 shall be submitted to the cognizant agency with a copy to the educational institution's audit cognizant office.

c. Educational institutions receiving \$25 million or more in sponsored agreements that are not required to file a DS-2 pursuant to 48 CFR 9903.202-1 shall file a DS-2 covering the first fiscal year beginning after the publication date of this revision, within six months after the end of that fiscal year. Extensions beyond the above due date may be granted by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis.

d. Educational institutions are responsible for maintaining an accurate DS-2 and complying with disclosed cost accounting practices. Educational institutions must file amendments to the DS-2 when disclosed practices are changed to comply with a new or modified standard, or when practices are changed for other reasons. Amendments of a DS-2 may be submitted at any time. If the change is expected to have a material impact on the educational institution's negotiated F&A cost rates, the revision shall be approved by the cognizant agency before it is implemented. Resubmission of a complete, updated DS-2 is discouraged except when there are extensive changes to disclosed practices.

e. Cost and funding adjustments. Cost adjustments shall be made by the cognizant agency if an educational institution fails to comply with the cost policies in this Appendix or fails to consistently follow its established or disclosed cost accounting practices when estimating, accumulating or reporting the costs of sponsored agreements, if aggregate cost impact on sponsored agreements is material. The cost adjustment shall normally be made on an aggregate basis for all affected sponsored agreements through an adjustment of the educational institution's future F&A costs rates or other means considered appropriate by the cognizant agency. Under the terms of CAS-covered contracts, adjustments in the amount of funding provided may also be required when the estimated proposal costs were not determined in accordance with established cost accounting practices.

f. Overpayments. Excess amounts paid in the aggregate by the Federal Government under sponsored agreements due to a noncompliant cost accounting practice used to estimate, accumulate, or report costs shall be credited or refunded, as deemed appropriate by the cognizant agency. Interest applicable to the excess amounts paid in the aggregate during the period of noncompliance shall also be determined and collected in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations.

g. Compliant cost accounting practice changes. Changes from one compliant cost accounting practice to another compliant practice that are approved by the cognizant agency may require cost adjustments if the change has a material effect on sponsored agreements and the changes are deemed appropriate by the cognizant agency.

h. Responsibilities. The cognizant agency shall:

(1) Determine cost adjustments for all sponsored agreements in the aggregate on behalf of the Federal Government. Actions of the cognizant agency official in making cost adjustment determinations shall be coordinated with all affected Federal agencies to the extent necessary.

(2) Prescribe guidelines and establish internal procedures to promptly determine on behalf of the Federal Government that a DS-2 adequately discloses the educational institution's cost accounting practices and that the disclosed practices are compliant with applicable CAS and the requirements of Attachment A to this Appendix.

(3) Distribute to all affected agencies any DS-2 determination of adequacy and/or noncompliance.

#### D. DIRECT COSTS

1. General. Direct costs are those costs that can be identified specifically with a particular sponsored project, an instructional activity, or any other institutional activity, or that can be directly assigned to such activities relatively easily with a high degree of accuracy. Costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances must be treated consistently as either direct or F&A costs. Where an institution treats a particular type of cost as a direct cost of sponsored agreements, all costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances shall be treated as direct costs of all activities of the institution.

2. Application to sponsored agreements. Identification with the sponsored work rather than the nature of the goods and services involved is the determining factor in distinguishing direct from F&A costs of sponsored agreements. Typical costs charged directly to a sponsored agreement are the compensation of employees for performance of work under the sponsored agreement, including related fringe benefit costs to the extent they are consistently treated, in like circumstances, by the institution as direct rather than F&A costs; the costs of materials consumed or expended in the performance of the work; and other items of expense incurred for the sponsored agreement, including extraordinary utility consumption. The cost of materials supplied from stock or services rendered by specialized facilities or other institutional service operations may be included as direct costs of sponsored agreements, provided such items are consistently treated, in like circumstances, by the institution as direct rather than F&A costs, and are charged under a recognized method of computing actual costs, and conform to generally accepted cost accounting practices consistently followed by the institution.



## E. F&amp;A COSTS

1. General. F&A costs are those that are incurred for common or joint objectives and therefore cannot be identified readily and specifically with a particular sponsored project, an instructional activity, or any other institutional activity. See Section F.1 of this Appendix for a discussion of the components of F&A costs.

2. Criteria for distribution.

a. Base period. A base period for distribution of F&A costs is the period during which the costs are incurred. The base period normally should coincide with the fiscal year established by the institution, but in any event the base period should be so selected as to avoid inequities in the distribution of costs.

b. Need for cost groupings. The overall objective of the F&A cost allocation process is to distribute the F&A costs described in Section F of this Appendix to the major functions of the institution in proportions reasonably consistent with the nature and extent of their use of the institution's resources. In order to achieve this objective, it may be necessary to provide for selective distribution by establishing separate groupings of cost within one or more of the F&A cost categories referred to in subsection E.1 of this Appendix. In general, the cost groupings established within a category should constitute, in each case, a pool of those items of expense that are considered to be of like nature in terms of their relative contribution to (or degree of remoteness from) the particular cost objectives to which distribution is appropriate. Cost groupings should be established considering the general guides provided in subsection E.2.c. of this Appendix. Each such pool or cost grouping should then be distributed individually to the related cost objectives, using the distribution base or method most appropriate in the light of the guides set forth in subsection E.2.d. of this Appendix.

c. General considerations on cost groupings. The extent to which separate cost groupings and selective distribution would be appropriate at an institution is a matter of judgment to be determined on a case-by-case basis. Typical situations which may warrant the establishment of two or more separate cost groupings (based on account classification or analysis) within an F&A cost category include but are not limited to the following:

(1) Where certain items or categories of expense relate solely to one of the major functions of the institution or to less than all functions, such expenses should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for direct assignment or selective allocation in accordance with the guides provided in subsections b and d.

(2) Where any types of expense ordinarily treated as general administration or departmental administration are charged to sponsored agreements as direct costs, expenses applicable to other activities of the institution when incurred for the same purposes in like circumstances must, through separate cost groupings, be excluded from the F&A costs allocable to those sponsored agreements and included in the direct cost of other activities for cost allocation purposes.

(3) Where it is determined that certain expenses are for the support of a service unit or facility whose output is susceptible of measurement on a workload or other quantitative basis, such expenses should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for distribution on such basis to organized research, instructional, and other activities at the institution or within the department.

(4) Where activities provide their own purchasing, personnel administration, building maintenance or similar service, the distribution of general administration and general expenses, or operation and maintenance expenses to such activities should be accomplished through cost groupings which include only that portion of central F&A costs (such as for overall management) which are properly allocable to such activities.

(5) Where the institution elects to treat fringe benefits as F&A charges, such costs should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for selective distribution to related cost objectives.

(6) The number of separate cost groupings within a category should be held within practical limits, after taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision attainable through less selective methods of distribution.

d. Selection of distribution method.

(1) Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the method or base to be used in distributing individual cost groupings. The essential consideration in selecting a base is that it be the one best suited for assigning the pool of costs to cost objectives in accordance with benefits derived; a traceable cause and effect relationship; or logic and reason, where neither benefit nor cause and effect relationship is determinable.

(2) Where a cost grouping can be identified directly with the cost objective benefited, it should be assigned to that cost objective.

(3) Where the expenses in a cost grouping are more general in nature, the distribution may be based on a cost analysis study which results in an equitable distribution of the costs. Such cost analysis studies may take into consideration weighting factors, population, or space occupied if appropriate. Cost analysis studies, however, must be appropriately documented in sufficient detail for subsequent review by the cognizant Federal agency, distribute the costs to the related cost objectives in accordance with the relative benefits derived, be statistically sound, be performed specifically at the institution at which the results are to be used, and be reviewed periodically, but not less frequently than every two years, updated if necessary, and used consistently. Any assumptions made in the study must be stated and explained. The use of cost analysis studies and periodic changes in the method of cost distribution must be fully justified.

(4) If a cost analysis study is not performed, or if the study does not result in an equitable distribution of the costs, the distribution shall be made in accordance with the appropriate base cited in Section F, unless one of the following conditions is met: it can be demonstrated that the use of a different base would result in a more equitable allocation of the costs, or that a more readily available base would not increase the costs charged to sponsored agreements, or the



institution qualifies for, and elects to use, the simplified method for computing F&A cost rates described in Section H of this Appendix.

(5) Notwithstanding subsection E.2.d.(3) of this Appendix, effective July 1, 1998, a cost analysis or base other than that in Section F of this Appendix shall not be used to distribute utility or student services costs. Instead, subsections F.4.c and F.4.d may be used in the recovery of utility costs.

e. Order of distribution.

(1) F&A costs are the broad categories of costs discussed in Section F.1 of this Appendix.

(2) Depreciation and use allowances, operation and maintenance expenses, and general administrative and general expenses should be allocated in that order to the remaining F&A cost categories as well as to the major functions and specialized service facilities of the institution. Other cost categories may be allocated in the order determined to be most appropriate by the institutions. When cross allocation of costs is made as provided in subsection (3), this order of allocation does not apply.

(3) Normally an F&A cost category will be considered closed once it has been allocated to other cost objectives, and costs may not be subsequently allocated to it. However, a cross allocation of costs between two or more F&A cost categories may be used if such allocation will result in a more equitable allocation of costs. If a cross allocation is used, an appropriate modification to the composition of the F&A cost categories described in Section F of this Appendix is required.

## F. IDENTIFICATION AND ASSIGNMENT OF F&A COSTS

1. Definition of Facilities and Administration. F&A costs are broad categories of costs. "Facilities" is defined as depreciation and use allowances, interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, operation and maintenance expenses, and library expenses. "Administration" is defined as general administration and general expenses, departmental administration, sponsored projects administration, student administration and services, and all other types of expenditures not listed specifically under one of the subcategories of Facilities (including cross allocations from other pools).

2. Depreciation and use allowances.

a. The expenses under this heading are the portion of the costs of the institution's buildings, capital improvements to land and buildings, and equipment which are computed in accordance with Section J.14 of this Appendix.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section E.2.d of this Appendix, the expenses included in this category shall be allocated in the following manner:

(1) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings used exclusively in the conduct of a single function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, shall be assigned to that function.

(2) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings used for more than one function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, shall be allocated to the individual functions performed in each building on the basis of usable square feet of space, excluding common areas such as hallways, stairwells, and rest rooms.

(3) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings, capital improvements and equipment related to space ( e.g. , individual rooms, laboratories) used jointly by more than one function (as determined by the users of the space) shall be treated as follows. The cost of each jointly used unit of space shall be allocated to benefiting functions on the basis of:

(a) The employee full-time equivalents (FTEs) or salaries and wages of those individual functions benefiting from the use of that space; or

(b) Institution-wide employee FTEs or salaries and wages applicable to the benefiting major functions (see Section B.1 of this Appendix) of the institution.

(4) Depreciation or use allowances on certain capital improvements to land, such as paved parking areas, fences, sidewalks, and the like, not included in the cost of buildings, shall be allocated to user categories of students and employees on a full-time equivalent basis. The amount allocated to the student category shall be assigned to the instruction function of the institution. The amount allocated to the employee category shall be further allocated to the major functions of the institution in proportion to the salaries and wages of all employees applicable to those functions.

c. Large research facilities. The following provisions apply to large research facilities that are included in F&A rate proposals negotiated after January 1, 2000, and on which the design and construction begin after July 1, 1998. Large facilities, for this provision, are defined as buildings with construction costs of more than \$10 million. The determination of the Federal participation (use) percentage in a building is based on institution's estimates of building use over its life, and is made during the planning phase for the building.

(1) When an institution has large research facilities, of which 40 percent or more of total assignable space is expected for Federal use, the institution must maintain an adequate review and approval process to ensure that construction costs are reasonable.

(a)The review process shall address and document relevant factors affecting construction costs, such as:

i. Life cycle costs

ii. Unique research needs



- iii. Special building needs
- iv. Building site preparation
- v. Environmental consideration
- vi. Federal construction code requirements
- vii. Competitive procurement practices

(b) The approval process shall include review and approval of the projects by the institution's Board of Trustees (which can also be called Board of Directors, Governors or Regents) or other independent entities.

(2) For research facilities costing more than \$25 million, of which 50 percent or more of total assignable space is expected for Federal use, the institution must document the review steps performed to assure that construction costs are reasonable. The review should include an analysis of construction costs and a comparison of these costs with relevant construction data, including the National Science Foundation data for research facilities based on its biennial survey, "Science and Engineering Facilities at Colleges and Universities." The documentation must be made available for review by Federal negotiators, when requested.

3. Interest. Interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, as defined in Section J.25 of this Appendix, shall be classified as an expenditure under the category Facilities. These costs shall be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation or use allowances on the buildings, equipment and capital improvements to which the interest relates.

#### 4. Operation and maintenance expenses.

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration, supervision, operation, maintenance, preservation, and protection of the institution's physical plant. They include expenses normally incurred for such items as janitorial and utility services; repairs and ordinary or normal alterations of buildings, furniture and equipment; care of grounds; maintenance and operation of buildings and other plant facilities; security; earthquake and disaster preparedness; environmental safety; hazardous waste disposal; property, liability and all other insurance relating to property; space and capital leasing; facility planning and management; and, central receiving. The operation and maintenance expense category should also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, depreciation and use allowances, and interest costs.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section E.2.d of this Appendix, the expenses included in this category shall be allocated in the same manner as described in subsection E.2.b for depreciation and use allowances.

c. For F&A rates negotiated on or after July 1, 1998, an institution that previously employed a utility special cost study in its most recently negotiated F&A rate proposal in accordance with Section E.2.d of this Appendix, may add a utility cost adjustment (UCA) of 1.3 percentage points to its negotiated overall F&A rate for organized research. Exhibit B to this Appendix displays the list of eligible institutions. The allocation of utility costs to the benefiting functions shall otherwise be made in the same manner as described in subsection F.4.b of this Appendix. Beginning on July 1, 2002, Federal agencies shall reassess periodically the eligibility of institutions to receive the UCA.

d. Beginning on July 1, 2002, Federal agencies may receive applications for utilization of the UCA from institutions not subject to the provisions of subsection F.4.c of this Appendix.

#### 5. General administration and general expenses.

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the general executive and administrative offices of educational institutions and other expense of a general character which do not relate solely to any major function of the institution; *i.e.*, solely to instruction, organized research, other sponsored activities, or other institutional activities. The general administration and general expense category should also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, operation and maintenance expense, depreciation and use allowances, and interest costs. Examples of general administration and general expenses include: those expenses incurred by administrative offices that serve the entire university system of which the institution is a part; central offices of the institution such as the President's or Chancellor's office, the offices for institution-wide financial management, business services, budget and planning, personnel management, and safety and risk management; the office of the General Counsel; and, the operations of the central administrative management information systems. General administration and general expenses shall not include expenses incurred within non-university-wide deans' offices, academic departments, organized research units, or similar organizational units. (See subsection F.6. of this Appendix, Departmental administration expenses.)

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section E.2.d of this Appendix, the expenses included in this category shall be grouped first according to common major functions of the institution to which they render services or provide benefits. The aggregate expenses of each group shall then be allocated to serviced or benefited functions on the modified total cost basis. Modified total costs consist of the same elements as those in Section G.2 of this Appendix. When an activity included in this F&A cost category provides a service or product to another institution or organization, an appropriate adjustment must be made to either the expenses or the basis of allocation or both, to assure a proper allocation of costs.

#### 6. Departmental administration expenses.

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for administrative and supporting services that benefit common or joint departmental activities or objectives in academic deans' offices, academic departments and divisions, and organized research units. Organized research units include such units as institutes, study centers, and research centers. Departmental administration expenses are subject to the following limitations.

(1) Academic deans' offices. Salaries and operating expenses are limited to those attributable to administrative



functions.

(2) Academic departments:

(a) Salaries and fringe benefits attributable to the administrative work (including bid and proposal preparation) of faculty (including department heads), and other professional personnel conducting research and/or instruction, shall be allowed at a rate of 3.6 percent of modified total direct costs. This category does not include professional business or professional administrative officers. This allowance shall be added to the computation of the F&A cost rate for major functions in Section G of this Appendix; the expenses covered by the allowance shall be excluded from the departmental administration cost pool. No documentation is required to support this allowance.

(b) Other administrative and supporting expenses incurred within academic departments are allowable provided they are treated consistently in like circumstances. This would include expenses such as the salaries of secretarial and clerical staffs, the salaries of administrative officers and assistants, travel, office supplies, stockrooms, and the like.

(3) Other fringe benefit costs applicable to the salaries and wages included in subsections F.6.a.(1) and (2) of this Appendix are allowable, as well as an appropriate share of general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, and depreciation and/or use allowances.

(4) Federal agencies may authorize reimbursement of additional costs for department heads and faculty only in exceptional cases where an institution can demonstrate undue hardship or detriment to project performance.

b. The following guidelines apply to the determination of departmental administrative costs as direct or F&A costs.

(1) In developing the departmental administration cost pool, special care should be exercised to ensure that costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances are treated consistently as either direct or F&A costs. For example, salaries of technical staff, laboratory supplies ( e.g. , chemicals), telephone toll charges, animals, animal care costs, computer costs, travel costs, and specialized shop costs shall be treated as direct cost wherever identifiable to a particular cost objective. Direct charging of these costs may be accomplished through specific identification of individual costs to benefiting cost objectives, or through recharge centers or specialized service facilities, as appropriate under the circumstances.

(2) The salaries of administrative and clerical staff should normally be treated as F&A costs. Direct charging of these costs may be appropriate where a major project or activity explicitly budgets for administrative or clerical services and individuals involved can be specifically identified with the project or activity. "Major project" is defined as a project that requires an extensive amount of administrative or clerical support, which is significantly greater than the routine level of such services provided by academic departments. Some examples of major projects are described in Exhibit C to this Appendix.

(3) Items such as office supplies, postage, local telephone costs, and memberships shall normally be treated as F&A costs.

c. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section E.2.d of this Appendix, the expenses included in this category shall be allocated as follows:

(1) The administrative expenses of the dean's office of each college and school shall be allocated to the academic departments within that college or school on the modified total cost basis.

(2) The administrative expenses of each academic department, and the department's share of the expenses allocated in subsection F.6.b.(1) of this Appendix shall be allocated to the appropriate functions of the department on the modified total cost basis.

7. Sponsored projects administration.

a. The expenses under this heading are limited to those incurred by a separate organization(s) established primarily to administer sponsored projects, including such functions as grant and contract administration (Federal and non-Federal), special security, purchasing, personnel, administration, and editing and publishing of research and other reports. They include the salaries and expenses of the head of such organization, assistants, and immediate staff, together with the salaries and expenses of personnel engaged in supporting activities maintained by the organization, such as stock rooms, stenographic pools and the like. This category also includes an allocable share of fringe benefit costs, general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, depreciation/use allowances. Appropriate adjustments will be made for services provided to other functions or organizations.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section E.2.d of this Appendix, the expenses included in this category shall be allocated to the major functions of the institution under which the sponsored projects are conducted on the basis of the modified total cost of sponsored projects.

c. An appropriate adjustment shall be made to eliminate any duplicate charges to sponsored agreements when this category includes similar or identical activities as those included in the general administration and general expense category or other F&A cost items, such as accounting, procurement, or personnel administration.

8. Library expenses.

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the operation of the library, including the cost of books and library materials purchased for the library, less any items of library income that qualify as applicable credits under Section C.5 of this Appendix. The library expense category should also include the fringe benefits applicable to the salaries and wages included therein, an appropriate share of general administration and general expense, operation and maintenance expense, and depreciation and use allowances. Costs incurred in the purchases of rare books (museum-type books) with no value to sponsored agreements should not be allocated to them.



b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section E.2.d of this Appendix, the expenses included in this category shall be allocated first on the basis of primary categories of users, including students, professional employees, and other users.

(1) The student category shall consist of full-time equivalent students enrolled at the institution, regardless of whether they earn credits toward a degree or certificate.

(2) The professional employee category shall consist of all faculty members and other professional employees of the institution, on a full-time equivalent basis.

(3) The other users category shall consist of all other users of library facilities.

c. Amount allocated in subsection E.8.b of this Appendix shall be assigned further as follows:

(1) The amount in the student category shall be assigned to the instruction function of the institution.

(2) The amount in the professional employee category shall be assigned to the major functions of the institution in proportion to the salaries and wages of all faculty members and other professional employees applicable to those functions.

(3) The amount in the other users category shall be assigned to the other institutional activities function of the institution.

#### 9. Student administration and services.

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration of student affairs and for services to students, including expenses of such activities as deans of students, admissions, registrar, counseling and placement services, student advisers, student health and infirmary services, catalogs, and commencements and convocations. The salaries of members of the academic staff whose responsibilities to the institution require administrative work that benefits sponsored projects may also be included to the extent that the portion charged to student administration is determined in accordance with Section J.10 of this Appendix. This expense category also includes the fringe benefit costs applicable to the salaries and wages included therein, an appropriate share of general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance, and use allowances and/or depreciation.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section E.2.d of this Appendix, the expenses in this category shall be allocated to the instruction function, and subsequently to sponsored agreements in that function.

#### 10. Offset for F&A expenses otherwise provided for by the Federal Government.

a. The items to be accumulated under this heading are the reimbursements and other payments from the Federal Government that are made to the institution to support solely, specifically, and directly, in whole or in part, any of the administrative or service activities described in subsections F.2 through 9 of this Appendix.

b. The items in this group shall be treated as a credit to the affected individual F&A cost category before that category is allocated to benefiting functions.

### G. DETERMINATION AND APPLICATION OF F&A COST RATE OR RATES

#### 1. F&A cost pools.

a. (1) Subject to subsection b, the separate categories of F&A costs allocated to each major function of the institution as prescribed in Section F shall be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The amount in each pool shall be divided by the distribution base described in subsection G.2 of this Appendix to arrive at a single F&A cost rate for each function.

(2) The rate for each function is used to distribute F&A costs to individual sponsored agreements of that function. Since a common pool is established for each major function of the institution, a separate F&A cost rate would be established for each of the major functions described in Section B.1 of this Appendix under which sponsored agreements are carried out.

(3) Each institution's F&A cost rate process must be appropriately designed to ensure that Federal sponsors do not in any way subsidize the F&A costs of other sponsors, specifically activities sponsored by industry and foreign governments. Accordingly, each allocation method used to identify and allocate the F&A cost pools, as described in Sections E.2 and F.2 through F.9 of this Appendix, must contain the full amount of the institution's modified total costs or other appropriate units of measurement used to make the computations. In addition, the final rate distribution base (as defined in subsection G.2 of this Appendix) for each major function (organized research, instruction, etc., as described in Section B.1 of this Appendix) shall contain all the programs or activities that utilize the F&A costs allocated to that major function. At the time a F&A cost proposal is submitted to a cognizant Federal agency, each institution must describe the process it uses to ensure that Federal funds are not used to subsidize industry and foreign government funded programs.

b. In some instances a single rate basis for use across the board on all work within a major function at an institution may not be appropriate. A single rate for research, for example, might not take into account those different environmental factors and other conditions which may affect substantially the F&A costs applicable to a particular segment of research at the institution. A particular segment of research may be that performed under a single sponsored agreement or it may consist of research under a group of sponsored agreements performed in a common environment. The environmental factors are not limited to the physical location of the work. Other important factors are the level of the administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the scientific disciplines or technical skills involved, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. Where a particular segment of a sponsored agreement is performed within an environment which appears to generate a



significantly different level of F&A costs, provisions should be made for a separate F&A cost pool applicable to such work. The separate F&A cost pool should be developed during the regular course of the rate determination process and the separate F&A cost rate resulting therefrom should be utilized; provided it is determined that such F&A cost rate differs significantly from that which would have been obtained under subsection G.1.a of this Appendix, and the volume of work to which such rate would apply is material in relation to other sponsored agreements at the institution.

2. The distribution basis. F&A costs shall be distributed to applicable sponsored agreements and other benefiting activities within each major function (see Section B.1) on the basis of modified total direct costs, consisting of all salaries and wages, fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and subgrants and subcontracts up to the first \$25,000 of each subgrant or subcontract (regardless of the period covered by the subgrant or subcontract). Equipment, capital expenditures, charges for patient care and tuition remission, rental costs, scholarships, and fellowships as well as the portion of each subgrant and subcontract in excess of \$25,000 shall be excluded from modified total direct costs. Other items may only be excluded where necessary to avoid a serious inequity in the distribution of F&A costs. For this purpose, a F&A cost rate should be determined for each of the separate F&A cost pools developed pursuant to subsection G.1 of this Appendix. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage that the amount of the particular F&A cost pool is of the modified total direct costs identified with such pool.

3. Negotiated lump sum for F&A costs. A negotiated fixed amount in lieu of F&A costs may be appropriate for self-contained, off-campus, or primarily subcontracted activities where the benefits derived from an institution's F&A services cannot be readily determined. Such negotiated F&A costs will be treated as an offset before allocation to instruction, organized research, other sponsored activities, and other institutional activities. The base on which such remaining expenses are allocated should be appropriately adjusted.

4. Predetermined rates for F&A costs. Public Law 87-638 (76 Stat. 437) authorizes the use of predetermined rates in determining the "indirect costs" (F&A costs in this Appendix) applicable under research agreements with educational institutions. The stated objectives of the law are to simplify the administration of cost-type research and development contracts (including grants) with educational institutions, to facilitate the preparation of their budgets, and to permit more expeditious closeout of such contracts when the work is completed. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for F&A costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of F&A costs during the ensuing accounting periods.

5. Negotiated fixed rates and carry-forward provisions. When a fixed rate is negotiated in advance for a fiscal year (or other time period), the over- or under-recovery for that year may be included as an adjustment to the F&A cost for the next rate negotiation. When the rate is negotiated before the carry-forward adjustment is determined, the carry-forward amount may be applied to the next subsequent rate negotiation. When such adjustments are to be made, each fixed rate negotiated in advance for a given period will be computed by applying the expected F&A costs allocable to sponsored agreements for the forecast period plus or minus the carry-forward adjustment (over- or under-recovery) from the prior period, to the forecast distribution base. Unrecovered amounts under lump-sum agreements or cost-sharing provisions of prior years shall not be carried forward for consideration in the new rate negotiation. There must, however, be an advance understanding in each case between the institution and the cognizant Federal agency as to whether these differences will be considered in the rate negotiation rather than making the determination after the differences are known. Further, institutions electing to use this carry-forward provision may not subsequently change without prior approval of the cognizant Federal agency. In the event that an institution returns to a postdetermined rate, any over- or under-recovery during the period in which negotiated fixed rates and carry-forward provisions were followed will be included in the subsequent postdetermined rates. Where multiple rates are used, the same procedure will be applicable for determining each rate.

6. Provisional and final rates for F&A costs. Where the cognizant agency determines that cost experience and other pertinent facts do not justify the use of predetermined rates, or a fixed rate with a carry-forward, or if the parties cannot agree on an equitable rate, a provisional rate shall be established. To prevent substantial overpayment or underpayment, the provisional rate may be adjusted by the cognizant agency during the institution's fiscal year. Predetermined or fixed rates may replace provisional rates at any time prior to the close of the institution's fiscal year. If a provisional rate is not replaced by a predetermined or fixed rate prior to the end of the institution's fiscal year, a final rate will be established and upward or downward adjustments will be made based on the actual allowable costs incurred for the period involved.

7. Fixed rates for the life of the sponsored agreement.

a. Federal agencies shall use the negotiated rates for F&A costs in effect at the time of the initial award throughout the life of the sponsored agreement. "Life" for the purpose of this subsection means each competitive segment of a project. A competitive segment is a period of years approved by the Federal funding agency at the time of the award. If negotiated rate agreements do not extend through the life of the sponsored agreement at the time of the initial award, then the negotiated rate for the last year of the sponsored agreement shall be extended through the end of the life of the sponsored agreement. Award levels for sponsored agreements may not be adjusted in future years as a result of changes in negotiated rates.

b. When an educational institution does not have a negotiated rate with the Federal Government at the time of the award (because the educational institution is a new grantee or the parties cannot reach agreement on a rate), the provisional rate used at the time of the award shall be adjusted once a rate is negotiated and approved by the cognizant agency.

8. Limitation on reimbursement of administrative costs.

a. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection G.1.a of this Appendix, the administrative costs charged to sponsored agreements awarded or amended (including continuation and renewal awards) with effective dates beginning on or after the start of the institution's first fiscal year which begins on or after October 1, 1991, shall be limited to 26%



of modified total direct costs (as defined in subsection G.2 of this Appendix) for the total of General Administration and General Expenses, Departmental Administration, Sponsored Projects Administration, and Student Administration and Services (including their allocable share of depreciation and/or use allowances, interest costs, operation and maintenance expenses, and fringe benefits costs, as provided by Sections F.5, F.6, F.7 and F.9 of this Appendix) and all other types of expenditures not listed specifically under one of the subcategories of facilities in Section F of this Appendix.

b. Existing F&A cost rates that affect institutions' fiscal years which begin on or after October 1, 1991, shall be unilaterally amended by the cognizant Federal agency to reflect the cost limitation in subsection G.8.a of this Appendix.

c. Permanent rates established prior to this revision that have been amended in accordance with subsection G.8.b of this Appendix may be renegotiated. However, no such renegotiated rate may exceed the rate which would have been in effect if the agreement had remained in effect; nor may the administrative portion of any renegotiated rate exceed the limitation in subsection a.

d. Institutions should not change their accounting or cost allocation methods which were in effect on May 1, 1991, if the effect is to change the charging of a particular type of cost from F&A to direct, or reclassify costs, or increase allocations, from the administrative pools identified in subsection to the other F&A cost pools or fringe benefits. Cognizant Federal agencies are authorized to permit changes where an institution's charging practices are at variance with acceptable practices followed by a substantial majority of other institutions.

9. Alternative method for administrative costs.

a. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection 1.a, an institution may elect to claim fixed allowance for the "Administration" portion of F&A costs. The allowance could be either 24% of modified total direct costs or a percentage equal to 95% of the most recently negotiated fixed or predetermined rate for the cost pools included under "Administration" as defined in Section F.1 of this Appendix, whichever is less, provided that no accounting or cost allocation changes with the effects described in subsection G.8.d of this Appendix have occurred. Under this alternative, no cost proposal need be prepared for the "Administration" portion of the F&A cost rate nor is further identification or documentation of these costs required (see subsection G.9.c of this Appendix). Where a negotiated F&A cost agreement includes this alternative, an institution shall make no further charges for the expenditure categories described in Sections F.5, F.6, F.7 and F.9 of this Appendix.

b. In negotiations of rates for subsequent periods, an institution that has elected the option of subsection a may continue to exercise it at the same rate without further identification or documentation of costs, provided that no accounting or cost allocation changes with the effects described in subsection G.8.d of this Appendix have occurred.

c. If an institution elects to accept a threshold rate, it is not required to perform a detailed analysis of its administrative costs. However, in order to compute the facilities components of its F&A cost rate, the institution must reconcile its F&A cost proposal to its financial statements and make appropriate adjustments and reclassifications to identify the costs of each major function as defined in Section B.1 of this Appendix, as well as to identify and allocate the facilities components. Administrative costs that are not identified as such by the institution's accounting system (such as those incurred in academic departments) will be classified as instructional costs for purposes of reconciling F&A cost proposals to financial statements and allocating facilities costs.

10. Individual rate components.

In order to satisfy the requirements of Section J.14 of this Appendix and to provide mutually agreed upon information for management purposes, each F&A cost rate negotiation or determination shall include development of a rate for each F&A cost pool as well as the overall F&A cost rate.

11. Negotiation and approval of F&A rate.

a. Cognizant agency assignments. "A cognizant agency" means the Federal agency responsible for negotiating and approving F&A rates for an educational institution on behalf of all Federal agencies.

(1) Cost negotiation cognizance is assigned to the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) or the Department of Defense's Office of Naval Research (DOD), normally depending on which of the two agencies (HHS or DOD) provides more funds to the educational institution for the most recent three years. Information on funding shall be derived from relevant data gathered by the National Science Foundation. In cases where neither HHS nor DOD provides Federal funding to an educational institution, the cognizant agency assignment shall default to HHS. Notwithstanding the method for cognizance determination described above, other arrangements for cognizance of a particular educational institution may also be based in part on the types of research performed at the educational institution and shall be decided based on mutual agreement between HHS and DOD.

(2) Cognizant assignments as of December 31, 1995, shall continue in effect through educational institutions' fiscal years ending during 1997, or the period covered by negotiated agreements in effect on December 31, 1995, whichever is later, except for those educational institutions with cognizant agencies other than HHS or DOD. Cognizance for these educational institutions shall transfer to HHS or DOD at the end of the period covered by the current negotiated rate agreement. After cognizance is established, it shall continue for a five-year period.

b. Acceptance of rates. The negotiated rates shall be accepted by all Federal agencies. Only under special circumstances, when required by law or regulation, may an agency use a rate different from the negotiated rate for a class of sponsored agreements or a single sponsored agreement.

c. Correcting deficiencies. The cognizant agency shall negotiate changes needed to correct systems deficiencies relating to accountability for sponsored agreements. Cognizant agencies shall address the concerns of other affected agencies, as appropriate.



d. Resolving questioned costs. The cognizant agency shall conduct any necessary negotiations with an educational institution regarding amounts questioned by audit that are due the Federal Government related to costs covered by a negotiated agreement.

e. Reimbursement. Reimbursement to cognizant agencies for work performed under Part 220 may be made by reimbursement billing under the Economy Act, 31 U.S.C. 1535.

f. Procedure for establishing facilities and administrative rates. The cognizant agency shall arrange with the educational institution to provide copies of rate proposals to all interested agencies. Agencies wanting such copies should notify the cognizant agency. Rates shall be established by one of the following methods:

(1) Formal negotiation. The cognizant agency is responsible for negotiating and approving rates for an educational institution on behalf of all Federal agencies. Non-cognizant Federal agencies, which award sponsored agreements to an educational institution, shall notify the cognizant agency of specific concerns ( *i.e.* , a need to establish special cost rates) that could affect the negotiation process. The cognizant agency shall address the concerns of all interested agencies, as appropriate. A pre-negotiation conference may be scheduled among all interested agencies, if necessary. The cognizant agency shall then arrange a negotiation conference with the educational institution.

(2) Other than formal negotiation. The cognizant agency and educational institution may reach an agreement on rates without a formal negotiation conference; for example, through correspondence or use of the simplified method described in this Appendix.

g. Formalizing determinations and agreements. The cognizant agency shall formalize all determinations or agreements reached with an educational institution and provide copies to other agencies having an interest.

h. Disputes and disagreements. Where the cognizant agency is unable to reach agreement with an educational institution with regard to rates or audit resolution, the appeal system of the cognizant agency shall be followed for resolution of the disagreement.

12. Standard Format for Submission. For facilities and administrative (F&A) rate proposals submitted on or after July 1, 2001, educational institutions shall use the standard format, shown in Attachment C to this Appendix, to submit their F&A rate proposal to the cognizant agency. The cognizant agency may, on an institution-by-institution basis, grant exceptions from all or portions of Part II of the standard format requirement. This requirement does not apply to educational institutions that use the simplified method for calculating F&A rates, as described in Section H of this Appendix.

#### H. SIMPLIFIED METHOD FOR SMALL INSTITUTIONS

##### 1. General.

a. Where the total direct cost of work covered by Part 220 at an institution does not exceed \$10 million in a fiscal year, the use of the simplified procedure described in subsections H.2 or 3 of this Appendix, may be used in determining allowable F&A costs. Under this simplified procedure, the institution's most recent annual financial report and immediately available supporting information shall be utilized as basis for determining the F&A cost rate applicable to all sponsored agreements. The institution may use either the salaries and wages (see subsection H.2 of this Appendix) or modified total direct costs (see subsection H.3 of this Appendix) as distribution basis.

b. The simplified procedure should not be used where it produces results that appear inequitable to the Federal Government or the institution. In any such case, F&A costs should be determined through use of the regular procedure.

##### 2. Simplified procedure—Salaries and wages base.

a. Establish the total amount of salaries and wages paid to all employees of the institution.

b. Establish an F&A cost pool consisting of the expenditures (exclusive of capital items and other costs specifically identified as unallowable) that customarily are classified under the following titles or their equivalents:

(1) General administration and general expenses (exclusive of costs of student administration and services, student activities, student aid, and scholarships). In those cases where expenditures have previously been allocated to other institutional activities, they may be included in the F&A cost pool. The total amount of salaries and wages included in the F&A cost pool must be separately identified.

(2) Operation and maintenance of physical plant; and depreciation and use allowances; after appropriate adjustment for costs applicable to other institutional activities.

(3) Library.

(4) Department administration expenses, which will be computed as 20 percent of the salaries and expenses of deans and heads of departments.

c. Establish a salary and wage distribution base, determined by deducting from the total of salaries and wages as established in subsection a the amount of salaries and wages included under subsection H.2.b of this Appendix.

d. Establish the F&A cost rate, determined by dividing the amount in the F&A cost pool, subsection H.2.b of this Appendix, by the amount of the distribution base, subsection H.2.c of this Appendix.

e. Apply the F&A cost rate to direct salaries and wages for individual agreements to determine the amount of F&A costs allocable to such agreements.

##### 3. Simplified procedure—Modified total direct cost base.



- a. Establish the total costs incurred by the institution for the base period.
- b. Establish a F&A cost pool consisting of the expenditures (exclusive of capital items and other costs specifically identified as unallowable) that customarily are classified under the following titles or their equivalents:
  - (1) General administration and general expenses (exclusive of costs of student administration and services, student activities, student aid, and scholarships). In those cases where expenditures have previously been allocated to other institutional activities, they may be included in the F&A cost pool. The modified total direct costs amount included in the F&A cost pool must be separately identified.
  - (2) Operation and maintenance of physical plant; and depreciation and use allowances; after appropriate adjustment for costs applicable to other institutional activities.
  - (3) Library.
  - (4) Department administration expenses, which will be computed as 20 percent of the salaries and expenses of deans and heads of departments.
- c. Establish a modified total direct cost distribution base, as defined in Section G.2 of this Appendix, that consists of all institution's direct functions.
- d. Establish the F&A cost rate, determined by dividing the amount in the F&A cost pool, subsection b, by the amount of the distribution base, subsection c.
- e. Apply the F&A cost rate to the modified total direct costs for individual agreements to determine the amount of F&A costs allocable to such agreements.

I. RESERVED

J. GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR SELECTED ITEMS OF COST

Sections J.1 through 54 of this Appendix provide principles to be applied in establishing the allowability of certain items involved in determining cost. These principles should apply irrespective of whether a particular item of cost is properly treated as direct cost or F&A cost. Failure to mention a particular item of cost is not intended to imply that it is either allowable or unallowable; rather, determination as to allowability in each case should be based on the treatment provided for similar or related items of cost. In case of a discrepancy between the provisions of a specific sponsored agreement and the provisions below, the agreement should govern.

- 1. Advertising and public relations costs.
  - a. The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs. Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.
  - b. The term public relations includes community relations and means those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the institution or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.
  - c. The only allowable advertising costs are those that are solely for:
    - (1) The recruitment of personnel required for the performance by the institution of obligations arising under a sponsored agreement (See also section J.42.b of this Appendix, Recruiting);
    - (2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a sponsored agreement;
    - (3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a sponsored agreement except when non-Federal entities are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or
    - (4) Other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the sponsored agreement.
  - d. The only allowable public relations costs are:
    - (1) Costs specifically required by the sponsored agreement;
    - (2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of sponsored agreements (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the sponsored agreement); or
    - (3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison necessary keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of Federal contract/grant awards, financial matters, etc.
  - e. Costs identified in subsections c and d if incurred for more than one sponsored agreement or for both sponsored work and other work of the institution, are allowable to the extent that the principles in sections D. ("Direct Costs") and E. ("F & A Costs") of this Appendix are observed.
  - f. Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:
    - (1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in subsections J.1.c, 1.d and 1.e of this Appendix.



(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the institution, including:

- (a) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;
- (b) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and
- (c) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the institution.

## 2. Advisory councils.

Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are allowable as a direct cost where authorized by the Federal awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to sponsored agreements.

## 3. Alcoholic beverages.

Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

## 4. Alumni/ae activities.

Costs incurred for, or in support of, alumni/ae activities and similar services are unallowable.

## 5. Audit costs and related services.

a. The costs of audits required by, and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" are allowable. Also see 31 U.S.C. 7505(b) and section \_\_.230 ("Audit Costs") of Circular A-133.

b. Other audit costs are allowable if included in an indirect cost rate proposal, or if specifically approved by the awarding agency as a direct cost to an award.

c. The cost of agreed-upon procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients who are exempted from A-133 under section \_\_.200(d) are allowable, subject to the conditions listed in A-133, section \_\_.230 (b)(2).

## 6. Bad Debt.

Bad debts, including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectible accounts and other claims, related collection costs, and related legal costs, are unallowable.

## 7. Bonding costs.

a. Bonding costs arise when the Federal Government requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the institution. They arise also in instances where the institution requires similar assurance. Included are such bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds.

b. Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms of the award are allowable.

c. Costs of bonding required by the institution in the general conduct of its operations are allowable to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

## 8. Commencement and convocation costs.

Costs incurred for commencements and convocations are unallowable, except as provided for in Section F.9 of this Appendix.

## 9. Communication costs.

Costs incurred for telephone services, local and long distance telephone calls, telegrams, postage, messenger, electronic or computer transmittal services and the like are allowable.

## 10. Compensation for personal services.

a. General. Compensation for personal services covers all amounts paid currently or accrued by the institution for services of employees rendered during the period of performance under sponsored agreements. Such amounts include salaries, wages, and fringe benefits (see subsection J.10.f of this Appendix). These costs are allowable to the extent that the total compensation to individual employees conforms to the established policies of the institution, consistently applied, and provided that the charges for work performed directly on sponsored agreements and for other work allocable as F&A costs are determined and supported as provided below. Charges to sponsored agreements may include reasonable amounts for activities contributing and intimately related to work under the agreements, such as delivering special lectures about specific aspects of the ongoing activity, writing reports and articles, participating in appropriate seminars, consulting with colleagues and graduate students, and attending meetings and conferences. Incidental work (that in excess of normal for the individual), for which supplemental compensation is paid by an institution under institutional policy, need not be included in the payroll distribution systems described below, provided such work and compensation are separately identified and documented in the financial management system of the



institution.

b. Payroll distribution.

(1) General Principles.

(a) The distribution of salaries and wages, whether treated as direct or F&A costs, will be based on payrolls documented in accordance with the generally accepted practices of colleges and universities. Institutions may include in a residual category all activities that are not directly charged to sponsored agreements, and that need not be distributed to more than one activity for purposes of identifying F&A costs and the functions to which they are allocable. The components of the residual category are not required to be separately documented.

(b) The apportionment of employees' salaries and wages which are chargeable to more than one sponsored agreement or other cost objective will be accomplished by methods which will—

(1) Be in accordance with Sections A.2 and C of this Appendix;

(2) Produce an equitable distribution of charges for employee's activities; and

(3) Distinguish the employees' direct activities from their F&A activities.

(c) In the use of any methods for apportioning salaries, it is recognized that, in an academic setting, teaching, research, service, and administration are often inextricably intermingled. A precise assessment of factors that contribute to costs is not always feasible, nor is it expected. Reliance, therefore, is placed on estimates in which a degree of tolerance is appropriate.

(d) There is no single best method for documenting the distribution of charges for personal services. Methods for apportioning salaries and wages, however, must meet the criteria specified in subsection J.10.b.(2) of this Appendix. Examples of acceptable methods are contained in subsection c. Other methods that meet the criteria specified in subsection J.10.b.(2) of this Appendix also shall be deemed acceptable, if a mutually satisfactory alternative agreement is reached.

(2) Criteria for Acceptable Methods.

(a) The payroll distribution system will be incorporated into the official records of the institution; reasonably reflect the activity for which the employee is compensated by the institution; and encompass both sponsored and all other activities on an integrated basis, but may include the use of subsidiary records. (Compensation for incidental work described in subsection a need not be included.)

(b) The method must recognize the principle of after-the-fact confirmation or determination so that costs distributed represent actual costs, unless a mutually satisfactory alternative agreement is reached. Direct cost activities and F&A cost activities may be confirmed by responsible persons with suitable means of verification that the work was performed. Confirmation by the employee is not a requirement for either direct or F&A cost activities if other responsible persons make appropriate confirmations.

(c) The payroll distribution system will allow confirmation of activity allocable to each sponsored agreement and each of the categories of activity needed to identify F&A costs and the functions to which they are allocable. The activities chargeable to F&A cost categories or the major functions of the institution for employees whose salaries must be apportioned (see subsection J.10.b.(1)(b) of this Appendix), if not initially identified as separate categories, may be subsequently distributed by any reasonable method mutually agreed to, including, but not limited to, suitably conducted surveys, statistical sampling procedures, or the application of negotiated fixed rates.

(d) Practices vary among institutions and within institutions as to the activity constituting a full workload. Therefore, the payroll distribution system may reflect categories of activities expressed as a percentage distribution of total activities.

(e) Direct and F&A charges may be made initially to sponsored agreements on the basis of estimates made before services are performed. When such estimates are used, significant changes in the corresponding work activity must be identified and entered into the payroll distribution system. Short-term (such as one or two months) fluctuation between workload categories need not be considered as long as the distribution of salaries and wages is reasonable over the longer term, such as an academic period.

(f) The system will provide for independent internal evaluations to ensure the system's effectiveness and compliance with the above standards.

(g) For systems which meet these standards, the institution will not be required to provide additional support or documentation for the effort actually performed.

c. Examples of Acceptable Methods for Payroll Distribution:

(1) Plan-Confirmation: Under this method, the distribution of salaries and wages of professorial and professional staff applicable to sponsored agreements is based on budgeted, planned, or assigned work activity, updated to reflect any significant changes in work distribution. A plan-confirmation system used for salaries and wages charged directly or indirectly to sponsored agreements will meet the following standards:

(a) A system of budgeted, planned, or assigned work activity will be incorporated into the official records of the institution and encompass both sponsored and all other activities on an integrated basis. The system may include the use of subsidiary records.

(b) The system will reasonably reflect only the activity for which the employee is compensated by the institution



(compensation for incidental work described in subsection a need not be included). Practices vary among institutions and within institutions as to the activity constituting a full workload. Hence, the system will reflect categories of activities expressed as a percentage distribution of total activities. (See Section H of this Appendix for treatment of F&A costs under the simplified method for small institutions.)

(c) The system will reflect activity applicable to each sponsored agreement and to each category needed to identify F&A costs and the functions to which they are allocable. The system may treat F&A cost activities initially within a residual category and subsequently determine them by alternate methods as discussed in subsection J.10.c.(2)(c) of this Appendix.

(d) The system will provide for modification of an individual's salary or salary distribution commensurate with a significant change in the employee's work activity. Short-term (such as one or two months) fluctuation between workload categories need not be considered as long as the distribution of salaries and wages is reasonable over the longer term, such as an academic period. Whenever it is apparent that a significant change in work activity that is directly or indirectly charged to sponsored agreements will occur or has occurred, the change will be documented over the signature of a responsible official and entered into the system.

(e) At least annually a statement will be signed by the employee, principal investigator, or responsible official(s) using suitable means of verification that the work was performed, stating that salaries and wages charged to sponsored agreements as direct charges, and to residual, F&A cost or other categories are reasonable in relation to work performed.

(f) The system will provide for independent internal evaluation to ensure the system's integrity and compliance with the above standards.

(g) In the use of this method, an institution shall not be required to provide additional support or documentation for the effort actually performed.

(2) After-the-fact Activity Records: Under this system the distribution of salaries and wages by the institution will be supported by activity reports as prescribed below.

(a) Activity reports will reflect the distribution of activity expended by employees covered by the system (compensation for incidental work as described in subsection a need not be included).

(b) These reports will reflect an after-the-fact reporting of the percentage distribution of activity of employees. Charges may be made initially on the basis of estimates made before the services are performed, provided that such charges are promptly adjusted if significant differences are indicated by activity records.

(c) Reports will reasonably reflect the activities for which employees are compensated by the institution. To confirm that the distribution of activity represents a reasonable estimate of the work performed by the employee during the period, the reports will be signed by the employee, principal investigator, or responsible official(s) using suitable means of verification that the work was performed.

(d) The system will reflect activity applicable to each sponsored agreement and to each category needed to identify F&A costs and the functions to which they are allocable. The system may treat F&A cost activities initially within a residual category and subsequently determine them by alternate methods as discussed in subsection J.10.b.(2)(c) of this Appendix.

(e) For professorial and professional staff, the reports will be prepared each academic term, but no less frequently than every six months. For other employees, unless alternate arrangements are agreed to, the reports will be prepared no less frequently than monthly and will coincide with one or more pay periods.

(f) Where the institution uses time cards or other forms of after-the-fact payroll documents as original documentation for payroll and payroll charges, such documents shall qualify as records for this purpose, provided that they meet the requirements in subsections J.10.c.(2)(a) through (e) of this Appendix.

(3) Multiple Confirmation Records: Under this system, the distribution of salaries and wages of professorial and professional staff will be supported by records which certify separately for direct and F&A cost activities as prescribed below.

(a) For employees covered by the system, there will be direct cost records to reflect the distribution of that activity expended which is to be allocable as direct cost to each sponsored agreement. There will also be F&A cost records to reflect the distribution of that activity to F&A costs. These records may be kept jointly or separately (but are to be certified separately, see below).

(b) Salary and wage charges may be made initially on the basis of estimates made before the services are performed, provided that such charges are promptly adjusted if significant differences occur.

(c) Institutional records will reasonably reflect only the activity for which employees are compensated by the institution (compensation for incidental work as described in subsection a need not be included).

(d) The system will reflect activity applicable to each sponsored agreement and to each category needed to identify F&A costs and the functions to which they are allocable.

(e) To confirm that distribution of activity represents a reasonable estimate of the work performed by the employee during the period, the record for each employee will include:

(1) The signature of the employee or of a person having direct knowledge of the work, confirming that the record of activities allocable as direct costs of each sponsored agreement is appropriate; and,



(2) The record of F&A costs will include the signature of responsible person(s) who use suitable means of verification that the work was performed and is consistent with the overall distribution of the employee's compensated activities. These signatures may all be on the same document.

(f) The reports will be prepared each academic term, but no less frequently than every six months.

(g) Where the institution uses time cards or other forms of after-the-fact payroll documents as original documentation for payroll and payroll charges, such documents shall qualify as records for this purpose, provided they meet the requirements in subsections J.10.c.(3)(a) through (f) of this Appendix.

d. Salary rates for faculty members.

(1) Salary rates for academic year. Charges for work performed on sponsored agreements by faculty members during the academic year will be based on the individual faculty member's regular compensation for the continuous period which, under the policy of the institution concerned, constitutes the basis of his salary. Charges for work performed on sponsored agreements during all or any portion of such period are allowable at the base salary rate. In no event will charges to sponsored agreements, irrespective of the basis of computation, exceed the proportionate share of the base salary for that period. This principle applies to all members of the faculty at an institution. Since intra-university consulting is assumed to be undertaken as a university obligation requiring no compensation in addition to full-time base salary, the principle also applies to faculty members who function as consultants or otherwise contribute to a sponsored agreement conducted by another faculty member of the same institution. However, in unusual cases where consultation is across departmental lines or involves a separate or remote operation, and the work performed by the consultant is in addition to his regular departmental load, any charges for such work representing extra compensation above the base salary are allowable provided that such consulting arrangements are specifically provided for in the agreement or approved in writing by the sponsoring agency.

(2) Periods outside the academic year.

(a) Except as otherwise specified for teaching activity in subsection J.10.d.(2)(b) of this Appendix, charges for work performed by faculty members on sponsored agreements during the summer months or other period not included in the base salary period will be determined for each faculty member at a rate not in excess of the base salary divided by the period to which the base salary relates, and will be limited to charges made in accordance with other parts of this section. The base salary period used in computing charges for work performed during the summer months will be the number of months covered by the faculty member's official academic year appointment.

(b) Charges for teaching activities performed by faculty members on sponsored agreements during the summer months or other periods not included in the base salary period will be based on the normal policy of the institution governing compensation to faculty members for teaching assignments during such periods.

(3) Part-time faculty. Charges for work performed on sponsored agreements by faculty members having only part-time appointments will be determined at a rate not in excess of that regularly paid for the part-time assignments. For example, an institution pays \$5000 to a faculty member for half-time teaching during the academic year. He devoted one-half of his remaining time to a sponsored agreement. Thus, his additional compensation, chargeable by the institution to the agreement, would be one-half of \$5000, or \$2500.

e. Noninstitutional professional activities. Unless an arrangement is specifically authorized by a Federal sponsoring agency, an institution must follow its institution-wide policies and practices concerning the permissible extent of professional services that can be provided outside the institution for noninstitutional compensation. Where such institution-wide policies do not exist or do not adequately define the permissible extent of consulting or other noninstitutional activities undertaken for extra outside pay, the Federal Government may require that the effort of professional staff working on sponsored agreements be allocated between institutional activities, and noninstitutional professional activities. If the sponsoring agency considers the extent of noninstitutional professional effort excessive, appropriate arrangements governing compensation will be negotiated on a case-by-case basis.

f. Fringe benefits.

(1) Fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as for annual leave, sick leave, military leave, and the like, are allowable, provided such costs are distributed to all institutional activities in proportion to the relative amount of time or effort actually devoted by the employees. See subsection J.11.f.(4) of this Appendix for treatment of sabbatical leave.

(2) Fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security, employee insurance, workmen's compensation insurance, tuition or remission of tuition for individual employees are allowable, provided such benefits are granted in accordance with established educational institutional policies, and are distributed to all institutional activities on an equitable basis. Tuition benefits for family members other than the employee are unallowable for fiscal years beginning after September 30, 1998. See Section J.45.b, Scholarships and student aid costs, of this Appendix for treatment of tuition remission provided to students.

(3) Rules for pension plan costs are as follows:

(a) Costs of the institution's pension plan which are incurred in accordance with the established policies of the institution are allowable, provided such policies meet the test of reasonableness, the methods of cost allocation are equitable for all activities, the amount of pension cost assigned to each fiscal year is determined in accordance with subsection (b), and the cost assigned to a given fiscal year is paid or funded for all plan participants within six months after the end of that year. However, increases to normal and past service pension costs caused by a delay in funding the actuarial liability beyond 30 days after each quarter of the year to which such costs are assignable are unallowable.

(b) The amount of pension cost assigned to each fiscal year shall be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Institutions may elect to follow the "Cost Accounting Standard for Composition and



## Measurement of Pension Cost" (48 Part 9904-412).

(c) Premiums paid for pension plan termination insurance pursuant to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) of 1974 (Pub. L. 93-406) are allowable. Late payment charges on such premiums are unallowable. Excise taxes on accumulated funding deficiencies and prohibited transactions of pension plan fiduciaries imposed under ERISA are also unallowable.

(4) Rules for sabbatical leave are as follows:

(a) Costs of leave of absence by employees for performance of graduate work or sabbatical study, travel, or research are allowable provided the institution has a uniform policy on sabbatical leave for persons engaged in instruction and persons engaged in research. Such costs will be allocated on an equitable basis among all related activities of the institution.

(b) Where sabbatical leave is included in fringe benefits for which a cost is determined for assessment as a direct charge, the aggregate amount of such assessments applicable to all work of the institution during the base period must be reasonable in relation to the institution's actual experience under its sabbatical leave policy.

(5) Fringe benefits may be assigned to cost objectives by identifying specific benefits to specific individual employees or by allocating on the basis of institution-wide salaries and wages of the employees receiving the benefits. When the allocation method is used, separate allocations must be made to selective groupings of employees, unless the institution demonstrates that costs in relationship to salaries and wages do not differ significantly for different groups of employees. Fringe benefits shall be treated in the same manner as the salaries and wages of the employees receiving the benefits. The benefits related to salaries and wages treated as direct costs shall also be treated as direct costs; the benefits related to salaries and wages treated as F&A costs shall be treated as F&A costs.

g. Institution-furnished automobiles.

That portion of the cost of institution-furnished automobiles that relates to personal use by employees (including transportation to and from work) is unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

h. Severance pay.

(1) Severance pay is compensation in addition to regular salary and wages which is paid by an institution to employees whose services are being terminated. Costs of severance pay are allowable only to the extent that such payments are required by law, by employer-employee agreement, by established policy that constitutes in effect an implied agreement on the institution's part, or by circumstances of the particular employment.

(2) Severance payments that are due to normal recurring turnover and which otherwise meet the conditions of subsection J.10.h.(1) of this Appendix may be allowed provided the actual costs of such severance payments are regarded as expenses applicable to the current fiscal year and are equitably distributed among the institution's activities during that period.

(3) Severance payments that are due to abnormal or mass terminations are of such conjectural nature that allowability must be determined on a case-by-case basis. However, the Federal Government recognizes its obligation to participate, to the extent of its fair share, in any specific payment.

(4) Costs incurred in excess of the institution's normal severance pay policy applicable to all persons employed by the institution upon termination of employment are unallowable.

11. Contingency provisions.

Contributions to a contingency reserve or any similar provision made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to time, intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable, except as noted in the cost principles in this Appendix regarding self-insurance, pensions, severance and post-retirement health costs.

12. Deans of faculty and graduate schools.

The salaries and expenses of deans of faculty and graduate schools, or their equivalents, and their staffs, are allowable.

13. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringement.

a. Definitions.

"Conviction," as used herein, means a judgment or conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon verdict or a plea, including a conviction due to a plea of nolo contendere.

"Costs," include, but are not limited to, administrative and clerical expenses; the cost of legal services, whether performed by in-house or private counsel; the costs of the services of accountants, consultants, or others retained by the institution to assist it; costs of employees, officers and trustees, and any similar costs incurred before, during, and after commencement of a judicial or administrative proceeding that bears a direct relationship to the proceedings.

"Fraud," as used herein, means—

(1) Acts of fraud or corruption or attempts to defraud the Federal Government or to corrupt its agents;

(2) Acts that constitute a cause for debarment or suspension (as specified in agency regulations), and

(3) Acts which violate the False Claims Act, 31 U.S.C., sections 3729-3731, or the Anti-kickback Act, 41 U.S.C.,



sections 51 and 54.

“Penalty,” does not include restitution, reimbursement, or compensatory damages.

“Proceeding,” includes an investigation.

b. (1) Except as otherwise described herein, costs incurred in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceeding (including filing of a false certification) commenced by the Federal Government, or a State, local or foreign government, are not allowable if the proceeding

(a) Relates to a violation of, or failure to comply with, a Federal, State, local or foreign statute or regulation, by the institution (including its agents and employees); and

(b) Results in any of the following dispositions:

(i) In a criminal proceeding, a conviction.

(ii) In a civil or administrative proceeding involving an allegation of fraud or similar misconduct, a determination of institutional liability.

(iii) In the case of any civil or administrative proceeding, the imposition of a monetary penalty.

(iv) A final decision by an appropriate Federal official to debar or suspend the institution, to rescind or void an award, or to terminate an award for default by reason of a violation or failure to comply with a law or regulation.

(v) A disposition by consent or compromise, if the action could have resulted in any of the dispositions described in subsections J.13.b.(1)(b)(i) through (iv) of this Appendix.

(2) If more than one proceeding involves the same alleged misconduct, the costs of all such proceedings shall be unallowable if any one of them results in one of the dispositions shown in subsection b.

c. If a proceeding referred to in subsection J.13.b. of this Appendix is commenced by the Federal Government and is resolved by consent or compromise pursuant to an agreement entered into by the institution and the Federal Government, then the costs incurred by the institution in connection with such proceedings that are otherwise not allowable under subsection b. may be allowed to the extent specifically provided in such agreement.

d. If a proceeding referred to in subsection J.13.b. of this Appendix is commenced by a State, local or foreign government, the authorized Federal official may allow the costs incurred by the institution for such proceedings, if such authorized official determines that the costs were incurred as a result of—

(1) A specific term or condition of a federally-sponsored agreement; or

(2) Specific written direction of an authorized official of the sponsoring agency.

e. Costs incurred in connection with proceedings described in subsection J.13.b of this Appendix, but which are not made unallowable by that subsection, may be allowed by the Federal Government, but only to the extent that:

(1) The costs are reasonable in relation to the activities required to deal with the proceeding and the underlying cause of action;

(2) Payment of the costs incurred, as allowable and allocable costs, is not prohibited by any other provision(s) of the sponsored agreement;

(3) The costs are not otherwise recovered from the Federal Government or a third party, either directly as a result of the proceeding or otherwise; and,

(4) The percentage of costs allowed does not exceed the percentage determined by an authorized Federal official to be appropriate considering the complexity of procurement litigation, generally accepted principles governing the award of legal fees in civil actions involving the United States as a party, and such other factors as may be appropriate. Such percentage shall not exceed 80 percent. However, if an agreement reached under subsection c has explicitly considered this 80 percent limitation and permitted a higher percentage, then the full amount of costs resulting from that agreement shall be allowable.

f. Costs incurred by the institution in connection with the defense of suits brought by its employees or ex-employees under section 2 of the Major Fraud Act of 1988 (Pub. L. 100-700), including the cost of all relief necessary to make such employee whole, where the institution was found liable or settled, are unallowable.

g. Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with defense against Federal Government claims or appeals, or the prosecution of claims or appeals against the Federal Government, are unallowable.

h. Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with patent infringement litigation, are unallowable unless otherwise provided for in the sponsored agreements.

i. Costs, which may be unallowable under this section, including directly associated costs, shall be segregated and accounted for by the institution separately. During the pendency of any proceeding covered by subsections J.13.b and f of this Appendix, the Federal Government shall generally withhold payment of such costs. However, if in the best interests of the Federal Government, the Federal Government may provide for conditional payment upon provision of adequate security, or other adequate assurance, and agreement by the institution to repay all unallowable costs, plus interest, if the costs are subsequently determined to be unallowable.



#### 14. Depreciation and use allowances.

a. Institutions may be compensated for the use of their buildings, capital improvements, and equipment, provided that they are used, needed in the institutions' activities, and properly allocable to sponsored agreements. Such compensation shall be made by computing either depreciation or use allowance. Use allowances are the means of providing such compensation when depreciation or other equivalent costs are not computed. The allocation for depreciation or use allowance shall be made in accordance with Section F.2 of this Appendix. Depreciation and use allowances are computed applying the following rules:

b. The computation of depreciation or use allowances shall be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. The acquisition cost of an asset donated to the institution by a third party shall be its fair market value at the time of the donation.

c. For this purpose, the acquisition cost will exclude:

(1) The cost of land;

(2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal Government, irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it is presently located; and

(3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the institution where law or agreement prohibits recovery.

d. In the use of the depreciation method, the following shall be observed:

(1) The period of useful service (useful life) established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment, technological developments in the particular area, and the renewal and replacement policies followed for the individual items or classes of assets involved.

(2) The depreciation method used to charge the cost of an asset (or group of assets) to accounting periods shall reflect the pattern of consumption of the asset during its useful life. In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater in the early portions than in the later portions of its useful life, the straight-line method shall be presumed to be the appropriate method. Depreciation methods once used shall not be changed unless approved in advance by the cognizant Federal agency. The depreciation methods used to calculate the depreciation amounts for F&A rate purposes shall be the same methods used by the institution for its financial statements. This requirement does not apply to those institutions ( e.g. , public institutions of higher education) which are not required to record depreciation by applicable generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

(3) Where the depreciation method is introduced to replace the use allowance method, depreciation shall be computed as if the asset had been depreciated over its entire life ( i.e. , from the date the asset was acquired and ready for use to the date of disposal or withdrawal from service). The aggregate amount of use allowances and depreciation attributable to an asset (including imputed depreciation applicable to periods prior to the conversion to the use allowance method as well as depreciation after the conversion) may be less than, and in no case, greater than the total acquisition cost of the asset.

(4) The entire building, including the shell and all components, may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life. A building may also be divided into multiple components. Each component item may then be depreciated over its estimated useful life. The building components shall be grouped into three general components of a building: building shell (including construction and design costs), building services systems ( e.g. , elevators, HVAC, plumbing system and heating and air-conditioning system) and fixed equipment ( e.g. , sterilizers, casework, fume hoods, cold rooms and glassware/washers). In exceptional cases, a Federal cognizant agency may authorize an institution to use more than these three groupings. When an institution elects to depreciate its buildings by its components, the same depreciation methods must be used for F&A purposes and financial statement purposes, as described in subsection d.2.

(5) Where the depreciation method is used for a particular class of assets, no depreciation may be allowed on any such assets that have outlived their depreciable lives. (See also subsection J.14.e.(3) of this Appendix)

e. Under the use allowance method, the following shall be observed:

(1) The use allowance for buildings and improvements (including improvements such as paved parking areas, fences, and sidewalks) shall be computed at an annual rate not exceeding two percent of acquisition cost. The use allowance for equipment shall be computed at an annual rate not exceeding six and two-thirds percent of acquisition cost. Use allowance recovery is limited to the acquisition cost of the assets. For donated assets, use allowance recovery is limited to the fair market value of the assets at the time of donation.

(2) In contrast to the depreciation method, the entire building must be treated as a single asset without separating its "shell" from other building components under the use allowance method. The entire building must be treated as a single asset, and the two-percent use allowance limitation must be applied to all parts of the building. The two-percent limitation, however, need not be applied to equipment or other assets that are merely attached or fastened to the building but not permanently fixed and are used as furnishings, decorations or for specialized purposes ( e.g. , dentist chairs and dental treatment units, counters, laboratory benches bolted to the floor, dishwashers, modular furniture, and carpeting). Such equipment and assets will be considered as not being permanently fixed to the building if they can be removed without the need for costly or extensive alterations or repairs to the building to make the space usable for other purposes. Equipment and assets that meet these criteria will be subject to the  $6\frac{2}{3}$  percent equipment use allowance.

(3) A reasonable use allowance may be negotiated for any assets that are considered to be fully depreciated, after taking into consideration the amount of depreciation previously charged to the Federal Government, the estimated



useful life remaining at the time of negotiation, the effect of any increased maintenance charges, decreased efficiency due to age, and any other factors pertinent to the utilization of the asset for the purpose contemplated.

(4) Notwithstanding subsection J.14.e.(3) of this Appendix, once an institution converts from one cost recovery methodology to another, acquisition costs not recovered may not be used in the calculation of the use allowance in subsection J.14.e.(3) of this Appendix.

f. Except as otherwise provided in subsections J.14.b. through e. of this Appendix, a combination of the depreciation and use allowance methods may not be used, in like circumstances, for a single class of assets ( e.g. , buildings, office equipment, and computer equipment).

g. Charges for use allowances or depreciation must be supported by adequate property records, and physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years to ensure that the assets exist and are usable, used, and needed. Statistical sampling techniques may be used in taking these inventories. In addition, when the depreciation method is used, adequate depreciation records showing the amount of depreciation taken each period must also be maintained.

h. This section applies to the largest college and university recipients of Federal research and development funds as displayed in Exhibit A, List of Colleges and Universities Subject to Section J.14.h of this Appendix.

(1) Institutions shall expend currently, or reserve for expenditure within the next five years, the portion of F&A cost payments made for depreciation or use allowances under sponsored research agreements, consistent with Section F.2 of this Appendix, to acquire or improve research facilities. This provision applies only to Federal agreements, which reimburse F&A costs at a full negotiated rate. These funds may only be used for liquidation of the principal of debts incurred to acquire assets that are used directly for organized research activities, or payments to acquire, repair, renovate, or improve buildings or equipment directly used for organized research. For buildings or equipment not exclusively used for organized research activity, only appropriately proportionate amounts will be considered to have been expended for research facilities.

(2) An assurance that an amount equal to the Federal reimbursements has been appropriately expended or reserved to acquire or improve research facilities shall be submitted as part of each F&A cost proposal submitted to the cognizant Federal agency which is based on costs incurred on or after October 1, 1991. This assurance will cover the cumulative amounts of funds received and expended during the period beginning after the period covered by the previous assurance and ending with the fiscal year on which the proposal is based. The assurance shall also cover any amounts reserved from a prior period in which the funds received exceeded the amounts expended.

#### 15. Donations and contributions.

##### a. Contributions or Donations rendered.

Contributions or donations, including cash, property, and services, made by the institution, regardless of the recipient, are unallowable.

##### b. Donated services received.

Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to an institution by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or F&A cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with 2 CFR Part 215.

##### c. Donated property.

The value of donated property is not reimbursable either as a direct or F&A cost, except that depreciation or use allowances on donated assets are permitted in accordance with Section J.14. The value of donated property may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements, in accordance with 2 CFR Part 215.

#### 16. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs and costs.

a. The costs of employee information publications, health or first-aid clinics and/or infirmaries, recreational activities, employee counseling services, and any other expenses incurred in accordance with the institution's established practice or custom for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee morale, and employee performance are allowable.

b. Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the institution. Income generated from any of these activities will be credited to the cost thereof unless such income has been irrevocably set over to employee welfare organizations.

c. Losses resulting from operating food services are allowable only if the institution's objective is to operate such services on a break-even basis. Losses sustained because of operating objectives other than the above are allowable only where the institution can demonstrate unusual circumstances, and with the approval of the cognizant Federal agency.

#### 17. Entertainment costs.

Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any costs directly associated with such costs (such as tickets to shows or sports events, meals, lodging, rentals, transportation, and gratuities) are unallowable.

#### 18. Equipment and other capital expenditures.



a. For purposes of this subsection, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Capital Expenditures" means expenditures for the acquisition cost of capital assets (equipment, buildings, and land), or expenditures to make improvements to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life. Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to put it in place. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in, or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the institution's regular accounting practices.

(2) "Equipment" means an article of nonexpendable, tangible personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the institution for financial statement purposes, or \$5000.

(3) "Special purpose equipment" means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers.

(4) "General purpose equipment" means equipment, which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles.

b. The following rules of allowability shall apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except where approved in advance by the awarding agency.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of \$5000 or more have the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to subsections J.18.b(1) through (3) of this Appendix, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate by and negotiated with the awarding agency.

(5) Equipment and other capital expenditures are unallowable as indirect costs. However, see section J.14 of this Appendix, Depreciation and use allowances, for rules on the allowability of use allowances or depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. Also, see section J.43 of this Appendix, Rental costs of buildings and equipment, for rules on the allowability of rental costs for land, buildings, and equipment.

(6) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable use allowances or depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the cognizant agency.

19. Fines and penalties.

Costs resulting from violations of, or failure of the institution to comply with, Federal, State, and local or foreign laws and regulations are unallowable, except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of the sponsored agreement, or instructions in writing from the authorized official of the sponsoring agency authorizing in advance such payments.

20. Fund raising and investment costs.

a. Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, endowment drives, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred solely to raise capital or obtain contributions, are unallowable.

b. Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred solely to enhance income from investments are unallowable.

c. Costs related to the physical custody and control of monies and securities are allowable.

21. Gain and losses on depreciable assets.

a. (1) Gains and losses on the sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property shall be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to the asset cost grouping(s) in which the property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate asset cost grouping(s) shall be the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(2) Gains and losses on the disposition of depreciable property shall not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(a) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under Section J.14 of this Appendix.

(b) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.

(c) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in Section J.25 of



this Appendix.

(d) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation.

b. Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in subsection a shall be excluded in computing sponsored agreement costs.

c. When assets acquired with Federal funds, in part or wholly, are disposed of, the distribution of the proceeds shall be made in accordance with 2 CFR Part 215, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-110).

## 22. Goods or services for personal use.

Costs of goods or services for personal use of the institution's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

## 23. Housing and personal living expenses.

a. Costs of housing ( e.g. , depreciation, maintenance, utilities, furnishings, rent, etc.), housing allowances and personal living expenses for/of the institution's officers are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

b. The term "officers" includes current and past officers.

## 24. Idle facilities and idle capacity.

a. As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

(1) "Facilities" means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the institution.

(2) "Idle facilities" means completely unused facilities that are excess to the institution's current needs.

(3) "Idle capacity" means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between:

(a) That which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays; and

(b) The extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) "Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity" means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g. , insurance, interest, property taxes and depreciation or use allowances.

b. The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet fluctuations in workload; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subsection, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

c. The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other sponsored agreements, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

## 25. Insurance and indemnification.

a. Costs of insurance required or approved, and maintained, pursuant to the sponsored agreement, are allowable.

b. Costs of other insurance maintained by the institution in connection with the general conduct of its activities, are allowable subject to the following limitations:

(1) Types and extent and cost of coverage must be in accordance with sound institutional practice;

(2) Costs of insurance or of any contributions to any reserve covering the risk of loss of or damage to federally-owned property are unallowable, except to the extent that the Federal Government has specifically required or approved such costs; and

(3) Costs of insurance on the lives of officers or trustees are unallowable except where such insurance is part of an employee plan which is not unduly restricted.

c. Contributions to a reserve for a self-insurance program are allowable, to the extent that the types of coverage, extent of coverage, and the rates and premiums would have been allowed had insurance been purchased to cover the risks.



d. Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (whether through purchased insurance or self-insurance) are unallowable, unless expressly provided for in the sponsored agreement, except that costs incurred because of losses not covered under existing deductible clauses for insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound management practice as well as minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage and disappearance of small hand tools, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

e. Indemnification includes securing the institution against liabilities to third persons and other losses not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal Government is obligated to indemnify the institution only to the extent expressly provided for in the sponsored agreement, except as provided in subsection J.25.d of this Appendix.

f. Insurance against defects. Costs of insurance with respect to any costs incurred to correct defects in the institution's materials or workmanship are unallowable.

g. Medical liability (malpractice) insurance is an allowable cost of research programs only to the extent that the research involves human subjects. Medical liability insurance costs shall be treated as a direct cost and shall be assigned to individual projects based on the manner in which the insurer allocates the risk to the population covered by the insurance.

## 26. Interest.

a. Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital, temporary use of endowment funds, or the use of the institution's own funds, however represented, are unallowable. However, interest on debt incurred after July 1, 1982 to acquire buildings, major reconstruction and remodeling, or the acquisition or fabrication of capital equipment costing \$10,000 or more, is allowable.

b. Interest on debt incurred after May 8, 1996 to acquire or replace capital assets (including construction, renovations, alterations, equipment, land, and capital assets acquired through capital leases) acquired after that date and used in support of sponsored agreements is allowable, subject to the following conditions:

(1) For facilities costing over \$500,000, the institution shall prepare, prior to acquisition or replacement of the facility, a lease-purchase analysis in accordance with the provisions of §§ 215.30 through 215.37 of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110), which shows that a financed purchase, including a capital lease is less costly to the institution than other operating lease alternatives, on a net present value basis. Discount rates used shall be equal to the institution's anticipated interest rates and shall be no higher than the fair market rate available to the institution from an unrelated ("arm's length") third-party. The lease-purchase analysis shall include a comparison of the net present value of the projected total cost comparisons of both alternatives over the period the asset is expected to be used by the institution. The cost comparisons associated with purchasing the facility shall include the estimated purchase price, anticipated operating and maintenance costs (including property taxes, if applicable) not included in the debt financing, less any estimated asset salvage value at the end of the defined period. The cost comparison for a capital lease shall include the estimated total lease payments, any estimated bargain purchase option, operating and maintenance costs, and taxes not included in the capital leasing arrangement, less any estimated credits due under the lease at the end of the defined period. Projected operating lease costs shall be based on the anticipated cost of leasing comparable facilities at fair market rates under rental agreements that would be renewed or reestablished over the period defined above, and any expected maintenance costs and allowable property taxes to be borne by the institution directly or as part of the lease arrangement.

(2) The actual interest cost claimed is predicated upon interest rates that are no higher than the fair market rate available to the institution from an unrelated (arm's length) third party.

(3) Investment earnings, including interest income on bond or loan principal, pending payment of the construction or acquisition costs, are used to offset allowable interest cost. Arbitrage earnings reportable to the Internal Revenue Service are not required to be offset against allowable interest costs.

(4) Reimbursements are limited to the least costly alternative based on the total cost analysis required under subsection J.26.b.(1) of this Appendix. For example, if an operating lease is determined to be less costly than purchasing through debt financing, then reimbursement is limited to the amount determined if leasing had been used. In all cases where a lease-purchase analysis is required to be performed, Federal reimbursement shall be based upon the least expensive alternative.

(5) For debt arrangements over \$1 million, unless the institution makes an initial equity contribution to the asset purchase of 25 percent or more, the institution shall reduce claims for interest expense by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow, which is to be calculated as follows. Annually, non-Federal entities shall prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash flows that includes inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. Inflows consist of depreciation expense, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest cost. For cash flow calculations, the annual inflow figures shall be divided by the number of months in the year ( *i.e.* , usually 12) that the building is in service for monthly amounts. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro rata share attributable to the unallowable costs of land) and interest payments. Where cumulative inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest shall be calculated on the excess inflows for that period and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest cost. The rate of interest to be used to compute earnings on excess cash flows shall be the three-month Treasury bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(6) Substantial relocation of federally-sponsored activities from a facility financed by indebtedness, the cost of which was funded in whole or part through Federal reimbursements, to another facility prior to the expiration of a period of 20 years requires notice to the cognizant agency. The extent of the relocation, the amount of the Federal participation in the financing, and the depreciation and interest charged to date may require negotiation and/or downward adjustments of replacement space charged to Federal programs in the future.



(7) The allowable costs to acquire facilities and equipment are limited to a fair market value available to the institution from an unrelated (arm's length) third party.

c. Institutions are also subject to the following conditions:

(1) Interest on debt incurred to finance or refinance assets re-acquired after the applicable effective dates stipulated above is unallowable.

(2) Interest attributable to fully depreciated assets is unallowable.

d. The following definitions are to be used for purposes of this section:

(1) "Re-acquired" assets means assets held by the institution prior to the applicable effective dates stipulated above that have again come to be held by the institution, whether through repurchase or refinancing. It does not include assets acquired to replace older assets.

(2) "Initial equity contribution" means the amount or value of contributions made by non-Federal entities for the acquisition of the asset prior to occupancy of facilities.

(3) "Asset costs" means the capitalizable costs of an asset, including construction costs, acquisition costs, and other such costs capitalized in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).

27. Labor relations costs.

Costs incurred in maintaining satisfactory relations between the institution and its employees, including costs of labor management committees, employees' publications, and other related activities, are allowable.

28. Lobbying.

Reference is made to the common rule published at 7 CFR part 3018, 10 CFR parts 600 and 601, 12 CFR part 411, 13 CFR part 146, 14 CFR part 1271, 15 CFR part 28, 18 CFR part 1315, 22 CFR parts 138, 227, 311, 519 and 712, 24 CFR part 87, 28 CFR part 69, 29 CFR part 93, 31 CFR part 21, 32 CFR part 282, 34 CFR part 82, 38 CFR part 85, 40 CFR part 34, 41 CFR part 105-69, 43 CFR part 18, 44 CFR part 18, 45 CFR parts 93, 604, 1158, 1168 and 1230, and 49 CFR part 20, and OMB's governmentwide guidance, amendments to OMB's governmentwide guidance, and OMB's clarification notices published at 54 FR 52306 (12/20/89), 61 FR 1412 (1/19/96), 55 FR 24540 (6/15/90) and 57 FR 1772 (1/15/92), respectively. In addition, the following restrictions shall apply:

a. Notwithstanding other provisions of this Appendix, costs associated with the following activities are unallowable:

(1) Attempts to influence the outcomes of any Federal, State, or local election, referendum, initiative, or similar procedure, through in kind or cash contributions, endorsements, publicity, or similar activity;

(2) Establishing, administering, contributing to, or paying the expenses of a political party, campaign, political action committee, or other organization established for the purpose of influencing the outcomes of elections;

(3) Any attempt to influence The introduction of Federal or State legislation; The enactment or modification of any pending Federal or State legislation through communication with any member or employee of the Congress or State legislature, including efforts to influence State or local officials to engage in similar lobbying activity; or any government official or employee in connection with a decision to sign or veto enrolled legislation;

(4) Any attempt to influence The introduction of Federal or State legislation; or The enactment or modification of any pending Federal or State legislation by preparing, distributing, or using publicity or propaganda, or by urging members of the general public, or any segment thereof, to contribute to or participate in any mass demonstration, march, rally, fund raising drive, lobbying campaign or letter writing or telephone campaign; or

(5) Legislative liaison activities, including attendance at legislative sessions or committee hearings, gathering information regarding legislation, and analyzing the effect of legislation, when such activities are carried on in support of or in knowing preparation for an effort to engage in unallowable lobbying.

b. The following activities are excepted from the coverage of subsection J.28.a of this Appendix:

(1) Technical and factual presentations on topics directly related to the performance of a grant, contract, or other agreement (through hearing testimony, statements, or letters to the Congress or a State legislature, or subdivision, member, or cognizant staff member thereof), in response to a documented request (including a Congressional Record notice requesting testimony or statements for the record at a regularly scheduled hearing) made by the recipient member, legislative body or subdivision, or a cognizant staff member thereof, provided such information is readily obtainable and can be readily put in deliverable form, and further provided that costs under this section for travel, lodging or meals are unallowable unless incurred to offer testimony at a regularly scheduled Congressional hearing pursuant to a written request for such presentation made by the Chairman or Ranking Minority Member of the Committee or Subcommittee conducting such hearings;

(2) Any lobbying made unallowable by subsection J.28.a.(3) of this Appendix to influence State legislation in order to directly reduce the cost, or to avoid material impairment of the institution's authority to perform the grant, contract, or other agreement; or

(3) Any activity specifically authorized by statute to be undertaken with funds from the grant, contract, or other agreement.

c. When an institution seeks reimbursement for F&A costs, total lobbying costs shall be separately identified in the F&A cost rate proposal, and thereafter treated as other unallowable activity costs in accordance with the procedures of



Section B.1.d of this Appendix.

d. Institutions shall submit as part of their annual F&A cost rate proposal a certification that the requirements and standards of this section have been complied with.

e. Institutions shall maintain adequate records to demonstrate that the determination of costs as being allowable or unallowable pursuant to this section complies with the requirements of this Appendix.

f. Time logs, calendars, or similar records shall not be required to be created for purposes of complying with this section during any particular calendar month when:

(1) the employee engages in lobbying (as defined in subsections J.28.a and b of this Appendix) 25 percent or less of the employee's compensated hours of employment during that calendar month; and

(2) within the preceding five-year period, the institution has not materially misstated allowable or unallowable costs of any nature, including legislative lobbying costs. When conditions in subsections J.28.f.(1) and (2) of this Appendix are met, institutions are not required to establish records to support the allowability of claimed costs in addition to records already required or maintained. Also, when conditions in subsections J.28.f. (1) and (2) of this Appendix are met, the absence of time logs, calendars, or similar records will not serve as a basis for disallowing costs by contesting estimates of lobbying time spent by employees during a calendar month.

g. Agencies shall establish procedures for resolving in advance, in consultation with OMB, any significant questions or disagreements concerning the interpretation or application of this section. Any such advance resolutions shall be binding in any subsequent settlements, audits, or investigations with respect to that grant or contract for purposes of interpretation of this Appendix, provided, however, that this shall not be construed to prevent a contractor or grantee from contesting the lawfulness of such a determination.

h. Executive lobbying costs.

Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the Executive Branch of the Federal Government to give consideration or to act regarding a sponsored agreement or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a federally-sponsored agreement or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

29. Losses on other sponsored agreements or contracts.

Any excess of costs over income under any other sponsored agreement or contract of any nature is unallowable. This includes, but is not limited to, the institution's contributed portion by reason of cost-sharing agreements or any under-recoveries through negotiation of flat amounts for F&A costs.

30. Maintenance and repair costs.

Costs incurred for necessary maintenance, repair, or upkeep of buildings and equipment (including Federal property unless otherwise provided for) which neither add to the permanent value of the property nor appreciably prolong its intended life, but keep it in an efficient operating condition, are allowable. Costs incurred for improvements which add to the permanent value of the buildings and equipment or appreciably prolong their intended life shall be treated as capital expenditures (see section J.18.a(1) of this Appendix).

31. Material and supplies costs.

a. Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a sponsored agreement are allowable.

b. Purchased materials and supplies shall be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms should be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.

c. Only materials and supplies actually used for the performance of a sponsored agreement may be charged as direct costs.

d. Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the sponsored agreement, such materials will be used without charge.

32. Meetings and Conferences.

Costs of meetings and conferences, the primary purpose of which is the dissemination of technical information, are allowable. This includes costs of meals, transportation, rental of facilities, speakers' fees, and other items incidental to such meetings or conferences. But see section J.17 of this Appendix, Entertainment costs.

33. Memberships, subscriptions and professional activity costs.

a. Costs of the institution's membership in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

b. Costs of the institution's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

c. Costs of membership in any civic or community organization are unallowable.

d. Costs of membership in any country club or social or dining club or organization are unallowable.



#### 34. Patent costs.

##### a. The following costs relating to patent and copyright matters are allowable:

(1) Cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the sponsored agreement and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures;

(2) Cost of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal Government to be conveyed to the Federal Government; and

(3) General counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee agreements (but see sections J.37, Professional service costs, and J.44, Royalties and other costs for use of patents, of this Appendix).

##### b. The following costs related to patent and copyright matter are unallowable:

(1) Cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make disclosures not required by the award

(2) Costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application, or any United States patent application, where the sponsored agreement award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal Government, (but see section J.44, Royalties and other costs for use of patents, of this Appendix).

#### 35. Plant and homeland security costs.

Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for routine and homeland security to protect facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; contractual security services; consultants; etc. Capital expenditures for homeland and plant security purposes are subject to section J.18, Equipment and other capital expenditures, of this Appendix.

36. Preagreement costs. Costs incurred prior to the effective date of the sponsored agreement, whether or not they would have been allowable thereunder if incurred after such date, are unallowable unless approved by the sponsoring agency.

#### 37. Professional service costs.

a. Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the institution, are allowable, subject to subparagraphs J.37.b and c of this Appendix when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government. In addition, legal and related services are limited under section J.13 of this Appendix.

b. In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

(1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.

(2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the institution's capability in the particular area.

(3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to sponsored agreements.

(4) The impact on the institution's business ( *i.e.* , what new problems have arisen).

(5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the institution's total business is such as to influence the institution in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal grants and contracts.

(6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.

(7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-sponsored agreements.

(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service ( *e.g.* , description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

c. In addition to the factors in subparagraph J.37.b of this Appendix, retainer fees to be allowable must be supported by evidence of bona fide services available or rendered.

#### 38. Proposal costs.

Proposal costs are the costs of preparing bids or proposals on potential federally and non-federally-funded sponsored agreements or projects, including the development of data necessary to support the institution's bids or proposals. Proposal costs of the current accounting period of both successful and unsuccessful bids and proposals normally should be treated as F&A costs and allocated currently to all activities of the institution, and no proposal costs of past accounting periods will be allocable to the current period. However, the institution's established practices may be to treat proposal costs by some other recognized method. Regardless of the method used, the results obtained may be accepted only if found to be reasonable and equitable.

#### 39. Publication and printing costs.



a. Publication costs include the costs of printing (including the processes of composition, plate-making, press work, binding, and the end products produced by such processes), distribution, promotion, mailing, and general handling. Publication costs also include page charges in professional publications.

b. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the institution.

c. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs where:

(1) The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government: and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors.

40. Rearrangement and alteration costs.

Costs incurred for ordinary or normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable. Special arrangement and alteration costs incurred specifically for the project are allowable with the prior approval of the sponsoring agency.

41. Reconversion costs.

Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the institution's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of a sponsored agreement, fair wear and tear excepted, are allowable.

42. Recruiting costs.

a. Subject to subsections J.42.b, c, and d of this Appendix, and provided that the size of the staff recruited and maintained is in keeping with workload requirements, costs of "help wanted" advertising, operating costs of an employment office necessary to secure and maintain an adequate staff, costs of operating an aptitude and educational testing program, travel costs of employees while engaged in recruiting personnel, travel costs of applicants for interviews for prospective employment, and relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of new employees, are allowable to the extent that such costs are incurred pursuant to a well-managed recruitment program. Where the institution uses employment agencies, costs not in excess of standard commercial rates for such services are allowable.

b. In publications, costs of help wanted advertising that includes color, includes advertising material for other than recruitment purposes, or is excessive in size (taking into consideration recruitment purposes for which intended and normal institutional practices in this respect), are unallowable.

c. Costs of help wanted advertising, special emoluments, fringe benefits, and salary allowances incurred to attract professional personnel from other institutions that do not meet the test of reasonableness or do not conform with the established practices of the institution, are unallowable.

d. Where relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of a new employee have been allowed either as an allocable direct or F&A cost, and the newly hired employee resigns for reasons within his control within 12 months after hire, the institution will be required to refund or credit such relocation costs to the Federal Government.

43. Rental costs of buildings and equipment.

a. Subject to the limitations described in subsections b. through d. of this section, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and, the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

b. Rental costs under "sale and lease back" arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the institution continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation or use allowance, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

c. Rental costs under "less-than-arms-length" leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subsection J.43.b of this Appendix) that would be allowed had title to the property vested in the institution. For this purpose, a less-than-arms-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between—

(1) Divisions of an institution;

(2) Non-Federal entities under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and

(3) An institution and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the institution or his immediate family, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, an institution may establish a separate corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the institution.

d. Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subsection J.43.b of this Appendix) that would be allowed had the institution purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement 13, Accounting for Leases, shall be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in section J.26 of this Appendix. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the institution purchased the facility.



#### 44. Royalties and other costs for use of patents.

a. Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the award are allowable unless:

- (1) The Federal Government has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.
- (2) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.
- (3) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.
- (4) The patent or copyright is expired.

b. Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have been arrived at as a result of less-than-arm's-length bargaining, e.g.:

- (1) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the institution.
- (2) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a sponsored agreement award would be made.
- (3) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after an award is made to an institution.

c. In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the institution, the amount of royalty allowed should not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the institution retained title thereto.

#### 45. Scholarships and student aid costs.

a. Costs of scholarships, fellowships, and other programs of student aid are allowable only when the purpose of the sponsored agreement is to provide training to selected participants and the charge is approved by the sponsoring agency. However, tuition remission and other forms of compensation paid as, or in lieu of, wages to students performing necessary work are allowable provided that—

- (1) The individual is conducting activities necessary to the sponsored agreement;
- (2) Tuition remission and other support are provided in accordance with established educational institutional policy and consistently provided in a like manner to students in return for similar activities conducted in nonsponsored as well as sponsored activities; and
- (3) During the academic period, the student is enrolled in an advanced degree program at the institution or affiliated institution and the activities of the student in relation to the Federally-sponsored research project are related to the degree program;
- (4) The tuition or other payments are reasonable compensation for the work performed and are conditioned explicitly upon the performance of necessary work; and
- (5) It is the institution's practice to similarly compensate students in nonsponsored as well as sponsored activities.

b. Charges for tuition remission and other forms of compensation paid to students as, or in lieu of, salaries and wages shall be subject to the reporting requirements stipulated in Section J.10 of this Appendix, and shall be treated as direct or F&A cost in accordance with the actual work being performed. Tuition remission may be charged on an average rate basis.

#### 46. Selling and marketing.

Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the institution are unallowable (unless allowed under subsection J.1 of this Appendix as allowable public relations costs or under subsection J.38 of this Appendix as allowable proposal costs).

#### 47. Specialized service facilities.

a. The costs of services provided by highly complex or specialized facilities operated by the institution, such as computers, wind tunnels, and reactors are allowable, provided the charges for the services meet the conditions of either subsection J.47.b. or 47.c. of this Appendix and, in addition, take into account any items of income or Federal financing that qualify as applicable credits under subsection C.5. of this Appendix.

b. The costs of such services, when material, must be charged directly to applicable awards based on actual usage of the services on the basis of a schedule of rates or established methodology that:

- (1) Does not discriminate against federally-supported activities of the institution, including usage by the institution for internal purposes, and
- (2) Is designed to recover only the aggregate costs of the services. The costs of each service shall consist normally of both its direct costs and its allocable share of all F&A costs. Rates shall be adjusted at least biennially, and shall take into consideration over/under applied costs of the previous period(s).

c. Where the costs incurred for a service are not material, they may be allocated as F&A costs.

d. Under some extraordinary circumstances, where it is in the best interest of the Federal Government and the institution to establish alternative costing arrangements, such arrangements may be worked out with the cognizant



Federal agency.

#### 48. Student activity costs.

Costs incurred for intramural activities, student publications, student clubs, and other student activities, are unallowable, unless specifically provided for in the sponsored agreements.

#### 49. Taxes.

a. In general, taxes which the institution is required to pay and which are paid or accrued in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles are allowable. Payments made to local governments in lieu of taxes which are commensurate with the local government services received are allowable, except for—

(1) Taxes from which exemptions are available to the institution directly or which are available to the institution based on an exemption afforded the Federal Government, and in the latter case when the sponsoring agency makes available the necessary exemption certificates; and

(2) Special assessments on land which represent capital improvements.

b. Any refund of taxes, interest, or penalties, and any payment to the institution of interest thereon, attributable to taxes, interest, or penalties which were allowed as sponsored agreement costs, will be credited or paid to the Federal Government in the manner directed by the Federal Government. However, any interest actually paid or credited to an institution incident to a refund of tax, interest, and penalty will be paid or credited to the Federal Government only to the extent that such interest accrued over the period during which the institution has been reimbursed by the Federal Government for the taxes, interest, and penalties.

#### 50. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements.

Termination of awards generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the sponsored agreement not been terminated. Cost principles covering these items are set forth below. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this Appendix in termination situations.

a. The cost of items reasonably usable on the institution's other work shall not be allowable unless the institution submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the institution, the awarding agency should consider the institution's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity. Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the institution shall be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the institution's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the sponsored agreement shall be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

b. If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the institution, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this Appendix, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the institution to discontinue such costs shall be unallowable.

c. Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and equipment is generally allowable if:

(1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the institution,

(2) The interest of the Federal Government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the awarding agency, and

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated sponsored agreement is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the sponsored agreement bears to the entire terminated sponsored agreement award and other sponsored agreements for which the special tooling, machinery, or equipment was acquired.

d. Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated sponsored agreement less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) The amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the sponsored agreement and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) The institution makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the sponsored agreement, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

e. Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(a) The preparation and presentation to the awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the sponsored agreement, unless the termination is for default (see § 215.61 of 2 CFR Part 215); and

(b) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal



Government or acquired or produced for the sponsored agreement, except when institutions are reimbursed for disposals at a predetermined amount in accordance with § 215.32 through § 215.37 of 2 CFR Part 215.

(3) F&A costs related to salaries and wages incurred as settlement expenses in subsections J.50.b.(1) and (2) of this Appendix. Normally, such F&A costs shall be limited to fringe benefits, occupancy cost, and immediate supervision.

f. Claims under subawards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the sponsored agreement and to other work of the institution, are generally allowable.

g. An appropriate share of the institution's F&A costs may be allocated to the amount of settlements with subcontractors and/or subgrantees, provided that the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in section E, F&A costs. The F&A costs so allocated shall exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

#### 51. Training costs.

The cost of training provided for employee development is allowable.

#### 52. Transportation costs.

Costs incurred for freight, express, cartage, postage, and other transportation services relating either to goods purchased, in process, or delivered, are allowable. When such costs can readily be identified with the items involved, they may be charged directly as transportation costs or added to the cost of such items. Where identification with the materials received cannot readily be made, inbound transportation cost may be charged to the appropriate F&A cost accounts if the institution follows a consistent, equitable procedure in this respect. Outbound freight, if reimbursable under the terms of the sponsored agreement, should be treated as a direct cost.

#### 53. Travel costs.

##### a. General.

Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the institution. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the institution's non-federally-sponsored activities.

##### b. Lodging and subsistence.

Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, shall be considered reasonable and allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the institution in its regular operations as the result of the institution's written travel policy. In the absence of an acceptable, written institution policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under subchapter I of Chapter 57, Title 5, United States Code ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter shall apply to travel under sponsored agreements (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).

##### c. Commercial air travel.

(1) Airfare costs in excess of the customary standard commercial airfare (coach or equivalent), Federal Government contract airfare (where authorized and available), or the lowest commercial discount airfare are unallowable except when such accommodations would:

- (a) Require circuitous routing;
- (b) Require travel during unreasonable hours;
- (c) Excessively prolong travel;
- (d) Result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or

(e) Offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The institution must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal Government will generally not question an institution's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the institution can demonstrate either of the following:

- (a) That such airfare was not available in the specific case; or
- (b) That it is the institution's overall practice to make routine use of such airfare.

##### d. Air travel by other than commercial carrier.

Costs of travel by institution-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of allowable commercial air travel, as provided for in subsection J.53.c. of this Appendix, is unallowable.

#### 54. Trustees.



Travel and subsistence costs of trustees (or directors) are allowable. The costs are subject to restrictions regarding lodging, subsistence and air travel costs provided in Section J.53 of this Appendix.

K. CERTIFICATION OF CHARGES

1. To assure that expenditures for sponsored agreements are proper and in accordance with the agreement documents and approved project budgets, the annual and/or final fiscal reports or vouchers requesting payment under the agreements will include a certification, signed by an authorized official of the university, which reads essentially as follows: "I certify that all expenditures reported (or payment requested) are for appropriate purposes and in accordance with the provisions of the application and award documents."

2. Certification of F&A costs.

a. Policy.

(1) No proposal to establish F&A cost rates shall be acceptable unless such costs have been certified by the educational institution using the Certificate of F&A Costs set forth in subsection K.2.b of this Appendix. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the institution by an individual at a level no lower than vice president or chief financial officer of the institution that submits the proposal.

(2) No F&A cost rate shall be binding upon the Federal Government if the most recent required proposal from the institution has not been certified. Where it is necessary to establish F&A cost rates, and the institution has not submitted a certified proposal for establishing such rates in accordance with the requirements of this section, the Federal Government shall unilaterally establish such rates. Such rates may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant Federal agency and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When F&A cost rates are unilaterally established by the Federal Government because of failure of the institution to submit a certified proposal for establishing such rates in accordance with this section, the rates established will be set at a level low enough to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.

b. Certificate. The certificate required by this section shall be in the following form:

Certificate of F&A Costs

This is to certify that to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) I have reviewed the F&A cost proposal submitted herewith;

(2) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final F&A costs rate for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal agreement(s) to which they apply and with the cost principles applicable to those agreements.

(3) This proposal does not include any costs which are unallowable under applicable cost principles such as (without limitation): advertising and public relations costs, contributions and donations, entertainment costs, fines and penalties, lobbying costs, and defense of fraud proceedings; and

(4) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal agreements on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements.

For educational institutions that are required to file a DS-2 in accordance with Section C.14 of this Appendix, the following statement shall be added to the "Certificate of F&A Costs":

(5) The rate proposal is prepared using the same cost accounting practices that are disclosed in the DS-2, including its amendments and revisions, filed with and approved by the cognizant agency.

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Institution: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Official: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Execution: \_\_\_\_\_

EXHIBIT A—LIST OF COLLEGES AND UNIVERSITIES SUBJECT TO SECTION J.12.H OF THIS APPENDIX

- 1. Johns Hopkins University
- 2. Stanford University
- 3. Massachusetts Institute of Technology
- 4. University of Washington
- 5. University of California—Los Angeles
- 6. University of Michigan
- 7. University of California—San Diego



- 8. University of California—San Francisco
- 9. University of Wisconsin—Madison
- 10. Columbia University
- 11. Yale University
- 12. Harvard University
- 13. Cornell University
- 14. University of Pennsylvania
- 15. University of California—Berkeley
- 16. University of Minnesota
- 17. Pennsylvania State University
- 18. University of Southern California
- 19. Duke University
- 20. Washington University
- 21. University of Colorado
- 22. University of Illinois—Urbana
- 23. University of Rochester
- 24. University of North Carolina—Chapel Hill
- 25. University of Pittsburgh
- 26. University of Chicago
- 27. University of Texas—Austin
- 28. University of Arizona
- 29. New York University
- 30. University of Iowa
- 31. Ohio State University
- 32. University of Alabama—Birmingham
- 33. Case Western Reserve
- 34. Baylor College of Medicine
- 35. California Institute of Technology
- 36. Yeshiva University
- 37. University of Massachusetts
- 38. Vanderbilt University
- 39. Purdue University
- 40. University of Utah
- 41. Georgia Institute of Technology
- 42. University of Maryland—College Park
- 43. University of Miami
- 44. University of California—Davis
- 45. Boston University
- 46. University of Florida
- 47. Carnegie-Mellon University
- 48. Northwestern University
- 49. Indiana University



- 50. Michigan State University
- 51. University of Virginia
- 52. University of Texas—SW Medical Center
- 53. University of California—Irvine
- 54. Princeton University
- 55. Tulane University of Louisiana
- 56. Emory University
- 57. University of Georgia
- 58. Texas A&M University—all campuses
- 59. New Mexico State University
- 60. North Carolina State University—Raleigh
- 61. University of Illinois—Chicago
- 62. Utah State University
- 63. Virginia Commonwealth University
- 64. Oregon State University
- 65. SUNY-Stony Brook
- 66. University of Cincinnati
- 67. CUNY-Mount Sinai School of Medicine
- 68. University of Connecticut
- 69. Louisiana State University
- 70. Tufts University
- 71. University of California—Santa Barbara
- 72. University of Hawaii—Manoa
- 73. Rutgers State University of New Jersey
- 74. Colorado State University
- 75. Rockefeller University
- 76. University of Maryland—Baltimore
- 77. Virginia Polytechnic Institute & State University
- 78. SUNY—Buffalo
- 79. Brown University
- 80. University of Medicine & Dentistry of New Jersey
- 81. University of Texas—Health Science Center San Antonio
- 82. University of Vermont
- 83. University of Texas—Health Science Center Houston
- 84. Florida State University
- 85. University of Texas—MD Anderson Cancer Center
- 86. University of Kentucky
- 87. Wake Forest University
- 88. Wayne State University
- 89. Iowa State University of Science & Technology
- 90. University of New Mexico
- 91. Georgetown University



- 92. Dartmouth College
- 93. University of Kansas
- 94. Oregon Health Sciences University
- 95. University of Texas—Medical Branch-Galveston
- 96. University of Missouri—Columbia
- 97. Temple University
- 98. George Washington University
- 99. University of Dayton

EXHIBIT B—LISTING OF INSTITUTIONS THAT ARE ELIGIBLE FOR THE UTILITY COST ADJUSTMENT

- 1. Baylor University
- 2. Boston College
- 3. Boston University
- 4. California Institute of Technology
- 5. Carnegie-Mellon University
- 6. Case Western University
- 7. Columbia University
- 8. Cornell University (Endowed)
- 9. Cornell University (Statutory)
- 10. Cornell University (Medical)
- 11. Dayton University
- 12. Emory University
- 13. George Washington University (Medical)
- 14. Georgetown University
- 15. Harvard Medical School
- 16. Harvard University (Main Campus)
- 17. Harvard University (School of Public Health)
- 18. Johns Hopkins University
- 19. Massachusetts Institute of Technology
- 20. Medical University of South Carolina
- 21. Mount Sinai School of Medicine
- 22. New York University (except New York University Medical Center)
- 23. New York University Medical Center
- 24. North Carolina State University
- 25. Northeastern University
- 26. Northwestern University
- 27. Oregon Health Sciences University
- 28. Oregon State University
- 29. Rice University
- 30. Rockefeller University
- 31. Stanford University
- 32. Tufts University
- 33. Tulane University



- 34. Vanderbilt University
- 35. Virginia Commonwealth University
- 36. Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University
- 37. University of Arizona
- 38. University of CA, Berkeley
- 39. University of CA, Irvine
- 40. University of CA, Los Angeles
- 41. University of CA, San Diego
- 42. University of CA, San Francisco
- 43. University of Chicago
- 44. University of Cincinnati
- 45. University of Colorado, Health Sciences Center
- 46. University of Connecticut, Health Sciences Center
- 47. University of Health Science and The Chicago Medical School
- 48. University of Illinois, Urbana
- 49. University of Massachusetts, Medical Center
- 50. University of Medicine & Dentistry of New Jersey
- 51. University of Michigan
- 52. University of Pennsylvania
- 53. University of Pittsburgh
- 54. University of Rochester
- 55. University of Southern California
- 56. University of Tennessee, Knoxville
- 57. University of Texas, Galveston
- 58. University of Texas, Austin
- 60. University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
- 61. University of Virginia
- 62. University of Vermont & State Agriculture College
- 63. University of Washington
- 64. Washington University
- 65. Yale University
- 66. Yeshiva University

EXHIBIT C—EXAMPLES OF “MAJOR PROJECT” WHERE DIRECT CHARGING OF ADMINISTRATIVE OR CLERICAL STAFF SALARIES MAY BE APPROPRIATE

- 1. As used in paragraph F.6.b.(2) of this Appendix, below are examples of “major projects”:
  - a. Large, complex programs such as General Clinical Research Centers, Primate Centers, Program Projects, environmental research centers, engineering research centers, and other grants and contracts that entail assembling and managing teams of investigators from a number of institutions.
  - b. Projects which involve extensive data accumulation, analysis and entry, surveying, tabulation, cataloging, searching literature, and reporting (such as epidemiological studies, clinical trials, and retrospective clinical records studies).
  - c. Projects that require making travel and meeting arrangements for large numbers of participants, such as conferences and seminars.
  - d. Projects whose principal focus is the preparation and production of manuals and large reports, books and monographs (excluding routine progress and technical reports).



e. Projects that are geographically inaccessible to normal departmental administrative services, such as research vessels, radio astronomy projects, and other research fields sites that are remote from campus.

f. Individual projects requiring project-specific database management; individualized graphics or manuscript preparation; human or animal protocols; and multiple project-related investigator coordination and communications.

2. These examples are not exhaustive nor are they intended to imply that direct charging of administrative or clerical salaries would always be appropriate for the situations illustrated in the examples. For instance, the examples would be appropriate when the costs of such activities are incurred in unlike circumstances, *i.e.*, the actual activities charged direct are not the same as the actual activities normally included in the institution's facilities and administrative (F&A) cost pools or, if the same, the indirect activity costs are immaterial in amount. It would be inappropriate to charge the cost of such activities directly to specific sponsored agreements if, in similar circumstances, the costs of performing the same type of activity for other sponsored agreements were included as allocable costs in the institution's F&A cost pools. Application of negotiated predetermined F&A cost rates may also be inappropriate if such activity costs charged directly were not provided for in the allocation base that was used to determine the predetermined F&A cost rates.

#### ATTACHMENT A TO APPENDIX A—CASB'S COST ACCOUNTING STANDARDS (CAS)

##### A. CAS 9905.501—Consistency in estimating, accumulating and reporting costs by educational institutions.

###### 1. Purpose

The purpose of this standard is to ensure that each educational institution's practices used in estimating costs for a proposal are consistent with cost accounting practices used by the educational institution in accumulating and reporting costs. Consistency in the application of cost accounting practices is necessary to enhance the likelihood that comparable transactions are treated alike. With respect to individual sponsored agreements, the consistent application of cost accounting practices will facilitate the preparation of reliable cost estimates used in pricing a proposal and their comparison with the costs of performance of the resulting sponsored agreement. Such comparisons provide one important basis for financial control over costs during sponsored agreement performance and aid in establishing accountability for costs in the manner agreed to by both parties at the time of agreement. The comparisons also provide an improved basis for evaluating estimating capabilities.

###### 2. Definitions

(a) The following are definitions of terms which are prominent in this standard.

(1) Accumulating costs means the collecting of cost data in an organized manner, such as through a system of accounts.

(2) Actual cost means an amount determined on the basis of cost incurred (as distinguished from forecasted cost), including standard cost properly adjusted for applicable variance.

(3) Estimating costs means the process of forecasting a future result in terms of cost, based upon information available at the time.

(4) Indirect cost pool means a grouping of incurred costs identified with two or more objectives but not identified specifically with any final cost objective.

(5) Pricing means the process of establishing the amount or amounts to be paid in return for goods or services.

(6) Proposal means any offer or other submission used as a basis for pricing a sponsored agreement, sponsored agreement modification or termination settlement or for securing payments thereunder.

(7) Reporting costs means the providing of cost information to others.

###### 3. Fundamental Requirement

(a) An educational institution's practices used in estimating costs in pricing a proposal shall be consistent with the educational institution's cost accounting practices used in accumulating and reporting costs.

(b) An educational institution's cost accounting practices used in accumulating and reporting actual costs for a sponsored agreement shall be consistent with the educational institution's practices used in estimating costs in the related proposal or application.

(c) The grouping of homogeneous costs in estimates prepared for proposal purposes shall not per se be deemed an inconsistent application of cost accounting practices of this paragraph when such costs are accumulated and reported in greater detail on an actual costs basis during performance of the sponsored agreement.

###### 4. Techniques for application

(a) The standard allows grouping of homogeneous costs in order to cover those cases where it is not practicable to estimate sponsored agreement costs by individual cost element. However, costs estimated for proposal purposes shall be presented in such a manner and in such detail that any significant cost can be compared with the actual cost accumulated and reported therefor. In any event, the cost accounting practices used in estimating costs in pricing a proposal and in accumulating and reporting costs on the resulting sponsored agreement shall be consistent with respect to:

(1) The classification of elements of cost as direct or indirect;

(2) The indirect cost pools to which each element of cost is charged or proposed to be charged; and



## (3) The methods of allocating indirect costs to the sponsored agreement.

(b) Adherence to the requirement of this standard shall be determined as of the date of award of the sponsored agreement, unless the sponsored agreement has submitted cost or pricing data pursuant to 10 U.S.C. 2306(a) or 41 U.S.C. 254(d) (Pub. L. 87-653), in which case adherence to the requirement of this standard shall be determined as of the date of final agreement on price, as shown on the signed certificate of current cost or pricing data. Notwithstanding 9905.501-40(b), changes in established cost accounting practices during sponsored agreement performance may be made in accordance with Part 9903 (48 CFR part 9903).

(c) The standard does not prescribe the amount of detail required in accumulating and reporting costs. The basic requirement which must be met, however, is that for any significant amount of estimated cost, the sponsored agreement must be able to accumulate and report actual cost at a level which permits sufficient and meaningful comparison with its estimates. The amount of detail required may vary considerably depending on how the proposed costs were estimated, the data presented in justification or lack thereof, and the significance of each situation. Accordingly, it is neither appropriate nor practical to prescribe a single set of accounting practices which would be consistent in all situations with the practices of estimating costs. Therefore, the amount of accounting and statistical detail to be required and maintained in accounting for estimated costs has been and continues to be a matter to be decided by Government procurement authorities on the basis of the individual facts and circumstances.

## B. CAS 9905.502—CONSISTENCY IN ALLOCATING COSTS INCURRED FOR THE SAME PURPOSE BY EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS

## 1. Purpose

The purpose of this standard is to require that each type of cost is allocated only once and on only one basis to any sponsored agreement or other cost objective. The criteria for determining the allocation of costs to a sponsored agreement or other cost objective should be the same for all similar objectives. Adherence to these cost accounting concepts is necessary to guard against the overcharging of some cost objectives and to prevent double counting. Double counting occurs most commonly when cost items are allocated directly to a cost objective without eliminating like cost items from indirect cost pools which are allocated to that cost objective.

## 2. Definitions

(a) The following are definitions of terms which are prominent in this standard.

(1) Allocate means to assign an item of cost, or a group of items of cost, to one or more cost objectives. This term includes both direct assignment of cost and the reassignment of a share from an indirect cost pool.

(2) Cost objective means a function, organizational subdivision, sponsored agreement, or other work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, products, jobs, capitalized projects, etc.

(3) Direct cost means any cost which is identified specifically with a particular final cost objective. Direct costs are not limited to items which are incorporated in the end product as material or labor. Costs identified specifically with a sponsored agreement are direct costs of that sponsored agreement. All costs identified specifically with other final cost objectives of the educational institution are direct costs of those cost objectives.

(4) Final cost objective means a cost objective which has allocated to it both direct and indirect costs, and in the educational institution's accumulation system, is one of the final accumulation points.

(5) Indirect cost means any cost not directly identified with a single final cost objective, but identified with two or more final cost objectives or with at least one intermediate cost objective.

(6) Indirect cost pool means a grouping of incurred costs identified with two or more cost objectives but not identified with any final cost objective.

(7) Intermediate cost objective means a cost objective that is used to accumulate indirect costs or service center costs that are subsequently allocated to one or more indirect cost pools and/or final cost objectives.

## 3. Fundamental Requirement

All costs incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, are either direct costs only or indirect costs only with respect to final cost objectives. No final cost objective shall have allocated to it as an indirect cost any cost, if other costs incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, have been included as a direct cost of that or any other final cost objective. Further, no final cost objective shall have allocated to it as a direct cost any cost, if other costs incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, have been included in any indirect cost pool to be allocated to that or any other final cost objective.

## 4. Techniques for Application

(a) The Fundamental Requirement is stated in terms of cost incurred and is equally applicable to estimates of costs to be incurred as used in sponsored agreement proposals.

(b) The Disclosure Statement to be submitted by the educational institution will require that the educational institution set forth its cost accounting practices with regard to the distinction between direct and indirect costs. In addition, for those types of cost which are sometimes accounted for as direct and sometimes accounted for as indirect, the educational institution will set forth in its Disclosure Statement the specific criteria and circumstances for making such distinctions. In essence, the Disclosure Statement submitted by the educational institution, by distinguishing between direct and indirect costs, and by describing the criteria and circumstances for allocating those items which are sometimes direct and sometimes indirect, will be determinative as to whether or not costs are incurred for the same purpose. Disclosure Statement as used herein refers to the statement required to be submitted by educational



institutions in Appendix A to Part 220, Section C.14.

(c) In the event that an educational institution has not submitted a Disclosure Statement, the determination of whether specific costs are directly allocable to sponsored agreements shall be based upon the educational institution's cost accounting practices used at the time of sponsored agreement proposal.

(d) Whenever costs which serve the same purpose cannot equitably be indirectly allocated to one or more final cost objectives in accordance with the educational institution's disclosed accounting practices, the educational institution may either (1) use a method for reassigning all such costs which would provide an equitable distribution to all final cost objectives, or (2) directly assign all such costs to final cost objectives with which they are specifically identified. In the event the educational institution decides to make a change for either purpose, the Disclosure Statement shall be amended to reflect the revised accounting practices involved.

(e) Any direct cost of minor dollar amount may be treated as an indirect cost for reasons of practicality where the accounting treatment for such cost is consistently applied to all final cost objectives, provided that such treatment produces results which are substantially the same as the results which would have been obtained if such cost had been treated as a direct cost.

## 5. Illustrations

(a) Illustrations of costs which are incurred for the same purpose:

(1) An educational institution normally allocates all travel as an indirect cost and previously disclosed this accounting practice to the Government. For purposes of a new proposal, the educational institution intends to allocate the travel costs of personnel whose time is accounted for as direct labor directly to the sponsored agreement. Since travel costs of personnel whose time is accounted for as direct labor working on other sponsored agreements are costs which are incurred for the same purpose, these costs may no longer be included within indirect cost pools for purposes of allocation to any covered Government sponsored agreement. The educational institution's Disclosure Statement must be amended for the proposed changes in accounting practices.

(2) An educational institution normally allocates purchasing activity costs indirectly and allocates this cost to instruction and research on the basis of modified total costs. A proposal for a new sponsored agreement requires a disproportionate amount of subcontract administration to be performed by the purchasing activity. The educational institution prefers to continue to allocate purchasing activity costs indirectly. In order to equitably allocate the total purchasing activity costs, the educational institution may use a method for allocating all such costs which would provide an equitable distribution to all applicable indirect cost pools. For example, the educational institution may use the number of transactions processed rather than its former allocation base of modified total costs. The educational institution's Disclosure Statement must be amended for the proposed changes in accounting practices.

(b) Illustrations of costs which are not incurred for the same purpose:

(1) An educational institution normally allocates special test equipment costs directly to sponsored agreements. The costs of general purpose test equipment are normally included in the indirect cost pool which is allocated to sponsored agreements. Both of these accounting practices were previously disclosed to the Government. Since both types of costs involved were not incurred for the same purpose in accordance with the criteria set forth in the educational institution's Disclosure Statement, the allocation of general purpose test equipment costs from the indirect cost pool to the sponsored agreement, in addition to the directly allocated special test equipment costs, is not considered a violation of the standard.

(2) An educational institution proposes to perform a sponsored agreement which will require three firemen on 24-hour duty at a fixed-post to provide protection against damage to highly inflammable materials used on the sponsored agreement. The educational institution presently has a firefighting force of 10 employees for general protection of its facilities. The educational institution's costs for these latter firemen are treated as indirect costs and allocated to all sponsored agreements; however, it wants to allocate the three fixed-post firemen directly to the particular sponsored agreement requiring them and also allocate a portion of the cost of the general firefighting force to the same sponsored agreement. The educational institution may do so but only on condition that its disclosed practices indicate that the costs of the separate classes of firemen serve different purposes and that it is the educational institution's practice to allocate the general firefighting force indirectly and to allocate fixed-post firemen directly.

## 6. Interpretation

(a) Consistency in Allocating Costs Incurred for the Same Purpose by Educational Institutions, provides, in this standard, that " \* \* \* no final cost objective shall have allocated to it as a direct cost any cost, if other costs incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, have been included in any indirect cost pool to be allocated to that or any other final cost objective."

(b) This interpretation deals with the way this standard applies to the treatment of costs incurred in preparing, submitting, and supporting proposals. In essence, it is addressed to whether or not, under the standard, all such costs are incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances.

(c) Under this standard, costs incurred in preparing, submitting, and supporting proposals pursuant to a specific requirement of an existing sponsored agreement are considered to have been incurred in different circumstances from the circumstances under which costs are incurred in preparing proposals which do not result from such specific requirement. The circumstances are different because the costs of preparing proposals specifically required by the provisions of an existing sponsored agreement relate only to that sponsored agreement while other proposal costs relate to all work of the educational institution.

(d) This interpretation does not preclude the allocation, as indirect costs, of costs incurred in preparing all proposals. The cost accounting practices used by the educational institution, however, must be followed consistently



and the method used to reallocate such costs, of course, must provide an equitable distribution to all final cost objectives.

### C. CAS 9905.505—ACCOUNTING FOR UNALLOWABLE COSTS—EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS

#### 1. Purpose

(a) The purpose of this standard is to facilitate the negotiation, audit, administration and settlement of sponsored agreements by establishing guidelines covering (1) identification of costs specifically described as unallowable, at the time such costs first become defined or authoritatively designated as unallowable, and (2) the cost accounting treatment to be accorded such identified unallowable costs in order to promote the consistent application of sound cost accounting principles covering all incurred costs. The standard is predicated on the proposition that costs incurred in carrying on the activities of an educational institution—regardless of the allowability of such costs under Government sponsored agreements—are allocable to the cost objectives with which they are identified on the basis of their beneficial or causal relationships.

(b) This standard does not govern the allowability of costs. This is a function of the appropriate procurement or reviewing authority.

#### 2. Definitions

(a) The following are definitions of terms which are prominent in this standard.

(1) Directly associated cost means any cost which is generated solely as a result of the incurrence of another cost, and which would not have been incurred had the other cost not been incurred.

(2) Expressly unallowable cost means a particular item or type of cost which, under the express provisions of an applicable law, regulation, or sponsored agreement, is specifically named and stated to be unallowable.

(3) Indirect cost means any cost not directly identified with a single final cost objective, but identified with two or more final cost objectives or with at least one intermediate cost objective.

(4) Unallowable cost means any cost which, under the provisions of any pertinent law, regulation, or sponsored agreement, cannot be included in prices, cost reimbursements, or settlements under a Government sponsored agreement to which it is allocable.

#### 3. Fundamental Requirement

(a) Costs expressly unallowable or mutually agreed to be unallowable, including costs mutually agreed to be unallowable directly associated costs, shall be identified and excluded from any billing, claim, application, or proposal applicable to a Government sponsored agreement.

(b) Costs which specifically become designated as unallowable as a result of a written decision furnished by a Federal official pursuant to sponsored agreement disputes procedures shall be identified if included in or used in the computation of any billing, claim, or proposal applicable to a sponsored agreement. This identification requirement applies also to any costs incurred for the same purpose under like circumstances as the costs specifically identified as unallowable under either this paragraph or paragraph (a) of this subsection.

(c) Costs which, in a Federal official's written decision furnished pursuant to disputes procedures, are designated as unallowable directly associated costs of unallowable costs covered by either paragraph (a) or (b) of this subsection shall be accorded the identification required by paragraph b. of this subsection.

(d) The costs of any work project not contractually authorized, whether or not related to performance of a proposed or existing contract, shall be accounted for, to the extent appropriate, in a manner which permits ready separation from the costs of authorized work projects.

(e) All unallowable costs covered by paragraphs (a) through (d) of this subsection shall be subject to the same cost accounting principles governing cost allocability as allowable costs. In circumstances where these unallowable costs normally would be part of a regular indirect-cost allocation base or bases, they shall remain in such base or bases. Where a directly associated cost is part of a category of costs normally included in an indirect-cost pool that will be allocated over a base containing the unallowable cost with which it is associated, such a directly associated cost shall be retained in the indirect-cost pool and be allocated through the regular allocation process.

(f) Where the total of the allocable and otherwise allowable costs exceeds a limitation-of-cost or ceiling-price provision in a sponsored agreement, full direct and indirect cost allocation shall be made to the cost objective, in accordance with established cost accounting practices and Standards which regularly govern a given entity's allocations to Government sponsored agreement cost objectives. In any determination of unallowable cost overrun, the amount thereof shall be identified in terms of the excess of allowable costs over the ceiling amount, rather than through specific identification of particular cost items or cost elements.

#### 4. Techniques for Application

(a) The detail and depth of records required as backup support for proposals, billings, or claims shall be that which is adequate to establish and maintain visibility of identified unallowable costs (including directly associated costs), their accounting status in terms of their allocability to sponsored agreement cost objectives, and the cost accounting treatment which has been accorded such costs. Adherence to this cost accounting principle does not require that allocation of unallowable costs to final cost objectives be made in the detailed cost accounting records. It does require that unallowable costs be given appropriate consideration in any cost accounting determinations governing the content of allocation bases used for distributing indirect costs to cost objectives. Unallowable costs involved in the determination of rates used for standard costs, or for indirect-cost bidding or billing, need be identified only at the time rates are



proposed, established, revised or adjusted.

(b) The visibility requirement of paragraph (a) of this subsection, may be satisfied by any form of cost identification which is adequate for purposes of sponsored agreement cost determination and verification. The standard does not require such cost identification for purposes which are not relevant to the determination of Government sponsored agreement cost. Thus, to provide visibility for incurred costs, acceptable alternative practices would include the segregation of unallowable costs in separate accounts maintained for this purpose in the regular books of account, the development and maintenance of separate accounting records or workpapers, or the use of any less formal cost accounting techniques which establishes and maintains adequate cost identification to permit audit verification of the accounting recognition given unallowable costs. Educational institutions may satisfy the visibility requirements for estimated costs either by designation and description (in backup data, workpapers, etc.) of the amounts and types of any unallowable costs which have specifically been identified and recognized in making the estimates, or by description of any other estimating technique employed to provide appropriate recognition of any unallowable costs pertinent to the estimates.

(c) Specific identification of unallowable costs is not required in circumstances where, based upon considerations of materiality, the Government and the educational institution reach agreement on an alternate method that satisfies the purpose of the standard.

#### 5. Illustrations

(a) An auditor recommends disallowance of certain direct labor and direct material costs, for which a billing has been submitted under a sponsored agreement, on the basis that these particular costs were not required for performance and were not authorized by the sponsored agreement. The Federal officer issues a written decision which supports the auditor's position that the questioned costs are unallowable. Following receipt of the Federal officer's decision, the educational institution must clearly identify the disallowed direct labor and direct material costs in the educational institution's accounting records and reports covering any subsequent submission which includes such costs. Also, if the educational institution's base for allocation of any indirect cost pool relevant to the subject sponsored agreement consists of direct labor, direct material, total prime cost, total cost input, etc., the educational institution must include the disallowed direct labor and material costs in its allocation base for such pool. Had the Federal officer's decision been against the auditor, the educational institution would not, of course, have been required to account separately for the costs questioned by the auditor.

(b) An educational institution incurs, and separately identifies, as a part of a service center or expense pool, certain costs which are expressly unallowable under the existing and currently effective regulations. If the costs of the service center or indirect expense pool are regularly a part of the educational institution's base for allocation of general administration and general expenses (GA&GE) or other indirect expenses, the educational institution must allocate the GA&GE or other indirect expenses to sponsored agreements and other final cost objectives by means of a base which includes the identified unallowable indirect costs.

(c) An auditor recommends disallowance of certain indirect costs. The educational institution claims that the costs in question are allowable under the provisions of Appendix A to Part 220, Cost Principles For Educational Institutions; the auditor disagrees. The issue is referred to the Federal officer for resolution pursuant to the sponsored agreement disputes clause. The Federal officer issues a written decision supporting the auditor's position that the total costs questioned are unallowable under Appendix A. Following receipt of the Federal officer's decision, the educational institution must identify the disallowed costs and specific other costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances in any subsequent estimating, cost accumulation or reporting for Government sponsored agreements, in which such costs are included. If the Federal officer's decision had supported the educational institution's contention, the costs questioned by the auditor would have been allowable and the educational institution would not have been required to provide special identification.

(d) An educational institution incurred certain unallowable costs that were charged indirectly as general administration and general expenses (GA&GE). In the educational institution's proposals for final indirect cost rates to be applied in determining allowable sponsored agreement costs, the educational institution identified and excluded the expressly unallowable costs. In addition, during the course of negotiation of indirect cost rates to be used for bidding and billing purposes, the educational institution agreed to classify as unallowable cost, various directly associated costs of the identifiable unallowable costs. On the basis of negotiations and agreements between the educational institution and the Federal officer's authorized representatives, indirect cost rates were established, based on the net balance of allowable GA&GE. Application of the rates negotiated to proposals, and to billings, for covered sponsored agreements constitutes compliance with the standard.

(e) An employee, whose salary, travel, and subsistence expenses are charged regularly to the general administration and general expenses (GA&GE) pool, takes several business associates on what is clearly a business entertainment trip. The entertainment costs of such trips is expressly unallowable because it constitutes entertainment expense prohibited by Appendix A to Part 220, and is separately identified by the educational institution. The educational institution does not regularly include its GA&GE in any indirect-expense allocation base. In these circumstances, the employee's travel and subsistence expenses would be directly associated costs for identification with the unallowable entertainment expense. However, unless this type of activity constituted a significant part of the employee's regular duties and responsibilities on which his salary was based, no part of the employee's salary would be required to be identified as a directly associated cost of the unallowable entertainment expense.

#### D. CAS 9905.506—COST ACCOUNTING PERIOD—EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS

##### 1. Purpose

The purpose of this standard is to provide criteria for the selection of the time periods to be used as cost accounting periods for sponsored agreement cost estimating, accumulating, and reporting. This standard will reduce the effects of variations in the flow of costs within each cost accounting period. It will also enhance objectivity, consistency,



and verifiability, and promote uniformity and comparability in sponsored agreement cost measurements.

## 2. Definitions

(a) The following are definitions of terms which are prominent in this standard.

(1) Allocate means to assign an item of cost, or a group of items of cost, to one or more cost objectives. This term includes both direct assignment of cost and the reassignment of a share from an indirect cost pool.

(2) Cost Objective means a function, organizational subdivision, sponsored agreement, or other work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, products, jobs, capitalized projects, etc.

(3) Fiscal year means the accounting period for which annual financial statements are regularly prepared, generally a period of 12 months, 52 weeks, or 53 weeks.

(4) Indirect cost pool means a grouping of incurred costs identified with two or more cost objectives but not identified specifically with any final cost objective.

## 3. Fundamental Requirement

(a) Educational institutions shall use their fiscal year as their cost accounting period, except that:

(b) Costs of an indirect function which exists for only a part of a cost accounting period may be allocated to cost objectives of that same part of the period.

(c) An annual period other than the fiscal year may be used as the cost accounting period if its use is an established practice of the educational institution.

(d) A transitional cost accounting period other than a year shall be used whenever a change of fiscal year occurs.

(e) An educational institution shall follow consistent practices in the selection of the cost accounting period or periods in which any types of expense and any types of adjustment to expense (including prior-period adjustments) are accumulated and allocated.

(f) The same cost accounting period shall be used for accumulating costs in an indirect cost pool as for establishing its allocation base, except that the contracting parties may agree to use a different period for establishing an allocation base.

## 4. Techniques for Application

(a) The cost of an indirect function which exists for only a part of a cost accounting period may be allocated on the basis of data for that part of the cost accounting period if the cost is material in amount, accumulated in a separate indirect cost pool or expense pool, and allocated on the basis of an appropriate direct measure of the activity or output of the function during that part of the period.

(b) The practices required by this standard shall include appropriate practices for deferrals, accruals, and other adjustments to be used in identifying the cost accounting periods among which any types of expense and any types of adjustment to expense are distributed. If an expense, such as insurance or employee leave, is identified with a fixed, recurring, annual period which is different from the educational institution's cost accounting period, the standard permits continued use of that different period. Such expenses shall be distributed to cost accounting periods in accordance with the educational institution's established practices for accruals, deferrals, and other adjustments.

(c) Indirect cost allocation rates, based on estimates, which are used for the purpose of expediting the closing of sponsored agreements which are terminated or completed prior to the end of a cost accounting period need not be those finally determined or negotiated for that cost accounting period. They shall, however, be developed to represent a full cost accounting period, except as provided in paragraph (a) of this subsection.

(d) An educational institution may, upon mutual agreement with the Government, use as its cost accounting period a fixed annual period other than its fiscal year, if the use of such a period is an established practice of the educational institution and is consistently used for managing and controlling revenues and disbursements, and appropriate accruals, deferrals or other adjustments are made with respect to such annual periods.

(e) The parties may agree to use an annual period which does not coincide precisely with the cost accounting period for developing the data used in establishing an allocation base: Provided,

(1) The practice is necessary to obtain significant administrative convenience,

(2) The practice is consistently followed by the educational institution,

(3) The annual period used is representative of the activity of the cost accounting period for which the indirect costs to be allocated are accumulated, and

(4) The practice can reasonably be estimated to provide a distribution to cost objectives of the cost accounting period not materially different from that which otherwise would be obtained.

(f) When a transitional cost accounting period is required, educational institution may select any one of the following: the period, less than a year in length, extending from the end of its previous cost accounting period to the beginning of its next regular cost accounting period, a period in excess of a year, but not longer than 15 months, obtained by combining the period described in subparagraph (f)(1) of this subsection with the previous cost accounting period, or a period in excess of a year, but not longer than 15 months, obtained by combining the period described in



subparagraph (f)(1) of this subsection with the next regular cost accounting period. A change in the educational institution's cost accounting period is a change in accounting practices for which an adjustment in the sponsored agreement price may be required.

## 5. Illustrations

(a) An educational institution allocates indirect expenses for Organized Research on the basis of a modified total direct cost base. In a proposal for a sponsored agreement, it estimates the allocable expenses based solely on the estimated amount of indirect costs allocated to Organized Research and the amount of the modified total direct cost base estimated to be incurred during the 8 months in which performance is scheduled to be commenced and completed. Such a proposal would be in violation of the requirements of this standard that the calculation of the amounts of both the indirect cost pools and the allocation bases be based on the educational institution's cost accounting period.

(b) An educational institution whose cost accounting period is the calendar year, installs a computer service center to begin operations on May 1. The operating expense related to the new service center is expected to be material in amount, will be accumulated in an intermediate cost objective, and will be allocated to the benefitting cost objectives on the basis of measured usage. The total operating expenses of the computer service center for the 8-month part of the cost accounting period may be allocated to the benefitting cost objectives of that same 8-month period.

(c) An educational institution changes its fiscal year from a calendar year to the 12-month period ending May 31. For financial reporting purposes, it has a 5-month transitional "fiscal year." The same 5-month period must be used as the transitional cost accounting period; it may not be combined, because the transitional period would be longer than 15 months. The new fiscal year must be adopted thereafter as its regular cost accounting period. The change in its cost accounting period is a change in accounting practices; adjustments of the sponsored agreement prices may thereafter be required.

(d) Financial reports are prepared on a calendar year basis on a university-wide basis. However, the contracting segment does all internal financial planning, budgeting, and internal reporting on the basis of a twelve month period ended June 30. The contracting parties agree to use the period ended June 30 and they agree to overhead rates on the June 30 basis. They also agree on a technique for prorating fiscal year assignment of the university's central system office expenses between such June 30 periods. This practice is permitted by the standard.

(e) Most financial accounts and sponsored agreement cost records are maintained on the basis of a fiscal year which ends November 30 each year. However, employee vacation allowances are regularly managed on the basis of a "vacation year" which ends September 30 each year. Vacation expenses are estimated uniformly during each "vacation year." Adjustments are made each October to adjust the accrued liability to actual, and the estimating rates are modified to the extent deemed appropriate. This use of a separate annual period for determining the amounts of vacation expense is permitted.

Attachment B to Appendix A—CASB's Disclosure Statement (DS-2) is available on the OMB Web site at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants/a21-appx\\_b.pdf](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants/a21-appx_b.pdf)

Attachment C to Appendix A—Documentation Requirements for Facilities and Administrative (F&A) Rate Proposals is available on the OMB Web site at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants/a21-appx\\_c.pdf](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants/a21-appx_c.pdf)

 [Back to Top](#)

For questions or comments regarding e-CFR editorial content, features, or design, email [ecfr@nara.gov](mailto:ecfr@nara.gov).  
For questions concerning e-CFR programming and delivery issues, email [webteam@gpo.gov](mailto:webteam@gpo.gov).



**FDsys:****GPO's Federal Digital System**

About FDsys  
 Search Government Publications  
 Browse Government Publications

- [Browse](#)
- [Simple Search](#)
- [Advanced Search](#)
  - \* [Boolean](#)
  - \* [Proximity](#)
- [Search History](#)
- [Search Tips](#)
- [Corrections](#)
- [Latest Updates](#)
- [User Info](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Agency List](#)
- [Incorporation by Reference](#)
- [e-CFR Main Page](#)

**Related Resources**

Download the **Code of Federal Regulations in XML**.

The **Electronic Code of Federal Regulations (e-CFR)** is a regularly updated, unofficial editorial compilation of CFR material and Federal Register amendments produced by the National Archives and Records Administration's Office of the Federal Register (OFR) and the Government Printing Office.

Parallel Table of Authorities and Rules for the Code of Federal Regulations and the United States Code  
[Text](#) | [PDF](#)

Find, review, and submit comments on Federal rules that are open for comment and published in the Federal Register using [Regulations.gov](#).

**Purchase individual CFR titles** from the U.S. Government Online Bookstore.

Find issues of the CFR (including issues prior to 1996) at a local **Federal depository library**.

[1]

**ELECTRONIC CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS**

**As of October 9, 2012, the e-CFR resides at a new URL. Please reset your bookmarks, favorites, links and desktop shortcuts to: [www.ecfr.gov](http://www.ecfr.gov).**

**e-CFR Data is current as of November 9, 2012**

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

Title 2: Grants and Agreements

---

**PART 225—COST PRINCIPLES FOR STATE, LOCAL, AND INDIAN TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS (OMB CIRCULAR A-87)**


---

**Contents**

[§ 225.5 Purpose.](#)  
[§ 225.10 Authority.](#)  
[§ 225.15 Background.](#)  
[§ 225.20 Policy.](#)  
[§ 225.25 Definitions.](#)  
[§ 225.30 OMB responsibilities.](#)  
[§ 225.35 Federal agency responsibilities.](#)  
[§ 225.40 Effective date of changes.](#)  
[§ 225.45 Relationship to previous issuance.](#)  
[§ 225.50 Policy review date.](#)  
[§ 225.55 Information contact.](#)  
[Appendix A to Part 225—General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs](#)  
[Appendix B to Part 225—Selected Items of Cost](#)  
[Appendix C to Part 225—State/Local-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans](#)  
[Appendix D to Part 225—Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans](#)  
[Appendix E to Part 225—State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals](#)

---

**AUTHORITY:** 31 U.S.C. 503; 31 U.S.C. 1111; 41 U.S.C. 405; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; E.O. 11541, 35 FR 10737, 3 CFR, 1966-1970, p. 939.

**SOURCE:** 70 FR 51910, Aug. 31, 2005, unless otherwise noted.

[⬆ Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.5 Purpose.**

This part establishes principles and standards for determining costs for Federal awards carried out through grants, cost reimbursement contracts, and other agreements with State and local governments and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments (governmental units).

[⬆ Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.10 Authority.**

This part is issued under the authority of the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, as amended; the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950, as amended; the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; and Executive Order No. 11541 ("Prescribing the Duties of the Office of Management and Budget and the Domestic Policy Council in the Executive Office of the President").

[⬆ Back to Top](#)



**§ 225.15 Background.**

As part of the government-wide grant streamlining effort under Public Law 106-107, Federal Financial Award Management Improvement Act of 1999, OMB led an interagency workgroup to simplify and make consistent, to the extent feasible, the various rules used to award Federal grants. An interagency task force was established in 2001 to review existing cost principles for Federal awards to State, local, and Indian tribal governments; colleges and universities; and non-profit organizations. The task force studied "Selected Items of Cost" in each of the three cost principles to determine which items of costs could be stated consistently and/or more clearly.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.20 Policy.**

This part establishes principles and standards to provide a uniform approach for determining costs and to promote effective program delivery, efficiency, and better relationships between governmental units and the Federal Government. The principles are for determining allowable costs only. They are not intended to identify the circumstances or to dictate the extent of Federal and governmental unit participation in the financing of a particular Federal award. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this part.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.25 Definitions.**

Definitions of key terms used in this part are contained in Appendix A to this part, Section B.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.30 OMB responsibilities.**

The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) will review agency regulations and implementation of this part, and will provide policy interpretations and assistance to insure effective and efficient implementation. Any exceptions will be subject to approval by OMB. Exceptions will only be made in particular cases where adequate justification is presented.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.35 Federal agency responsibilities.**

Agencies responsible for administering programs that involve cost reimbursement contracts, grants, and other agreements with governmental units shall issue regulations to implement the provisions of this part and its appendices.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.40 Effective date of changes.**

This part is effective August 31, 2005.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.45 Relationship to previous issuance.**

(a) The guidance in this part previously was issued as OMB Circular A-87. Appendix A to this part contains the guidance that was in Attachment A (general principles) to the OMB circular; appendix B contains the guidance that was in Attachment B (selected items of cost); appendix C contains the information that was in Attachment C (state/local-wide central service cost allocation plans); appendix D contains the guidance that was in Attachment D (public assistance cost allocation plans); and appendix E contains the guidance that was in Attachment E (state and local indirect cost rate proposals).

(b) This part supersedes OMB Circular A-87, as amended May 10, 2004, which superseded Circular A-87, as amended and issued May 4, 1995.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.50 Policy review date.**

This part will have a policy review three years from the date of issuance.



 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 225.55 Information contact.**

Further information concerning this part may be obtained by contacting the Office of Federal Financial Management, Financial Standards and Reporting Branch, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, telephone 202-395-3993.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Appendix A to Part 225—General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- A. Purpose and Scope
  - 1. Objectives
  - 2. Policy guides
  - 3. Application
- B. Definitions
  - 1. Approval or authorization of the awarding or cognizant Federal agency
  - 2. Award
  - 3. Awarding agency
  - 4. Central service cost allocation plan
  - 5. Claim
  - 6. Cognizant agency
  - 7. Common rule
  - 8. Contract
  - 9. Cost
  - 10. Cost allocation plan
  - 11. Cost objective
  - 12. Federally-recognized Indian tribal government
  - 13. Governmental unit
  - 14. Grantee department or agency
  - 15. Indirect cost rate proposal
  - 16. Local government
  - 17. Public assistance cost allocation plan
  - 18. State
- C. Basic Guidelines
  - 1. Factors affecting allowability of costs
  - 2. Reasonable costs
  - 3. Allocable costs
  - 4. Applicable credits
- D. Composition of Cost
  - 1. Total cost
  - 2. Classification of costs
- E. Direct Costs
  - 1. General



2. Application

3. Minor items

F. Indirect Costs

1. General

2. Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals

3. Limitation on indirect or administrative costs

G. Interagency Services

H. Required Certifications

General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs

A. *Purpose and Scope*

1. Objectives. This Appendix establishes principles for determining the allowable costs incurred by State, local, and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments (governmental units) under grants, cost reimbursement contracts, and other agreements with the Federal Government (collectively referred to in this appendix and other appendices to 2 CFR part 225 as “Federal awards”). The principles are for the purpose of cost determination and are not intended to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of Federal or governmental unit participation in the financing of a particular program or project. The principles are designed to provide that Federal awards bear their fair share of cost recognized under these principles except where restricted or prohibited by law. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of 2 CFR part 225.

2. Policy guides.

a. The application of these principles is based on the fundamental premises that:

(1) Governmental units are responsible for the efficient and effective administration of Federal awards through the application of sound management practices.

(2) Governmental units assume responsibility for administering Federal funds in a manner consistent with underlying agreements, program objectives, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(3) Each governmental unit, in recognition of its own unique combination of staff, facilities, and experience, will have the primary responsibility for employing whatever form of organization and management techniques may be necessary to assure proper and efficient administration of Federal awards.

b. Federal agencies should work with States or localities which wish to test alternative mechanisms for paying costs for administering Federal programs. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) encourages Federal agencies to test fee-for-service alternatives as a replacement for current cost-reimbursement payment methods in response to the National Performance Review's (NPR) recommendation. The NPR recommended the fee-for-service approach to reduce the burden associated with maintaining systems for charging administrative costs to Federal programs and preparing and approving cost allocation plans. This approach should also increase incentives for administrative efficiencies and improve outcomes.

3. Application.

a. These principles will be applied by all Federal agencies in determining costs incurred by governmental units under Federal awards (including subawards) except those with (1) publicly-financed educational institutions subject to, 2 CFR part 220, Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (OMB Circular A-21), and (2) programs administered by publicly-owned hospitals and other providers of medical care that are subject to requirements promulgated by the sponsoring Federal agencies. However, 2 CFR part 225 does apply to all central service and department/agency costs that are allocated or billed to those educational institutions, hospitals, and other providers of medical care or services by other State and local government departments and agencies.

b. All subawards are subject to those Federal cost principles applicable to the particular organization concerned. Thus, if a subaward is to a governmental unit (other than a college, university or hospital), 2 CFR part 225 shall apply; if a subaward is to a commercial organization, the cost principles applicable to commercial organizations shall apply; if a subaward is to a college or university, 2 CFR part 220 (Circular A-21) shall apply; if a subaward is to a hospital, the cost principles used by the Federal awarding agency for awards to hospitals shall apply, subject to the provisions of subsection A.3.a. of this Appendix; if a subaward is to some other non-profit organization, 2 CFR part 230, Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations (Circular A-122), shall apply.

c. These principles shall be used as a guide in the pricing of fixed price arrangements where costs are used in determining the appropriate price.

d. Where a Federal contract awarded to a governmental unit incorporates a Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) clause, the requirements of that clause shall apply. In such cases, the governmental unit and the cognizant Federal agency shall establish an appropriate advance agreement on how the governmental unit will comply with applicable CAS requirements when estimating, accumulating and reporting costs under CAS-covered contracts. The agreement shall indicate that 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87) requirements will be applied to other Federal awards. In all cases, only one set of records needs to be maintained by the governmental unit.

e. Conditional exemptions.



(1) OMB authorizes conditional exemption from OMB administrative requirements and cost principles for certain Federal programs with statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding, that are identified by a Federal agency and approved by the head of the Executive department or establishment. A Federal agency shall consult with OMB during its consideration of whether to grant such an exemption.

(2) To promote efficiency in State and local program administration, when Federal non-entitlement programs with common purposes have specific statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding and where most of the State agency's resources come from non-Federal sources, Federal agencies may exempt these covered State-administered, non-entitlement grant programs from certain OMB grants management requirements. The exemptions would be from all but the allocability of costs provisions of Appendix A subsection C.3 of 2 CFR part 225, Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87); Appendix A, Section C.4 of 2 CFR 220, Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (Circular A-21); Appendix A, subsection A.4 of 2 CFR 230 Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations (Circular A-122); and from all of the administrative requirements provisions of 2 CFR part 215, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations (Circular A-110), and the agencies' grants management common rule.

(3) When a Federal agency provides this flexibility, as a prerequisite to a State's exercising this option, a State must adopt its own written fiscal and administrative requirements for expending and accounting for all funds, which are consistent with the provisions of 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87), and extend such policies to all subrecipients. These fiscal and administrative requirements must be sufficiently specific to ensure that: Funds are used in compliance with all applicable Federal statutory and regulatory provisions, costs are reasonable and necessary for operating these programs, and funds are not used for general expenses required to carry out other responsibilities of a State or its subrecipients.

#### B. Definitions

1. "Approval or authorization of the awarding or cognizant Federal agency" means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring a specific cost. If such costs are specifically identified in a Federal award document, approval of the document constitutes approval of the costs. If the costs are covered by a State/local-wide cost allocation plan or an indirect cost proposal, approval of the plan constitutes the approval.

2. "Award" means grants, cost reimbursement contracts and other agreements between a State, local and Indian tribal government and the Federal Government.

3. "Awarding agency" means (a) with respect to a grant, cooperative agreement, or cost reimbursement contract, the Federal agency, and (b) with respect to a subaward, the party that awarded the subaward.

4. "Central service cost allocation plan" means the documentation identifying, accumulating, and allocating or developing billing rates based on the allowable costs of services provided by a governmental unit on a centralized basis to its departments and agencies. The costs of these services may be allocated or billed to users.

5. "Claim" means a written demand or written assertion by the governmental unit or grantor seeking, as a matter of right, the payment of money in a sum certain, the adjustment or interpretation of award terms, or other relief arising under or relating to the award. A voucher, invoice or other routine request for payment that is not a dispute when submitted is not a claim. Appeals, such as those filed by a governmental unit in response to questioned audit costs, are not considered claims until a final management decision is made by the Federal awarding agency.

6. "Cognizant agency" means the Federal agency responsible for reviewing, negotiating, and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals developed under 2 CFR part 225 on behalf of all Federal agencies. OMB publishes a listing of cognizant agencies.

7. "Common Rule" means the "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments; Final Rule" originally issued at 53 FR 8034-8103 (March 11, 1988). Other common rules will be referred to by their specific titles.

8. "Contract" means a mutually binding legal relationship obligating the seller to furnish the supplies or services (including construction) and the buyer to pay for them. It includes all types of commitments that obligate the government to an expenditure of appropriated funds and that, except as otherwise authorized, are in writing. In addition to bilateral instruments, contracts include (but are not limited to): Awards and notices of awards; job orders or task orders issued under basic ordering agreements; letter contracts; orders, such as purchase orders, under which the contract becomes effective by written acceptance or performance; and, bilateral contract modifications. Contracts do not include grants and cooperative agreements covered by 31 U.S.C. 6301 *et seq.*

9. "Cost" means an amount as determined on a cash, accrual, or other basis acceptable to the Federal awarding or cognizant agency. It does not include transfers to a general or similar fund.

10. "Cost allocation plan" means central service cost allocation plan, public assistance cost allocation plan, and indirect cost rate proposal. Each of these terms is further defined in this section.

11. "Cost objective" means a function, organizational subdivision, contract, grant, or other activity for which cost data are needed and for which costs are incurred.

12. "Federally-recognized Indian tribal government" means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any native village as defined in Section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat. 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

13. "Governmental unit" means the entire State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government, including any component thereof. Components of governmental units may function independently of the governmental unit in



accordance with the term of the award.

14. "Grantee department or agency" means the component of a State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government which is responsible for the performance or administration of all or some part of a Federal award.

15. "Indirect cost rate proposal" means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or component thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate as described in Appendix E of 2 CFR part 225.

16. "Local government" means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority, school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a non-profit corporation under State law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

17. "Public assistance cost allocation plan" means a narrative description of the procedures that will be used in identifying, measuring and allocating all administrative costs to all of the programs administered or supervised by State public assistance agencies as described in Appendix D of 2 CFR part 225.

18. "State" means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments.

### C. Basic Guidelines

1. Factors affecting allowability of costs. To be allowable under Federal awards, costs must meet the following general criteria:

- a. Be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient performance and administration of Federal awards.
- b. Be allocable to Federal awards under the provisions of 2 CFR part 225.
- c. Be authorized or not prohibited under State or local laws or regulations.
- d. Conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles, Federal laws, terms and conditions of the Federal award, or other governing regulations as to types or amounts of cost items.
- e. Be consistent with policies, regulations, and procedures that apply uniformly to both Federal awards and other activities of the governmental unit.
- f. Be accorded consistent treatment. A cost may not be assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances has been allocated to the Federal award as an indirect cost.
- g. Except as otherwise provided for in 2 CFR part 225, be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.
- h. Not be included as a cost or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of any other Federal award in either the current or a prior period, except as specifically provided by Federal law or regulation.
- i. Be the net of all applicable credits.
- j. Be adequately documented.

2. Reasonable costs. A cost is reasonable if, in its nature and amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the cost. The question of reasonableness is particularly important when governmental units or components are predominately federally-funded. In determining reasonableness of a given cost, consideration shall be given to:

- a. Whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the governmental unit or the performance of the Federal award.
- b. The restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as: Sound business practices; arm's-length bargaining; Federal, State and other laws and regulations; and, terms and conditions of the Federal award.
- c. Market prices for comparable goods or services.
- d. Whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances considering their responsibilities to the governmental unit, its employees, the public at large, and the Federal Government.
- e. Significant deviations from the established practices of the governmental unit which may unjustifiably increase the Federal award's cost.

3. Allocable costs.

- a. A cost is allocable to a particular cost objective if the goods or services involved are chargeable or assignable to such cost objective in accordance with relative benefits received.
- b. All activities which benefit from the governmental unit's indirect cost, including unallowable activities and services donated to the governmental unit by third parties, will receive an appropriate allocation of indirect costs.
- c. Any cost allocable to a particular Federal award or cost objective under the principles provided for in 2 CFR part 225 may not be charged to other Federal awards to overcome fund deficiencies, to avoid restrictions imposed by law or terms of the Federal awards, or for other reasons.



d. Where an accumulation of indirect costs will ultimately result in charges to a Federal award, a cost allocation plan will be required as described in Appendices C, D, and E to this part.

#### 4. Applicable credits.

a. Applicable credits refer to those receipts or reduction of expenditure-type transactions that offset or reduce expense items allocable to Federal awards as direct or indirect costs. Examples of such transactions are: Purchase discounts, rebates or allowances, recoveries or indemnities on losses, insurance refunds or rebates, and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. To the extent that such credits accruing to or received by the governmental unit relate to allowable costs, they shall be credited to the Federal award either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate.

b. In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal Government to finance activities or service operations of the governmental unit should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items (including any amounts used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements) should be recognized in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to Federal awards. (See Appendix B to this part, item 11, "Depreciation and use allowances," for areas of potential application in the matter of Federal financing of activities.)

#### D. Composition of Cost

1. Total cost. The total cost of Federal awards is comprised of the allowable direct cost of the program, plus its allocable portion of allowable indirect costs, less applicable credits.

2. Classification of costs. There is no universal rule for classifying certain costs as either direct or indirect under every accounting system. A cost may be direct with respect to some specific service or function, but indirect with respect to the Federal award or other final cost objective. Therefore, it is essential that each item of cost be treated consistently in like circumstances either as a direct or an indirect cost. Guidelines for determining direct and indirect costs charged to Federal awards are provided in the sections that follow.

#### E. Direct Costs

1. General. Direct costs are those that can be identified specifically with a particular final cost objective.

2. Application. Typical direct costs chargeable to Federal awards are:

- a. Compensation of employees for the time devoted and identified specifically to the performance of those awards.
- b. Cost of materials acquired, consumed, or expended specifically for the purpose of those awards.
- c. Equipment and other approved capital expenditures.
- d. Travel expenses incurred specifically to carry out the award.

3. Minor items. Any direct cost of a minor amount may be treated as an indirect cost for reasons of practicality where such accounting treatment for that item of cost is consistently applied to all cost objectives.

#### F. Indirect Costs

1. General. Indirect costs are those: Incurred for a common or joint purpose benefiting more than one cost objective, and not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefitted, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. The term "indirect costs," as used herein, applies to costs of this type originating in the grantee department, as well as those incurred by other departments in supplying goods, services, and facilities. To facilitate equitable distribution of indirect expenses to the cost objectives served, it may be necessary to establish a number of pools of indirect costs within a governmental unit department or in other agencies providing services to a governmental unit department. Indirect cost pools should be distributed to benefitted cost objectives on bases that will produce an equitable result in consideration of relative benefits derived.

2. Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals. Requirements for development and submission of cost allocation plans and indirect cost rate proposals are contained in Appendices C, D, and E to this part.

3. Limitation on indirect or administrative costs.

a. In addition to restrictions contained in 2 CFR part 225, there may be laws that further limit the amount of administrative or indirect cost allowed.

b. Amounts not recoverable as indirect costs or administrative costs under one Federal award may not be shifted to another Federal award, unless specifically authorized by Federal legislation or regulation.

G. *Interagency Services.* The cost of services provided by one agency to another within the governmental unit may include allowable direct costs of the service plus a pro rate share of indirect costs. A standard indirect cost allowance equal to ten percent of the direct salary and wage cost of providing the service (excluding overtime, shift premiums, and fringe benefits) may be used in lieu of determining the actual indirect costs of the service. These services do not include centralized services included in central service cost allocation plans as described in Appendix C to this part.

H. *Required Certifications.* Each cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal required by Appendices C and E to this part must comply with the following:

1. No proposal to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect cost rate, whether submitted to a Federal cognizant agency or maintained on file by the governmental unit, shall be acceptable unless such costs have been certified by the governmental unit using the Certificate of Cost Allocation Plan or Certificate of Indirect Costs as set forth in Appendices C and E to this part. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the governmental unit by an individual at a level no



lower than chief financial officer of the governmental unit that submits the proposal or component covered by the proposal.

2. No cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate shall be approved by the Federal Government unless the plan or rate proposal has been certified. Where it is necessary to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect cost rate and the governmental unit has not submitted a certified proposal for establishing such a plan or rate in accordance with the requirements, the Federal Government may either disallow all indirect costs or unilaterally establish such a plan or rate. Such a plan or rate may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant Federal agency and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate is unilaterally established by the Federal Government because of failure of the governmental unit to submit a certified proposal, the plan or rate established will be set to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Appendix B to Part 225—Selected Items of Cost**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- 1. Advertising and public relations costs
- 2. Advisory councils
- 3. Alcoholic beverages
- 4. Audit costs and related services
- 5. Bad debts
- 6. Bonding costs
- 7. Communication costs
- 8. Compensation for personal services
- 9. Contingency provisions
- 10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, and claims
- 11. Depreciation and use allowances
- 12. Donations and contributions
- 13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs
- 14. Entertainment costs
- 15. Equipment and other capital expenditures
- 16. Fines and penalties
- 17. Fund raising and investment management costs
- 18. Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable property and other capital assets and substantial relocation of Federal programs
- 19. General government expenses
- 20. Goods or services for personal use
- 21. Idle facilities and idle capacity
- 22. Insurance and indemnification
- 23. Interest
- 24. Lobbying
- 25. Maintenance, operations, and repairs
- 26. Materials and supplies costs
- 27. Meetings and conferences
- 28. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs
- 29. Patent costs
- 30. Plant and homeland security costs
- 31. Pre-award costs



- 32. Professional service costs
- 33. Proposal costs
- 34. Publication and printing costs
- 35. Rearrangement and alteration costs
- 36. Reconversion costs
- 37. Rental costs of building and equipment
- 38. Royalties and other costs for the use of patents
- 39. Selling and marketing
- 40. Taxes
- 41. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements
- 42. Training costs
- 43. Travel costs

Sections 1 through 43 provide principles to be applied in establishing the allowability or unallowability of certain items of cost. These principles apply whether a cost is treated as direct or indirect. A cost is allowable for Federal reimbursement only to the extent of benefits received by Federal awards and its conformance with the general policies and principles stated in Appendix A to this part. Failure to mention a particular item of cost in these sections is not intended to imply that it is either allowable or unallowable; rather, determination of allowability in each case should be based on the treatment or standards provided for similar or related items of cost.

*1. Advertising and public relations costs.*

a. The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs. Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.

b. The term public relations includes community relations and means those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the governmental unit or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.

c. The only allowable advertising costs are those which are solely for:

(1) The recruitment of personnel required for the performance by the governmental unit of obligations arising under a Federal award;

(2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a Federal award;

(3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a Federal award except when governmental units are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or

(4) Other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the Federal award.

d. The only allowable public relations costs are:

(1) Costs specifically required by the Federal award;

(2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of Federal awards (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the Federal award); or

(3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison necessary keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of Federal contract/grant awards, financial matters, etc.

e. Costs identified in subsections c and d if incurred for more than one Federal award or for both sponsored work and other work of the governmental unit, are allowable to the extent that the principles in Appendix A to this part, sections E. ("Direct Costs") and F. ("Indirect Costs") are observed.

f. Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:

(1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in subsections 1.c, d, and e of this appendix;

(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the governmental unit, including:

(a) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;

(b) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and



(c) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the governmental unit.

2. *Advisory councils.* Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are allowable as a direct cost where authorized by the Federal awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to Federal awards.

3. *Alcoholic beverages.* Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

4. *Audit costs and related services.*

a. The costs of audits required by , and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" are allowable. Also see 31 U.S.C. 7505(b) and section 230 ("Audit Costs") of Circular A-133.

b. Other audit costs are allowable if included in a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal, or if specifically approved by the awarding agency as a direct cost to an award.

c. The cost of agreed-upon procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients who are exempted from A-133 under section 200(d) are allowable, subject to the conditions listed in A-133, section 230 (b)(2).

5. *Bad debts.* Bad debts, including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectible accounts and other claims, related collection costs, and related legal costs, are unallowable.

6. *Bonding costs.*

a. Bonding costs arise when the Federal Government requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the governmental unit. They arise also in instances where the governmental unit requires similar assurance. Included are such bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds.

b. Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms of the award are allowable.

c. Costs of bonding required by the governmental unit in the general conduct of its operations are allowable to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

7. *Communication costs.* Costs incurred for telephone services, local and long distance telephone calls, telegrams, postage, messenger, electronic or computer transmittal services and the like are allowable.

8. *Compensation for personal services.*

a. General. Compensation for personnel services includes all remuneration, paid currently or accrued, for services rendered during the period of performance under Federal awards, including but not necessarily limited to wages, salaries, and fringe benefits. The costs of such compensation are allowable to the extent that they satisfy the specific requirements of this and other appendices under 2 CFR Part 225, and that the total compensation for individual employees:

(1) Is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established policy of the governmental unit consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities;

(2) Follows an appointment made in accordance with a governmental unit's laws and rules and meets merit system or other requirements required by Federal law, where applicable; and

(3) Is determined and supported as provided in subsection h.

b. Reasonableness. Compensation for employees engaged in work on Federal awards will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is consistent with that paid for similar work in other activities of the governmental unit. In cases where the kinds of employees required for Federal awards are not found in the other activities of the governmental unit, compensation will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is comparable to that paid for similar work in the labor market in which the employing government competes for the kind of employees involved. Compensation surveys providing data representative of the labor market involved will be an acceptable basis for evaluating reasonableness.

c. Unallowable costs. Costs which are unallowable under other sections of these principles shall not be allowable under this section solely on the basis that they constitute personnel compensation.

d. Fringe benefits.

(1) Fringe benefits are allowances and services provided by employers to their employees as compensation in addition to regular salaries and wages. Fringe benefits include, but are not limited to, the costs of leave, employee insurance, pensions, and unemployment benefit plans. Except as provided elsewhere in these principles, the costs of fringe benefits are allowable to the extent that the benefits are reasonable and are required by law, governmental unit-employee agreement, or an established policy of the governmental unit.

(2) The cost of fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as for annual leave, sick leave, holidays, court leave, military leave, and other similar benefits, are allowable if: They are provided under established written leave policies; the costs are equitably allocated to



all related activities, including Federal awards; and, the accounting basis (cash or accrual) selected for costing each type of leave is consistently followed by the governmental unit.

(3) When a governmental unit uses the cash basis of accounting, the cost of leave is recognized in the period that the leave is taken and paid for. Payments for unused leave when an employee retires or terminates employment are allowable in the year of payment provided they are allocated as a general administrative expense to all activities of the governmental unit or component.

(4) The accrual basis may be only used for those types of leave for which a liability as defined by Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) exists when the leave is earned. When a governmental unit uses the accrual basis of accounting, in accordance with GAAP, allowable leave costs are the lesser of the amount accrued or funded.

(5) The cost of fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security; employee life, health, unemployment, and worker's compensation insurance (except as indicated in section 22, Insurance and indemnification); pension plan costs (see subsection e.); and other similar benefits are allowable, provided such benefits are granted under established written policies. Such benefits, whether treated as indirect costs or as direct costs, shall be allocated to Federal awards and all other activities in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits attributable to the individuals or group(s) of employees whose salaries and wages are chargeable to such Federal awards and other activities.

e. Pension plan costs. Pension plan costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the governmental unit.

(1) For pension plans financed on a pay-as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(2) Pension costs calculated using an actuarial cost-based method recognized by GAAP are allowable for a given fiscal year if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursement and the governmental unit's contribution to the pension fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal Government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the pension fund.

(3) Amounts funded by the governmental unit in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the governmental unit's contribution in future periods.

(4) When a governmental unit converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method, as defined by GAAP, and funds pension costs in accordance with this method, the unfunded liability at the time of conversion shall be allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP.

(5) The Federal Government shall receive an equitable share of any previously allowed pension costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the governmental unit in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

f. Post-retirement health benefits. Post-retirement health benefits (PRHB) refers to costs of health insurance or health services not included in a pension plan covered by subsection 8.e. of this appendix for retirees and their spouses, dependents, and survivors. PRHB costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the governmental unit.

(1) For PRHB financed on a pay as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(2) PRHB costs calculated using an actuarial cost method recognized by GAAP are allowable if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursements and the governmental unit's contributions to the PRHB fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund, reduction in current year's PRHB costs, or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal Government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the PRHB fund.

(3) Amounts funded in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the government's contribution in a future period.

(4) When a governmental unit converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method and funds PRHB costs in accordance with this method, the initial unfunded liability attributable to prior years shall be allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP, or, if no such GAAP period exists, over a period negotiated with the cognizant agency.

(5) To be allowable in the current year, the PRHB costs must be paid either to:

(a) An insurer or other benefit provider as current year costs or premiums, or

(b) An insurer or trustee to maintain a trust fund or reserve for the sole purpose of providing post-retirement benefits to retirees and other beneficiaries.

(6) The Federal Government shall receive an equitable share of any amounts of previously allowed post-retirement benefit costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the governmental unit in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.



g. Severance pay.

(1) Payments in addition to regular salaries and wages made to workers whose employment is being terminated are allowable to the extent that, in each case, they are required by law, employer-employee agreement, or established written policy.

(2) Severance payments (but not accruals) associated with normal turnover are allowable. Such payments shall be allocated to all activities of the governmental unit as an indirect cost.

(3) Abnormal or mass severance pay will be considered on a case-by-case basis and is allowable only if approved by the cognizant Federal agency.

h. Support of salaries and wages. These standards regarding time distribution are in addition to the standards for payroll documentation.

(1) Charges to Federal awards for salaries and wages, whether treated as direct or indirect costs, will be based on payrolls documented in accordance with generally accepted practice of the governmental unit and approved by a responsible official(s) of the governmental unit.

(2) No further documentation is required for the salaries and wages of employees who work in a single indirect cost activity.

(3) Where employees are expected to work solely on a single Federal award or cost objective, charges for their salaries and wages will be supported by periodic certifications that the employees worked solely on that program for the period covered by the certification. These certifications will be prepared at least semi-annually and will be signed by the employee or supervisory official having first hand knowledge of the work performed by the employee.

(4) Where employees work on multiple activities or cost objectives, a distribution of their salaries or wages will be supported by personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation which meets the standards in subsection 8.h.(5) of this appendix unless a statistical sampling system (see subsection 8.h.(6) of this appendix) or other substitute system has been approved by the cognizant Federal agency. Such documentary support will be required where employees work on:

- (a) More than one Federal award,
  - (b) A Federal award and a non-Federal award,
  - (c) An indirect cost activity and a direct cost activity,
  - (d) Two or more indirect activities which are allocated using different allocation bases, or
  - (e) An unallowable activity and a direct or indirect cost activity.
- (5) Personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation must meet the following standards:
- (a) They must reflect an after-the-fact distribution of the actual activity of each employee,
  - (b) They must account for the total activity for which each employee is compensated,
  - (c) They must be prepared at least monthly and must coincide with one or more pay periods, and
  - (d) They must be signed by the employee.

(e) Budget estimates or other distribution percentages determined before the services are performed do not qualify as support for charges to Federal awards but may be used for interim accounting purposes, provided that:

(i) The governmental unit's system for establishing the estimates produces reasonable approximations of the activity actually performed;

(ii) At least quarterly, comparisons of actual costs to budgeted distributions based on the monthly activity reports are made. Costs charged to Federal awards to reflect adjustments made as a result of the activity actually performed may be recorded annually if the quarterly comparisons show the differences between budgeted and actual costs are less than ten percent; and

(iii) The budget estimates or other distribution percentages are revised at least quarterly, if necessary, to reflect changed circumstances.

(6) Substitute systems for allocating salaries and wages to Federal awards may be used in place of activity reports. These systems are subject to approval if required by the cognizant agency. Such systems may include, but are not limited to, random moment sampling, case counts, or other quantifiable measures of employee effort.

(a) Substitute systems which use sampling methods (primarily for Temporary Assistance to Needy Families (TANF), Medicaid, and other public assistance programs) must meet acceptable statistical sampling standards including:

(i) The sampling universe must include all of the employees whose salaries and wages are to be allocated based on sample results except as provided in subsection 8.h.(6)(c) of this appendix;

(ii) The entire time period involved must be covered by the sample; and

(iii) The results must be statistically valid and applied to the period being sampled.



(b) Allocating charges for the sampled employees' supervisors, clerical and support staffs, based on the results of the sampled employees, will be acceptable.

(c) Less than full compliance with the statistical sampling standards noted in subsection 8.h.(6)(a) of this appendix may be accepted by the cognizant agency if it concludes that the amounts to be allocated to Federal awards will be minimal, or if it concludes that the system proposed by the governmental unit will result in lower costs to Federal awards than a system which complies with the standards.

(7) Salaries and wages of employees used in meeting cost sharing or matching requirements of Federal awards must be supported in the same manner as those claimed as allowable costs under Federal awards.

i. Donated services.

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to a governmental unit by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the provisions of the Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the governmental unit's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs.

(3) To the extent feasible, donated services will be supported by the same methods used by the governmental unit to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

9. *Contingency provisions.* Contributions to a contingency reserve or any similar provision made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to time, intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable. The term "contingency reserve" excludes self-insurance reserves (see section 22.c. of this appendix), pension plan reserves (see section 8.e.), and post-retirement health and other benefit reserves (section 8.f.) computed using acceptable actuarial cost methods.

10. *Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, and claims.*

a. The following costs are unallowable for contracts covered by 10 U.S.C. 2324(k), "Allowable costs under defense contracts."

(1) Costs incurred in defense of any civil or criminal fraud proceeding or similar proceeding (including filing of false certification brought by the United States where the contractor is found liable or has pleaded nolo contendere to a charge of fraud or similar proceeding (including filing of a false certification)).

(2) Costs incurred by a contractor in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceedings commenced by the United States or a State to the extent provided in 10 U.S.C. 2324(k).

b. Legal expenses required in the administration of Federal programs are allowable. Legal expenses for prosecution of claims against the Federal Government are unallowable.

11. *Depreciation and use allowances.*

a. Depreciation and use allowances are means of allocating the cost of fixed assets to periods benefiting from asset use. Compensation for the use of fixed assets on hand may be made through depreciation or use allowances. A combination of the two methods may not be used in connection with a single class of fixed assets ( e.g. , buildings, office equipment, computer equipment, etc.) except as provided for in subsection g. Except for enterprise funds and internal service funds that are included as part of a State/local cost allocation plan, classes of assets shall be determined on the same basis used for the government-wide financial statements.

b. The computation of depreciation or use allowances shall be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. Where actual cost records have not been maintained, a reasonable estimate of the original acquisition cost may be used. The value of an asset donated to the governmental unit by an unrelated third party shall be its fair market value at the time of donation. Governmental or quasi-governmental organizations located within the same State shall not be considered unrelated third parties for this purpose.

c. The computation of depreciation or use allowances will exclude:

(1) The cost of land;

(2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal Government irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it presently resides; and

(3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the governmental unit, or a related donor organization, in satisfaction of a matching requirement.

d. Where the depreciation method is followed, the following general criteria apply:

(1) The period of useful service (useful life) established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment used, historical usage patterns, technological developments, and the renewal and replacement policies of the governmental unit followed for the individual items or classes of assets involved. In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater in the early portions than in the later portions of its useful life, the straight line method of depreciation shall be used.



(2) Depreciation methods once used shall not be changed unless approved by the Federal cognizant or awarding agency. When the depreciation method is introduced for application to an asset previously subject to a use allowance, the annual depreciation charge thereon may not exceed the amount that would have resulted had the depreciation method been in effect from the date of acquisition of the asset. The combination of use allowances and depreciation applicable to the asset shall not exceed the total acquisition cost of the asset or fair market value at time of donation.

e. When the depreciation method is used for buildings, a building's shell may be segregated from the major component of the building ( e.g. , plumbing system, heating, and air conditioning system, etc.) and each major component depreciated over its estimated useful life, or the entire building ( i.e. , the shell and all components) may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life.

f. Where the use allowance method is followed, the following general criteria apply:

(1) The use allowance for buildings and improvements (including land improvements, such as paved parking areas, fences, and sidewalks) will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding two percent of acquisition costs.

(2) The use allowance for equipment will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding  $6\frac{2}{3}$  percent of acquisition cost.

(3) When the use allowance method is used for buildings, the entire building must be treated as a single asset; the building's components ( e.g. , plumbing system, heating and air condition, etc.) cannot be segregated from the building's shell. The two percent limitation, however, need not be applied to equipment which is merely attached or fastened to the building but not permanently fixed to it and which is used as furnishings or decorations or for specialized purposes ( e.g. , dentist chairs and dental treatment units, counters, laboratory benches bolted to the floor, dishwashers, modular furniture, carpeting, etc.). Such equipment will be considered as not being permanently fixed to the building if it can be removed without the destruction of, or need for costly or extensive alterations or repairs, to the building or the equipment. Equipment that meets these criteria will be subject to the  $6\frac{2}{3}$  percent equipment use allowance limitation.

g. A reasonable use allowance may be negotiated for any assets that are considered to be fully depreciated, after taking into consideration the amount of depreciation previously charged to the government, the estimated useful life remaining at the time of negotiation, the effect of any increased maintenance charges, decreased efficiency due to age, and any other factors pertinent to the utilization of the asset for the purpose contemplated.

h. Charges for use allowances or depreciation must be supported by adequate property records. Physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years (a statistical sampling approach is acceptable) to ensure that assets exist, and are in use. Governmental units will manage equipment in accordance with State laws and procedures. When the depreciation method is followed, depreciation records indicating the amount of depreciation taken each period must also be maintained.

*12. Donations and contributions.*

a. Contributions or donations rendered. Contributions or donations, including cash, property, and services, made by the governmental unit, regardless of the recipient, are unallowable.

b. Donated services received:

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to a governmental unit by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the Federal Grants Management Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the governmental unit's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs.

(3) To the extent feasible, donated services will be supported by the same methods used by the governmental unit to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

*13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs.*

a. The costs of employee information publications, health or first-aid clinics and/or infirmaries, recreational activities, employee counseling services, and any other expenses incurred in accordance with the governmental unit's established practice or custom for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee morale, and employee performance are allowable.

b. Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the governmental unit. Income generated from any of these activities will be offset against expenses.

14. *Entertainment.* Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any costs directly associated with such costs (such as tickets to shows or sports events, meals, lodging, rentals, transportation, and gratuities) are unallowable.

*15. Equipment and other capital expenditures.*

a. For purposes of this subsection 15, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Capital Expenditures" means expenditures for the acquisition cost of capital assets (equipment, buildings, land), or expenditures to make improvements to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life. Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to put it in place. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or



auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in, or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the governmental unit's regular accounting practices.

(2) "Equipment" means an article of nonexpendable, tangible personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the governmental unit for financial statement purposes, or \$5000.

(3) "Special purpose equipment" means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers.

(4) "General purpose equipment" means equipment, which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles.

b. The following rules of allowability shall apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except where approved in advance by the awarding agency.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of \$5000 or more have the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to section 15.b(1), (2), and (3) of this appendix, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate and negotiated with the awarding agency. In addition, Federal awarding agencies are authorized at their option to waive or delegate the prior approval requirement.

(5) Equipment and other capital expenditures are unallowable as indirect costs. However, see section 11 of this appendix, Depreciation and use allowance, for rules on the allowability of use allowances or depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. Also, see section 37 of this appendix, Rental costs, concerning the allowability of rental costs for land, buildings, and equipment.

(6) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable use allowances or depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the cognizant agency.

(7) When replacing equipment purchased in whole or in part with Federal funds, the governmental unit may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property.

16. *Fines and penalties.* Fines, penalties, damages, and other settlements resulting from violations (or alleged violations) of, or failure of the governmental unit to comply with, Federal, State, local, or Indian tribal laws and regulations are unallowable except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of the Federal award or written instructions by the awarding agency authorizing in advance such payments.

17. *Fund raising and investment management costs.*

a. Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred to raise capital or obtain contributions are unallowable, regardless of the purpose for which the funds will be used.

b. Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred to enhance income from investments are unallowable. However, such costs associated with investments covering pension, self-insurance, or other funds which include Federal participation allowed by this and other appendices of 2 CFR part 225 are allowable.

c. Fund raising and investment activities shall be allocated an appropriate share of indirect costs under the conditions described in subsection C.3.b. of Appendix A to this part.

18. *Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable property and other capital assets and substantial relocation of Federal programs.*

a. (1) Gains and losses on the sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property shall be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to the asset cost grouping(s) in which the property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate asset cost grouping(s) shall be the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(2) Gains and losses on the disposition of depreciable property shall not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(a) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under sections 11 and 15 of this appendix.

(b) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.



(c) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in subsection 22.d of this appendix.

(d) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation.

b. Substantial relocation of Federal awards from a facility where the Federal Government participated in the financing to another facility prior to the expiration of the useful life of the financed facility requires Federal agency approval. The extent of the relocation, the amount of the Federal participation in the financing, and the depreciation charged to date may require negotiation of space charges for Federal awards.

c. Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in subsection 18.a. of this appendix, e.g., land or included in the fair market value used in any adjustment resulting from a relocation of Federal awards covered in subsection b. shall be excluded in computing Federal award costs.

#### 19. *General government expenses.*

a. The general costs of government are unallowable (except as provided in section 43 of this appendix, Travel costs). These include:

(1) Salaries and expenses of the Office of the Governor of a State or the chief executive of a political subdivision or the chief executive of federally-recognized Indian tribal government;

(2) Salaries and other expenses of a State legislature, tribal council, or similar local governmental body, such as a county supervisor, city council, school board, etc., whether incurred for purposes of legislation or executive direction;

(3) Costs of the judiciary branch of a government;

(4) Costs of prosecutorial activities unless treated as a direct cost to a specific program if authorized by program statute or regulation (however, this does not preclude the allowability of other legal activities of the Attorney General); and

(5) Costs of other general types of government services normally provided to the general public, such as fire and police, unless provided for as a direct cost under a program statute or regulation.

b. For federally-recognized Indian tribal governments and Councils Of Governments (COGs), the portion of salaries and expenses directly attributable to managing and operating Federal programs by the chief executive and his staff is allowable.

20. *Goods or services for personal use.* Costs of goods or services for personal use of the governmental unit's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

#### 21. *Idle facilities and idle capacity.*

As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

(1) "Facilities" means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the governmental unit.

(2) "Idle facilities" means completely unused facilities that are excess to the governmental unit's current needs.

(3) "Idle capacity" means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between: that which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays; and the extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) "Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity" means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g., insurance, interest, property taxes and depreciation or use allowances.

b. The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet fluctuations in workload; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subsection, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

c. The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other Federal awards, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

#### 22. *Insurance and indemnification.*

a. Costs of insurance required or approved and maintained, pursuant to the Federal award, are allowable.

b. Costs of other insurance in connection with the general conduct of activities are allowable subject to the



following limitations:

(1) Types and extent and cost of coverage are in accordance with the governmental unit's policy and sound business practice.

(2) Costs of insurance or of contributions to any reserve covering the risk of loss of, or damage to, Federal Government property are unallowable except to the extent that the awarding agency has specifically required or approved such costs.

c. Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (through a self-insurance program or otherwise) are unallowable, unless expressly provided for in the Federal award or as described below. However, the Federal Government will participate in actual losses of a self insurance fund that are in excess of reserves. Costs incurred because of losses not covered under nominal deductible insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound management practice, and minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage, and disappearance of small hand tools, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

d. Contributions to a reserve for certain self-insurance programs including workers compensation, unemployment compensation, and severance pay are allowable subject to the following provisions:

(1) The type of coverage and the extent of coverage and the rates and premiums would have been allowed had insurance (including reinsurance) been purchased to cover the risks. However, provision for known or reasonably estimated self-insured liabilities, which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made, shall not exceed the discounted present value of the liability. The rate used for discounting the liability must be determined by giving consideration to such factors as the governmental unit's settlement rate for those liabilities and its investment rate of return.

(2) Earnings or investment income on reserves must be credited to those reserves.

(3) Contributions to reserves must be based on sound actuarial principles using historical experience and reasonable assumptions. Reserve levels must be analyzed and updated at least biennially for each major risk being insured and take into account any reinsurance, coinsurance, etc. Reserve levels related to employee-related coverages will normally be limited to the value of claims submitted and adjudicated but not paid, submitted but not adjudicated, and incurred but not submitted. Reserve levels in excess of the amounts based on the above must be identified and justified in the cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal.

(4) Accounting records, actuarial studies, and cost allocations (or billings) must recognize any significant differences due to types of insured risk and losses generated by the various insured activities or agencies of the governmental unit. If individual departments or agencies of the governmental unit experience significantly different levels of claims for a particular risk, those differences are to be recognized by the use of separate allocations or other techniques resulting in an equitable allocation.

(5) Whenever funds are transferred from a self-insurance reserve to other accounts (e.g., general fund), refunds shall be made to the Federal Government for its share of funds transferred, including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer.

e. Actual claims paid to or on behalf of employees or former employees for workers' compensation, unemployment compensation, severance pay, and similar employee benefits (e.g., subsection 8.f. for post retirement health benefits), are allowable in the year of payment provided the governmental unit follows a consistent costing policy and they are allocated as a general administrative expense to all activities of the governmental unit.

f. Insurance refunds shall be credited against insurance costs in the year the refund is received.

g. Indemnification includes securing the governmental unit against liabilities to third persons and other losses not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal Government is obligated to indemnify the governmental unit only to the extent expressly provided for in the Federal award, except as provided in subsection 22.d of this appendix.

h. Costs of commercial insurance that protects against the costs of the contractor for correction of the contractor's own defects in materials or workmanship are unallowable.

### 23. *Interest.*

a. Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital or the use of a governmental unit's own funds, however represented, are unallowable except as specifically provided in subsection b. or authorized by Federal legislation.

b. Financing costs (including interest) paid or incurred which are associated with the otherwise allowable costs of building acquisition, construction, or fabrication, reconstruction or remodeling completed on or after October 1, 1980 is allowable subject to the conditions in section 23.b.(1) through (4) of this appendix. Financing costs (including interest) paid or incurred on or after September 1, 1995 for land or associated with otherwise allowable costs of equipment is allowable, subject to the conditions in section 23.b. (1) through (4) of this appendix.

(1) The financing is provided (from other than tax or user fee sources) by a bona fide third party external to the governmental unit;

(2) The assets are used in support of Federal awards;

(3) Earnings on debt service reserve funds or interest earned on borrowed funds pending payment of the construction or acquisition costs are used to offset the current period's cost or the capitalized interest, as appropriate. Earnings subject to being reported to the Federal Internal Revenue Service under arbitrage requirements are excludable.



(4) For debt arrangements over \$1 million, unless the governmental unit makes an initial equity contribution to the asset purchase of 25 percent or more, the governmental unit shall reduce claims for interest cost by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow, which is to be calculated as follows. Annually, non-Federal entities shall prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash flows that includes inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. Inflows consist of depreciation expense, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest cost. For cash flow calculations, the annual inflow figures shall be divided by the number of months in the year (i.e., usually 12) that the building is in service for monthly amounts. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro rata share attributable to the unallowable costs of land) and interest payments. Where cumulative inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest shall be calculated on the excess inflows for that period and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest cost. The rate of interest to be used to compute earnings on excess cash flows shall be the three-month Treasury bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(5) Interest attributable to fully depreciated assets is unallowable.

#### 24. *Lobbying.*

a. General. The cost of certain influencing activities associated with obtaining grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, or loans is an unallowable cost. Lobbying with respect to certain grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, and loans shall be governed by the common rule, "New Restrictions on Lobbying" (see Section J.24 of Appendix A to 2 CFR part 220), including definitions, and the Office of Management and Budget "Government-wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying" and notices published at 54 FR 52306 (December 20, 1989), 55 FR 24540 (June 15, 1990), and 57 FR 1772 (January 15, 1992), respectively.

b. Executive lobbying costs. Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the Executive Branch of the Federal Government to give consideration or to act regarding a sponsored agreement or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a federally-sponsored agreement or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

25. *Maintenance, operations, and repairs.* Unless prohibited by law, the cost of utilities, insurance, security, janitorial services, elevator service, upkeep of grounds, necessary maintenance, normal repairs and alterations, and the like are allowable to the extent that they: keep property (including Federal property, unless otherwise provided for) in an efficient operating condition, do not add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life, and are not otherwise included in rental or other charges for space. Costs which add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life shall be treated as capital expenditures (see sections 11 and 15 of this appendix).

#### 26. *Materials and supplies costs.*

a. Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.

b. Purchased materials and supplies shall be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms should be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.

c. Only materials and supplies actually used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs.

d. Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the Federal award, such materials will be used without charge.

27. *Meetings and conferences.* Costs of meetings and conferences, the primary purpose of which is the dissemination of technical information, are allowable. This includes costs of meals, transportation, rental of facilities, speakers' fees, and other items incidental to such meetings or conferences. But see section 14, Entertainment costs, of this appendix.

#### 28. *Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.*

a. Costs of the governmental unit's memberships in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

b. Costs of the governmental unit's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

c. Costs of membership in civic and community, social organizations are allowable as a direct cost with the approval of the Federal awarding agency.

d. Costs of membership in organizations substantially engaged in lobbying are unallowable.

#### 29. *Patent costs.*

a. The following costs relating to patent and copyright matters are allowable: cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the Federal award and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures; cost of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal Government to be conveyed to the Federal Government; and general counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee agreements (but see sections 32, Professional service costs, and 38, Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights, of this appendix).

b. The following costs related to patent and copyright matter are unallowable: Cost of preparing disclosures, reports,



and other documents and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make disclosures not required by the award; costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application; or any United States patent application, where the Federal award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal Government (but see section 38, Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights, of this appendix).

30. *Plant and homeland security costs.* Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for routine and homeland security to protect facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; contractual security services; consultants; etc. Capital expenditures for homeland and plant security purposes are subject to section 15, Equipment and other capital expenditures, of this appendix.

31. *Pre-award costs.* Pre-award costs are those incurred prior to the effective date of the award directly pursuant to the negotiation and in anticipation of the award where such costs are necessary to comply with the proposed delivery schedule or period of performance. Such costs are allowable only to the extent that they would have been allowable if incurred after the date of the award and only with the written approval of the awarding agency.

32. *Professional service costs.*

a. Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the governmental unit, are allowable, subject to subparagraphs b and c when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government. In addition, legal and related services are limited under section 10 of this appendix.

b. In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

- (1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.
- (2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the governmental unit's capability in the particular area.
- (3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to Federal awards.
- (4) The impact of Federal awards on the governmental unit's business ( *i.e.* , what new problems have arisen).
- (5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the governmental unit's total business is such as to influence the governmental unit in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal grants and contracts.

(6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.

(7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-Federal awards.

(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service ( *e.g.* , description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

c. In addition to the factors in subparagraph b, retainer fees to be allowable must be supported by available or rendered evidence of bona fide services available or rendered.

33. *Proposal costs.* Costs of preparing proposals for potential Federal awards are allowable. Proposal costs should normally be treated as indirect costs and should be allocated to all activities of the governmental unit utilizing the cost allocation plan and indirect cost rate proposal. However, proposal costs may be charged directly to Federal awards with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

34. *Publication and printing costs.*

a. Publication costs include the costs of printing (including the processes of composition, plate-making, press work, binding, and the end products produced by such processes), distribution, promotion, mailing, and general handling. Publication costs also include page charges in professional publications.

b. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the governmental unit.

c. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs where:

(1) The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government; and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors.

35. *Rearrangement and alteration costs.* Costs incurred for ordinary and normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable. Special arrangements and alterations costs incurred specifically for a Federal award are allowable with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

36. *Reconversion costs.* Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the governmental unit's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of Federal awards, less costs related to normal wear and tear, are allowable.

37. *Rental costs of buildings and equipment.*



a. Subject to the limitations described in subsections b. through d. of this section, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

b. Rental costs under "sale and lease back" arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the governmental unit continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation or use allowance, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

c. Rental costs under "less-than-arm's-length" leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in section 37.b of this appendix) that would be allowed had title to the property vested in the governmental unit. For this purpose, a less-than-arm's-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between divisions of a governmental unit; governmental units under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and a governmental unit and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the governmental unit or his immediate family, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, a governmental unit may establish a separate corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the governmental unit.

d. Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subsection 37.b of this appendix) that would be allowed had the governmental unit purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement 13, Accounting for Leases, shall be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in section 23 of this appendix. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the governmental unit purchased the facility.

### 38. *Royalties and other costs for the use of patents.*

a. Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the award are allowable unless:

- (1) The Federal Government has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.
- (2) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.
- (3) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.
- (4) The patent or copyright is expired.

b. Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have been arrived at as a result of less-than-arm's-length bargaining, e.g.:

- (1) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the governmental unit.
- (2) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a Federal award would be made.
- (3) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after an award is made to a governmental unit.

c. In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the governmental unit, the amount of royalty allowed should not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the governmental unit retained title thereto.

39. *Selling and marketing.* Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the governmental unit are unallowable (unless allowed under section 1. of this appendix as allowable public relations costs or under section 33. of this appendix as allowable proposal costs.

### 40. *Taxes.*

a. Taxes that a governmental unit is legally required to pay are allowable, except for self-assessed taxes that disproportionately affect Federal programs or changes in tax policies that disproportionately affect Federal programs. This provision is applicable to taxes paid during the governmental unit's first fiscal year that begins on or after January 1, 1998, and applies thereafter.

b. Gasoline taxes, motor vehicle fees, and other taxes that are in effect user fees for benefits provided to the Federal Government are allowable.

c. This provision does not restrict the authority of Federal agencies to identify taxes where Federal participation is inappropriate. Where the identification of the amount of unallowable taxes would require an inordinate amount of effort, the cognizant agency may accept a reasonable approximation thereof.

41. *Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements.* Termination of awards generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the Federal award not been terminated. Cost principles covering these items are set forth below. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this appendix in termination situations.

a. The cost of items reasonably usable on the governmental unit's other work shall not be allowable unless the governmental unit submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding



whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the governmental unit, the awarding agency should consider the governmental unit's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity. Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the governmental unit shall be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the governmental unit's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the Federal award shall be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

b. If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the governmental unit, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this and other appendices of 2 CFR part 225, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the governmental unit to discontinue such costs shall be unallowable.

c. Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and equipment is generally allowable if:

(1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the governmental unit,

(2) The interest of the Federal Government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the awarding agency, and

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated Federal award is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the Federal award bears to the entire terminated Federal award and other Federal awards for which the special tooling, machinery, or equipment was acquired.

d. Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated Federal award less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) The amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the Federal award and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) The governmental unit makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the Federal award, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

e. Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(a) The preparation and presentation to the awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the Federal award, unless the termination is for default (see Subpart \_44 of the Grants Management Common Rule (see § 215.5) implementing OMB Circular A-102); and

(b) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal Government or acquired or produced for the Federal award, except when grantees or contractors are reimbursed for disposals at a predetermined amount in accordance with Subparts \_31 and \_32 of the Grants Management Common Rule (see § 215.5) implementing OMB Circular A-102.

f. Claims under subawards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the Federal award, and to other work of the governmental unit are generally allowable. An appropriate share of the governmental unit's indirect expense may be allocated to the amount of settlements with subcontractors and/or subgrantees, provided that the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in Appendix A to this part. The indirect expense so allocated shall exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

42. *Training costs.* The cost of training provided for employee development is allowable.

43. *Travel costs.*

a. General. Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the governmental unit. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the governmental unit's non-federally-sponsored activities. Notwithstanding the provisions of section 19 of this appendix, General government expenses, travel costs of officials covered by that section are allowable with the prior approval of an awarding agency when they are specifically related to Federal awards.

b. Lodging and subsistence. Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, shall be considered reasonable and allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the governmental unit in its regular operations as the result of the governmental unit's written travel policy. In the absence of an acceptable, written governmental unit policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under subchapter I of Chapter 57, Title 5, United States Code ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter shall apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).

c. Commercial air travel.



(1) Airfare costs in excess of the customary standard commercial airfare (coach or equivalent), Federal Government contract airfare (where authorized and available), or the lowest commercial discount airfare are unallowable except when such accommodations would:

- (a) Require circuitous routing;
- (b) Require travel during unreasonable hours;
- (c) Excessively prolong travel;
- (d) Result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or

(e) Offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The governmental unit must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal Government will generally not question a governmental unit's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the governmental unit can demonstrate either of the following:

- (aa) That such airfare was not available in the specific case; or
- (b) That it is the governmental unit's overall practice to make routine use of such airfare.

d. Air travel by other than commercial carrier. Costs of travel by governmental unit-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of allowable commercial air travel, as provided for in subsection 43.c. of this appendix, is unallowable.

e. Foreign travel. Direct charges for foreign travel costs are allowable only when the travel has received prior approval of the awarding agency. Each separate foreign trip must receive such approval. For purposes of this provision, "foreign travel" includes any travel outside Canada, Mexico, the United States, and any United States territories and possessions. However, the term "foreign travel" for a governmental unit located in a foreign country means travel outside that country.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Appendix C to Part 225—State/Local-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- A. General
- B. Definitions
  - 1. Billed central services
  - 2. Allocated central services
  - 3. Agency or operating agency
- C. Scope of the Central Service Cost Allocation Plans
- D. Submission Requirements
- E. Documentation Requirements for Submitted Plans
  - 1. General
  - 2. Allocated central services
  - 3. Billed services
    - a. General
    - b. Internal service funds
    - c. Self-insurance funds
    - d. Fringe benefits
  - 4. Required certification
- F. Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans
- G. Other Policies
  - 1. Billed central service activities
  - 2. Working capital reserves



3. Carry-forward adjustments of allocated central service costs
4. Adjustments of billed central services
5. Records retention
6. Appeals
7. OMB assistance State/Local-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

#### A. General.

1. Most governmental units provide certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Since federally-supported awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process whereby these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan provides that process. All costs and other data used to distribute the costs included in the plan should be supported by formal accounting and other records that will support the propriety of the costs assigned to Federal awards.

2. Guidelines and illustrations of central service cost allocation plans are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government." A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20401.

#### B. Definitions.

1. "Billed central services" means central services that are billed to benefitted agencies and/or programs on an individual fee-for-service or similar basis. Typical examples of billed central services include computer services, transportation services, insurance, and fringe benefits.

2. "Allocated central services" means central services that benefit operating agencies but are not billed to the agencies on a fee-for-service or similar basis. These costs are allocated to benefitted agencies on some reasonable basis. Examples of such services might include general accounting, personnel administration, purchasing, etc.

3. "Agency or operating agency" means an organizational unit or sub-division within a governmental unit that is responsible for the performance or administration of awards or activities of the governmental unit.

C. *Scope of the Central Service Cost Allocation Plans.* The central service cost allocation plan will include all central service costs that will be claimed (either as a billed or an allocated cost) under Federal awards and will be documented as described in section E. Costs of central services omitted from the plan will not be reimbursed.

#### D. Submission Requirements.

1. Each State will submit a plan to the Department of Health and Human Services for each year in which it claims central service costs under Federal awards. The plan should include a projection of the next year's allocated central service cost (based either on actual costs for the most recently completed year or the budget projection for the coming year), and a reconciliation of actual allocated central service costs to the estimated costs used for either the most recently completed year or the year immediately preceding the most recently completed year.

2. Each local government that has been designated as a "major local government" by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) is also required to submit a plan to its cognizant agency annually. OMB periodically lists major local governments in the *FEDERAL REGISTER*.

3. All other local governments claiming central service costs must develop a plan in accordance with the requirements described in this appendix and maintain the plan and related supporting documentation for audit. These local governments are not required to submit their plans for Federal approval unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency. Where a local government only receives funds as a sub-recipient, the primary recipient will be responsible for negotiating indirect cost rates and/or monitoring the sub-recipient's plan.

4. All central service cost allocation plans will be prepared and, when required, submitted within six months prior to the beginning of each of the governmental unit's fiscal years in which it proposes to claim central service costs. Extensions may be granted by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis.

E. *Documentation Requirements for Submitted Plans.* The documentation requirements described in this section may be modified, expanded, or reduced by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis. For example, the requirements may be reduced for those central services which have little or no impact on Federal awards. Conversely, if a review of a plan indicates that certain additional information is needed, and will likely be needed in future years, it may be routinely requested in future plan submissions. Items marked with an asterisk (\*) should be submitted only once; subsequent plans should merely indicate any changes since the last plan.

1. General. All proposed plans must be accompanied by the following: An organization chart sufficiently detailed to show operations including the central service activities of the State/local government whether or not they are shown as benefiting from central service functions; a copy of the Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (or a copy of the Executive Budget if budgeted costs are being proposed) to support the allowable costs of each central service activity included in the plan; and, a certification (see subsection 4.) that the plan was prepared in accordance with this and other appendices to this part, contains only allowable costs, and was prepared in a manner that treated similar costs consistently among the various Federal awards and between Federal and non-Federal awards/activities.



2. Allocated central services. For each allocated central service, the plan must also include the following: A brief description of the service\*, an identification of the unit rendering the service and the operating agencies receiving the service, the items of expense included in the cost of the service, the method used to distribute the cost of the service to benefitted agencies, and a summary schedule showing the allocation of each service to the specific benefitted agencies. If any self-insurance funds or fringe benefits costs are treated as allocated (rather than billed) central services, documentation discussed in subsections 3.b. and c. shall also be included.

3. Billed services.

a. General. The information described below shall be provided for all billed central services, including internal service funds, self-insurance funds, and fringe benefit funds.

b. Internal service funds.

(1) For each internal service fund or similar activity with an operating budget of \$5 million or more, the plan shall include: A brief description of each service; a balance sheet for each fund based on individual accounts contained in the governmental unit's accounting system; a revenue/expenses statement, with revenues broken out by source, e.g. , regular billings, interest earned, etc.; a listing of all non-operating transfers (as defined by Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP)) into and out of the fund; a description of the procedures (methodology) used to charge the costs of each service to users, including how billing rates are determined; a schedule of current rates; and, a schedule comparing total revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service to the allowable costs of the service, as determined under this and other appendices of this part, with an explanation of how variances will be handled.

(2) Revenues shall consist of all revenues generated by the service, including unbilled and uncollected revenues. If some users were not billed for the services (or were not billed at the full rate for that class of users), a schedule showing the full imputed revenues associated with these users shall be provided. Expenses shall be broken out by object cost categories ( e.g. , salaries, supplies, etc.).

c. Self-insurance funds. For each self-insurance fund, the plan shall include: The fund balance sheet; a statement of revenue and expenses including a summary of billings and claims paid by agency; a listing of all non-operating transfers into and out of the fund; the type(s) of risk(s) covered by the fund ( e.g. , automobile liability, workers' compensation, etc.); an explanation of how the level of fund contributions are determined, including a copy of the current actuarial report (with the actuarial assumptions used) if the contributions are determined on an actuarial basis; and, a description of the procedures used to charge or allocate fund contributions to benefitted activities. Reserve levels in excess of claims submitted and adjudicated but not paid, submitted but not adjudicated, and incurred but not submitted must be identified and explained.

d. Fringe benefits. For fringe benefit costs, the plan shall include: A listing of fringe benefits provided to covered employees, and the overall annual cost of each type of benefit; current fringe benefit policies\*; and procedures used to charge or allocate the costs of the benefits to benefitted activities. In addition, for pension and post-retirement health insurance plans, the following information shall be provided: the governmental unit's funding policies, e.g. , legislative bills, trust agreements, or State-mandated contribution rules, if different from actuarially determined rates; the pension plan's costs accrued for the year; the amount funded, and date(s) of funding; a copy of the current actuarial report (including the actuarial assumptions); the plan trustee's report; and, a schedule from the activity showing the value of the interest cost associated with late funding.

4. Required certification. Each central service cost allocation plan will be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

CERTIFICATE OF COST ALLOCATION PLAN

This is to certify that I have reviewed the cost allocation plan submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish cost allocations or billings for [identify period covered by plan] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of 2 CFR Part 225, Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87), and the Federal award(s) to which they apply. Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the awards to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

. Governmental Unit:\_\_\_\_\_

. Signature:\_\_\_\_\_

. Name of Official:\_\_\_\_\_

. Title:\_\_\_\_\_

. Date of Execution:\_\_\_\_\_

F. Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans.

1. All proposed central service cost allocation plans that are required to be submitted will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the Federal cognizant agency on a timely basis. The cognizant agency will review the proposal within six months of receipt of the proposal and either negotiate/approve the proposal or advise the governmental unit of the



additional documentation needed to support/evaluate the proposed plan or the changes required to make the proposal acceptable. Once an agreement with the governmental unit has been reached, the agreement will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies, unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal funding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special consideration, the funding agency will, prior to the time the plans are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency.

2. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The results of the negotiation shall be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

3. Negotiated cost allocation plans based on a proposal later found to have included costs that: Are unallowable as specified by law or regulation, as identified in Appendix B of this part, or by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards, shall be adjusted, or a refund shall be made at the option of the Federal cognizant agency. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the plans and do not constitute a reopening of the negotiation.

#### *G. Other Policies.*

1. Billed central service activities. Each billed central service activity must separately account for all revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service, expenses incurred to furnish the service, and profit/loss.

2. Working capital reserves. Internal service funds are dependent upon a reasonable level of working capital reserve to operate from one billing cycle to the next. Charges by an internal service activity to provide for the establishment and maintenance of a reasonable level of working capital reserve, in addition to the full recovery of costs, are allowable. A working capital reserve as part of retained earnings of up to 60 days cash expenses for normal operating purposes is considered reasonable. A working capital reserve exceeding 60 days may be approved by the cognizant Federal agency in exceptional cases.

3. Carry-forward adjustments of allocated central service costs. Allocated central service costs are usually negotiated and approved for a future fiscal year on a "fixed with carry-forward" basis. Under this procedure, the fixed amounts for the future year covered by agreement are not subject to adjustment for that year. However, when the actual costs of the year involved become known, the differences between the fixed amounts previously approved and the actual costs will be carried forward and used as an adjustment to the fixed amounts established for a later year. This "carry-forward" procedure applies to all central services whose costs were fixed in the approved plan. However, a carry-forward adjustment is not permitted, for a central service activity that was not included in the approved plan, or for unallowable costs that must be reimbursed immediately.

4. Adjustments of billed central services. Billing rates used to charge Federal awards shall be based on the estimated costs of providing the services, including an estimate of the allocable central service costs. A comparison of the revenue generated by each billed service (including total revenues whether or not billed or collected) to the actual allowable costs of the service will be made at least annually, and an adjustment will be made for the difference between the revenue and the allowable costs. These adjustments will be made through one of the following adjustment methods: A cash refund to the Federal Government for the Federal share of the adjustment, credits to the amounts charged to the individual programs, adjustments to future billing rates, or adjustments to allocated central service costs. Adjustments to allocated central services will not be permitted where the total amount of the adjustment for a particular service (Federal share and non-Federal) share exceeds \$500,000.

5. Records retention. All central service cost allocation plans and related documentation used as a basis for claiming costs under Federal awards must be retained for audit in accordance with the records retention requirements contained in the Common Rule.

6. Appeals. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.

7. OMB assistance. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

 [Back to Top](#)

## **Appendix D to Part 225—Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans**

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### A. General

#### B. Definitions

1. State public assistance agency
2. State public assistance agency costs

#### C. Policy

#### D. Submission, Documentation, and Approval of Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

#### E. Review of Implementation of Approved Plans



F. Unallowable Costs

A. *General.* Federally-financed programs administered by State public assistance agencies are funded predominately by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). In support of its stewardship requirements, HHS has published requirements for the development, documentation, submission, negotiation, and approval of public assistance cost allocation plans in Subpart E of 45 CFR part 95. All administrative costs (direct and indirect) are normally charged to Federal awards by implementing the public assistance cost allocation plan. This appendix extends these requirements to all Federal agencies whose programs are administered by a State public assistance agency. Major federally-financed programs typically administered by State public assistance agencies include: Temporary Assistance to Needy Families (TANF), Medicaid, Food Stamps, Child Support Enforcement, Adoption Assistance and Foster Care, and Social Services Block Grant.

B. *Definitions.*

1. "State public assistance agency" means a State agency administering or supervising the administration of one or more public assistance programs operated by the State as identified in Subpart E of 45 CFR part 95. For the purpose of this appendix, these programs include all programs administered by the State public assistance agency.

2. "State public assistance agency costs" means all costs incurred by, or allocable to, the State public assistance agency, except expenditures for financial assistance, medical vendor payments, food stamps, and payments for services and goods provided directly to program recipients.

C. *Policy.* State public assistance agencies will develop, document and implement, and the Federal Government will review, negotiate, and approve, public assistance cost allocation plans in accordance with Subpart E of 45 CFR part 95. The plan will include all programs administered by the State public assistance agency. Where a letter of approval or disapproval is transmitted to a State public assistance agency in accordance with Subpart E, the letter will apply to all Federal agencies and programs. The remaining sections of this appendix (except for the requirement for certification) summarize the provisions of Subpart E of 45 CFR part 95.

D. *Submission, Documentation, and Approval of Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans.*

1. State public assistance agencies are required to promptly submit amendments to the cost allocation plan to HHS for review and approval.

2. Under the coordination process outlined in subsection E, affected Federal agencies will review all new plans and plan amendments and provide comments, as appropriate, to HHS. The effective date of the plan or plan amendment will be the first day of the quarter following the submission of the plan or amendment, unless another date is specifically approved by HHS. HHS, as the cognizant agency acting on behalf of all affected Federal agencies, will, as necessary, conduct negotiations with the State public assistance agency and will inform the State agency of the action taken on the plan or plan amendment.

E. *Review of Implementation of Approved Plans.*

1. Since public assistance cost allocation plans are of a narrative nature, the review during the plan approval process consists of evaluating the appropriateness of the proposed groupings of costs (cost centers) and the related allocation bases. As such, the Federal Government needs some assurance that the cost allocation plan has been implemented as approved. This is accomplished by reviews by the funding agencies, single audits, or audits conducted by the cognizant audit agency.

2. Where inappropriate charges affecting more than one funding agency are identified, the cognizant HHS cost negotiation office will be advised and will take the lead in resolving the issue(s) as provided for in Subpart E of 45 CFR part 95.

3. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan or from a disallowance involving two or more funding agencies, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures set out in 45 CFR part 75. Disputes involving only one funding agency will be resolved in accordance with the funding agency's appeal process.

4. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, the Office of Management and Budget will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

F. *Unallowable Costs.* Claims developed under approved cost allocation plans will be based on allowable costs as identified in 2 CFR part 225. Where unallowable costs have been claimed and reimbursed, they will be refunded to the program that reimbursed the unallowable cost using one of the following methods: a cash refund, offset to a subsequent claim, or credits to the amounts charged to individual awards.

 [Back to Top](#)

Appendix E to Part 225—State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. General

B. Definitions

1. Indirect cost rate proposal



2. Indirect cost rate
3. Indirect cost pool
4. Base
5. Predetermined rate
6. Fixed rate
7. Provisional rate
8. Final rate
9. Base period

#### C. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates

1. General
2. Simplified method
3. Multiple allocation base method
4. Special indirect cost rates

#### D. Submission and Documentation of Proposals

1. Submission of indirect cost rate proposals
2. Documentation of proposals
3. Required certification

#### E. Negotiation and Approval of Rates

#### F. Other Policies

1. Fringe benefit rates
2. Billed services provided by the grantee agency
3. Indirect cost allocations not using rates
4. Appeals
5. Collections of unallowable costs and erroneous payments
6. OMB assistance

#### A. *General.*

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint purposes. These costs benefit more than one cost objective and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to Federal awards and other activities as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefitted cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to a Federal award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost.

2. Indirect costs include the indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and the costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan (as described in Appendix C to this part) and not otherwise treated as direct costs.

3. Indirect costs are normally charged to Federal awards by the use of an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) is usually necessary for each department or agency of the governmental unit claiming indirect costs under Federal awards. Guidelines and illustrations of indirect cost proposals are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government." A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20401.

4. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of governmental units, the types of costs which may be classified as indirect costs cannot be specified in all situations. However, typical examples of indirect costs may include certain State/local-wide central service costs, general administration of the grantee department or agency, accounting and personnel services performed within the grantee department or agency, depreciation or use allowances on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities, etc.

5. This appendix does not apply to State public assistance agencies. These agencies should refer instead to Appendix D to this part.

#### B. *Definitions.*



1. "Indirect cost rate proposal" means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or subdivision thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate.

2. "Indirect cost rate" is a device for determining in a reasonable manner the proportion of indirect costs each program should bear. It is the ratio (expressed as a percentage) of the indirect costs to a direct cost base.

3. "Indirect cost pool" is the accumulated costs that jointly benefit two or more programs or other cost objectives.

4. "Base" means the accumulated direct costs (normally either total direct salaries and wages or total direct costs exclusive of any extraordinary or distorting expenditures) used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The direct cost base selected should result in each award bearing a fair share of the indirect costs in reasonable relation to the benefits received from the costs.

5. "Predetermined rate" means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the governmental unit's fiscal year. This rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. Except under very unusual circumstances, a predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment. (Because of legal constraints, predetermined rates are not permitted for Federal contracts; they may, however, be used for grants or cooperative agreements.) Predetermined rates may not be used by governmental units that have not submitted and negotiated the rate with the cognizant agency. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect costs during the ensuing accounting periods.

6. "Fixed rate" means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual, allowable costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

7. "Provisional rate" means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a "final" rate for that period.

8. "Final rate" means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual allowable costs of the period. A final audited rate is not subject to adjustment.

9. "Base period" for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to activities performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the governmental unit's fiscal year, but in any event, shall be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of costs.

#### *C. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates.*

##### *1. General.*

a. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from the indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures as described in subsection 2 of this appendix.

b. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, the allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in subsections 2, 3 and 4 of this appendix.

##### *2. Simplified method.*

a. Where a grantee agency's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by classifying the grantee agency's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function encompassing a number of individual projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to that department or agency is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs shall exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs must be included in the direct costs if they represent activities to which indirect costs are properly allocable.

c. The distribution base may be total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such as pass-through funds, major subcontracts, etc.), direct salaries and wages, or another base which results in an equitable distribution.

##### *3. Multiple allocation base method.*

a. Where a grantee agency's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, such costs shall be accumulated into separate cost groupings. Each grouping shall then be allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits.



b. The cost groupings should be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping should constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of the functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The number of separate groupings should be held within practical limits, taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision needed.

c. Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefitted functions. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefitted, the allocation shall be made in that manner. When the expenses in a grouping are more general in nature, the allocation should be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal Government and the governmental unit. In general, any cost element or related factor associated with the governmental unit's activities is potentially adaptable for use as an allocation base provided that: it can readily be expressed in terms of dollars or other quantitative measures (total direct costs, direct salaries and wages, staff hours applied, square feet used, hours of usage, number of documents processed, population served, and the like), and it is common to the benefitted functions during the base period.

d. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with subsection 4, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function shall be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool shall then be distributed to individual Federal awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

e. The distribution base used in computing the indirect cost rate for each function may be total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items such as pass-through funds, major subcontracts, etc.), direct salaries and wages, or another base which results in an equitable distribution. An indirect cost rate should be developed for each separate indirect cost pool developed. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage relationship between the particular indirect cost pool and the distribution base identified with that pool.

#### 4. Special indirect cost rates.

a. In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of a grantee department or agency or for each major function of the agency may not be appropriate. It may not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular program or group of programs. The factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular award is carried out in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to that award. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided that: the rate differs significantly from the rate which would have been developed under subsections 2. and 3. of this appendix, and the award to which the rate would apply is material in amount.

b. Although 2 CFR part 225 adopts the concept of the full allocation of indirect costs, there are some Federal statutes which restrict the reimbursement of certain indirect costs. Where such restrictions exist, it may be necessary to develop a special rate for the affected award. Where a "restricted rate" is required, the procedure for developing a non-restricted rate will be used except for the additional step of the elimination from the indirect cost pool those costs for which the law prohibits reimbursement.

#### *D. Submission and Documentation of Proposals.*

##### 1. Submission of indirect cost rate proposals.

a. All departments or agencies of the governmental unit desiring to claim indirect costs under Federal awards must prepare an indirect cost rate proposal and related documentation to support those costs. The proposal and related documentation must be retained for audit in accordance with the records retention requirements contained in the Common Rule.

b. A governmental unit for which a cognizant agency assignment has been specifically designated must submit its indirect cost rate proposal to its cognizant agency. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) will periodically publish lists of governmental units identifying the appropriate Federal cognizant agencies. The cognizant agency for all governmental units or agencies not identified by OMB will be determined based on the Federal agency providing the largest amount of Federal funds. In these cases, a governmental unit must develop an indirect cost proposal in accordance with the requirements of 2 CFR 225 and maintain the proposal and related supporting documentation for audit. These governmental units are not required to submit their proposals unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency. Where a local government only receives funds as a sub-recipient, the primary recipient will be responsible for negotiating and/or monitoring the sub-recipient's plan.

c. Each Indian tribal government desiring reimbursement of indirect costs must submit its indirect cost proposal to the Department of the Interior (its cognizant Federal agency).

d. Indirect cost proposals must be developed (and, when required, submitted) within six months after the close of the governmental unit's fiscal year, unless an exception is approved by the cognizant Federal agency. If the proposed central service cost allocation plan for the same period has not been approved by that time, the indirect cost proposal may be prepared including an amount for central services that is based on the latest federally-approved central service cost allocation plan. The difference between these central service amounts and the amounts ultimately approved will be compensated for by an adjustment in a subsequent period.

##### 2. Documentation of proposals. The following shall be included with each indirect cost proposal:

a. The rates proposed, including subsidiary work sheets and other relevant data, cross referenced and reconciled to



the financial data noted in subsection b of this appendix. Allocated central service costs will be supported by the summary table included in the approved central service cost allocation plan. This summary table is not required to be submitted with the indirect cost proposal if the central service cost allocation plan for the same fiscal year has been approved by the cognizant agency and is available to the funding agency.

b. A copy of the financial data (financial statements, comprehensive annual financial report, executive budgets, accounting reports, etc.) upon which the rate is based. Adjustments resulting from the use of unaudited data will be recognized, where appropriate, by the Federal cognizant agency in a subsequent proposal.

c. The approximate amount of direct base costs incurred under Federal awards. These costs should be broken out between salaries and wages and other direct costs.

d. A chart showing the organizational structure of the agency during the period for which the proposal applies, along with a functional statement(s) noting the duties and/or responsibilities of all units that comprise the agency. (Once this is submitted, only revisions need be submitted with subsequent proposals.)

3. Required certification. Each indirect cost rate proposal shall be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

#### CERTIFICATE OF INDIRECT COSTS

This is to certify that I have reviewed the indirect cost rate proposal submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect costs rates for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal award(s) to which they apply and 2 CFR part 225, Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87). Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently and the Federal Government will be notified of any accounting changes that would affect the predetermined rate.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Official: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Execution: \_\_\_\_\_

#### E. Negotiation and Approval of Rates.

1. Indirect cost rates will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the cognizant Federal agency on a timely basis. Once a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal funding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special indirect cost rates, the funding agency will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant Federal agency.

2. The use of predetermined rates, if allowed, is encouraged where the cognizant agency has reasonable assurance based on past experience and reliable projection of the grantee agency's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on actual costs. Long-term agreements utilizing predetermined rates extending over two or more years are encouraged, where appropriate.

3. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute, or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The agreed upon rates shall be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

4. Refunds shall be made if proposals are later found to have included costs that are unallowable as specified by law or regulation, as identified in Appendix B to this part, or by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards. These adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (predetermined, final, fixed, or provisional).

#### F. Other Policies.

1. Fringe benefit rates. If overall fringe benefit rates are not approved for the governmental unit as part of the central service cost allocation plan, these rates will be reviewed, negotiated and approved for individual grantee agencies during the indirect cost negotiation process. In these cases, a proposed fringe benefit rate computation should accompany the indirect cost proposal. If fringe benefit rates are not used at the grantee agency level ( *i.e.* , the agency specifically identifies fringe benefit costs to individual employees), the governmental unit should so advise the cognizant agency.

2. Billed services provided by the grantee agency. In some cases, governmental units provide and bill for services similar to those covered by central service cost allocation plans ( *e.g.* , computer centers). Where this occurs, the governmental unit should be guided by the requirements in Appendix C to this part relating to the development of billing



rates and documentation requirements, and should advise the cognizant agency of any billed services. Reviews of these types of services (including reviews of costing/billing methodology, profits or losses, etc.) will be made on a case-by-case basis as warranted by the circumstances involved.

3. Indirect cost allocations not using rates. In certain situations, a governmental unit, because of the nature of its awards, may be required to develop a cost allocation plan that distributes indirect (and, in some cases, direct) costs to the specific funding sources. In these cases, a narrative cost allocation methodology should be developed, documented, maintained for audit, or submitted, as appropriate, to the cognizant agency for review, negotiation, and approval.

4. Appeals. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate (or other rate) between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.

5. Collection of unallowable costs and erroneous payments. Costs specifically identified as unallowable and charged to Federal awards either directly or indirectly will be refunded (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations).

6. OMB assistance. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

 [Back to Top](#)

---

For questions or comments regarding e-CFR editorial content, features, or design, email [ecfr@nara.gov](mailto:ecfr@nara.gov).  
For questions concerning e-CFR programming and delivery issues, email [webteam@gpo.gov](mailto:webteam@gpo.gov).



**FDsys:****GPO's Federal Digital System**

About FDsys  
 Search Government Publications  
 Browse Government Publications

- [Browse](#)
- [Simple Search](#)
- [Advanced Search](#)
  - \* [Boolean](#)
  - \* [Proximity](#)
- [Search History](#)
- [Search Tips](#)
- [Corrections](#)
- [Latest Updates](#)
- [User Info](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Agency List](#)
- [Incorporation by Reference](#)
- [e-CFR Main Page](#)

**Related Resources**

Download the **Code of Federal Regulations in XML**.

The **Electronic Code of Federal Regulations (e-CFR)** is a regularly updated, unofficial editorial compilation of CFR material and Federal Register amendments produced by the National Archives and Records Administration's Office of the Federal Register (OFR) and the Government Printing Office.

Parallel Table of Authorities and Rules for the Code of Federal Regulations and the United States Code  
[Text](#) | [PDF](#)

Find, review, and submit comments on Federal rules that are open for comment and published in the Federal Register using [Regulations.gov](#).

**Purchase individual CFR titles** from the U.S. Government Online Bookstore.

Find issues of the CFR (including issues prior to 1996) at a local **Federal depository library**.

[1]

**ELECTRONIC CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS**

**As of October 9, 2012, the e-CFR resides at a new URL. Please reset your bookmarks, favorites, links and desktop shortcuts to: [www.ecfr.gov](http://www.ecfr.gov).**

**e-CFR Data is current as of November 9, 2012**

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

Title 2: Grants and Agreements

**PART 230—COST PRINCIPLES FOR NON-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS (OMB CIRCULAR A-122)****Contents**

[§ 230.5 Purpose.](#)  
[§ 230.10 Scope.](#)  
[§ 230.15 Policy.](#)  
[§ 230.20 Applicability.](#)  
[§ 230.25 Definitions.](#)  
[§ 230.30 OMB responsibilities.](#)  
[§ 230.35 Federal agency responsibilities.](#)  
[§ 230.40 Effective date of changes.](#)  
[§ 230.45 Relationship to previous issuance.](#)  
[§ 230.50 Information contact.](#)  
[Appendix A to Part 230—General Principles](#)  
[Appendix B to Part 230—Selected Items of Cost](#)  
[Appendix C to Part 230—Non-Profit Organizations Not Subject to This Part](#)

AUTHORITY: 31 U.S.C. 503; 31 U.S.C. 1111; 41 U.S.C. 405; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; E.O. 11541, 35 FR 10737, 3 CFR, 1966-1970, p. 939

SOURCE: 70 FR 51927, Aug. 31, 2005, unless otherwise noted.

[Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.5 Purpose.**

This part establishes principles for determining costs of grants, contracts and other agreements with non-profit organizations.

[Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.10 Scope.**

(a) This part does not apply to colleges and universities which are covered by 2 CFR part 220 Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (OMB Circular A-21); State, local, and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments which are covered by 2 CFR part 225 Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87); or hospitals.

(b) The principles deal with the subject of cost determination, and make no attempt to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of agency and non-profit organization participation in the financing of a particular project. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this part.

[Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.15 Policy.**



The principles are designed to provide that the Federal Government bear its fair share of costs except where restricted or prohibited by law. The principles do not attempt to prescribe the extent of cost sharing or matching on grants, contracts, or other agreements. However, such cost sharing or matching shall not be accomplished through arbitrary limitations on individual cost elements by Federal agencies.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.20 Applicability.**

(a) These principles shall be used by all Federal agencies in determining the costs of work performed by non-profit organizations under grants, cooperative agreements, cost reimbursement contracts, and other contracts in which costs are used in pricing, administration, or settlement. All of these instruments are hereafter referred to as awards. The principles do not apply to awards under which an organization is not required to account to the Federal Government for actual costs incurred.

(b) All cost reimbursement subawards (subgrants, subcontracts, etc.) are subject to those Federal cost principles applicable to the particular organization concerned. Thus, if a subaward is to a non-profit organization, this part shall apply; if a subaward is to a commercial organization, the cost principles applicable to commercial concerns shall apply; if a subaward is to a college or university, 2 CFR part 220 shall apply; if a subaward is to a State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government, 2 CFR part 225 shall apply.

(c) Exclusion of some non-profit organizations. Some non-profit organizations, because of their size and nature of operations, can be considered to be similar to commercial concerns for purpose of applicability of cost principles. Such non-profit organizations shall operate under Federal cost principles applicable to commercial concerns. A listing of these organizations is contained in appendix C to this part. Other organizations may be added from time to time.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.25 Definitions.**

(a) Non-profit organization means any corporation, trust, association, cooperative, or other organization which:

- (1) Is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest;
- (2) Is not organized primarily for profit; and

(3) Uses its net proceeds to maintain, improve, and/or expand its operations. For this purpose, the term "non-profit organization" excludes colleges and universities; hospitals; State, local, and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments; and those non-profit organizations which are excluded from coverage of this part in accordance with § 230.20(c).

(b) Prior approval means securing the awarding agency's permission in advance to incur cost for those items that are designated as requiring prior approval by the part and its appendices. Generally this permission will be in writing. Where an item of cost requiring prior approval is specified in the budget of an award, approval of the budget constitutes approval of that cost.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.30 OMB responsibilities.**

OMB may grant exceptions to the requirements of this part when permissible under existing law. However, in the interest of achieving maximum uniformity, exceptions will be permitted only in highly unusual circumstances.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.35 Federal agency responsibilities.**

The head of each Federal agency that awards and administers grants and agreements subject to this part is responsible for requesting approval from and/or consulting with OMB (as applicable) for deviations from the guidance in the appendices to this part and performing the applicable functions specified in the appendices to this part.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.40 Effective date of changes.**

The provisions of this part are effective August 31, 2005. Implementation shall be phased in by incorporating the provisions into new awards made after the start of the organization's next fiscal year. For existing awards, the new principles may be applied if an organization and the cognizant Federal agency agree. Earlier implementation, or a delay in implementation of individual provisions, is also permitted by mutual agreement between an organization and the



cognizant Federal agency.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.45 Relationship to previous issuance.**

(a) The guidance in this part previously was issued as OMB Circular A-122. Appendix A to this part contains the guidance that was in Attachment A (general principles) to the OMB circular; Appendix B contains the guidance that was in Attachment B (selected items of cost) to the OMB circular; and Appendix C contains the information that was in Attachment C (non-profit organizations not subject to the Circular) to the OMB circular.

(b) Historically, OMB Circular A-122 superseded cost principles issued by individual agencies for non-profit organizations.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 230.50 Information contact.**

Further information concerning this part may be obtained by contacting the Office of Federal Financial Management, OMB, Washington, DC 20503, telephone (202) 395-3993.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Appendix A to Part 230—General Principles**

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- A. Basic Considerations
  - 1. Composition of total costs
  - 2. Factors affecting allowability of costs
  - 3. Reasonable costs
  - 4. Allocable costs
  - 5. Applicable credits
  - 6. Advance understandings
  - 7. Conditional exemptions
- B. Direct Costs
- C. Indirect Costs
- D. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates
  - 1. General
  - 2. Simplified allocation method
  - 3. Multiple allocation base method
  - 4. Direct allocation method
  - 5. Special indirect cost rates
- E. Negotiation and Approval of Indirect Cost Rates
  - 1. Definitions
  - 2. Negotiation and approval of rates

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

**A. Basic Considerations**

- 1. Composition of total costs. The total cost of an award is the sum of the allowable direct and allocable indirect costs less any applicable credits.
- 2. Factors affecting allowability of costs. To be allowable under an award, costs must meet the following general criteria:



- a. Be reasonable for the performance of the award and be allocable thereto under these principles.
  - b. Conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles or in the award as to types or amount of cost items.
  - c. Be consistent with policies and procedures that apply uniformly to both federally-financed and other activities of the organization.
  - d. Be accorded consistent treatment.
  - e. Be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).
  - f. Not be included as a cost or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of any other federally-financed program in either the current or a prior period.
  - g. Be adequately documented.
3. Reasonable costs. A cost is reasonable if, in its nature or amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the costs. The question of the reasonableness of specific costs must be scrutinized with particular care in connection with organizations or separate divisions thereof which receive the preponderance of their support from awards made by Federal agencies. In determining the reasonableness of a given cost, consideration shall be given to:
  - a. Whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the organization or the performance of the award.
  - b. The restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as generally accepted sound business practices, arms length bargaining, Federal and State laws and regulations, and terms and conditions of the award.
  - c. Whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances, considering their responsibilities to the organization, its members, employees, and clients, the public at large, and the Federal Government.
  - d. Significant deviations from the established practices of the organization which may unjustifiably increase the award costs.
4. Allocable costs. a. A cost is allocable to a particular cost objective, such as a grant, contract, project, service, or other activity, in accordance with the relative benefits received. A cost is allocable to a Federal award if it is treated consistently with other costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances and if it:
  - (1) Is incurred specifically for the award.
  - (2) Benefits both the award and other work and can be distributed in reasonable proportion to the benefits received, or
  - (3) Is necessary to the overall operation of the organization, although a direct relationship to any particular cost objective cannot be shown.
- b. Any cost allocable to a particular award or other cost objective under these principles may not be shifted to other Federal awards to overcome funding deficiencies, or to avoid restrictions imposed by law or by the terms of the award.
5. Applicable credits. a. The term applicable credits refers to those receipts, or reduction of expenditures which operate to offset or reduce expense items that are allocable to awards as direct or indirect costs. Typical examples of such transactions are: Purchase discounts, rebates or allowances, recoveries or indemnities on losses, insurance refunds, and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. To the extent that such credits accruing or received by the organization relate to allowable cost, they shall be credited to the Federal Government either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate.
- b. In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal Government to finance organizational activities or service operations should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items against related expenditures should be applied by the organization in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to Federal awards for services rendered whenever the facilities or other resources used in providing such services have been financed directly, in whole or in part, by Federal funds.
- c. For rules covering program income (i.e., gross income earned from federally-supported activities) see § 215.24 of 2 CFR part 215 Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-110).
6. Advance understandings. Under any given award, the reasonableness and allocability of certain items of costs may be difficult to determine. This is particularly true in connection with organizations that receive a preponderance of their support from Federal agencies. In order to avoid subsequent disallowance or dispute based on unreasonableness or nonallocability, it is often desirable to seek a written agreement with the cognizant or awarding agency in advance of the incurrence of special or unusual costs. The absence of an advance agreement on any element of cost will not, in itself, affect the reasonableness or allocability of that element.
7. Conditional exemptions. a. OMB authorizes conditional exemption from OMB administrative requirements and cost principles for certain Federal programs with statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding, that are identified by a Federal agency and approved by the head of the Executive department or establishment. A Federal agency shall consult with OMB during its consideration of whether to grant such an exemption.



b. To promote efficiency in State and local program administration, when Federal non-entitlement programs with common purposes have specific statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding and where most of the State agency's resources come from non-Federal sources, Federal agencies may exempt these covered State-administered, non-entitlement grant programs from certain OMB grants management requirements. The exemptions would be from all but the allocability of costs provisions of Appendix A, subsection C.e. of 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87); Appendix A, Section C.4. of 2 CFR part 220 (OMB Circular A-21); Section A.4. of this appendix; and from all of the administrative requirements provisions of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110) and the agencies' grants management common rule.

c. When a Federal agency provides this flexibility, as a prerequisite to a State's exercising this option, a State must adopt its own written fiscal and administrative requirements for expending and accounting for all funds, which are consistent with the provisions of 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87), and extend such policies to all subrecipients. These fiscal and administrative requirements must be sufficiently specific to ensure that: Funds are used in compliance with all applicable Federal statutory and regulatory provisions, costs are reasonable and necessary for operating these programs, and funds are not to be used for general expenses required to carry out other responsibilities of a State or its subrecipients.

#### B. Direct Costs

1. Direct costs are those that can be identified specifically with a particular final cost objective, i.e., a particular award, project, service, or other direct activity of an organization. However, a cost may not be assigned to an award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstance, has been allocated to an award as an indirect cost. Costs identified specifically with awards are direct costs of the awards and are to be assigned directly thereto. Costs identified specifically with other final cost objectives of the organization are direct costs of those cost objectives and are not to be assigned to other awards directly or indirectly.

2. Any direct cost of a minor amount may be treated as an indirect cost for reasons of practicality where the accounting treatment for such cost is consistently applied to all final cost objectives.

3. The cost of certain activities are not allowable as charges to Federal awards (see, for example, fundraising costs in paragraph 17 of Appendix B to this part). However, even though these costs are unallowable for purposes of computing charges to Federal awards, they nonetheless must be treated as direct costs for purposes of determining indirect cost rates and be allocated their share of the organization's indirect costs if they represent activities which include the salaries of personnel, occupy space, and benefit from the organization's indirect costs.

4. The costs of activities performed primarily as a service to members, clients, or the general public when significant and necessary to the organization's mission must be treated as direct costs whether or not allowable and be allocated an equitable share of indirect costs. Some examples of these types of activities include:

- a. Maintenance of membership rolls, subscriptions, publications, and related functions.
- b. Providing services and information to members, legislative or administrative bodies, or the public.
- c. Promotion, lobbying, and other forms of public relations.
- d. Meetings and conferences except those held to conduct the general administration of the organization.
- e. Maintenance, protection, and investment of special funds not used in operation of the organization.
- f. Administration of group benefits on behalf of members or clients, including life and hospital insurance, annuity or retirement plans, financial aid, etc.

#### C. Indirect Costs

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint objectives and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective. Direct cost of minor amounts may be treated as indirect costs under the conditions described in subparagraph B.2 of this appendix. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to awards or other work as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefiting cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to an award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to an award as a direct cost.

2. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of non-profit organizations, it is not possible to specify the types of cost which may be classified as indirect cost in all situations. However, typical examples of indirect cost for many non-profit organizations may include depreciation or use allowances on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities, and general administration and general expenses, such as the salaries and expenses of executive officers, personnel administration, and accounting.

3. Indirect costs shall be classified within two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration." "Facilities" is defined as depreciation and use allowances on buildings, equipment and capital improvement, interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, and operations and maintenance expenses. "Administration" is defined as general administration and general expenses such as the director's office, accounting, personnel, library expenses and all other types of expenditures not listed specifically under one of the subcategories of "Facilities" (including cross allocations from other pools, where applicable). See indirect cost rate reporting requirements in subparagraphs D.2.e and D.3.g of this appendix.

#### D. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates

1. General. a. Where a non-profit organization has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures, as described in subparagraph D.2 of



this appendix.

b. Where an organization has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefiting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. The determination of what constitutes an organization's major functions will depend on its purpose in being; the types of services it renders to the public, its clients, and its members; and the amount of effort it devotes to such activities as fundraising, public information and membership activities.

d. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in subparagraphs D.2 through 5 of this appendix.

e. The base period for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to work performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the organization's fiscal year but, in any event, shall be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of the costs.

2. Simplified allocation method. a. Where an organization's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by separating the organization's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where an organization has only one major function encompassing a number of individual projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to an organization is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs shall exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs which represent activities must be included in the direct costs under the conditions described in subparagraph B.3 of this appendix.

c. The distribution base may be total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such as major subcontracts or subgrants), direct salaries and wages, or other base which results in an equitable distribution. The distribution base shall generally exclude participant support costs as defined in paragraph 32 of Appendix B.

d. Except where a special rate(s) is required in accordance with subparagraph 5 of this appendix, the indirect cost rate developed under the above principles is applicable to all awards at the organization. If a special rate(s) is required, appropriate modifications shall be made in order to develop the special rate(s).

e. For an organization that receives more than \$10 million in Federal funding of direct costs in a fiscal year, a breakout of the indirect cost component into two broad categories, Facilities and Administration as defined in subparagraph C.3 of this appendix, is required. The rate in each case shall be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost category ( *i.e.* , Facilities or Administration) is of the distribution base identified with that category.

### 3. Multiple allocation base method.

a. General. Where an organization's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, indirect costs shall be accumulated into separate cost groupings, as described in subparagraph D.3.b of this appendix. Each grouping shall then be allocated individually to benefiting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits. The default allocation bases by cost pool are described in subparagraph D.3.c of this appendix.

b. Identification of indirect costs. Cost groupings shall be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping shall constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The groupings are classified within the two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration," as described in subparagraph C.3 of this appendix. The indirect cost pools are defined as follows:

(1) Depreciation and use allowances. The expenses under this heading are the portion of the costs of the organization's buildings, capital improvements to land and buildings, and equipment which are computed in accordance with paragraph 11 of Appendix B to this part ("Depreciation and use allowances").

(2) Interest. Interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements are computed in accordance with paragraph 23 of Appendix B to this part ("Interest").

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration, operation, maintenance, preservation, and protection of the organization's physical plant. They include expenses normally incurred for such items as: Janitorial and utility services; repairs and ordinary or normal alterations of buildings, furniture and equipment; care of grounds; maintenance and operation of buildings and other plant facilities; security; earthquake and disaster preparedness; environmental safety; hazardous waste disposal; property, liability and other insurance relating to property; space and capital leasing; facility planning and management; and, central receiving. The operation and maintenance expenses category shall also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, depreciation and use allowances, and interest costs.

(4) General administration and general expenses. (a) The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the overall general executive and administrative offices of the organization and other expenses of a general nature which do not relate solely to any major function of the organization. This category shall also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, operation and maintenance expense, depreciation and use allowances, and interest costs.



Examples of this category include central offices, such as the director's office, the office of finance, business services, budget and planning, personnel, safety and risk management, general counsel, management information systems, and library costs.

(b) In developing this cost pool, special care should be exercised to ensure that costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances are treated consistently as either direct or indirect costs. For example, salaries of technical staff, project supplies, project publication, telephone toll charges, computer costs, travel costs, and specialized services costs shall be treated as direct costs wherever identifiable to a particular program. The salaries and wages of administrative and pooled clerical staff should normally be treated as indirect costs. Direct charging of these costs may be appropriate where a major project or activity explicitly requires and budgets for administrative or clerical services and other individuals involved can be identified with the program or activity. Items such as office supplies, postage, local telephone costs, periodicals and memberships should normally be treated as indirect costs.

c. Allocation bases. Actual conditions shall be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefiting functions. The essential consideration in selecting a method or a base is that it is the one best suited for assigning the pool of costs to cost objectives in accordance with benefits derived; a traceable cause and effect relationship; or logic and reason, where neither the cause nor the effect of the relationship is determinable. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefited, the allocation shall be made in that manner. When the expenses in a cost grouping are more general in nature, the allocation shall be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal Government and the organization. The distribution shall be made in accordance with the bases described herein unless it can be demonstrated that the use of a different base would result in a more equitable allocation of the costs, or that a more readily available base would not increase the costs charged to sponsored awards. The results of special cost studies (such as an engineering utility study) shall not be used to determine and allocate the indirect costs to sponsored awards.

(1) Depreciation and use allowances. Depreciation and use allowances expenses shall be allocated in the following manner:

(a) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings used exclusively in the conduct of a single function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, shall be assigned to that function.

(b) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings used for more than one function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, shall be allocated to the individual functions performed in each building on the basis of usable square feet of space, excluding common areas, such as hallways, stairwells, and restrooms.

(c) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings, capital improvements and equipment related space ( e.g. , individual rooms, and laboratories) used jointly by more than one function (as determined by the users of the space) shall be treated as follows. The cost of each jointly used unit of space shall be allocated to the benefiting functions on the basis of either the employees and other users on a full-time equivalent (FTE) basis or salaries and wages of those individual functions benefiting from the use of that space; or organization-wide employee FTEs or salaries and wages applicable to the benefiting functions of the organization.

(d) Depreciation or use allowances on certain capital improvements to land, such as paved parking areas, fences, sidewalks, and the like, not included in the cost of buildings, shall be allocated to user categories on a FTE basis and distributed to major functions in proportion to the salaries and wages of all employees applicable to the functions.

(2) Interest. Interest costs shall be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation or use allowances on the buildings, equipment and capital equipments to which the interest relates.

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. Operation and maintenance expenses shall be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation and use allowances.

(4) General administration and general expenses. General administration and general expenses shall be allocated to benefiting functions based on modified total direct costs (MTDC), as described in subparagraph D.3.f of this appendix. The expenses included in this category could be grouped first according to major functions of the organization to which they render services or provide benefits. The aggregate expenses of each group shall then be allocated to benefiting functions based on MTDC.

d. Order of distribution. (1) Indirect cost categories consisting of depreciation and use allowances, interest, operation and maintenance, and general administration and general expenses shall be allocated in that order to the remaining indirect cost categories as well as to the major functions of the organization. Other cost categories could be allocated in the order determined to be most appropriate by the organization. When cross allocation of costs is made as provided in subparagraph D.3.d.(2) of this appendix, this order of allocation does not apply.

(2) Normally, an indirect cost category will be considered closed once it has been allocated to other cost objectives, and costs shall not be subsequently allocated to it. However, a cross allocation of costs between two or more indirect costs categories could be used if such allocation will result in a more equitable allocation of costs. If a cross allocation is used, an appropriate modification to the composition of the indirect cost categories is required.

e. Application of indirect cost rate or rates. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with subparagraph D.5 of this appendix, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function shall be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool shall then be distributed to individual awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

f. Distribution basis. Indirect costs shall be distributed to applicable sponsored awards and other benefiting activities within each major function on the basis of MTDC. MTDC consists of all salaries and wages, fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and subgrants and subcontracts up to the first \$25,000 of each subgrant or subcontract (regardless of the period covered by the subgrant or subcontract). Equipment, capital expenditures, charges for patient



care, rental costs and the portion in excess of \$25,000 shall be excluded from MTDC. Participant support costs shall generally be excluded from MTDC. Other items may only be excluded when the Federal cost cognizant agency determines that an exclusion is necessary to avoid a serious inequity in the distribution of indirect costs.

g. Individual Rate Components. An indirect cost rate shall be determined for each separate indirect cost pool developed. The rate in each case shall be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost pool is of the distribution base identified with that pool. Each indirect cost rate negotiation or determination agreement shall include development of the rate for each indirect cost pool as well as the overall indirect cost rate. The indirect cost pools shall be classified within two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration," as described in subparagraph C.3 of this appendix.

4. Direct allocation method. a. Some non-profit organizations treat all costs as direct costs except general administration and general expenses. These organizations generally separate their costs into three basic categories: General administration and general expenses, fundraising, and other direct functions (including projects performed under Federal awards). Joint costs, such as depreciation, rental costs, operation and maintenance of facilities, telephone expenses, and the like are prorated individually as direct costs to each category and to each award or other activity using a base most appropriate to the particular cost being prorated.

b. This method is acceptable, provided each joint cost is prorated using a base which accurately measures the benefits provided to each award or other activity. The bases must be established in accordance with reasonable criteria, and be supported by current data. This method is compatible with the Standards of Accounting and Financial Reporting for Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations issued jointly by the National Health Council, Inc., the National Assembly of Voluntary Health and Social Welfare Organizations, and the United Way of America.

c. Under this method, indirect costs consist exclusively of general administration and general expenses. In all other respects, the organization's indirect cost rates shall be computed in the same manner as that described in subparagraph D.2 of this appendix.

5. Special indirect cost rates. In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of an organization or for each major function of the organization may not be appropriate, since it would not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular segment of work. For this purpose, a particular segment of work may be that performed under a single award or it may consist of work under a group of awards performed in a common environment. These factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the scientific disciplines or technical skills involved, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular segment of work is performed in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to such work. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided it is determined that the rate differs significantly from that which would have been obtained under subparagraphs D.2, 3, and 4 of this appendix, and the volume of work to which the rate would apply is material.

#### E. Negotiation and Approval of Indirect Cost Rates

1. Definitions. As used in this section, the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

a. Cognizant agency means the Federal agency responsible for negotiating and approving indirect cost rates for a non-profit organization on behalf of all Federal agencies.

b. Predetermined rate means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the organization's fiscal year. The rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. A predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment.

c. Fixed rate means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

d. Final rate means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual costs of the period. A final rate is not subject to adjustment.

e. Provisional rate or billing rate means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on awards pending the establishment of a final rate for the period.

f. Indirect cost proposal means the documentation prepared by an organization to substantiate its claim for the reimbursement of indirect costs. This proposal provides the basis for the review and negotiation leading to the establishment of an organization's indirect cost rate.

g. Cost objective means a function, organizational subdivision, contract, grant, or other work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, projects, jobs and capitalized projects.

2. Negotiation and approval of rates. a. Unless different arrangements are agreed to by the agencies concerned, the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of awards with an organization will be designated as the cognizant agency for the negotiation and approval of the indirect cost rates and, where necessary, other rates such as fringe benefit and computer charge-out rates. Once an agency is assigned cognizance for a particular non-profit organization, the assignment will not be changed unless there is a major long-term shift in the dollar volume of the Federal awards to the organization. All concerned Federal agencies shall be given the opportunity to participate in the negotiation process but, after a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted by all Federal agencies. When a Federal agency has reason



- to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special indirect cost rates in accordance with subparagraph D.5 of this appendix, it will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency.
- b. A non-profit organization which has not previously established an indirect cost rate with a Federal agency shall submit its initial indirect cost proposal immediately after the organization is advised that an award will be made and, in no event, later than three months after the effective date of the award.
- c. Organizations that have previously established indirect cost rates must submit a new indirect cost proposal to the cognizant agency within six months after the close of each fiscal year.
- d. A predetermined rate may be negotiated for use on awards where there is reasonable assurance, based on past experience and reliable projection of the organization's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on the organization's actual costs.
- e. Fixed rates may be negotiated where predetermined rates are not considered appropriate. A fixed rate, however, shall not be negotiated if all or a substantial portion of the organization's awards are expected to expire before the carry-forward adjustment can be made; the mix of Federal and non-Federal work at the organization is too erratic to permit an equitable carry-forward adjustment; or the organization's operations fluctuate significantly from year to year.
- f. Provisional and final rates shall be negotiated where neither predetermined nor fixed rates are appropriate.
- g. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the non-profit organization. The cognizant agency shall distribute copies of the agreement to all concerned Federal agencies.
- h. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate between the cognizant agency and the non-profit organization, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.
- i. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance as required to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Appendix B to Part 230—Selected Items of Cost**

SELECTED ITEMS OF COST

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Advertising and public relations costs
2. Advisory councils
3. Alcoholic beverages
4. Audit costs and related services
5. Bad debts
6. Bonding costs
7. Communication costs
8. Compensation for personal services
9. Contingency provisions
10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringement
11. Depreciation and use allowances
12. Donations and contributions
13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs
14. Entertainment costs
15. Equipment and other capital expenditures
16. Fines and penalties
17. Fund raising and investment management costs
18. Gains and losses on depreciable assets
19. Goods or services for personal use
20. Housing and personal living expenses
21. Idle facilities and idle capacity



22. Insurance and indemnification
23. Interest
24. Labor relations costs
25. Lobbying
26. Losses on other sponsored agreements or contracts
27. Maintenance and repair costs
28. Materials and supplies costs
29. Meetings and conferences
30. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs
31. Organization costs
32. Page charges in professional journals
33. Participant support costs
34. Patent costs
35. Plant and homeland security costs
36. Pre-agreement costs
37. Professional services costs
38. Publication and printing costs
39. Rearrangement and alteration costs
40. Reconversion costs
41. Recruiting costs
42. Relocation costs
43. Rental costs of buildings and equipment
44. Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights
45. Selling and marketing
46. Specialized service facilities
47. Taxes
48. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements
49. Training costs
50. Transportation costs
51. Travel costs
52. Trustees

#### APPENDIX B TO PART 230—SELECTED ITEMS OF COST

Paragraphs 1 through 52 of this appendix provide principles to be applied in establishing the allowability of certain items of cost. These principles apply whether a cost is treated as direct or indirect. Failure to mention a particular item of cost is not intended to imply that it is unallowable; rather, determination as to allowability in each case should be based on the treatment or principles provided for similar or related items of cost.

1. Advertising and public relations costs. a. The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs. Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.

b. The term public relations includes community relations and means those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the non-profit organization or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.

c. The only allowable advertising costs are those which are solely for:

(1) The recruitment of personnel required for the performance by the non-profit organization of obligations arising under a Federal award (See also paragraph 41, Recruiting costs, and paragraph 42, Relocation costs, of this appendix);

(2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a Federal award;



(3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a Federal award except when non-profit organizations are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or

(4) Other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the Federal award.

d. The only allowable public relations costs are:

(1) Costs specifically required by the Federal award;

(2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of Federal awards (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the Federal award); or

(3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison necessary keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of Federal contract/grant awards, financial matters, etc.

e. Costs identified in subparagraphs c and d if incurred for more than one Federal award or for both sponsored work and other work of the non-profit organization, are allowable to the extent that the principles in Appendix A to this part, paragraphs B. ("Direct Costs") and C. ("Indirect Costs") are observed.

f. Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:

(1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in subparagraphs c, d, and e;

(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the non-profit organization, including:

(a) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;

(b) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and

(c) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the non-profit organization.

2. Advisory Councils. Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are allowable as a direct cost where authorized by the Federal awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to Federal awards.

3. Alcoholic beverages. Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

4. Audit costs and related services. a. The costs of audits required by, and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" are allowable. Also see 31 U.S.C. 7505(b) and section 230 ("Audit Costs") of Circular A-133.

b. Other audit costs are allowable if included in an indirect cost rate proposal, or if specifically approved by the awarding agency as a direct cost to an award.

c. The cost of agreed-upon procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients who are exempted from A-133 under section 200(d) are allowable, subject to the conditions listed in A-133, section 230 (b)(2).

5. Bad debts. Bad debts, including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectible accounts and other claims, related collection costs, and related legal costs, are unallowable.

6. Bonding costs. a. Bonding costs arise when the Federal Government requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the non-profit organization. They arise also in instances where the non-profit organization requires similar assurance. Included are such bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds.

b. Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms of the award are allowable.

c. Costs of bonding required by the non-profit organization in the general conduct of its operations are allowable to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

7. Communication costs. Costs incurred for telephone services, local and long distance telephone calls, telegrams, postage, messenger, electronic or computer transmittal services and the like are allowable.

8. Compensation for personal services. a. Definition. Compensation for personal services includes all compensation paid currently or accrued by the organization for services of employees rendered during the period of the award (except as otherwise provided in subparagraph 8.h of this appendix). It includes, but is not limited to, salaries, wages, director's and executive committee member's fees, incentive awards, fringe benefits, pension plan costs, allowances for off-site pay, incentive pay, location allowances, hardship pay, and cost of living differentials.

b. Allowability. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this paragraph, the costs of such compensation are allowable to the extent that:



(1) Total compensation to individual employees is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established policy of the organization consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities; and

(2) Charges to awards whether treated as direct or indirect costs are determined and supported as required in this paragraph.

c. Reasonableness. (1) When the organization is predominantly engaged in activities other than those sponsored by the Federal Government, compensation for employees on federally-sponsored work will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is consistent with that paid for similar work in the organization's other activities.

(2) When the organization is predominantly engaged in federally-sponsored activities and in cases where the kind of employees required for the Federal activities are not found in the organization's other activities, compensation for employees on federally-sponsored work will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is comparable to that paid for similar work in the labor markets in which the organization competes for the kind of employees involved.

d. Special considerations in determining allowability. Certain conditions require special consideration and possible limitations in determining costs under Federal awards where amounts or types of compensation appear unreasonable. Among such conditions are the following:

(1) Compensation to members of non-profit organizations, trustees, directors, associates, officers, or the immediate families thereof. Determination should be made that such compensation is reasonable for the actual personal services rendered rather than a distribution of earnings in excess of costs.

(2) Any change in an organization's compensation policy resulting in a substantial increase in the organization's level of compensation, particularly when it was concurrent with an increase in the ratio of Federal awards to other activities of the organization or any change in the treatment of allowability of specific types of compensation due to changes in Federal policy.

e. Unallowable costs. Costs which are unallowable under other paragraphs of this appendix shall not be allowable under this paragraph solely on the basis that they constitute personal compensation.

f. Overtime, extra-pay shift, and multi-shift premiums. Premiums for overtime, extra-pay shifts, and multi-shift work are allowable only with the prior approval of the awarding agency except:

(1) When necessary to cope with emergencies, such as those resulting from accidents, natural disasters, breakdowns of equipment, or occasional operational bottlenecks of a sporadic nature.

(2) When employees are performing indirect functions, such as administration, maintenance, or accounting.

(3) In the performance of tests, laboratory procedures, or other similar operations which are continuous in nature and cannot reasonably be interrupted or otherwise completed.

(4) When lower overall cost to the Federal Government will result.

g. Fringe benefits. (1) Fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as vacation leave, sick leave, military leave, and the like, are allowable, provided such costs are absorbed by all organization activities in proportion to the relative amount of time or effort actually devoted to each.

(2) Fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security, employee insurance, workmen's compensation insurance, pension plan costs (see subparagraph 8.h of this appendix), and the like, are allowable, provided such benefits are granted in accordance with established written organization policies. Such benefits whether treated as indirect costs or as direct costs, shall be distributed to particular awards and other activities in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits accruing to the individuals or group of employees whose salaries and wages are chargeable to such awards and other activities.

(3)(a) Provisions for a reserve under a self-insurance program for unemployment compensation or workers' compensation are allowable to the extent that the provisions represent reasonable estimates of the liabilities for such compensation, and the types of coverage, extent of coverage, and rates and premiums would have been allowable had insurance been purchased to cover the risks. However, provisions for self-insured liabilities which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made shall not exceed the present value of the liability.

(b) Where an organization follows a consistent policy of expensing actual payments to, or on behalf of, employees or former employees for unemployment compensation or workers' compensation, such payments are allowable in the year of payment with the prior approval of the awarding agency, provided they are allocated to all activities of the organization.

(4) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibility are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation. The costs of such insurance when the organization is named as beneficiary are unallowable.

h. Organization-furnished automobiles. That portion of the cost of organization-furnished automobiles that relates to personal use by employees (including transportation to and from work) is unallowable as fringe benefit or indirect costs regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees. These costs are allowable as direct costs to sponsored award when necessary for the performance of the sponsored award and approved by awarding agencies.

i. Pension plan costs. (1) Costs of the organization's pension plan which are incurred in accordance with the established policies of the organization are allowable, provided:



(a) Such policies meet the test of reasonableness;

(b) The methods of cost allocation are not discriminatory;

(c) The cost assigned to each fiscal year is determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), as prescribed in Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 8 issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants; and

(d) The costs assigned to a given fiscal year are funded for all plan participants within six months after the end of that year. However, increases to normal and past service pension costs caused by a delay in funding the actuarial liability beyond 30 days after each quarter of the year to which such costs are assignable are unallowable.

(2) Pension plan termination insurance premiums paid pursuant to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) of 1974 (Pub. L. 93-406) are allowable. Late payment charges on such premiums are unallowable.

(3) Excise taxes on accumulated funding deficiencies and other penalties imposed under ERISA are unallowable.

j. Incentive compensation. Incentive compensation to employees based on cost reduction, or efficient performance, suggestion awards, safety awards, etc., are allowable to the extent that the overall compensation is determined to be reasonable and such costs are paid or accrued pursuant to an agreement entered into in good faith between the organization and the employees before the services were rendered, or pursuant to an established plan followed by the organization so consistently as to imply, in effect, an agreement to make such payment.

k. Severance pay. (1) Severance pay, also commonly referred to as dismissal wages, is a payment in addition to regular salaries and wages, by organizations to workers whose employment is being terminated. Costs of severance pay are allowable only to the extent that in each case, it is required by:

(a) Law

(b) Employer-employee agreement

(c) Established policy that constitutes, in effect, an implied agreement on the organization's part, or

(d) Circumstances of the particular employment.

(2) Costs of severance payments are divided into two categories as follows:

(a) Actual normal turnover severance payments shall be allocated to all activities; or, where the organization provides for a reserve for normal severances, such method will be acceptable if the charge to current operations is reasonable in light of payments actually made for normal severances over a representative past period, and if amounts charged are allocated to all activities of the organization.

(b) Abnormal or mass severance pay is of such a conjectural nature that measurement of costs by means of an accrual will not achieve equity to both parties. Thus, accruals for this purpose are not allowable. However, the Federal Government recognizes its obligation to participate, to the extent of its fair share, in any specific payment. Thus, allowability will be considered on a case-by-case basis in the event or occurrence.

(c) Costs incurred in certain severance pay packages (commonly known as "a golden parachute" payment) which are in an amount in excess of the normal severance pay paid by the organization to an employee upon termination of employment and are paid to the employee contingent upon a change in management control over, or ownership of, the organization's assets are unallowable.

(d) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the organization outside the United States, to the extent that the amount exceeds the customary or prevailing practices for the organization in the United States are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by awarding agencies.

(e) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the organization outside the United States due to the termination of the foreign national as a result of the closing of, or curtailment of activities by, the organization in that country, are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by awarding agencies.

l. Training costs. See paragraph 49 of this appendix.

m. Support of salaries and wages.

(1) Charges to awards for salaries and wages, whether treated as direct costs or indirect costs, will be based on documented payrolls approved by a responsible official(s) of the organization. The distribution of salaries and wages to awards must be supported by personnel activity reports, as prescribed in subparagraph 8.m.(2) of this appendix, except when a substitute system has been approved in writing by the cognizant agency. (See subparagraph E.2 of Appendix A to this part.)

(2) Reports reflecting the distribution of activity of each employee must be maintained for all staff members (professionals and nonprofessionals) whose compensation is charged, in whole or in part, directly to awards. In addition, in order to support the allocation of indirect costs, such reports must also be maintained for other employees whose work involves two or more functions or activities if a distribution of their compensation between such functions or activities is needed in the determination of the organization's indirect cost rate(s) ( e.g. , an employee engaged part-time in indirect cost activities and part-time in a direct function). Reports maintained by non-profit organizations to satisfy these requirements must meet the following standards:

(a) The reports must reflect an after-the-fact determination of the actual activity of each employee. Budget



estimates ( *i.e.* , estimates determined before the services are performed) do not qualify as support for charges to awards.

(b) Each report must account for the total activity for which employees are compensated and which is required in fulfillment of their obligations to the organization.

(c) The reports must be signed by the individual employee, or by a responsible supervisory official having first hand knowledge of the activities performed by the employee, that the distribution of activity represents a reasonable estimate of the actual work performed by the employee during the periods covered by the reports.

(d) The reports must be prepared at least monthly and must coincide with one or more pay periods.

(3) Charges for the salaries and wages of nonprofessional employees, in addition to the supporting documentation described in subparagraphs (1) and (2), must also be supported by records indicating the total number of hours worked each day maintained in conformance with Department of Labor regulations implementing the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA) (29 CFR part 516). For this purpose, the term "nonprofessional employee" shall have the same meaning as "nonexempt employee," under FLSA.

(4) Salaries and wages of employees used in meeting cost sharing or matching requirements on awards must be supported in the same manner as salaries and wages claimed for reimbursement from awarding agencies.

9. Contingency provisions. Contributions to a contingency reserve or any similar provision made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to time, intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable. The term "contingency reserve" excludes self-insurance reserves (see Appendix B to this part, paragraphs 8.g.(3) and 22.a(2)(d)); pension funds (see paragraph 8.i); and reserves for normal severance pay (see paragraph 8.k.)

10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringement.

a. Definitions. (1) Conviction, as used herein, means a judgment or a conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon as a verdict or a plea, including a conviction due to a plea of *nolo contendere*.

(2) Costs include, but are not limited to, administrative and clerical expenses; the cost of legal services, whether performed by in-house or private counsel; and the costs of the services of accountants, consultants, or others retained by the organization to assist it; costs of employees, officers and trustees, and any similar costs incurred before, during, and after commencement of a judicial or administrative proceeding that bears a direct relationship to the proceedings.

(3) Fraud, as used herein, means acts of fraud corruption or attempts to defraud the Federal Government or to corrupt its agents, acts that constitute a cause for debarment or suspension (as specified in agency regulations), and acts which violate the False Claims Act, 31 U.S.C., sections 3729-3731, or the Anti-Kickback Act, 41 U.S.C., sections 51 and 54.

(4) Penalty does not include restitution, reimbursement, or compensatory damages.

(5) Proceeding includes an investigation.

b. (1) Except as otherwise described herein, costs incurred in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceeding (including filing of a false certification) commenced by the Federal Government, or a State, local or foreign government, are not allowable if the proceeding: Relates to a violation of, or failure to comply with, a Federal, State, local or foreign statute or regulation by the organization (including its agents and employees), and results in any of the following dispositions:

(a) In a criminal proceeding, a conviction.

(b) In a civil or administrative proceeding involving an allegation of fraud or similar misconduct, a determination of organizational liability.

(c) In the case of any civil or administrative proceeding, the imposition of a monetary penalty.

(d) A final decision by an appropriate Federal official to debar or suspend the organization, to rescind or void an award, or to terminate an award for default by reason of a violation or failure to comply with a law or regulation.

(e) A disposition by consent or compromise, if the action could have resulted in any of the dispositions described in subparagraphs 10.b.(1)(a), (b), (c) or (d) of this appendix.

(2) If more than one proceeding involves the same alleged misconduct, the costs of all such proceedings shall be unallowable if any one of them results in one of the dispositions shown in subparagraph 10.b.(1) of this appendix.

c. If a proceeding referred to in subparagraph 10.b of this appendix is commenced by the Federal Government and is resolved by consent or compromise pursuant to an agreement entered into by the organization and the Federal Government, then the costs incurred by the organization in connection with such proceedings that are otherwise not allowable under subparagraph 10.b of this appendix may be allowed to the extent specifically provided in such agreement.

d. If a proceeding referred to in subparagraph 10.b of this appendix is commenced by a State, local or foreign government, the authorized Federal official may allow the costs incurred by the organization for such proceedings, if such authorized official determines that the costs were incurred as a result of a specific term or condition of a federally-sponsored award, or specific written direction of an authorized official of the sponsoring agency.

e. Costs incurred in connection with proceedings described in subparagraph 10.b of this appendix, but which are



not made unallowable by that subparagraph, may be allowed by the Federal Government, but only to the extent that:

(1) The costs are reasonable in relation to the activities required to deal with the proceeding and the underlying cause of action;

(2) Payment of the costs incurred, as allowable and allocable costs, is not prohibited by any other provision(s) of the sponsored award;

(3) The costs are not otherwise recovered from the Federal Government or a third party, either directly as a result of the proceeding or otherwise; and,

(4) The percentage of costs allowed does not exceed the percentage determined by an authorized Federal official to be appropriate, considering the complexity of the litigation, generally accepted principles governing the award of legal fees in civil actions involving the United States as a party, and such other factors as may be appropriate. Such percentage shall not exceed 80 percent. However, if an agreement reached under subparagraph 10.c of this appendix has explicitly considered this 80 percent limitation and permitted a higher percentage, then the full amount of costs resulting from that agreement shall be allowable.

f. Costs incurred by the organization in connection with the defense of suits brought by its employees or ex-employees under section 2 of the Major Fraud Act of 1988 (Pub. L. 100-700), including the cost of all relief necessary to make such employee whole, where the organization was found liable or settled, are unallowable.

g. Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with defense against Federal Government claims or appeals, antitrust suits, or the prosecution of claims or appeals against the Federal Government, are unallowable.

h. Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with patent infringement litigation, are unallowable unless otherwise provided for in the sponsored awards.

i. Costs which may be unallowable under this paragraph, including directly associated costs, shall be segregated and accounted for by the organization separately. During the pendency of any proceeding covered by subparagraphs 10.b and f of this appendix, the Federal Government shall generally withhold payment of such costs. However, if in the best interests of the Federal Government, the Federal Government may provide for conditional payment upon provision of adequate security, or other adequate assurance, and agreements by the organization to repay all unallowable costs, plus interest, if the costs are subsequently determined to be unallowable.

11. Depreciation and use allowances. a. Compensation for the use of buildings, other capital improvements, and equipment on hand may be made through use allowance or depreciation. However, except as provided in paragraph 11.f of this appendix, a combination of the two methods may not be used in connection with a single class of fixed assets ( e.g. , buildings, office equipment, computer equipment, etc.).

b. The computation of use allowances or depreciation shall be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. The acquisition cost of an asset donated to the non-profit organization by a third party shall be its fair market value at the time of the donation.

c. The computation of use allowances or depreciation will exclude:

(1) The cost of land;

(2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal Government irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it presently resides; and

(3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the non-profit organization in satisfaction of a statutory matching requirement.

d. General criteria where depreciation method is followed:

(1) The period of useful service (useful life) established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment used, technological developments in the particular program area, and the renewal and replacement policies followed for the individual items or classes of assets involved. The method of depreciation used to assign the cost of an asset (or group of assets) to accounting periods shall reflect the pattern of consumption of the asset during its useful life.

(2) In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater or lesser in the early portions of its useful life than in the later portions, the straight-line method shall be presumed to be the appropriate method.

(3) Depreciation methods once used shall not be changed unless approved in advance by the cognizant Federal agency. When the depreciation method is introduced for application to assets previously subject to a use allowance, the combination of use allowances and depreciation applicable to such assets must not exceed the total acquisition cost of the assets.

e. When the depreciation method is used for buildings, a building's shell may be segregated from each building component ( e.g. , plumbing system, heating, and air conditioning system, etc.) and each item depreciated over its estimated useful life; or the entire building ( i.e. , the shell and all components) may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life.

f. When the depreciation method is used for a particular class of assets, no depreciation may be allowed on any such assets that, under subparagraph 11.d of this appendix, would be viewed as fully depreciated. However, a reasonable use allowance may be negotiated for such assets if warranted after taking into consideration the amount of



depreciation previously charged to the Federal Government, the estimated useful life remaining at time of negotiation, the effect of any increased maintenance charges or decreased efficiency due to age, and any other factors pertinent to the utilization of the asset for the purpose contemplated.

g. Criteria where the use allowance method is followed:

(1) The use allowance for buildings and improvement (including land improvements, such as paved parking areas, fences, and sidewalks) will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding two percent of acquisition cost.

(2) The use allowance for equipment will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding six and two-thirds percent of acquisition cost. When the use allowance method is used for buildings, the entire building must be treated as a single asset; the building's components ( e.g. , plumbing system, heating and air conditioning, etc.) cannot be segregated from the building's shell.

(3) The two percent limitation, however, need not be applied to equipment which is merely attached or fastened to the building but not permanently fixed to it and which is used as furnishings or decorations or for specialized purposes ( e.g. , dentist chairs and dental treatment units, counters, laboratory benches bolted to the floor, dishwashers, modular furniture, carpeting, etc.). Such equipment will be considered as not being permanently fixed to the building if it can be removed without the need for costly or extensive alterations or repairs to the building or the equipment. Equipment that meets these criteria will be subject to the  $6\frac{2}{3}$  percent equipment use allowance limitation.

h. Charges for use allowances or depreciation must be supported by adequate property records and physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years (a statistical sampling basis is acceptable) to ensure that assets exist and are usable and needed. When the depreciation method is followed, adequate depreciation records indicating the amount of depreciation taken each period must also be maintained.

## 12. Donations and contributions.

a. Contributions or donations rendered. Contributions or donations, including cash, property, and services, made by the organization, regardless of the recipient, are unallowable.

b. Donated services received:

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to an organization by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the non-profit organization's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs when the following exist:

(a) The aggregate value of the services is material;

(b) The services are supported by a significant amount of the indirect costs incurred by the non-profit organization; and

(c) The direct cost activity is not pursued primarily for the benefit of the Federal Government.

(3) In those instances where there is no basis for determining the fair market value of the services rendered, the recipient and the cognizant agency shall negotiate an appropriate allocation of indirect cost to the services.

(4) Where donated services directly benefit a project supported by an award, the indirect costs allocated to the services will be considered as a part of the total costs of the project. Such indirect costs may be reimbursed under the award or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements.

(5) The value of the donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements under conditions described in Section 215.23 of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110). Where donated services are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donations so that reimbursement will not be made.

c. Donated goods or space. (1) Donated goods; i.e. , expendable personal property/supplies, and donated use of space may be furnished to a non-profit organization. The value of the goods and space is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost.

(2) The value of the donations may be used to meet cost sharing or matching share requirements under the conditions described in 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110). Where donations are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donations so that reimbursement will not be made.

## 13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs.

a. The costs of employee information publications, health or first-aid clinics and/or infirmaries, recreational activities, employee counseling services, and any other expenses incurred in accordance with the non-profit organization's established practice or custom for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee morale, and employee performance are allowable.

b. Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the non-profit organization. Income generated from any of these activities will be credited to the cost thereof unless such income has been irrevocably set over to employee welfare organizations.

## 14. Entertainment costs. Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any costs



directly associated with such costs (such as tickets to shows or sports events, meals, lodging, rentals, transportation, and gratuities) are unallowable.

15. Equipment and other capital expenditures.

a. For purposes of this subparagraph, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Capital Expenditures" means expenditures for the acquisition cost of capital assets (equipment, buildings, land), or expenditures to make improvements to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life. Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to put it in place. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in, or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the non-profit organization's regular accounting practices.

(2) "Equipment" means an article of nonexpendable, tangible personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-profit organization for financial statement purposes, or \$5000.

(3) "Special purpose equipment" means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers.

(4) "General purpose equipment" means equipment, which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles.

b. The following rules of allowability shall apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except where approved in advance by the awarding agency.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of \$5000 or more have the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to paragraph 15.b.(1), (2), and (3) above, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate by and negotiated with the awarding agency.

(5) Equipment and other capital expenditures are unallowable as indirect costs. However, see paragraph 11., Depreciation and use allowance, of this appendix for rules on the allowability of use allowances or depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. Also, see paragraph 43., Rental costs of buildings and equipment, of this appendix for rules on the allowability of rental costs for land, buildings, and equipment.

(6) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable use allowances or depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the cognizant agency.

16. Fines and penalties. Costs of fines and penalties resulting from violations of, or failure of the organization to comply with Federal, State, and local laws and regulations are unallowable except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of an award or instructions in writing from the awarding agency.

17. Fund raising and investment management costs. a. Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, endowment drives, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred solely to raise capital or obtain contributions are unallowable.

b. Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred solely to enhance income from investments are unallowable.

c. Fund raising and investment activities shall be allocated an appropriate share of indirect costs under the conditions described in subparagraph B.3 of Appendix A to this part.

18. Gains and losses on depreciable assets. a. (1) Gains and losses on sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property shall be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to cost grouping(s) in which the depreciation applicable to such property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate cost grouping(s) shall be the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(2) Gains and losses on the disposition of depreciable property shall not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(a) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under paragraph 11 of this appendix.

(b) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.



(c) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in paragraph 22 of this appendix.

(d) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation in accordance with paragraph 9 of this appendix.

(e) Gains and losses arising from mass or extraordinary sales, retirements, or other dispositions shall be considered on a case-by-case basis.

b. Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in subparagraph a shall be excluded in computing award costs.

19. Goods or services for personal use. Costs of goods or services for personal use of the organization's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

20. Housing and personal living expenses. a. Costs of housing ( e.g. , depreciation, maintenance, utilities, furnishings, rent, etc.), housing allowances and personal living expenses for/of the organization's officers are unallowable as fringe benefit or indirect costs regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees. These costs are allowable as direct costs to sponsored award when necessary for the performance of the sponsored award and approved by awarding agencies.

b. The term "officers" includes current and past officers and employees.

21. Idle facilities and idle capacity. a. As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

(1) "Facilities" means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the non-profit organization.

(2) "Idle facilities" means completely unused facilities that are excess to the non-profit organization's current needs.

(3) "Idle capacity" means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between: That which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays; and the extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) "Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity" means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g. , insurance, interest, property taxes and depreciation or use allowances.

b. The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet fluctuations in workload; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subparagraph, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

c. The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other Federal awards, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

22. Insurance and indemnification. a. Insurance includes insurance which the organization is required to carry, or which is approved, under the terms of the award and any other insurance which the organization maintains in connection with the general conduct of its operations. This paragraph does not apply to insurance which represents fringe benefits for employees (see subparagraphs 8.g and 8.i(2) of this appendix).

(1) Costs of insurance required or approved, and maintained, pursuant to the award are allowable.

(2) Costs of other insurance maintained by the organization in connection with the general conduct of its operations are allowable subject to the following limitations:

(a) Types and extent of coverage shall be in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums shall be reasonable under the circumstances.

(b) Costs allowed for business interruption or other similar insurance shall be limited to exclude coverage of management fees.

(c) Costs of insurance or of any provisions for a reserve covering the risk of loss or damage to Federal property are allowable only to the extent that the organization is liable for such loss or damage.

(d) Provisions for a reserve under a self-insurance program are allowable to the extent that types of coverage, extent of coverage, rates, and premiums would have been allowed had insurance been purchased to cover the risks. However, provision for known or reasonably estimated self-insured liabilities, which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made, shall not exceed the present value of the liability.



(e) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibilities are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation (see subparagraph 8.g(4) of this appendix). The cost of such insurance when the organization is identified as the beneficiary is unallowable.

(f) Insurance against defects. Costs of insurance with respect to any costs incurred to correct defects in the organization's materials or workmanship are unallowable.

(g) Medical liability (malpractice) insurance. Medical liability insurance is an allowable cost of Federal research programs only to the extent that the Federal research programs involve human subjects or training of participants in research techniques. Medical liability insurance costs shall be treated as a direct cost and shall be assigned to individual projects based on the manner in which the insurer allocates the risk to the population covered by the insurance.

(3) Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (through the purchase of insurance or a self-insurance program) are unallowable unless expressly provided for in the award, except:

(a) Costs incurred because of losses not covered under nominal deductible insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound business practice are allowable.

(b) Minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage, and disappearance of supplies, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

b. Indemnification includes securing the organization against liabilities to third persons and any other loss or damage, not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal Government is obligated to indemnify the organization only to the extent expressly provided in the award.

23. Interest. a. Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital, temporary use of endowment funds, or the use of the non-profit organization's own funds, however represented, are unallowable. However, interest on debt incurred after September 29, 1995 to acquire or replace capital assets (including renovations, alterations, equipment, land, and capital assets acquired through capital leases), acquired after September 29, 1995 and used in support of Federal awards is allowable, provided that:

(1) For facilities acquisitions (excluding renovations and alterations) costing over \$10 million where the Federal Government's reimbursement is expected to equal or exceed 40 percent of an asset's cost, the non-profit organization prepares, prior to the acquisition or replacement of the capital asset(s), a justification that demonstrates the need for the facility in the conduct of federally-sponsored activities. Upon request, the needs justification must be provided to the Federal agency with cost cognizance authority as a prerequisite to the continued allowability of interest on debt and depreciation related to the facility. The needs justification for the acquisition of a facility should include, at a minimum, the following:

(a) A statement of purpose and justification for facility acquisition or replacement.

(b) A statement as to why current facilities are not adequate.

(c) A statement of planned future use of the facility.

(d) A description of the financing agreement to be arranged for the facility.

(e) A summary of the building contract with estimated cost information and statement of source and use of funds.

(f) A schedule of planned occupancy dates.

(2) For facilities costing over \$500,000, the non-profit organization prepares, prior to the acquisition or replacement of the facility, a lease/purchase analysis in accordance with the provisions of §§ 215.30 through 215.37 of 2 CFR 215 (OMB Circular A-110), which shows that a financed purchase or capital lease is less costly to the organization than other leasing alternatives, on a net present value basis. Discount rates used should be equal to the non-profit organization's anticipated interest rates and should be no higher than the fair market rate available to the non-profit organization from an unrelated ("arm's length") third-party. The lease/purchase analysis shall include a comparison of the net present value of the projected total cost comparisons of both alternatives over the period the asset is expected to be used by the non-profit organization. The cost comparisons associated with purchasing the facility shall include the estimated purchase price, anticipated operating and maintenance costs (including property taxes, if applicable) not included in the debt financing, less any estimated asset salvage value at the end of the period defined above. The cost comparison for a capital lease shall include the estimated total lease payments, any estimated bargain purchase option, operating and maintenance costs, and taxes not included in the capital leasing arrangement, less any estimated credits due under the lease at the end of the period defined above. Projected operating lease costs shall be based on the anticipated cost of leasing comparable facilities at fair market rates under rental agreements that would be renewed or reestablished over the period defined above, and any expected maintenance costs and allowable property taxes to be borne by the non-profit organization directly or as part of the lease arrangement.

(3) The actual interest cost claimed is predicated upon interest rates that are no higher than the fair market rate available to the non-profit organization from an unrelated ("arm's length") third party.

(4) Investment earnings, including interest income, on bond or loan principal, pending payment of the construction or acquisition costs, are used to offset allowable interest cost. Arbitrage earnings reportable to the Internal Revenue Service are not required to be offset against allowable interest costs.

(5) Reimbursements are limited to the least costly alternative based on the total cost analysis required under subparagraph 23.b. of this appendix. For example, if an operating lease is determined to be less costly than purchasing



through debt financing, then reimbursement is limited to the amount determined if leasing had been used. In all cases where a lease/purchase analysis is performed, Federal reimbursement shall be based upon the least expensive alternative.

(6) Non-profit organizations are also subject to the following conditions:

(a) Interest on debt incurred to finance or refinance assets acquired before or reacquired after September 29, 1995, is not allowable.

(b) Interest attributable to fully depreciated assets is unallowable.

(c) For debt arrangements over \$1 million, unless the non-profit organization makes an initial equity contribution to the asset purchase of 25 percent or more, non-profit organizations shall reduce claims for interest expense by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow, which is to be calculated as follows. Annually, non-profit organizations shall prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash flows that includes inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. Inflows consist of depreciation expense, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest expense. For cash flow calculations, the annual inflow figures shall be divided by the number of months in the year (usually 12) that the building is in service for monthly amounts. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro rata share attributable to the unallowable costs of land) and interest payments. Where cumulative inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest shall be calculated on the excess inflows for that period and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest expense. The rate of interest to be used to compute earnings on excess cash flows shall be the three month Treasury Bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(d) Substantial relocation of federally-sponsored activities from a facility financed by indebtedness, the cost of which was funded in whole or part through Federal reimbursements, to another facility prior to the expiration of a period of 20 years requires notice to the Federal cognizant agency. The extent of the relocation, the amount of the Federal participation in the financing, and the depreciation and interest charged to date may require negotiation and/or downward adjustments of replacement space charged to Federal programs in the future.

(e) The allowable costs to acquire facilities and equipment are limited to a fair market value available to the non-profit organization from an unrelated ("arm's length") third party.

b. For non-profit organizations subject to "full coverage" under the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) as defined at 48 CFR 9903.201, the interest allowability provisions of subparagraph a do not apply. Instead, these organizations' sponsored agreements are subject to CAS 414 (48 CFR 9903.414), cost of money as an element of the cost of facilities capital, and CAS 417 (48 CFR 9903.417), cost of money as an element of the cost of capital assets under construction.

c. The following definitions are to be used for purposes of this paragraph:

(1) Re-acquired assets means assets held by the non-profit organization prior to September 29, 1995 that have again come to be held by the organization, whether through repurchase or refinancing. It does not include assets acquired to replace older assets.

(2) Initial equity contribution means the amount or value of contributions made by non-profit organizations for the acquisition of the asset or prior to occupancy of facilities.

(3) Asset costs means the capitalizable costs of an asset, including construction costs, acquisition costs, and other such costs capitalized in accordance with GAAP.

24. Labor relations costs. Costs incurred in maintaining satisfactory relations between the organization and its employees, including costs of labor management committees, employee publications, and other related activities are allowable.

25. Lobbying. a. Notwithstanding other provisions of this appendix, costs associated with the following activities are unallowable:

(1) Attempts to influence the outcomes of any Federal, State, or local election, referendum, initiative, or similar procedure, through in kind or cash contributions, endorsements, publicity, or similar activity;

(2) Establishing, administering, contributing to, or paying the expenses of a political party, campaign, political action committee, or other organization established for the purpose of influencing the outcomes of elections;

(3) Any attempt to influence: The introduction of Federal or State legislation; or the enactment or modification of any pending Federal or State legislation through communication with any member or employee of the Congress or State legislature (including efforts to influence State or local officials to engage in similar lobbying activity), or with any Government official or employee in connection with a decision to sign or veto enrolled legislation;

(4) Any attempt to influence: The introduction of Federal or State legislation; or the enactment or modification of any pending Federal or State legislation by preparing, distributing or using publicity or propaganda, or by urging members of the general public or any segment thereof to contribute to or participate in any mass demonstration, march, rally, fundraising drive, lobbying campaign or letter writing or telephone campaign; or

(5) Legislative liaison activities, including attendance at legislative sessions or committee hearings, gathering information regarding legislation, and analyzing the effect of legislation, when such activities are carried on in support of or in knowing preparation for an effort to engage in unallowable lobbying.

b. The following activities are excepted from the coverage of subparagraph 25.a of this appendix:

(1) Providing a technical and factual presentation of information on a topic directly related to the performance of a



grant, contract or other agreement through hearing testimony, statements or letters to the Congress or a State legislature, or subdivision, member, or cognizant staff member thereof, in response to a documented request (including a Congressional Record notice requesting testimony or statements for the record at a regularly scheduled hearing) made by the recipient member, legislative body or subdivision, or a cognizant staff member thereof; provided such information is readily obtainable and can be readily put in deliverable form; and further provided that costs under this section for travel, lodging or meals are unallowable unless incurred to offer testimony at a regularly scheduled Congressional hearing pursuant to a written request for such presentation made by the Chairman or Ranking Minority Member of the Committee or Subcommittee conducting such hearing.

(2) Any lobbying made unallowable by subparagraph 25.a.(3) of this appendix to influence State legislation in order to directly reduce the cost, or to avoid material impairment of the organization's authority to perform the grant, contract, or other agreement.

(3) Any activity specifically authorized by statute to be undertaken with funds from the grant, contract, or other agreement.

c. (1) When an organization seeks reimbursement for indirect costs, total lobbying costs shall be separately identified in the indirect cost rate proposal, and thereafter treated as other unallowable activity costs in accordance with the procedures of subparagraph B.3 of Appendix A to this part.

(2) Organizations shall submit, as part of the annual indirect cost rate proposal, a certification that the requirements and standards of this paragraph have been complied with.

(3) Organizations shall maintain adequate records to demonstrate that the determination of costs as being allowable or unallowable pursuant to paragraph 25 complies with the requirements of this Appendix.

(4) Time logs, calendars, or similar records shall not be required to be created for purposes of complying with this paragraph during any particular calendar month when: the employee engages in lobbying (as defined in subparagraphs 25.a. and b. of this appendix) 25 percent or less of the employee's compensated hours of employment during that calendar month, and within the preceding five-year period, the organization has not materially misstated allowable or unallowable costs of any nature, including legislative lobbying costs. When the conditions described in this subparagraph are met, organizations are not required to establish records to support the allowability of claimed costs in addition to records already required or maintained. Also, when the conditions described in this subparagraph are met, the absence of time logs, calendars, or similar records will not serve as a basis for disallowing costs by contesting estimates of lobbying time spent by employees during a calendar month.

(5) Agencies shall establish procedures for resolving in advance, in consultation with OMB, any significant questions or disagreements concerning the interpretation or application of paragraph 25. Any such advance resolution shall be binding in any subsequent settlements, audits or investigations with respect to that grant or contract for purposes of interpretation of this Appendix; provided, however, that this shall not be construed to prevent a contractor or grantee from contesting the lawfulness of such a determination.

d. Executive lobbying costs. Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the Executive Branch of the Federal Government to give consideration or to act regarding a sponsored agreement or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a federally-sponsored agreement or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

26. Losses on other sponsored agreements or contracts. Any excess of costs over income on any award is unallowable as a cost of any other award. This includes, but is not limited to, the organization's contributed portion by reason of cost sharing agreements or any under-recoveries through negotiation of lump sums for, or ceilings on, indirect costs.

27. Maintenance and repair costs. Costs incurred for necessary maintenance, repair, or upkeep of buildings and equipment (including Federal property unless otherwise provided for) which neither add to the permanent value of the property nor appreciably prolong its intended life, but keep it in an efficient operating condition, are allowable. Costs incurred for improvements which add to the permanent value of the buildings and equipment or appreciably prolong their intended life shall be treated as capital expenditures (see paragraph 15 of this appendix).

28. Materials and supplies costs. a. Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.

b. Purchased materials and supplies shall be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms should be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.

c. Only materials and supplies actually used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs.

d. Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the Federal award, such materials will be used without charge.

29. Meetings and conferences. Costs of meetings and conferences, the primary purpose of which is the dissemination of technical information, are allowable. This includes costs of meals, transportation, rental of facilities, speakers' fees, and other items incidental to such meetings or conferences. But see paragraphs 14., Entertainment costs, and 33., Participant support costs of this appendix.

30. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs. a. Costs of the non-profit organization's



membership in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

b. Costs of the non-profit organization's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

c. Costs of membership in any civic or community organization are allowable with prior approval by Federal cognizant agency.

d. Costs of membership in any country club or social or dining club or organization are unallowable.

31. Organization costs. Expenditures, such as incorporation fees, brokers' fees, fees to promoters, organizers or management consultants, attorneys, accountants, or investment counselors, whether or not employees of the organization, in connection with establishment or reorganization of an organization, are unallowable except with prior approval of the awarding agency.

32. Page charges in professional journals. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs, where:

a. The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government; and

b. The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors.

33. Participant support costs. Participant support costs are direct costs for items such as stipends or subsistence allowances, travel allowances, and registration fees paid to or on behalf of participants or trainees (but not employees) in connection with meetings, conferences, symposia, or training projects. These costs are allowable with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

34. Patent costs. a. The following costs relating to patent and copyright matters are allowable: cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the Federal award and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures; cost of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal Government to be conveyed to the Federal Government; and general counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee agreements (but see paragraphs 37., Professional services costs, and 44., Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights, of this appendix).

b. The following costs related to patent and copyright matter are unallowable:

(1) Cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make disclosures not required by the award.

(2) Costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application, or any United States patent application, where the Federal award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal Government (but see paragraph 45., Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights, of this appendix).

35. Plant and homeland security costs. Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for routine and homeland security to protect facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; contractual security services; consultants; etc. Capital expenditures for homeland and plant security purposes are subject to paragraph 15., Equipment and other capital expenditures, of this appendix.

36. Pre-agreement costs. Pre-award costs are those incurred prior to the effective date of the award directly pursuant to the negotiation and in anticipation of the award where such costs are necessary to comply with the proposed delivery schedule or period of performance. Such costs are allowable only to the extent that they would have been allowable if incurred after the date of the award and only with the written approval of the awarding agency.

37. Professional services costs. a. Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the non-profit organization, are allowable, subject to subparagraphs b and c when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government. In addition, legal and related services are limited under paragraph 10 of this appendix.

b. In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

(1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.

(2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the non-profit organization's capability in the particular area.

(3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to Federal awards.

(4) The impact of Federal awards on the non-profit organization's business ( *i.e.* , what new problems have arisen).

(5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the non-profit organization's total business is such as to influence the non-profit organization in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal grants and contracts.

(6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.



(7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-Federal awards.

(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service ( e.g. , description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

c. In addition to the factors in subparagraph 37.b of this appendix, retainer fees to be allowable must be supported by evidence of bona fide services available or rendered

38. Publication and printing costs. a. Publication costs include the costs of printing (including the processes of composition, plate-making, press work, binding, and the end products produced by such processes), distribution, promotion, mailing, and general handling. Publication costs also include page charges in professional publications.

b. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the non-profit organization.

c. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs where:

(1) The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government: and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors.

39. Rearrangement and alteration costs. Costs incurred for ordinary or normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable. Special arrangement and alteration costs incurred specifically for the project are allowable with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

40. Reconversion costs. Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the non-profit organization's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of Federal awards, less costs related to normal wear and tear, are allowable.

41. Recruiting costs. a. Subject to subparagraphs 41.b, c, and d of this appendix, and provided that the size of the staff recruited and maintained is in keeping with workload requirements, costs of "help wanted" advertising, operating costs of an employment office necessary to secure and maintain an adequate staff, costs of operating an aptitude and educational testing program, travel costs of employees while engaged in recruiting personnel, travel costs of applicants for interviews for prospective employment, and relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of new employees, are allowable to the extent that such costs are incurred pursuant to a well-managed recruitment program. Where the organization uses employment agencies, costs that are not in excess of standard commercial rates for such services are allowable.

b. In publications, costs of help wanted advertising that includes color, includes advertising material for other than recruitment purposes, or is excessive in size (taking into consideration recruitment purposes for which intended and normal organizational practices in this respect), are unallowable.

c. Costs of help wanted advertising, special emoluments, fringe benefits, and salary allowances incurred to attract professional personnel from other organizations that do not meet the test of reasonableness or do not conform with the established practices of the organization, are unallowable.

d. Where relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of a new employee have been allowed either as an allocable direct or indirect cost, and the newly hired employee resigns for reasons within his control within twelve months after being hired, the organization will be required to refund or credit such relocation costs to the Federal Government.

42. Relocation costs. a. Relocation costs are costs incident to the permanent change of duty assignment (for an indefinite period or for a stated period of not less than 12 months) of an existing employee or upon recruitment of a new employee. Relocation costs are allowable, subject to the limitation described in subparagraphs 42.b, c, and d of this appendix, provided that:

(1) The move is for the benefit of the employer.

(2) Reimbursement to the employee is in accordance with an established written policy consistently followed by the employer.

(3) The reimbursement does not exceed the employee's actual (or reasonably estimated) expenses.

b. Allowable relocation costs for current employees are limited to the following:

(1) The costs of transportation of the employee, members of his immediate family and his household, and personal effects to the new location.

(2) The costs of finding a new home, such as advance trips by employees and spouses to locate living quarters and temporary lodging during the transition period, up to maximum period of 30 days, including advance trip time.

(3) Closing costs, such as brokerage, legal, and appraisal fees, incident to the disposition of the employee's former home. These costs, together with those described in subparagraph 42.b.(4) of this appendix, are limited to 8 percent of the sales price of the employee's former home.

(4) The continuing costs of ownership of the vacant former home after the settlement or lease date of the employee's new permanent home, such as maintenance of buildings and grounds (exclusive of fixing up expenses), utilities, taxes, and property insurance.



(5) Other necessary and reasonable expenses normally incident to relocation, such as the costs of canceling an unexpired lease, disconnecting and reinstalling household appliances, and purchasing insurance against loss of or damages to personal property. The cost of canceling an unexpired lease is limited to three times the monthly rental.

c. Allowable relocation costs for new employees are limited to those described in subparagraph 42.b(1) and (2) of this appendix. When relocation costs incurred incident to the recruitment of new employees have been allowed either as a direct or indirect cost and the employee resigns for reasons within his control within 12 months after hire, the organization shall refund or credit the Federal Government for its share of the cost. However, the costs of travel to an overseas location shall be considered travel costs in accordance with paragraph 50 and not relocation costs for the purpose of this paragraph if dependents are not permitted at the location for any reason and the costs do not include costs of transporting household goods.

d. The following costs related to relocation are unallowable:

- (1) Fees and other costs associated with acquiring a new home.
- (2) A loss on the sale of a former home.
- (3) Continuing mortgage principal and interest payments on a home being sold.
- (4) Income taxes paid by an employee related to reimbursed relocation costs.

43. Rental costs of buildings and equipment. a. Subject to the limitations described in subparagraphs 43.b. through d. of this appendix, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: Rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and, the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

b. Rental costs under "sale and lease back" arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the non-profit organization continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation or use allowance, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

c. Rental costs under "less-than-arms-length" leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subparagraph 43.b. of this appendix) that would be allowed had title to the property vested in the non-profit organization. For this purpose, a less-than-arms-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between divisions of a non-profit organization; non-profit organizations under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and a non-profit organization and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the non-profit organization or his immediate family, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, a non-profit organization may establish a separate corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the non-profit organization.

d. Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subparagraph b) that would be allowed had the non-profit organization purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement 13, Accounting for Leases, shall be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in paragraph 23 of this appendix. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the non-profit organization purchased the facility.

44. Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights. a. Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the award are allowable unless:

- (1) The Federal Government has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.
- (2) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.
- (3) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.
- (4) The patent or copyright is expired.

b. Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have arrived at as a result of less-than-arm's-length bargaining, e.g.:

- (1) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the non-profit organization.
- (2) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a Federal award would be made.
- (3) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after an award is made to a non-profit organization.

c. In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the non-profit organization, the amount of royalty allowed should not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the non-profit organization retained title thereto.

45. Selling and marketing. Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the non-profit organization are unallowable (unless allowed under paragraph 1. of this appendix as allowable public relations cost. However, these costs are allowable as direct costs, with prior approval by awarding agencies, when they are necessary for the



performance of Federal programs.

46. Specialized service facilities. a. The costs of services provided by highly complex or specialized facilities operated by the non-profit organization, such as computers, wind tunnels, and reactors are allowable, provided the charges for the services meet the conditions of either paragraph 46 b. or c. of this appendix and, in addition, take into account any items of income or Federal financing that qualify as applicable credits under subparagraph A.5. of Appendix A to this part.

b. The costs of such services, when material, must be charged directly to applicable awards based on actual usage of the services on the basis of a schedule of rates or established methodology that does not discriminate against federally-supported activities of the non-profit organization, including usage by the non-profit organization for internal purposes, and is designed to recover only the aggregate costs of the services. The costs of each service shall consist normally of both its direct costs and its allocable share of all indirect costs. Rates shall be adjusted at least biennially, and shall take into consideration over/under applied costs of the previous period(s).

c. Where the costs incurred for a service are not material, they may be allocated as indirect costs.

d. Under some extraordinary circumstances, where it is in the best interest of the Federal Government and the institution to establish alternative costing arrangements, such arrangements may be worked out with the cognizant Federal agency.

47. Taxes. a. In general, taxes which the organization is required to pay and which are paid or accrued in accordance with GAAP, and payments made to local governments in lieu of taxes which are commensurate with the local government services received are allowable, except for taxes from which exemptions are available to the organization directly or which are available to the organization based on an exemption afforded the Federal Government and in the latter case when the awarding agency makes available the necessary exemption certificates, special assessments on land which represent capital improvements, and Federal income taxes.

b. Any refund of taxes, and any payment to the organization of interest thereon, which were allowed as award costs, will be credited either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate, to the Federal Government.

48. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements. Termination of awards generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the Federal award not been terminated. Cost principles covering these items are set forth below. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this appendix in termination situations.

a. The cost of items reasonably usable on the non-profit organization's other work shall not be allowable unless the non-profit organization submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the non-profit organization, the awarding agency should consider the non-profit organization's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity. Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the non-profit organization shall be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the non-profit organization's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the Federal award shall be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

b. If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the non-profit organization, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this appendix, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the non-profit organization to discontinue such costs shall be unallowable.

c. Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and is generally allowable if:

(1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the non-profit organization,

(2) The interest of the Federal Government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the awarding agency, and

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated Federal award is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the Federal award bears to the entire terminated Federal award and other Federal awards for which the special tooling, special machinery, or equipment was acquired.

d. Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated Federal award less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) The amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the Federal award and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) The non-profit organization makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the Federal award, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

e. Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(a) The preparation and presentation to the awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the Federal award, unless the termination is for default (see § 215.61 of 2 CFR part 215



(OMB Circular A-110)); and

(b) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal Government or acquired or produced for the Federal award, except when grantees or contractors are reimbursed for disposals at a predetermined amount in accordance with § 215.32 through 215.37 of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110).

(3) Indirect costs related to salaries and wages incurred as settlement expenses in subparagraphs 48.e.(1) and (2) of this appendix. Normally, such indirect costs shall be limited to fringe benefits, occupancy cost, and immediate supervision.

f. Claims under sub awards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the Federal award, and to other work of the non-profit organization are generally allowable.

An appropriate share of the non-profit organization's indirect expense may be allocated to the amount of settlements with subcontractors and/or subgrantees, provided that the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in Appendix A. The indirect expense so allocated shall exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

49. Training costs. a. Costs of preparation and maintenance of a program of instruction including but not limited to on-the-job, classroom, and apprenticeship training, designed to increase the vocational effectiveness of employees, including training materials, textbooks, salaries or wages of trainees (excluding overtime compensation which might arise therefrom), and (i) salaries of the director of training and staff when the training program is conducted by the organization; or (ii) tuition and fees when the training is in an institution not operated by the organization, are allowable.

b. Costs of part-time education, at an undergraduate or post-graduate college level, including that provided at the organization's own facilities, are allowable only when the course or degree pursued is relative to the field in which the employee is now working or may reasonably be expected to work, and are limited to:

(1) Training materials.

(2) Textbooks.

(3) Fees charges by the educational institution.

(4) Tuition charged by the educational institution or, in lieu of tuition, instructors' salaries and the related share of indirect costs of the educational institution to the extent that the sum thereof is not in excess of the tuition which would have been paid to the participating educational institution.

(5) Salaries and related costs of instructors who are employees of the organization.

(6) Straight-time compensation of each employee for time spent attending classes during working hours not in excess of 156 hours per year and only to the extent that circumstances do not permit the operation of classes or attendance at classes after regular working hours; otherwise, such compensation is unallowable.

c. Costs of tuition, fees, training materials, and textbooks (but not subsistence, salary, or any other emoluments) in connection with full-time education, including that provided at the organization's own facilities, at a post-graduate (but not undergraduate) college level, are allowable only when the course or degree pursued is related to the field in which the employee is now working or may reasonably be expected to work, and only where the costs receive the prior approval of the awarding agency. Such costs are limited to the costs attributable to a total period not to exceed one school year for each employee so trained. In unusual cases the period may be extended.

d. Costs of attendance of up to 16 weeks per employee per year at specialized programs specifically designed to enhance the effectiveness of executives or managers or to prepare employees for such positions are allowable. Such costs include enrollment fees, training materials, textbooks and related charges, employees' salaries, subsistence, and travel. Costs allowable under this paragraph do not include those for courses that are part of a degree-oriented curriculum, which are allowable only to the extent set forth in subparagraphs b and c.

e. Maintenance expense, and normal depreciation or fair rental, on facilities owned or leased by the organization for training purposes are allowable to the extent set forth in paragraphs 11, 27, and 50 of this appendix.

f. Contributions or donations to educational or training institutions, including the donation of facilities or other properties, and scholarships or fellowships, are unallowable.

g. Training and education costs in excess of those otherwise allowable under subparagraphs 49.b and c of this appendix may be allowed with prior approval of the awarding agency. To be considered for approval, the organization must demonstrate that such costs are consistently incurred pursuant to an established training and education program, and that the course or degree pursued is relative to the field in which the employee is now working or may reasonably be expected to work.

50. Transportation costs. Transportation costs include freight, express, cartage, and postage charges relating either to goods purchased, in process, or delivered. These costs are allowable. When such costs can readily be identified with the items involved, they may be directly charged as transportation costs or added to the cost of such items ( see paragraph 28 of this appendix). Where identification with the materials received cannot readily be made, transportation costs may be charged to the appropriate indirect cost accounts if the organization follows a consistent, equitable procedure in this respect.

51. Travel costs.



a. General. Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the non-profit organization. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the non-profit organization's non-federally-sponsored activities.

b. Lodging and subsistence. Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, shall be considered reasonable and allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the non-profit organization in its regular operations as the result of the non-profit organization's written travel policy. In the absence of an acceptable, written non-profit organization policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under subchapter I of Chapter 57, Title 5, United States Code ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter shall apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).

c. Commercial air travel. (1) Airfare costs in excess of the customary standard commercial airfare (coach or equivalent), Federal Government contract airfare (where authorized and available), or the lowest commercial discount airfare are unallowable except when such accommodations would: require circuitous routing; require travel during unreasonable hours; excessively prolong travel; result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The non-profit organization must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal Government will generally not question a non-profit organization's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the non-profit organization can demonstrate either of the following: that such airfare was not available in the specific case; or that it is the non-profit organization's overall practice to make routine use of such airfare.

d. Air travel by other than commercial carrier. Costs of travel by non-profit organization-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of allowable commercial air travel, as provided for in subparagraph] c., is unallowable.

e. Foreign travel. Direct charges for foreign travel costs are allowable only when the travel has received prior approval of the awarding agency. Each separate foreign trip must receive such approval. For purposes of this provision, "foreign travel" includes any travel outside Canada, Mexico, the United States, and any United States territories and possessions. However, the term "foreign travel" for a non-profit organization located in a foreign country means travel outside that country.

52. Trustees. Travel and subsistence costs of trustees (or directors) are allowable. The costs are subject to restrictions regarding lodging, subsistence and air travel costs provided in paragraph 51 of this appendix.

 [Back to Top](#)

## Appendix C to Part 230—Non-Profit Organizations Not Subject to This Part

1. Advance Technology Institute (ATI), Charleston, South Carolina
2. Aerospace Corporation, El Segundo, California
3. American Institutes of Research (AIR), Washington DC
4. Argonne National Laboratory, Chicago, Illinois
5. Atomic Casualty Commission, Washington, DC
6. Battelle Memorial Institute, Headquartered in Columbus, Ohio
7. Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, New York
8. Charles Stark Draper Laboratory, Incorporated, Cambridge, Massachusetts
9. CNA Corporation (CNAC), Alexandria, Virginia
10. Environmental Institute of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan
11. Georgia Institute of Technology/Georgia Tech Applied Research Corporation/Georgia Tech Research Institute, Atlanta, Georgia
12. Hanford Environmental Health Foundation, Richland, Washington
13. IIT Research Institute, Chicago, Illinois
14. Institute of Gas Technology, Chicago, Illinois
15. Institute for Defense Analysis, Alexandria, Virginia



- 16. LMI, McLean, Virginia
- 17. Mitre Corporation, Bedford, Massachusetts
- 18. Mitretek Systems, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia
- 19. National Radiological Astronomy Observatory, Green Bank, West Virginia
- 20. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, Colorado
- 21. Oak Ridge Associated Universities, Oak Ridge, Tennessee
- 22. Rand Corporation, Santa Monica, California
- 23. Research Triangle Institute, Research Triangle Park, North Carolina
- 24. Riverside Research Institute, New York, New York
- 25. South Carolina Research Authority (SCRA), Charleston, South Carolina
- 26. Southern Research Institute, Birmingham, Alabama
- 27. Southwest Research Institute, San Antonio, Texas
- 28. SRI International, Menlo Park, California
- 29. Syracuse Research Corporation, Syracuse, New York
- 30. Universities Research Association, Incorporated (National Acceleration Lab), Argonne, Illinois
- 31. Urban Institute, Washington DC
- 32. Non-profit insurance companies, such as Blue Cross and Blue Shield Organizations
- 33. Other non-profit organizations as negotiated with awarding agencies

 [Back to Top](#)

---

For questions or comments regarding e-CFR editorial content, features, or design, email [ecfr@nara.gov](mailto:ecfr@nara.gov).  
For questions concerning e-CFR programming and delivery issues, email [webteam@gpo.gov](mailto:webteam@gpo.gov).



**FDsys:**  
**GPO's Federal Digital System**  
About FDsys  
Search Government Publications  
Browse Government Publications

- [Browse](#)
- [Simple Search](#)
- [Advanced Search](#)
  - [\\* Boolean](#)
  - [\\* Proximity](#)
- [Search History](#)
- [Search Tips](#)
- [Corrections](#)
- [Latest Updates](#)
- [User Info](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Agency List](#)
- [Incorporation by Reference](#)
- [e-CFR Main Page](#)

Related Resources

Download the **Code of Federal Regulations in XML**.

The **Electronic Code of Federal Regulations (e-CFR)** is a regularly updated, unofficial editorial compilation of CFR material and Federal Register amendments produced by the National Archives and Records Administration's Office of the Federal Register (OFR) and the Government Printing Office.

Parallel Table of Authorities and Rules for the Code of Federal Regulations and the United States Code  
[Text](#) | [PDF](#)

Find, review, and submit comments on Federal rules that are open for comment and published in the Federal Register using [Regulations.gov](#).

**Purchase individual CFR titles** from the U.S. Government Online Bookstore.

Find issues of the CFR (including issues prior to 1996) at a local **Federal depository library**.

[1]

## ELECTRONIC CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

As of October 9, 2012, the e-CFR resides at a new URL. Please reset your bookmarks, favorites, links and desktop shortcuts to: [www.ecfr.gov](http://www.ecfr.gov).

e-CFR Data is current as of November 9, 2012

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

Title 44: Emergency Management and Assistance

### PART 13—UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GRANTS AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS TO STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTS

#### Contents

##### Subpart A—General

- § 13.1 Purpose and scope of this part.
- § 13.2 Scope of subpart.
- § 13.3 Definitions.
- § 13.4 Applicability.
- § 13.5 Effect on other issuances.
- § 13.6 Additions and exceptions.

##### Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

- § 13.10 Forms for applying for grants.
- § 13.11 State plans.
- § 13.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high-risk" grantees.

##### Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

#### FINANCIAL ADMINISTRATION

- § 13.20 Standards for financial management systems.
- § 13.21 Payment.
- § 13.22 Allowable costs.
- § 13.23 Period of availability of funds.
- § 13.24 Matching or cost sharing.
- § 13.25 Program income.
- § 13.26 Non-Federal audit.

#### CHANGES, PROPERTY, AND SUBAWARDS

- § 13.30 Changes.
- § 13.31 Real property.
- § 13.32 Equipment.
- § 13.33 Supplies.
- § 13.34 Copyrights.
- § 13.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.
- § 13.36 Procurement.
- § 13.37 Subgrants.

#### REPORTS, RECORDS RETENTION, AND ENFORCEMENT

- § 13.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
- § 13.41 Financial reporting.
- § 13.42 Retention and access requirements for records.
- § 13.43 Enforcement.
- § 13.44 Termination for convenience.

##### Subpart D—After-The-Grant Requirements



[§ 13.50 Closeout.](#)  
[§ 13.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.](#)  
[§ 13.52 Collection of amounts due.](#)

## Subpart E—Entitlement [Reserved]

---

AUTHORITY: Reorganization Plan No. 3 of 1978; 43 FR 41943, 3 CFR, 1978 Comp., p. 329; E.O. 12148, 44 FR 43239, 3 CFR, 1979 Comp., p. 412.

SOURCE: 53 FR 8078, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

EDITORIAL NOTE: For additional information, see related documents published at 49 FR 24958, June 18, 1984; 52 FR 20178, May 29, 1987; and 53 FR 8028, Mar. 11, 1988.

 [Back to Top](#)

## Subpart A—General

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.1 Purpose and scope of this part.

This part establishes uniform administrative rules for Federal grants and cooperative agreements and subawards to State, local and Indian tribal governments.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.2 Scope of subpart.

This subpart contains general rules pertaining to this part and procedures for control of exceptions from this part.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

*Accrued expenditures* mean the charges incurred by the grantee during a given period requiring the provision of funds for:

- (1) Goods and other tangible property received;
- (2) Services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees; and
- (3) Other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

*Accrued income* means the sum of: (1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the grantee and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and (2) amounts becoming owed to the grantee for which no current services or performance is required by the grantee.

*Acquisition cost* of an item of purchased equipment means the net invoice unit price of the property including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the grantee's regular accounting practices.

*Administrative* requirements mean those matters common to grants in general, such as financial management, kinds and frequency of reports, and retention of records. These are distinguished from "programmatic" requirements, which concern matters that can be treated only on a program-by-program or grant-by-grant basis, such as kinds of activities that can be supported by grants under a particular program.

*Awarding agency* means (1) with respect to a grant, the Federal agency, and (2) with respect to a subgrant, the party that awarded the subgrant.

*Cash contributions* means the grantee's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the grantee or subgrantee by other public agencies and institutions, and private organizations and individuals. When authorized by Federal legislation, Federal funds received from other assistance agreements may be considered as grantee or subgrantee cash contributions.

*Contract* means (except as used in the definitions for *grant* and *subgrant* in this section and except where qualified



by *Federal* ) a procurement contract under a grant or subgrant, and means a procurement subcontract under a contract.

*Cost sharing or matching* means the value of the third party in-kind contributions and the portion of the costs of a federally assisted project or program not borne by the Federal Government.

*Cost-type contract* means a contract or subcontract under a grant in which the contractor or subcontractor is paid on the basis of the costs it incurs, with or without a fee.

*Equipment* means tangible, nonexpendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of \$5,000 or more per unit. A grantee may use its own definition of equipment provided that such definition would at least include all equipment defined above.

*Expenditure report* means: (1) For nonconstruction grants, the SF-269 "Financial Status Report" (or other equivalent report); (2) for construction grants, the SF-271 "Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement" (or other equivalent report).

*Federally recognized Indian tribal government* means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any Native village as defined in section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

*Government* means a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government.

*Grant* means an award of financial assistance, including cooperative agreements, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government to an eligible grantee. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Also, the term does not include assistance, such as a fellowship or other lump sum award, which the grantee is not required to account for.

*Grantee* means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document.

*Local government* means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937) school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

*Obligations* means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subgrants awarded, goods and services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the grantee during the same or a future period.

*OMB* means the United States Office of Management and Budget.

*Outlays* (expenditures) mean charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursement for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to contractors and subgrantees. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursements, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the new increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the grantee for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees, and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

*Percentage of completion method* refers to a system under which payments are made for construction work according to the percentage of completion of the work, rather than to the grantee's cost incurred.

*Prior approval* means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring specific cost.

*Real property* means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, excluding movable machinery and equipment.

*Share*, when referring to the awarding agency's portion of real property, equipment or supplies, means the same percentage as the awarding agency's portion of the acquiring party's total costs under the grant to which the acquisition costs under the grant to which the acquisition cost of the property was charged. Only costs are to be counted—not the value of third-party in-kind contributions.

*State* means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. The term does not include any public and Indian housing agency under United States Housing Act of 1937.

*Subgrant* means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee. The term includes financial assistance when provided by contractual legal agreement, but does not include procurement purchases, nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of *grant* in this part.

*Subgrantee* means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.



*Supplies* means all tangible personal property other than *equipment* as defined in this part.

*Suspension* means depending on the context, either (1) temporary withdrawal of the authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action by the grantee or subgrantee or a decision to terminate the grant, or (2) an action taken by a suspending official in accordance with agency regulations implementing E.O. 12549 to immediately exclude a person from participating in grant transactions for a period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal or debarment proceedings as may ensue.

*Termination* means permanent withdrawal of the authority to obligate previously-awarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or subgrantee. "Termination" does not include: (1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee's underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period; (2) Withdrawal of the unobligated balance as of the expiration of a grant; (3) Refusal to extend a grant or award additional funds, to make a competing or noncompeting continuation, renewal, extension, or supplemental award; or (4) voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently, or was otherwise illegal or invalid from inception.

*Terms of a grant or subgrant* mean all requirements of the grant or subgrant, whether in statute, regulations, or the award document.

*Third party in-kind contributions* mean property or services which benefit a federally assisted project or program and which are contributed by non-Federal third parties without charge to the grantee, or a cost-type contractor under the grant agreement.

*Unliquidated obligations* for reports prepared on a cash basis mean the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee that has not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee for which an outlay has not been recorded.

*Unobligated balance* means the portion of the funds authorized by the Federal agency that has not been obligated by the grantee and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 13.4 Applicability.**

(a) *General.* Subparts A through D of this part apply to all grants and subgrants to governments, except where inconsistent with Federal statutes or with regulations authorized in accordance with the exception provision of section 13.6, or:

(1) Grants and subgrants to State and local institutions of higher education or State and local hospitals.

(2) The block grants authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; Low-Income Home Energy Assistance; States' Program of Community Development Block Grants for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under title V, subtitle D, Chapter 2, Section 583—the Secretary's discretionary grant program) and titles I-III of the Job Training Partnership Act of 1982 and under the Public Health Services Act (section 1921), Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant and Part C of title V, Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant).

(3) Entitlement grants to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Aid to Needy Families with Dependent Children (Title IV-A of the Act, not including the Work Incentive Program (WIN) authorized by section 402(a)(19)(G); HHS grants for WIN are subject to this part);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (Title IV-D of the Act);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (Title IV-E of the Act);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (Titles I, X, XIV, and XVI-AABD of the Act); and

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (Title XIX of the Act) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B).

(4) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

(i) School Lunch (section 4 of the Act),

(ii) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act),

(iii) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act),

(iv) Summer Food Service for Children (section 13 of the Act), and

(v) Child Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act).

(5) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

(i) Special Milk (section 3 of the Act), and



(ii) School Breakfast (section 4 of the Act).

(6) Entitlement grants for State Administrative expenses under The Food Stamp Act of 1977 (section 16 of the Act).

(7) A grant for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a grant listed in paragraph (a)(3) of this section;

(8) Grant funds awarded under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1522(e)) and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96-422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits;

(9) Grants to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 236 through 241-1(a), and 242 through 244 (portions of the Impact Aid program), except for 20 U.S.C. 238(d)(2)(c) and 240(f) (Entitlement Increase for Handicapped Children); and

(10) Payments under the Veterans Administration's State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 641(a)).

(b) *Entitlement programs.* Entitlement programs enumerated above in § 13.4(a) (3) through (8) are subject to subpart E.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.5 Effect on other issuances.

All other grants administration provisions of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with this part are superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the exception provision in § 13.6.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.6 Additions and exceptions.

(a) For classes of grants and grantees subject to this part, Federal agencies may not impose additional administrative requirements except in codified regulations published in the *FEDERAL REGISTER*.

(b) Exceptions for classes of grants or grantees may be authorized only by OMB.

(c) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis and for subgrantees may be authorized by the affected Federal agencies.

 [Back to Top](#)

## Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.10 Forms for applying for grants.

(a) *Scope.* (1) This section prescribes forms and instructions to be used by governmental organizations (except hospitals and institutions of higher education operated by a government) in applying for grants. This section is not applicable, however, to formula grant programs which do not require applicants to apply for funds on a project basis.

(2) This section applies only to applications to Federal agencies for grants, and is not required to be applied by grantees in dealing with applicants for subgrants. However, grantees are encouraged to avoid more detailed or burdensome application requirements for subgrants.

(b) *Authorized forms and instructions for governmental organizations.* (1) In applying for grants, applicants shall only use standard application forms or those prescribed by the granting agency with the approval of OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.

(2) Applicants are not required to submit more than the original and two copies of preapplications or applications.

(3) Applicants must follow all applicable instructions that bear OMB clearance numbers. Federal agencies may specify and describe the programs, functions, or activities that will be used to plan, budget, and evaluate the work under a grant. Other supplementary instructions may be issued only with the approval of OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980. For any standard form, except the SF-424 facesheet, Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the applicant to disregard any line item that is not needed.

(4) When a grantee applies for additional funding (such as a continuation or supplemental award) or amends a previously submitted application, only the affected pages need be submitted. Previously submitted pages with information that is still current need not be resubmitted.

 [Back to Top](#)



**§ 13.11 State plans.**

(a) *Scope.* The statutes for some programs require States to submit plans before receiving grants. Under regulations implementing Executive Order 12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," States are allowed to simplify, consolidate and substitute plans. This section contains additional provisions for plans that are subject to regulations implementing the Executive Order.

(b) *Requirements.* A State need meet only Federal administrative or programmatic requirements for a plan that are in statutes or codified regulations.

(c) *Assurances.* In each plan the State will include an assurance that the State shall comply with all applicable Federal statutes and regulations in effect with respect to the periods for which it receives grant funding. For this assurance and other assurances required in the plan, the State may:

(1) Cite by number the statutory or regulatory provisions requiring the assurances and affirm that it gives the assurances required by those provisions,

(2) Repeat the assurance language in the statutes or regulations, or

(3) Develop its own language to the extent permitted by law.

(d) *Amendments.* A State will amend a plan whenever necessary to reflect: (1) New or revised Federal statutes or regulations or (2) a material change in any State law, organization, policy, or State agency operation. The State will obtain approval for the amendment and its effective date but need submit for approval only the amended portions of the plan.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 13.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high-risk" grantees.**

(a) A grantee or subgrantee may be considered "high risk" if an awarding agency determines that a grantee or subgrantee:

(1) Has a history of unsatisfactory performance, or

(2) Is not financially stable, or

(3) Has a management system which does not meet the management standards set forth in this part, or

(4) Has not conformed to terms and conditions of previous awards, or

(5) Is otherwise not responsible; and if the awarding agency determines that an award will be made, special conditions and/or restrictions shall correspond to the high risk condition and shall be included in the award.

(b) Special conditions or restrictions may include:

(1) Payment on a reimbursement basis;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given funding period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the grante or subgrantee to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(c) If an awarding agency decides to impose such conditions, the awarding official will notify the grantee or subgrantee as early as possible, in writing, of:

(1) The nature of the special conditions/restrictions;

(2) The reason(s) for imposing them;

(3) The corrective actions which must be taken before they will be removed and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions and

(4) The method of requesting reconsideration of the conditions/restrictions imposed.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements**



[↑ Back to Top](#)

## Financial Administration

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.20 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) A State must expand and account for grant funds in accordance with State laws and procedures for expending and accounting for its own funds. Fiscal control and accounting procedures of the State, as well as its subgrantees and cost-type contractors, must be sufficient to—

- (1) Permit preparation of reports required by this part and the statutes authorizing the grant, and
- (2) Permit the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have not been used in violation of the restrictions and prohibitions of applicable statutes.

(b) The financial management systems of other grantees and subgrantees must meet the following standards:

(1) *Financial reporting.* Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of financially assisted activities must be made in accordance with the financial reporting requirements of the grant or subgrant.

(2) *Accounting records.* Grantees and subgrantees must maintain records which adequately identify the source and application of funds provided for financially-assisted activities. These records must contain information pertaining to grant or subgrant awards and authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, liabilities, outlays or expenditures, and income.

(3) *Internal control.* Effective control and accountability must be maintained for all grant and subgrant cash, real and personal property, and other assets. Grantees and subgrantees must adequately safeguard all such property and must assure that it is used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) *Budget control.* Actual expenditures or outlays must be compared with budgeted amounts for each grant or subgrant. Financial information must be related to performance or productivity data, including the development of unit cost information whenever appropriate or specifically required in the grant or subgrant agreement. If unit cost data are required, estimates based on available documentation will be accepted whenever possible.

(5) *Allowable cost.* Applicable OMB cost principles, agency program regulations, and the terms of grant and subgrant agreements will be followed in determining the reasonableness, allowability, and allocability of costs.

(6) *Source documentation.* Accounting records must be supported by such source documentation as cancelled checks, paid bills, payrolls, time and attendance records, contract and subgrant award documents, etc.

(7) *Cash management.* Procedures for minimizing the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by grantees and subgrantees must be followed whenever advance payment procedures are used. Grantees must establish reasonable procedures to ensure the receipt of reports on subgrantees' cash balances and cash disbursements in sufficient time to enable them to prepare complete and accurate cash transactions reports to the awarding agency. When advances are made by letter-of-credit or electronic transfer of funds methods, the grantee must make drawdowns as close as possible to the time of making disbursements. Grantees must monitor cash drawdowns by their subgrantees to assure that they conform substantially to the same standards of timing and amount as apply to advances to the grantees.

(c) An awarding agency may review the adequacy of the financial management system of any applicant for financial assistance as part of a preaward review or at any time subsequent to award.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.21 Payment.

(a) *Scope.* This section prescribes the basic standard and the methods under which a Federal agency will make payments to grantees, and grantees will make payments to subgrantees and contractors.

(b) *Basic standard.* Methods and procedures for payment shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee, in accordance with Treasury regulations at 31 CFR part 205.

(c) *Advances.* Grantees and subgrantees shall be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness and ability to maintain procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of the funds and their disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee.

(d) *Reimbursement.* Reimbursement shall be the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (c) of this section are not met. Grantees and subgrantees may also be paid by reimbursement for any construction grant. Except as otherwise specified in regulation, Federal agencies shall not use the percentage of completion method to pay construction grants. The grantee or subgrantee may use that method to pay its construction contractor, and if it does, the awarding agency's payments to the grantee or subgrantee will be based on the grantee's or subgrantee's actual rate of disbursement.



(e) *Working capital advances.* If a grantee cannot meet the criteria for advance payments described in paragraph (c) of this section, and the Federal agency has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the grantee lacks sufficient working capital, the awarding agency may provide cash or a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure the awarding agency shall advance cash to the grantee to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the grantee's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the awarding agency shall reimburse the grantee for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used by grantees or subgrantees if the reason for using such method is the unwillingness or inability of the grantee to provide timely advances to the subgrantee to meet the subgrantee's actual cash disbursements.

(f) *Effect of program income, refunds, and audit recoveries on payment.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees shall disburse repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund before requesting additional cash payments for the same activity.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, grantees and subgrantees shall disburse program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) *Withholding payments.* (1) Unless otherwise required by Federal statute, awarding agencies shall not withhold payments for proper charges incurred by grantees or subgrantees unless—

(i) The grantee or subgrantee has failed to comply with grant award conditions or

(ii) The grantee or subgrantee is indebted to the United States.

(2) Cash withheld for failure to comply with grant award condition, but without suspension of the grant, shall be released to the grantee upon subsequent compliance. When a grant is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with § 13.43(c).

(3) A Federal agency shall not make payment to grantees for amounts that are withheld by grantees or subgrantees from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. Payments shall be made by the Federal agency when the grantees or subgrantees actually disburse the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(h) *Cash depositories.* (1) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for minority business enterprises, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use minority banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by minority group members). A list of minority owned banks can be obtained from the Minority Business Development Agency, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(2) A grantee or subgrantee shall maintain a separate bank account only when required by Federal-State agreement.

(i) *Interest earned on advances.* Except for interest earned on advances of funds exempt under the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6501 *et seq.*) and the Indian Self-Determination Act (23 U.S.C. 450), grantees and subgrantees shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit interest earned on advances to the Federal agency. The grantee or subgrantee may keep interest amounts up to \$100 per year for administrative expenses.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 13.22 Allowable costs.**

(a) *Limitation on use of funds.* Grant funds may be used only for:

(1) The allowable costs of the grantees, subgrantees and cost-type contractors, including allowable costs in the form of payments to fixed-price contractors; and

(2) Reasonable fees or profit to cost-type contractors but not any fee or profit (or other increment above allowable costs) to the grantee or subgrantee.

(b) *Applicable cost principles.* For each kind of organization, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowable costs will be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the organization incurring the costs. The following chart lists the kinds of organizations and the applicable cost principles.

For the costs of a—	Use the principles in—
State, local or Indian tribal government	OMB Circular A-87.
Private nonprofit organization other than an (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A-122 as not subject to that circular	OBM Circular A-122.
Educational institutions.	OMB Circular A-21.
For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OBM Circular A-122 as not subject to that circular	48 CFR part 31. Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost accounting standards that comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency.

 [Back to Top](#)



### § 13.23 Period of availability of funds.

(a) *General.* Where a funding period is specified, a grantee may charge to the award only costs resulting from obligations of the funding period unless carryover of unobligated balances is permitted, in which case the carryover balances may be charged for costs resulting from obligations of the subsequent funding period.

(b) *Liquidation of obligations.* A grantee must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 days after the end of the funding period (or as specified in a program regulation) to coincide with the submission of the annual Financial Status Report (SF-269). The Federal agency may extend this deadline at the request of the grantee.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.24 Matching or cost sharing.

(a) *Basic rule: Costs and contributions acceptable.* With the qualifications and exceptions listed in paragraph (b) of this section, a matching or cost sharing requirement may be satisfied by either or both of the following:

(1) Allowable costs incurred by the grantee, subgrantee or a cost-type contractor under the assistance agreement. This includes allowable costs borne by non-Federal grants or by others cash donations from non-Federal third parties.

(2) The value of third party in-kind contributions applicable to the period to which the cost sharing or matching requirements applies.

(b) *Qualifications and exceptions —*(1) *Costs borne by other Federal grant agreements.* Except as provided by Federal statute, a cost sharing or matching requirement may not be met by costs borne by another Federal grant. This prohibition does not apply to income earned by a grantee or subgrantee from a contract awarded under another Federal grant.

(2) *General revenue sharing.* For the purpose of this section, general revenue sharing funds distributed under 31 U.S.C. 6702 are not considered Federal grant funds.

(3) *Cost or contributions counted towards other Federal costs-sharing requirements.* Neither costs nor the values of third party in-kind contributions may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of a grant agreement if they have been or will be counted towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(4) *Costs financed by program income.* Costs financed by program income, as defined in § 13.25, shall not count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless they are expressly permitted in the terms of the assistance agreement. (This use of general program income is described in § 13.25(g).)

(5) *Services or property financed by income earned by contractors.* Contractors under a grant may earn income from the activities carried out under the contract in addition to the amounts earned from the party awarding the contract. No costs of services or property supported by this income may count toward satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless other provisions of the grant agreement expressly permit this kind of income to be used to meet the requirement.

(6) *Records.* Costs and third party in-kind contributions counting towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement must be verifiable from the records of grantees and subgrantee or cost-type contractors. These records must show how the value placed on third party in-kind contributions was derived. To the extent feasible, volunteer services will be supported by the same methods that the organization uses to support the allocability of regular personnel costs.

(7) *Special standards for third party in-kind contributions.* (i) Third party in-kind contributions count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only where, if the party receiving the contributions were to pay for them, the payments would be allowable costs.

(ii) Some third party in-kind contributions are goods and services that, if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor receiving the contribution had to pay for them, the payments would have been an indirect costs. Costs sharing or matching credit for such contributions shall be given only if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor has established, along with its regular indirect cost rate, a special rate for allocating to individual projects or programs the value of the contributions.

(iii) A third party in-kind contribution to a fixed-price contract may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only if it results in:

(A) An increase in the services or property provided under the contract (without additional cost to the grantee or subgrantee) or

(B) A cost savings to the grantee or subgrantee.

(iv) The values placed on third party in-kind contributions for cost sharing or matching purposes will conform to the rules in the succeeding sections of this part. If a third party in-kind contribution is a type not treated in those sections, the value placed upon it shall be fair and reasonable.

(c) *Valuation of donated services —*(1) *Volunteer services.* Unpaid services provided to a grantee or subgrantee by individuals will be valued at rates consistent with those ordinarily paid for similar work in the grantee's or subgrantee's organization. If the grantee or subgrantee does not have employees performing similar work, the rates will be



consistent with those ordinarily paid by other employers for similar work in the same labor market. In either case, a reasonable amount for fringe benefits may be included in the valuation.

(2) *Employees of other organizations.* When an employer other than a grantee, subgrantee, or cost-type contractor furnishes free of charge the services of an employee in the employee's normal line of work, the services will be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay exclusive of the employee's fringe benefits and overhead costs. If the services are in a different line of work, paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

(d) *Valuation of third party donated supplies and loaned equipment or space.* (1) If a third party donates supplies, the contribution will be valued at the market value of the supplies at the time of donation.

(2) If a third party donates the use of equipment or space in a building but retains title, the contribution will be valued at the fair rental rate of the equipment or space.

(e) *Valuation of third party donated equipment, buildings, and land.* If a third party donates equipment, buildings, or land, and title passes to a grantee or subgrantee, the treatment of the donated property will depend upon the purpose of the grant or subgrant, as follows:

(1) *Awards for capital expenditures.* If the purpose of the grant or subgrant is to assist the grantee or subgrantee in the acquisition of property, the market value of that property at the time of donation may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(2) *Other awards.* If assisting in the acquisition of property is not the purpose of the grant or subgrant, paragraphs (e)(2) (i) and (ii) of this section apply:

(i) If approval is obtained from the awarding agency, the market value at the time of donation of the donated equipment or buildings and the fair rental rate of the donated land may be counted as cost sharing or matching. In the case of a subgrant, the terms of the grant agreement may require that the approval be obtained from the Federal agency as well as the grantee. In all cases, the approval may be given only if a purchase of the equipment or rental of the land would be approved as an allowable direct cost. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-Federal share of the property may be counted as cost-sharing or matching.

(ii) If approval is not obtained under paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, no amount may be counted for donated land, and only depreciation or use allowances may be counted for donated equipment and buildings. The depreciation or use allowances for this property are not treated as third party in-kind contributions. Instead, they are treated as costs incurred by the grantee or subgrantee. They are computed and allocated (usually as indirect costs) in accordance with the cost principles specified in § 13.22, in the same way as depreciation or use allowances for purchased equipment and buildings. The amount of depreciation or use allowances for donated equipment and buildings is based on the property's market value at the time it was donated.

(f) *Valuation of grantee or subgrantee donated real property for construction/acquisition.* If a grantee or subgrantee donates real property for a construction or facilities acquisition project, the current market value of that property may be counted as cost sharing or matching. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-Federal share of the property may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(g) *Appraisal of real property.* In some cases under paragraphs (d), (e) and (f) of this section, it will be necessary to establish the market value of land or a building or the fair rental rate of land or of space in a building. In these cases, the Federal agency may require the market value or fair rental value be set by an independent appraiser, and that the value or rate be certified by the grantee. This requirement will also be imposed by the grantee on subgrantees.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.25 Program income.

(a) *General.* Grantees are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs. Program income includes income from fees for services performed, from the use or rental of real or personal property acquired with grant funds, from the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a grant agreement, and from payments of principal and interest on loans made with grant funds. Except as otherwise provided in regulations of the Federal agency, program income does not include interest on grant funds, rebates, credits, discounts, refunds, etc. and interest earned on any of them.

(b) *Definition of program income.* Program income means gross income received by the grantee or subgrantee directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of the grant agreement during the grant period. *During the grant period* is the time between the effective date of the award and the ending date of the award reflected in the final financial report.

(c) *Cost of generating program income.* If authorized by Federal regulations or the grant agreement, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income.

(d) *Governmental revenues.* Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a grantee or subgrantee are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income.

(e) *Royalties.* Income from royalties and license fees for copyrighted material, patents, and inventions developed by a grantee or subgrantee is program income only if the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income. (See § 13.34.)

(f) *Property.* Proceeds from the sale of real property or equipment will be handled in accordance with the requirements of §§ 13.31 and 13.32.



(g) *Use of program income.* Program income shall be deducted from outlays which may be both Federal and non-Federal as described below, unless the Federal agency regulations or the grant agreement specify another alternative (or a combination of the alternatives). In specifying alternatives, the Federal agency may distinguish between income earned by the grantee and income earned by subgrantees and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When Federal agencies authorize the alternatives in paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall also be deducted from outlays.

(1) *Deduction.* Ordinarily program income shall be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income shall be used for current costs unless the Federal agency authorizes otherwise. Program income which the grantee did not anticipate at the time of the award shall be used to reduce the Federal agency and grantee contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) *Addition.* When authorized, program income may be added to the funds committed to the grant agreement by the Federal agency and the grantee. The program income shall be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the grant agreement.

(3) *Cost sharing or matching.* When authorized, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the grant agreement. The amount of the Federal grant award remains the same.

(h) *Income after the award period.* There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of program income earned after the end of the award period (i.e., until the ending date of the final financial report, see paragraph (a) of this section), unless the terms of the agreement or the Federal agency regulations provide otherwise.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.26 Non-Federal audit.

(a) *Basic rule.* Grantees and subgrantees are responsible for obtaining audits in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501-7507); 31 U.S.C. 503, 1111; Executive Order 8248; Executive Order 11541; and revised OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations." The audits shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial audits.

(b) *Subgrantees.* State or local governments, as those terms are defined for purposes of the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, that provide Federal awards to a subgrantee, which expends \$500,000 or more (or other amount as specified by OMB) in Federal awards in a fiscal year, shall:

(1) Determine whether State or local subgrantees have met the audit requirements of the Act and whether subgrantees covered by OMB Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations," have met the audit requirements of the Act. Commercial contractors (private for-profit and private and governmental organizations) providing goods and services to State and local governments are not required to have a single audit performed. State and local governments should use their own procedures to ensure that the contractor has complied with laws and regulations affecting the expenditure of Federal funds;

(2) Determine whether the subgrantee spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subgrantee made in accordance with the Act, Circular A-110, or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subgrantee has not had such an audit;

(3) Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instance of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(4) Consider whether subgrantee audits necessitate adjustment of the grantee's own records; and

(5) Require each subgrantee to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements.

(c) *Auditor selection.* In arranging for audit services, § 13.36 shall be followed.

[53 FR 8079, 887, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 62 FR 45939, 45945, Aug. 29, 1997; 74 FR 15338, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

### Changes, Property, and Subawards

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.30 Changes.

(a) *General.* Grantees and subgrantees are permitted to rebudget within the approved direct cost budget to meet unanticipated requirements and may make limited program changes to the approved project. However, unless waived by the awarding agency, certain types of post-award changes in budgets and projects shall require the prior written approval of the awarding agency.



(b) *Relation to cost principles.* The applicable cost principles (see § 13.22) contain requirements for prior approval of certain types of costs. Except where waived, those requirements apply to all grants and subgrants even if paragraphs (c) through (f) of this section do not.

(c) *Budget changes* —(1) *Nonconstruction projects.* Except as stated in other regulations or an award document, grantees or subgrantees shall obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following changes is anticipated under a nonconstruction award:

(i) Any revision which would result in the need for additional funding.

(ii) Unless waived by the awarding agency, cumulative transfers among direct cost categories, or, if applicable, among separately budgeted programs, projects, functions, or activities which exceed or are expected to exceed ten percent of the current total approved budget, whenever the awarding agency's share exceeds \$100,000.

(iii) Transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (i.e., from direct payments to trainees to other expense categories).

(2) *Construction projects.* Grantees and subgrantees shall obtain prior written approval for any budget revision which would result in the need for additional funds.

(3) *Combined construction and nonconstruction projects.* When a grant or subgrant provides funding for both construction and nonconstruction activities, the grantee or subgrantee must obtain prior written approval from the awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfer from nonconstruction to construction or vice versa.

(d) *Programmatic changes.* Grantees or subgrantees must obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following actions is anticipated:

(1) Any revision of the scope or objectives of the project (regardless of whether there is an associated budget revision requiring prior approval).

(2) Need to extend the period of availability of funds.

(3) Changes in key persons in cases where specified in an application or a grant award. In research projects, a change in the project director or principal investigator shall always require approval unless waived by the awarding agency.

(4) Under nonconstruction projects, contracting out, subgranting (if authorized by law) or otherwise obtaining the services of a third party to perform activities which are central to the purposes of the award. This approval requirement is in addition to the approval requirements of § 13.36 but does not apply to the procurement of equipment, supplies, and general support services.

(e) *Additional prior approval requirements.* The awarding agency may not require prior approval for any budget revision which is not described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) *Requesting prior approval.* (1) A request for prior approval of any budget revision will be in the same budget form as the grantee used in its application and shall be accompanied by a narrative justification for the proposed revision.

(2) A request for a prior approval under the applicable Federal cost principles (see § 13.22) may be made by letter.

(3) A request by a subgrantee for prior approval will be addressed in writing to the grantee. The grantee will promptly review such request and shall approve or disapprove the request in writing. A grantee will not approve any budget or project revision which is inconsistent with the purpose or terms and conditions of the Federal grant to the grantee. If the revision, requested by the subgrantee would result in a change to the grantee's approved project which requires Federal prior approval, the grantee will obtain the Federal agency's approval before approving the subgrantee's request.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.31 Real property.

(a) *Title.* Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Use.* Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes, real property will be used for the originally authorized purposes as long as needed for that purposes, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) *Disposition.* When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the awarding agency. The instructions will provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) *Retention of title.* Retain title after compensating the awarding agency. The amount paid to the awarding agency will be computed by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where a grantee or subgrantee is disposing of real property acquired with grant funds and acquiring replacement real property under the same program, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.



(2) *Sale of property.* Sell the property and compensate the awarding agency. The amount due to the awarding agency will be calculated by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the grant is still active, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When a grantee or subgrantee is directed to sell property, sales procedures shall be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) *Transfer of title.* Transfer title to the awarding agency or to a third-party designated/approved by the awarding agency. The grantee or subgrantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the grantee or subgrantee's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property to the current fair market value of the property.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.32 Equipment.

(a) *Title.* Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *States.* A State will use, manage, and dispose of equipment acquired under a grant by the State in accordance with State laws and procedures. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) *Use.* (1) Equipment shall be used by the grantee or subgrantee in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency.

(2) The grantee or subgrantee shall also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, providing such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use shall be given to other programs or projects supported by the awarding agency. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in § 13.25(a) to earn program income, the grantee or subgrantee must not use equipment acquired with grant funds to provide services for a fee to compete unfairly with private companies that provide equivalent services, unless specifically permitted or contemplated by Federal statute.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the grantee or subgrantee may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property, subject to the approval of the awarding agency.

(d) *Management requirements.* Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part with grant funds, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of property, who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the property, the location, use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft shall be investigated.

(4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.

(5) If the grantee or subgrantee is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) *Disposition.* When original or replacement equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency, disposition of the equipment will be made as follows:

(1) Items of equipment with a current per-unit fair market value of less than \$5,000 may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the awarding agency.

(2) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value in excess of \$5,000 may be retained or sold and the awarding agency shall have a right to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the awarding agency's share of the equipment.

(3) In cases where a grantee or subgrantee fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the awarding agency may direct the grantee or subgrantee to take excess and disposition actions.

(f) *Federal equipment.* In the event a grantee or subgrantee is provided federally-owned equipment:

(1) Title will remain vested in the Federal Government.

(2) Grantees or subgrantees will manage the equipment in accordance with Federal agency rules and procedures,



and submit an annual inventory listing.

(3) When the equipment is no longer needed, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the Federal agency.

(g) *Right to transfer title.* The Federal awarding agency may reserve the right to transfer title to the Federal Government or a third part named by the awarding agency when such a third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfers shall be subject to the following standards:

(1) The property shall be identified in the grant or otherwise made known to the grantee in writing.

(2) The Federal awarding agency shall issue disposition instruction within 120 calendar days after the end of the Federal support of the project for which it was acquired. If the Federal awarding agency fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar-day period the grantee shall follow § 13.32(e).

(3) When title to equipment is transferred, the grantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the percentage of participation in the purchase to the current fair market value of the property.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.33 Supplies.

(a) *Title.* Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest, upon acquisition, in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Disposition.* If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding \$5,000 in total aggregate fair market value upon termination or completion of the award, and if the supplies are not needed for any other federally sponsored programs or projects, the grantee or subgrantee shall compensate the awarding agency for its share.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.34 Copyrights.

The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:

(a) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and

(b) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.

Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs under Executive Order 12549, "Debarment and Suspension."

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.36 Procurement.

(a) *States.* When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.

(b) *Procurement standards.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:

(i) The employee, officer or agent,

(ii) Any member of his immediate family,



(iii) His or her partner, or

(iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee's or subgrantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and subgrantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.

(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only—

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and

(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment for that of the grantee or subgrantee unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and

(ii) Violations of the grantee's or subgrantee's protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Competition.* (1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of section 13.36. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,

(ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,

(iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,

(iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,

(v) Organizational conflicts of interest,

(vi) Specifying only a "brand name" product instead of allowing "an equal" product to be offered and describing the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and

(vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic



location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a "brand name or equal" description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors shall be clearly stated; and

(ii) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) *Methods of procurement to be followed* —(1) *Procurement by small purchase procedures.* Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently set at \$100,000). If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations shall be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) *Procurement by sealed bids* (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in § 13.36(d)(2)(i) apply.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively and for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) *Procurement by competitive proposals.* The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to



purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by *noncompetitive proposals* is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:

(A) The item is available only from a single source;

(B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;

(C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or

(D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profits, is required.

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) *Contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.* (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

(i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2) (i) through (v) of this section.

(f) *Contract cost and price.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price reasonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see § 13.22). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) *Awarding agency review.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must make available, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc. when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards



in this section; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a "brand name" product; or

(iv) The proposed award is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis.

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) *Bonding requirements.* For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) *A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price.* The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) *A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) *A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) *Contract provisions.* A grantee's and subgrantee's contracts must contain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. (Contracts more than the simplified acquisition threshold)

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of \$10,000)

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, entitled "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967, and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR chapter 60). (All construction contracts awarded in excess of \$10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees)

(4) Compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3). (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair)

(5) Compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a-7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts in excess of \$2000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

(6) Compliance with Sections 103 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327-330) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of \$2000, and in excess of \$2500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United



States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 508 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order 11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR part 15). (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of \$100,000)

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94-163, 89 Stat. 871).

[53 FR 8078, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 60 FR 19639, 19645, Apr. 19, 1995]

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.37 Subgrants.

(a) *States.* States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;

(2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;

(3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with § 13.42 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and

(4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) *All other grantees.* All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this part which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this part;

(2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and

(3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) *Exceptions.* By their own terms, certain provisions of this part do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

(1) Section 13.10;

(2) Section 13.11;

(3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR part 205, cited in § 13.21; and

(4) Section 13.50.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### Reports, Records Retention, and Enforcement

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 13.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) *Monitoring by grantees.* Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) *Nonconstruction performance reports.* The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-



annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The final performance report will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support. If a justified request is submitted by a grantee, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report. Additionally, requirements for unnecessary performance reports may be waived by the Federal agency.

(2) Performance reports will contain, for each grant, brief information on the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives established for the period. Where the output of the project can be quantified, a computation of the cost per unit of output may be required if that information will be useful.

(ii) The reasons for slippage if established objectives were not met.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(3) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(4) Grantees will adhere to the standards in this section in prescribing performance reporting requirements for subgrantees.

(c) *Construction performance reports.* For the most part, on-site technical inspections and certified percentage-of-completion data are relied on heavily by Federal agencies to monitor progress under construction grants and subgrants. The Federal agency will require additional formal performance reports only when considered necessary, and never more frequently than quarterly.

(d) *Significant developments.* Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates which have significant impact upon the grant or subgrant supported activity. In such cases, the grantee must inform the Federal agency as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally planned.

(e) Federal agencies may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) *Waivers, extensions.* (1) Federal agencies may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

(2) The grantee may waive any performance report from a subgrantee when not needed. The grantee may extend the due date for any performance report from a subgrantee if the grantee will still be able to meet its performance reporting obligations to the Federal agency.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 13.41 Financial reporting.

(a) *General.* (1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) (2) and (5) of this section, grantees will use only the forms specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, and such supplementary or other forms as may from time to time be authorized by OMB, for:

(i) Submitting financial reports to Federal agencies, or

(ii) Requesting advances or reimbursements when letters of credit are not used.

(2) Grantees need not apply the forms prescribed in this section in dealing with their subgrantees. However, grantees shall not impose more burdensome requirements on subgrantees.

(3) Grantees shall follow all applicable standard and supplemental Federal agency instructions approved by OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 for use in connection with forms specified in paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section. Federal agencies may issue substantive supplementary instructions only with the approval of OMB. Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the grantee to disregard any line item that the Federal agency finds unnecessary for its decisionmaking purposes.

(4) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of forms required under this part.

(5) Federal agencies may provide computer outputs to grantees to expedite or contribute to the accuracy of reporting. Federal agencies may accept the required information from grantees in machine usable format or computer printouts instead of prescribed forms.

(6) Federal agencies may waive any report required by this section if not needed.

(7) Federal agencies may extend the due date of any financial report upon receiving a justified request from a grantee.

(b) *Financial Status Report* —(1) *Form.* Grantees will use Standard Form 269 or 269A, Financial Status Report, to report the status of funds for all nonconstruction grants and for construction grants when required in accordance with



paragraph (e)(2)(iii) of this section.

(2) *Accounting basis.* Each grantee will report program outlays and program income on a cash or accrual basis as prescribed by the awarding agency. If the Federal agency requires accrual information and the grantee's accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the grantee shall not be required to convert its accounting system but shall develop such accrual information through and analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) *Frequency.* The Federal agency may prescribe the frequency of the report for each project or program. However, the report will not be required more frequently than quarterly. If the Federal agency does not specify the frequency of the report, it will be submitted annually. A final report will be required upon expiration or termination of grant support.

(4) *Due date.* When reports are required on a quarterly or semiannual basis, they will be due 30 days after the reporting period. When required on an annual basis, they will be due 90 days after the grant year. Final reports will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support.

(c) *Federal Cash Transactions Report* —(1) *Form.* (i) For grants paid by letter or credit, Treasury check advances or electronic transfer of funds, the grantee will submit the Standard Form 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report, and when necessary, its continuation sheet, Standard Form 272a, unless the terms of the award exempt the grantee from this requirement.

(ii) These reports will be used by the Federal agency to monitor cash advanced to grantees and to obtain disbursement or outlay information for each grant from grantees. The format of the report may be adapted as appropriate when reporting is to be accomplished with the assistance of automatic data processing equipment provided that the information to be submitted is not changed in substance.

(2) *Forecasts of Federal cash requirements.* Forecasts of Federal cash requirements may be required in the "Remarks" section of the report.

(3) *Cash in hands of subgrantees.* When considered necessary and feasible by the Federal agency, grantees may be required to report the amount of cash advances in excess of three days' needs in the hands of their subgrantees or contractors and to provide short narrative explanations of actions taken by the grantee to reduce the excess balances.

(4) *Frequency and due date.* Grantees must submit the report no later than 15 working days following the end of each quarter. However, where an advance either by letter of credit or electronic transfer of funds is authorized at an annualized rate of one million dollars or more, the Federal agency may require the report to be submitted within 15 working days following the end of each month.

(d) *Request for advance or reimbursement* —(1) *Advance payments.* Requests for Treasury check advance payments will be submitted on Standard Form 270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement. (This form will not be used for drawdowns under a letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or when Treasury check advance payments are made to the grantee automatically on a predetermined basis.)

(2) *Reimbursements.* Requests for reimbursement under nonconstruction grants will also be submitted on Standard Form 270. (For reimbursement requests under construction grants, see paragraph (e)(1) of this section.)

(3) The frequency for submitting payment requests is treated in paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(e) *Outlay report and request for reimbursement for construction programs.* (1) Grants that support construction activities paid by reimbursement method.

(i) Requests for reimbursement under construction grants will be submitted on Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. Federal agencies may, however, prescribe the Request for Advance or Reimbursement form, specified in paragraph (d) of this section, instead of this form.

(ii) The frequency for submitting reimbursement requests is treated in paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(2) Grants that support construction activities paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advance.

(i) When a construction grant is paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advances, the grantee will report its outlays to the Federal agency using Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. The Federal agency will provide any necessary special instruction. However, frequency and due date shall be governed by paragraphs (b) (3) and (4) of this section.

(ii) When a construction grant is paid by Treasury check advances based on periodic requests from the grantee, the advances will be requested on the form specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(iii) The Federal agency may substitute the Financial Status Report specified in paragraph (b) of this section for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.

(3) *Accounting basis.* The accounting basis for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs shall be governed by paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 13.42 Retention and access requirements for records.



(a) *Applicability.* (1) This section applies to all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of grantees or subgrantees which are:

- (i) Required to be maintained by the terms of this part, program regulations or the grant agreement, or
- (ii) Otherwise reasonably considered as pertinent to program regulations or the grant agreement.

(2) This section does not apply to records maintained by contractors or subcontractors. For a requirement to place a provision concerning records in certain kinds of contracts, see § 13.36(i)(10).

(b) *Length of retention period.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, records must be retained for three years from the starting date specified in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) If any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit or other action involving the records has been started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until completion of the action and resolution of all issues which arise from it, or until the end of the regular 3-year period, whichever is later.

(3) To avoid duplicate recordkeeping, awarding agencies may make special arrangements with grantees and subgrantees to retain any records which are continuously needed for joint use. The awarding agency will request transfer of records to its custody when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. When the records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Starting date of retention period* —(1) *General.* When grant support is continued or renewed at annual or other intervals, the retention period for the records of each funding period starts on the day the grantee or subgrantee submits to the awarding agency its single or last expenditure report for that period. However, if grant support is continued or renewed quarterly, the retention period for each year's records starts on the day the grantee submits its expenditure report for the last quarter of the Federal fiscal year. In all other cases, the retention period starts on the day the grantee submits its final expenditure report. If an expenditure report has been waived, the retention period starts on the day the report would have been due.

(2) *Real property and equipment records.* The retention period for real property and equipment records starts from the date of the disposition or replacement or transfer at the direction of the awarding agency.

(3) *Records for income transactions after grant or subgrant support.* In some cases grantees must report income after the period of grant support. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the income starts from the end of the grantee's fiscal year in which the income is earned.

(4) *Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocations plans, etc.* This paragraph applies to the following types of documents, and their supporting records: indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(i) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(ii) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(d) *Substitution of microfilm.* Copies made by microfilming, photocopying, or similar methods may be substituted for the original records.

(e) *Access to records* —(1) *Records of grantees and subgrantees.* The awarding agency and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their authorized representatives, shall have the right of access to any pertinent books, documents, papers, or other records of grantees and subgrantees which are pertinent to the grant, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts.

(2) *Expiration of right of access.* The rights of access in this section must not be limited to the required retention period but shall last as long as the records are retained.

(f) *Restrictions on public access.* The Federal Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) does not apply to records Unless required by Federal, State, or local law, grantees and subgrantees are not required to permit public access to their records.

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 13.43 Enforcement.

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a grantee or subgrantee materially fails to comply with any term of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute or regulation, an assurance, in a State plan or application, a notice of award, or elsewhere, the awarding agency may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the grantee or subgrantee or more severe enforcement action by the awarding agency,



(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance,

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award for the grantee's or subgrantee's program,

(4) Withhold further awards for the program, or

(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) *Hearings, appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, the awarding agency will provide the grantee or subgrantee an opportunity for such hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the grantee or subgrantee is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of grantee or subgrantee resulting from obligations incurred by the grantee or subgrantee during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other grantee or subgrantee costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if:

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the grantee or subgrantee before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and, in the case of a termination, are noncancellable, and,

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) *Relationship to Debarment and Suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude grantee or subgrantee from being subject to "Debarment and Suspension" under E.O. 12549 (see § 13.35).

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 13.44 Termination for convenience.

Except as provided in § 13.43 awards may be terminated in whole or in part only as follows:

(a) By the awarding agency with the consent of the grantee or subgrantee in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated, or

(b) By the grantee or subgrantee upon written notification to the awarding agency, setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if, in the case of a partial termination, the awarding agency determines that the remaining portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, the awarding agency may terminate the award in its entirety under either § 13.43 or paragraph (a) of this section.

 [Back to Top](#)

## Subpart D—After-The-Grant Requirements

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 13.50 Closeout.

(a) *General.* The Federal agency will close out the award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the grant has been completed.

(b) *Reports.* Within 90 days after the expiration or termination of the grant, the grantee must submit all financial, performance, and other reports required as a condition of the grant. Upon request by the grantee, Federal agencies may extend this timeframe. These may include but are not limited to:

(1) *Final performance or progress report.*

(2) *Financial Status Report (SF 269) or Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs (SF-271) (as applicable.)*

(3) *Final request for payment (SF-270) (if applicable).*

(4) *Invention disclosure (if applicable).*

(5) *Federally-owned property report:*

In accordance with § 13.32(f), a grantee must submit an inventory of all federally owned property (as distinct from property acquired with grant funds) for which it is accountable and request disposition instructions from the Federal



agency of property no longer needed.

(c) *Cost adjustment.* The Federal agency will, within 90 days after receipt of reports in paragraph (b) of this section, make upward or downward adjustments to the allowable costs.

(d) *Cash adjustments.* (1) The Federal agency will make prompt payment to the grantee for allowable reimbursable costs.

(2) The grantee must immediately refund to the Federal agency any balance of unobligated (unencumbered) cash advanced that is not authorized to be retained for use on other grants.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 13.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.**

The closeout of a grant does not affect:

- (a) The Federal agency's right to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review;
- (b) The grantee's obligation to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions;
- (c) Records retention as required in § 13.42;
- (d) Property management requirements in §§ 13.31 and 13.32; and
- (e) Audit requirements in § 13.26.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 13.52 Collection of amounts due.**

(a) Any funds paid to a grantee in excess of the amount to which the grantee is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after demand, the Federal agency may reduce the debt by:

- (1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements,
- (2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the grantee, or
- (3) Other action permitted by law.

(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (4 CFR Chapter II). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

 [Back to Top](#)

**Subpart E—Entitlement [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

---

For questions or comments regarding e-CFR editorial content, features, or design, email [ecfr@nara.gov](mailto:ecfr@nara.gov).  
For questions concerning e-CFR programming and delivery issues, email [webteam@gpo.gov](mailto:webteam@gpo.gov).



**FDsys:**  
**GPO's Federal Digital System**  
About FDsys  
Search Government Publications  
Browse Government Publications

- [Browse](#)
- [Simple Search](#)
- [Advanced Search](#)
  - [\\* Boolean](#)
  - [\\* Proximity](#)
- [Search History](#)
- [Search Tips](#)
- [Corrections](#)
- [Latest Updates](#)
- [User Info](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Agency List](#)
- [Incorporation by Reference](#)
- [e-CFR Main Page](#)

Related Resources

Download the **Code of Federal Regulations in XML**.

The **Electronic Code of Federal Regulations (e-CFR)** is a regularly updated, unofficial editorial compilation of CFR material and Federal Register amendments produced by the National Archives and Records Administration's Office of the Federal Register (OFR) and the Government Printing Office.

Parallel Table of Authorities and Rules for the Code of Federal Regulations and the United States Code  
[Text](#) | [PDF](#)

Find, review, and submit comments on Federal rules that are open for comment and published in the Federal Register using [Regulations.gov](#).

**Purchase individual CFR titles** from the U.S. Government Online Bookstore.

Find issues of the CFR (including issues prior to 1996) at a local **Federal depository library**.

[1]

## ELECTRONIC CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

As of October 9, 2012, the e-CFR resides at a new URL. Please reset your bookmarks, favorites, links and desktop shortcuts to: [www.ecfr.gov](http://www.ecfr.gov).

e-CFR Data is current as of November 9, 2012

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

Title 44: Emergency Management and Assistance

### PART 206—FEDERAL DISASTER ASSISTANCE

#### Contents

##### Subpart A—General

- § 206.1 Purpose.
- § 206.2 Definitions.
- § 206.3 Policy.
- § 206.4 State emergency plans.
- § 206.5 Assistance by other Federal agencies.
- § 206.6 Donation or loan of Federal equipment and supplies.
- § 206.7 Implementation of assistance from other Federal agencies.
- § 206.8 Reimbursement of other Federal agencies.
- § 206.9 Nonliability.
- § 206.10 Use of local firms and individuals.
- § 206.11 Nondiscrimination in disaster assistance.
- § 206.12 Use and coordination of relief organizations.
- § 206.13 Standards and reviews.
- § 206.14 Criminal and civil penalties.
- § 206.15 Recovery of assistance.
- § 206.16 Audit and investigations.
- § 206.17 Effective date.
- §§ 206.18-206.30 [Reserved]

##### Subpart B—The Declaration Process

- § 206.31 Purpose.
- § 206.32 Definitions.
- § 206.33 Preliminary damage assessment.
- § 206.34 Request for utilization of Department of Defense (DOD) resources.
- § 206.35 Requests for emergency declarations.
- § 206.36 Requests for major disaster declarations.
- § 206.37 Processing requests for declarations of a major disaster or emergency.
- § 206.38 Presidential determination.
- § 206.39 Notification.
- § 206.40 Designation of affected areas and eligible assistance.
- § 206.41 Appointment of disaster officials.
- § 206.42 Responsibilities of coordinating officers.
- § 206.43 Emergency support teams.
- § 206.44 FEMA-State Agreements.
- § 206.45 Loans of non-Federal share.
- § 206.46 Appeals.
- § 206.47 Cost-share adjustments.
- § 206.48 Factors considered when evaluating a Governor's request for a major disaster declaration.
- §§ 206.49-206.60 [Reserved]

##### Subpart C—Emergency Assistance

- § 206.61 Purpose.
- § 206.62 Available assistance.



- § 206.63 Provision of assistance.
- § 206.64 Coordination of assistance.
- § 206.65 Cost sharing.
- § 206.66 Limitation on expenditures.
- § 206.67 Requirement when limitation is exceeded.
- §§ 206.68-206.100 [Reserved]

**Subpart D—Federal Assistance to Individuals and Households**

- § 206.101 Temporary housing assistance for emergencies and major disasters declared on or before October 14, 2002.
- §§ 206.102-206.109 [Reserved]
- § 206.110 Federal assistance to individuals and households.
- § 206.111 Definitions.
- § 206.112 Registration period.
- § 206.113 Eligibility factors.
- § 206.114 Criteria for continued assistance.
- § 206.115 Appeals.
- § 206.116 Recovery of funds.
- § 206.117 Housing assistance.
- § 206.118 Disposal of housing units.
- § 206.119 Financial assistance to address other needs.
- § 206.120 State administration of other needs assistance.
- §§ 206.121-206.130 [Reserved]

**Subpart E—Individual and Family Grant Programs**

- § 206.131 Individual and Family Grant Program for major disasters declared on or before October 14, 2002.
- §§ 206.132-206.140 [Reserved]

**Subpart F—Other Individual Assistance**

- § 206.141 Disaster unemployment assistance.
- §§ 206.142-206.150 [Reserved]
- § 206.151 Food commodities.
- §§ 206.152-206.160 [Reserved]
- § 206.161 Relocation assistance.
- §§ 206.162-206.163 [Reserved]
- § 206.164 Disaster legal services.
- §§ 206.165-206.170 [Reserved]
- § 206.171 Crisis counseling assistance and training.
- §§ 206.172-206.180 [Reserved]
- § 206.181 Use of gifts and bequests for disaster assistance purposes.
- §§ 206.182-206.190 [Reserved]
- § 206.191 Duplication of benefits.
- §§ 206.192-206.199 [Reserved]

**Subpart G—Public Assistance Project Administration**

- § 206.200 General.
- § 206.201 Definitions used in this subpart.
- § 206.202 Application procedures.
- § 206.203 Federal grant assistance.
- § 206.204 Project performance.
- § 206.205 Payment of claims.
- § 206.206 Appeals.
- § 206.207 Administrative and audit requirements.
- § 206.208 Direct Federal assistance.
- § 206.209 Arbitration for Public Assistance determinations related to Hurricanes Katrina and Rita (Major disaster declarations DR-1603, DR-1604, DR-1605, DR-1606, and DR-1607).
- §§ 206.210-206.219 [Reserved]

**Subpart H—Public Assistance Eligibility**

- § 206.220 General.
- § 206.221 Definitions.
- § 206.222 Applicant eligibility.
- § 206.223 General work eligibility.
- § 206.224 Debris removal.
- § 206.225 Emergency work.
- § 206.226 Restoration of damaged facilities.
- § 206.227 Snow assistance.
- § 206.228 Allowable costs.
- §§ 206.229-206.249 [Reserved]

**Subpart I—Public Assistance Insurance Requirements**

- § 206.250 General.
- § 206.251 Definitions.



§ 206.252 Insurance requirements for facilities damaged by flood.  
§ 206.253 Insurance requirements for facilities damaged by disasters other than flood.  
§§ 206.254-206.339 [Reserved]

**Subpart J—Coastal Barrier Resources Act**

§ 206.340 Purpose of subpart.  
§ 206.341 Policy.  
§ 206.342 Definitions.  
§ 206.343 Scope.  
§ 206.344 Limitations on Federal expenditures.  
§ 206.345 Exceptions.  
§ 206.346 Applicability to disaster assistance.  
§ 206.347 Requirements.  
§ 206.348 Consultation.  
§ 206.349 Consistency determinations.  
§§ 206.350-206.359 [Reserved]

**Subpart K—Community Disaster Loans**

§ 206.360 Purpose.  
§ 206.361 Loan program.  
§ 206.362 Responsibilities.  
§ 206.363 Eligibility criteria.  
§ 206.364 Loan application.  
§ 206.365 Loan administration.  
§ 206.366 Loan cancellation.  
§ 206.367 Loan repayment.  
§§ 206.368-206.369 [Reserved]  
§ 206.370 Purpose and scope.  
§ 206.371 Loan program.  
§ 206.372 Responsibilities.  
§ 206.373 Eligibility criteria.  
§ 206.374 Loan application.  
§ 206.375 Loan administration.  
§ 206.376 Loan cancellation.  
§ 206.377 Loan repayment.  
§§ 206.378-206.389 [Reserved]

**Subpart L—Fire Suppression Assistance**

§ 206.390 General.  
§ 206.391 FEMA-State Agreement.  
§ 206.392 Request for assistance.  
§ 206.393 Providing assistance.  
§ 206.394 Cost eligibility.  
§ 206.395 Grant administration.  
§§ 206.396-206.399 [Reserved]

**Subpart M—Minimum Standards**

§ 206.400 General.  
§ 206.401 Local standards.  
§ 206.402 Compliance.

**Subpart N—Hazard Mitigation Grant Program**

§ 206.430 General.  
§ 206.431 Definitions.  
§ 206.432 Federal grant assistance.  
§ 206.433 State responsibilities.  
§ 206.434 Eligibility.  
§ 206.435 Project identification and selection criteria.  
§ 206.436 Application procedures.  
§ 206.437 State administrative plan.  
§ 206.438 Project management.  
§ 206.439 Allowable costs.  
§ 206.440 Appeals.

AUTHORITY: Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, 42 U.S.C. 5121 through 5207; Homeland Security Act of 2002, 6 U.S.C. 101 et seq.; Department of Homeland Security Delegation 9001.1.

SOURCE: 54 FR 11615, Mar. 21, 1989, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)



## Subpart A—General

SOURCE: 55 FR 2288, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 206.1 Purpose.

(a) *Purpose.* The purpose of this subpart is to prescribe the policies and procedures to be followed in implementing those sections of Public Law 93-288, as amended, delegated to the Administrator, Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). The rules in this subpart apply to major disasters and emergencies declared by the President on or after November 23, 1988, the date of enactment of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, 42 U.S.C. 5121 *et seq.*

(b) *Prior regulations.* Prior regulations relating to major disasters and emergencies declared by the President before November 23, 1988 were published in 44 CFR part 205 (see 44 CFR part 205 as contained in the CFR edition revised as of October 1, 1994).

[59 FR 53363, Oct. 24, 1994]

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 206.2 Definitions.

(a) *General.* The following definitions have general applicability throughout this part:

(1) *The Stafford Act:* The Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, Public Law 93-288, as amended.

(2) *Applicant:* Individuals, families, States and local governments, or private nonprofit organizations who apply for assistance as a result of a declaration of a major disaster or emergency.

(3) [Reserved]

(4) *Concurrent, multiple major disasters:* In considering a request for an advance, the term concurrent multiple major disasters means major disasters which occur within a 12-month period immediately preceding the major disaster for which an advance of the non-Federal share is requested pursuant to section 319 of the Stafford Act.

(5) *Contractor:* Any individual, partnership, corporation, agency, or other entity (other than an organization engaged in the business of insurance) performing work by contract for the Federal Government or a State or local agency.

(6) *Designated area:* Any emergency or major disaster-affected portion of a State which has been determined eligible for Federal assistance.

(7) *Administrator:* The Administrator, FEMA.

(8) *Disaster Recovery Manager (DRM):* The person appointed to exercise the authority of a Regional Administrator for a particular emergency or major disaster.

(9) *Emergency:* Any occasion or instance for which, in the determination of the President, Federal assistance is needed to supplement State and local efforts and capabilities to save lives and to protect property and public health and safety, or to lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe in any part of the United States.

(10) *Federal agency:* Any department, independent establishment, Government corporation, or other agency of the executive branch of the Federal Government, including the United States Postal Service, but shall not include the American National Red Cross.

(11) *Federal Coordinating Officer (FCO):* The person appointed by the Administrator, or in his absence, the Deputy Director, to coordinate Federal assistance in an emergency or a major disaster.

(12) *Governor:* The chief executive of any State or the Acting Governor.

(13) *Governor's Authorized Representative (GAR):* The person empowered by the Governor to execute, on behalf of the State, all necessary documents for disaster assistance.

(14) *Hazard mitigation:* Any cost effective measure which will reduce the potential for damage to a facility from a disaster event.

(15) *Individual assistance:* Supplementary Federal assistance provided under the Stafford Act to individuals and families adversely affected by a major disaster or an emergency. Such assistance may be provided directly by the Federal Government or through State or local governments or disaster relief organizations. For further information, see subparts D, E, and F of these regulations.

(16) *Local government:*

(i) A county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority, school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (regardless of whether the council of governments is incorporated as a nonprofit



corporation under State law), regional or interstate government entity, or agency or instrumentality of a local government;

(ii) An Indian tribe or authorized tribal organization, or Alaska Native village or organization; and

(iii) A rural community, unincorporated town or village, or other public entity, for which an application for assistance is made by a State or political subdivision of a State.

(17) *Major disaster*: Any natural catastrophe (including any hurricane, tornado, storm, high water, winddriven water, tidal wave, tsunami, earthquake, volcanic eruption, landslide, mudslide, snowstorm, or drought), or, regardless of cause, any fire, flood, or explosion, in any part of the United States, which in the determination of the President causes damage of sufficient severity and magnitude to warrant major disaster assistance under this Act to supplement the efforts and available resources of States, local governments, and disaster relief organizations in alleviating the damage, loss, hardship, or suffering caused thereby.

(18) *Mission assignment*: Work order issued to a Federal agency by the Regional Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate, or Administrator, directing completion by that agency of a specified task and citing funding, other managerial controls, and guidance.

(19) *Private nonprofit organization*: Any nongovernmental agency or entity that currently has:

(i) An effective ruling letter from the U.S. Internal Revenue Service granting tax exemption under section 501 (c), (d), or (e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954; or

(ii) Satisfactory evidence from the State that the organization or entity is a nonprofit one organized or doing business under State law.

(20) *Public Assistance*: Supplementary Federal assistance provided under the Stafford Act to State and local governments or certain private, nonprofit organizations other than assistance for the direct benefit of individuals and families. For further information, see subparts G and H of this part. Fire Management Assistance Grants under section 420 of the Stafford Act are also considered Public Assistance. See subpart K of this part and part 204 of this chapter.

(21) *Regional Administrator*: An administrator of a regional office of FEMA, or his/her designated representative. As used in these regulations, Regional Administrator also means the Disaster Recovery Manager who has been appointed to exercise the authority of the Regional Administrator for a particular emergency or major disaster.

(22) *State*: Any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(23) *State Coordinating Officer (SCO)*: The person appointed by the Governor to act in cooperation with the Federal Coordinating Officer to administer disaster recovery efforts.

(24) *State emergency plan*: As used in section 401 or section 501 of the Stafford Act means that State plan which is designated specifically for State-level response to emergencies or major disasters and which sets forth actions to be taken by the State and local governments, including those for implementing Federal disaster assistance.

(25) *Temporary housing*: Temporary accommodations provided by the Federal Government to individuals or families whose homes are made unlivable by an emergency or a major disaster.

(26) *United States*: The 50 States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(27) *Voluntary organization*: Any chartered or otherwise duly recognized tax-exempt local, State, or national organization or group which has provided or may provide needed services to the States, local governments, or individuals in coping with an emergency or a major disaster.

(b) *Additional definitions*. Definitions which apply to individual subparts are found in those subparts.

[54 FR 11615, Mar. 21, 1989, as amended at 63 FR 17110, Apr. 8, 1998; 66 FR 57352, 57353, Nov. 14, 2001; 69 FR 24083, May 3, 2004; 74 FR 15346, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 206.3 Policy.

It is the policy of FEMA to provide an orderly and continuing means of assistance by the Federal Government to State and local governments in carrying out their responsibilities to alleviate the suffering and damage that result from major disasters and emergencies by:

(a) Providing Federal assistance programs for public and private losses and needs sustained in disasters;

(b) Encouraging the development of comprehensive disaster preparedness and assistance plans, programs, capabilities, and organizations by the States and local governments;

(c) Achieving greater coordination and responsiveness of disaster preparedness and relief programs;

(d) Encouraging individuals, States, and local governments to obtain insurance coverage and thereby reduce their dependence on governmental assistance; and



(e) Encouraging hazard mitigation measures, such as development of land-use and construction regulations, floodplain management, protection of wetlands, and environmental planning, to reduce losses from disasters.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.4 State emergency plans.**

The State shall set forth in its emergency plan all responsibilities and actions specified in the Stafford Act and these regulations that are required of the State and its political subdivisions to prepare for and respond to major disasters and emergencies and to facilitate the delivery of Federal disaster assistance. Although not mandatory, prior to the adoption of the final plan, the State is encouraged to circulate the plan to local governments for review and comment.

[55 FR 2288, Jan. 23, 1990, 55 FR 5458, Feb. 15, 1990]

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.5 Assistance by other Federal agencies.**

(a) In any declared major disaster, the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate, or the Regional Administrator may direct any Federal agency to utilize its authorities and the resources granted to it under Federal law (including personnel, equipment, supplies, facilities, and managerial, technical, and advisory services) to support State and local assistance efforts.

(b) In any declared emergency, the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate, or the Regional Administrator may direct any Federal agency to utilize its authorities and the resources granted to it under Federal law (including personnel, equipment, supplies, facilities, and managerial, technical, and advisory services) to support emergency efforts by State and local governments to save lives; protect property, public health and safety; and lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe.

(c) In any declared major disaster or emergency, the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate, or the Regional Administrator may direct any Federal agency to provide emergency assistance necessary to save lives and to protect property, public health, and safety by:

(1) Utilizing, lending, or donating to State and local governments Federal equipment, supplies, facilities, personnel, and other resources, other than the extension of credit, for use or distribution by such governments in accordance with the purposes of this Act;

(2) Distributing medicine, food, and other consumable supplies; or

(3) Performing work or services to provide emergency assistance authorized in the Stafford Act.

(d) Disaster assistance by other Federal agencies is subject to the coordination of the FCO. Federal agencies shall provide any reports or information about disaster assistance rendered under the provisions of these regulations or authorities independent of the Stafford Act, that the FCO or Regional Administrator considers necessary and requests from the agencies.

(e) Assistance furnished by any Federal agency under paragraphs (a), (b), or (c) of this section is subject to the criteria provided by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate under these regulations.

(f) Assistance under paragraphs (a), (b), or (c) of this section, when directed by the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate, or the Regional Administrator, does not apply to nor shall it affect the authority of any Federal agency to provide disaster assistance independent of the Stafford Act.

(g) In carrying out the purposes of the Stafford Act, any Federal agency may accept and utilize, with the consent of the State or local government, the services, personnel, materials, and facilities of any State or local government, agency, office, or employee. Such utilization shall not make such services, materials, or facilities Federal in nature nor make the State or local government or agency an arm or agent of the Federal Government.

(h) Any Federal agency charged with the administration of a Federal assistance program may, if so requested by the applicant State or local authorities, modify or waive, for a major disaster, such administrative conditions for assistance as would otherwise prevent the giving of assistance under such programs if the inability to meet such conditions is a result of the major disaster.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.6 Donation or loan of Federal equipment and supplies.**

(a) In any major disaster or emergency, the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate, or the Regional Administrator may direct Federal agencies to donate or loan their equipment and supplies to State and local governments for use and distribution by them for the purposes of the Stafford Act.

(b) A donation or loan may include equipment and supplies determined under applicable laws and regulations to be surplus to the needs and responsibilities of the Federal Government. The State shall certify that the surplus property is



usable and necessary for current disaster purposes in order to receive a donation or loan. Such a donation or loan is made in accordance with procedures prescribed by the General Services Administration.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.7 Implementation of assistance from other Federal agencies.**

All directives, known as mission assignments, to other Federal agencies shall be in writing, or shall be confirmed in writing if made orally, and shall identify the specific task to be performed and the requirements or criteria to be followed. If the Federal agency is to be reimbursed, the letter will also contain a dollar amount which is not to be exceeded in accomplishing the task without prior approval of the issuing official.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.8 Reimbursement of other Federal agencies.**

(a) Assistance furnished under § 206.5 (a) or (b) of this subpart may be provided with or without compensation as considered appropriate by the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or the Regional Administrator or Regional Director.

(b) The Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or the Regional Administrator or the Regional Director may not approve reimbursement of costs incurred while performing work pursuant to disaster assistance authorities independent of the Stafford Act.

(c) *Expenditures eligible for reimbursement.* The Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or the Regional Administrator or the Regional Director may approve reimbursement of the following costs which are incurred in providing requested assistance.

(1) Overtime, travel, and per diem of permanent Federal agency personnel.

(2) Wages, travel, and per diem of temporary Federal agency personnel assigned solely to performance of services directed by the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or the Regional Administrator or the Regional Director in the major disaster or emergency area designated by the Regional Director.

(3) Travel and per diem of Federal military personnel assigned solely to the performance of services directed by the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or the Regional Administrator or the Regional Director in the major disaster or emergency area designated by the Regional Director.

(4) Cost of work, services, and materials procured under contract for the purposes of providing assistance directed by the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or the Regional Administrator or the Regional Director.

(5) Cost of materials, equipment, and supplies (including transportation, repair, and maintenance) from regular stocks used in providing directed assistance.

(6) All costs incurred which are paid from trust, revolving, or other funds, and whose reimbursement is required by law.

(7) Other costs submitted by an agency with written justification or otherwise agreed to in writing by the Administrator, Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or the Regional Administrator or the Regional Director and the agency.

(d) *Procedures for reimbursement.* Federal agencies performing work under a mission assignment will submit requests for reimbursement, as follows:

(1) Federal agencies may submit requests for reimbursement of amounts greater than \$1,000 at any time. Requests for lesser amounts may be submitted only quarterly. An agency shall submit a final accounting of expenditures after completion of the agency's work under each directive for assistance. The time limit and method for submission of reimbursement requests will be stipulated in the mission assignment letter.

(2) An agency shall document its request for reimbursement with specific details on personnel services, travel, and all other expenses by object class as specified in OMB Circular A-12 and by any other subobject class used in the agency's accounting system. Where contracts constitute a significant portion of the billings, the agency shall provide a listing of individual contracts and their associated costs.

(3) Reimbursement requests shall cite the specific mission assignment under which the work was performed, and the major disaster or emergency identification number. Requests for reimbursement of costs incurred under more than one mission assignment may not be combined for billing purposes.

(4) Unless otherwise agreed, an agency shall direct all requests for reimbursement to the Regional Administrator of the region in which the costs were incurred.

(5) A Federal agency requesting reimbursement shall retain all financial records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records pertinent to the provision of services or use of resources by that agency. These materials shall be accessible to duly authorized representatives of FEMA and the U.S. Comptroller General, for the purpose of making audits, excerpts, and transcripts, for a period of 3 years starting from the date of submission of the final billing.



[↑ Back to Top](#)**§ 206.9 Nonliability.**

The Federal Government shall not be liable for any claim based upon the exercise or performance of, or the failure to exercise or perform a discretionary function or duty on the part of a Federal agency or an employee of the Federal Government in carrying out the provisions of the Stafford Act.

[↑ Back to Top](#)**§ 206.10 Use of local firms and individuals.**

In the expenditure of Federal funds for debris removal, distribution of supplies, reconstruction, and other major disaster or emergency assistance activities which may be carried out by contract or agreement with private organizations, firms, or individuals, preference shall be given, to the extent feasible and practicable, to those organizations, firms, and individuals residing or doing business primarily in the area affected by such major disaster or emergency. This shall not be considered to restrict the use of Department of Defense resources in the provision of major disaster assistance under the Stafford Act.

[↑ Back to Top](#)**§ 206.11 Nondiscrimination in disaster assistance.**

(a) Federal financial assistance to the States or their political subdivisions is conditioned on full compliance with 44 CFR part 7, Nondiscrimination in Federally-Assisted Programs.

(b) All personnel carrying out Federal major disaster or emergency assistance functions, including the distribution of supplies, the processing of the applications, and other relief and assistance activities, shall perform their work in an equitable and impartial manner, without discrimination on the grounds of race, color, religion, nationality, sex, age, or economic status.

(c) As a condition of participation in the distribution of assistance or supplies under the Stafford Act, or of receiving assistance under the Stafford Act, government bodies and other organizations shall provide a written assurance of their intent to comply with regulations relating to nondiscrimination.

(d) The agency shall make available to employees, applicants, participants, beneficiaries, and other interested parties such information regarding the provisions of this regulation and its applicability to the programs or activities conducted by the agency, and make such information available to them in such manner as the head of the agency finds necessary to apprise such persons of the protections against discrimination assured them by the Act and this regulation.

[↑ Back to Top](#)**§ 206.12 Use and coordination of relief organizations.**

(a) In providing relief and assistance under the Stafford Act, the FCO or Regional Administrator may utilize, with their consent, the personnel and facilities of the American National Red Cross, the Salvation Army, the Mennonite Disaster Service, and other voluntary organizations in the distribution of medicine, food, supplies, or other items, and in the restoration, rehabilitation, or reconstruction of community services and essential facilities, whenever the FCO or Regional Administrator finds that such utilization is necessary.

(b) The Administrator is authorized to enter into agreements with the American Red Cross, The Salvation Army, the Mennonite Disaster Service, and other voluntary organizations engaged in providing relief during and after a major disaster or emergency. Any agreement shall include provisions assuring that use of Federal facilities, supplies, and services will be in compliance with § 206.11, Nondiscrimination in Disaster Assistance, and § 206.191, Duplication of Benefits, of these regulations and such other regulations as the Administrator may issue. The FCO may coordinate the disaster relief activities of the voluntary organizations which agree to operate under his/her direction.

(c) Nothing contained in this section shall be construed to limit or in any way affect the responsibilities of the American National Red Cross as stated in Public Law 58-4.

[↑ Back to Top](#)**§ 206.13 Standards and reviews.**

(a) The Administrator shall establish program standards and assess the efficiency and effectiveness of programs administered under the Stafford Act by conducting annual reviews of the activities of Federal agencies and State and local governments involved in major disaster or emergency response efforts.

(b) In carrying out this provision, the Administrator may direct Federal agencies to submit reports relating to their



disaster assistance activities. The Administrator may request similar reports from the States relating to these activities on the part of State and local governments. Additionally, the Administrator may conduct independent investigations, studies, and evaluations as necessary to complete the reviews.

[55 FR 2288, Jan. 23, 1990; 55 FR 5458, Feb. 15, 1990]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.14 Criminal and civil penalties.**

(a) *Misuse of funds.* Any person who knowingly misapplies the proceeds of a loan or other cash benefit obtained under the Stafford Act shall be fined an amount equal to one and one-half times the misapplied amount of the proceeds or cash benefit.

(b) *Civil enforcement.* Whenever it appears that any person has violated or is about to violate any provision of the Stafford Act, including any civil penalty imposed under the Stafford Act, the Attorney General may bring a civil action for such relief as may be appropriate. Such action may be brought in an appropriate United States district court.

(c) *Referral to Attorney General.* The Office of Chief Counsel shall expeditiously refer to the Attorney General for appropriate action any evidence developed in the performance of functions under the Stafford Act that may warrant consideration for criminal prosecution.

(d) *Civil penalty.* Any individual who knowingly violates any order or regulation shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$5,500 for each violation.

[55 FR 2288, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 74 FR 15346, Apr. 3, 2009; 74 FR 58850, Nov. 16, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.15 Recovery of assistance.**

(a) *Party liable.* Any person who intentionally causes a condition for which Federal assistance is provided under this Act or under any other Federal law as a result of a declaration of a major disaster or emergency under this Act shall be liable to the United States for the reasonable costs incurred by the United States in responding to such disaster or emergency to the extent that such costs are attributable to the intentional act or omission of such person which caused such condition. Such action shall be brought in an appropriate United States District Court.

(b) *Rendering of care.* A person shall not be liable under this section for costs incurred by the United States as a result of actions taken or omitted by such person in the course of rendering care or assistance in response to a major disaster or emergency.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.16 Audit and investigations.**

(a) Subject to the provisions of chapter 75 of title 31, United States Code, and 44 CFR part 13, relating to requirements for single audits, the Administrator, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Operations Directorate, or the Regional Administrator shall conduct audits and investigations as necessary to assure compliance with the Stafford Act, and in connection therewith may question such persons as may be necessary to carry out such audits and investigations.

(b) For purposes of audits and investigations under this section, FEMA or State auditors, the Governor's Authorized Representative, the Administrator, the Regional Administrator, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, the DHS Inspector General, and the Comptroller General of the United States, or their duly authorized representatives, may inspect any books, documents, papers, and records of any person relating to any activity undertaken or funded under the Stafford Act.

[55 FR 2288, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 74 FR 15346, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.17 Effective date.**

These regulations are effective for all major disasters or emergencies declared on or after November 23, 1988.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§§ 206.18-206.30 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)



## Subpart B—The Declaration Process

SOURCE: 55 FR 2292, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 206.31 Purpose.

The purpose of this subpart is to describe the process leading to a Presidential declaration of a major disaster or an emergency and the actions triggered by such a declaration.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 206.32 Definitions.

All definitions in the Stafford Act and in § 206.2 apply. In addition, the following definitions apply:

- (a) *Appeal*: A request for reconsideration of a determination on any action related to Federal assistance under the Stafford Act and these regulations. Specific procedures for appeals are contained in the relevant subparts of these regulations.
- (b) *Commitment*: A certification by the Governor that the State and local governments will expend a reasonable amount of funds to alleviate the effects of the major disaster or emergency, for which no Federal reimbursement will be requested.
- (c) *Disaster Application Center*: A center established in a centralized location within the disaster area for individuals, families, or businesses to apply for disaster aid.
- (d) *FEMA-State Agreement*: A formal legal document stating the understandings, commitments, and binding conditions for assistance applicable as the result of the major disaster or emergency declared by the President.
- (e) *Incident*: Any condition which meets the definition of major disaster or emergency as set forth in § 206.2 which causes damage or hardship that may result in a Presidential declaration of a major disaster or an emergency.
- (f) *Incident period*: The time interval during which the disaster-causing incident occurs. No Federal assistance under the Act shall be approved unless the damage or hardship to be alleviated resulted from the disaster-causing incident which took place during the incident period or was in anticipation of that incident. The incident period will be established by FEMA in the FEMA-State Agreement and published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

### § 206.33 Preliminary damage assessment.

The preliminary damage assessment (PDA) process is a mechanism used to determine the impact and magnitude of damage and the resulting unmet needs of individuals, businesses, the public sector, and the community as a whole. Information collected is used by the State as a basis for the Governor's request, and by FEMA to document the recommendation made to the President in response to the Governor's request. It is in the best interest of all parties to combine State and Federal personnel resources by performing a joint PDA prior to the initiation of a Governor's request, as follows.

- (a) *Preassessment by the State*. When an incident occurs, or is imminent, which the State official responsible for disaster operations determines may be beyond the State and local government capabilities to respond, the State will request the Regional Administrator to perform a joint FEMA-State preliminary damage assessment. It is not anticipated that all occurrences will result in the requirement for assistance; therefore, the State will be expected to verify their initial information, in some manner, before requesting this support.
- (b) *Damage assessment teams*. Damage assessment teams will be composed of at least one representative of the Federal Government and one representative of the State. A local government representative, familiar with the extent and location of damage in his/her community, should also be included, if possible. Other State and Federal agencies, and voluntary relief organizations may also be asked to participate, as needed. It is the State's responsibility to coordinate State and local participation in the PDA and to ensure that the participants receive timely notification concerning the schedule. A FEMA official will brief team members on damage criteria, the kind of information to be collected for the particular incident, and reporting requirements.
- (c) *Review of findings*. At the close of the PDA, FEMA will consult with State officials to discuss findings and reconcile any differences.
- (d) *Exceptions*. The requirement for a joint PDA may be waived for those incidents of unusual severity and magnitude that do not require field damage assessments to determine the need for supplemental Federal assistance under the Act, or in such other instances determined by the Regional Administrator upon consultation with the State. It may be necessary, however, to conduct an assessment to determine unmet needs for managerial response purposes.



[Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.34 Request for utilization of Department of Defense (DOD) resources.

(a) *General.* During the immediate aftermath of an incident which may ultimately qualify for a Presidential declaration of a major disaster or emergency, when threats to life and property are present which cannot be effectively dealt with by the State or local governments, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may direct DOD to utilize DOD personnel and equipment for removal of debris and wreckage and temporary restoration of essential public facilities and services.

(b) *Request process.* The Governor of a State, or the Acting Governor in his/her absence, may request such DOD assistance. The Governor should submit the request to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate through the appropriate Regional Administrator to ensure prompt acknowledgment and processing. The request must be submitted within 48 hours of the occurrence of the incident. Requests made after that time may still be considered if information is submitted indicating why the request for assistance could not be made during the initial 48 hours. The request shall include:

- (1) Information describing the types and amount of DOD emergency assistance being requested;
- (2) Confirmation that the Governor has taken appropriate action under State law and directed the execution of the State emergency plan;
- (3) A finding that the situation is of such severity and magnitude that effective response is beyond the capabilities of the State and affected local governments and that Federal assistance is necessary for the preservation of life and property;
- (4) A certification by the Governor that the State and local government will reimburse FEMA for the non-Federal share of the cost of such work; and
- (5) An agreement:
  - (i) To provide all lands, easements and rights-of-way necessary to accomplish the approved work without cost to the United States;
  - (ii) To hold and save the United States free from damages due to the requested work, and to indemnify the Federal government against any claims arising from such work; and
  - (iii) To assist DOD in all support and local jurisdictional matters.

(c) *Processing the request.* Upon receipt of the request, the Regional Administrator shall gather adequate information to support a recommendation and forward it to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. If the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate determines that such work is essential to save lives and protect property, he/she will issue a mission assignment to DOD authorizing direct Federal assistance to the extent deemed appropriate.

(d) *Implementation of assistance.* The performance of emergency work may not exceed a period of 10 days from the date of the mission assignment.

(e) *Limits.* Generally, no work shall be approved under this section which falls within the statutory authority of DOD or another Federal agency. However, where there are significant unmet needs of sufficient severity and magnitude, not addressed by other assistance, which could appropriately be addressed under this section of the Stafford Act, the involvement of other Federal agencies would not preclude the authorization of DOD assistance by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(f) *Federal share.* The Federal share of assistance under this section shall be not less than 75 percent of the cost of eligible work.

(g) *Project management.* DOD shall ensure that the work is completed in accordance with the approved scope of work, costs, and time limitations in the mission assignment. DOD shall also keep the Regional Administrator and the State advised of work progress and other project developments. It is the responsibility of DOD to ensure compliance with applicable Federal, State and local legal requirements. A final report will be submitted to the Regional Administrator upon termination of all direct Federal assistance work. Final reports shall be signed by a representative of DOD and the State. Once the final eligible cost is determined, DOD will request reimbursement from FEMA and FEMA will submit a bill to the State for the non-Federal share of the mission assignment.

(h) *Reimbursement of DOD.* Reimbursement will be made in accordance with § 206.8 of these regulations.

[Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.35 Requests for emergency declarations.

(a) When an incident occurs or threatens to occur in a State, which would not qualify under the definition of a major disaster, the Governor of a State, or the Acting Governor in his/her absence, may request that the President declare an emergency. The Governor should submit the request to the President through the appropriate Regional Administrator to ensure prompt acknowledgment and processing. The request must be submitted within 5 days after the need for assistance under title V becomes apparent, but no longer than 30 days after the occurrence of the incident, in order to



be considered. The period may be extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate provided that a written request for such extension is made by the Governor, or Acting Governor, during the 30-day period immediately following the incident. The extension request must stipulate the reason for the delay.

(b) The basis for the Governor's request must be the finding that the situation:

(1) Is of such severity and magnitude that effective response is beyond the capability of the State and the affected local government(s); and

(2) Requires supplementary Federal emergency assistance to save lives and to protect property, public health and safety, or to lessen or avert the threat of a disaster.

(c) In addition to the above findings, the complete request shall include:

(1) Confirmation that the Governor has taken appropriate action under State law and directed the execution of the State emergency plan;

(2) Information describing the State and local efforts and resources which have been or will be used to alleviate the emergency;

(3) Information describing other Federal agency efforts and resources which have been or will be used in responding to this incident; and

(4) Identification of the type and extent of additional Federal aid required.

(d) *Modified declaration for Federal emergencies.* The requirement for a Governor's request under paragraph (a) of this section can be waived when an emergency exists for which the primary responsibility rests in the Federal government because the emergency involves a subject area for which, under the Constitution or laws of the United States, the Federal government exercises exclusive or preeminent responsibility and authority. Any party may bring the existence of such a situation to the attention of the FEMA Regional Administrator. Any recommendation for a Presidential declaration of emergency in the absence of a Governor's request must be initiated by the Regional Administrator or transmitted through the Regional Administrator by another Federal agency. In determining that such an emergency exists, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or Regional Administrator shall consult the Governor of the affected State, if practicable.

(e) *Other authorities.* It is not intended for an emergency declaration to preempt other Federal agency authorities and/or established plans and response mechanisms in place prior to the enactment of the Stafford Act.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.36 Requests for major disaster declarations.**

(a) When a catastrophe occurs in a State, the Governor of a State, or the Acting Governor in his/her absence, may request a major disaster declaration. The Governor should submit the request to the President through the appropriate Regional Administrator to ensure prompt acknowledgment and processing. The request must be submitted within 30 days of the occurrence of the incident in order to be considered. The 30-day period may be extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, provided that a written request for an extension is submitted by the Governor, or Acting Governor, during this 30-day period. The extension request will stipulate reasons for the delay.

(b) The basis for the request shall be a finding that:

(1) The situation is of such severity and magnitude that effective response is beyond the capabilities of the State and affected local governments; and

(2) Federal assistance under the Act is necessary to supplement the efforts and available resources of the State, local governments, disaster relief organizations, and compensation by insurance for disaster-related losses.

(c) In addition to the above findings, the complete request shall include:

(1) Confirmation that the Governor has taken appropriate action under State law and directed the execution of the State emergency plan;

(2) An estimate of the amount and severity of damages and losses stating the impact of the disaster on the public and private sector;

(3) Information describing the nature and amount of State and local resources which have been or will be committed to alleviate the results of the disaster;

(4) Preliminary estimates of the types and amount of supplementary Federal disaster assistance needed under the Stafford Act; and

(5) Certification by the Governor that State and local government obligations and expenditures for the current disaster will comply with all applicable cost sharing requirements of the Stafford Act.

(d) For those catastrophes of unusual severity and magnitude when field damage assessments are not necessary to determine the requirement for supplemental Federal assistance, the Governor or Acting Governor may send an abbreviated written request through the Regional Administrator for a declaration of a major disaster. This may be transmitted in the most expeditious manner available. In the event the FEMA Regional Office is severely impacted by



the catastrophe, the request may be addressed to the Administrator of FEMA. The request must indicate a finding in accordance with § 206.36(b), and must include as a minimum the information requested by § 206.36 (c)(1), (c)(3), and (c)(5). Upon receipt of the request, FEMA shall expedite the processing of reports and recommendations to the President. Notification to the Governor of the Presidential declaration shall be in accordance with 44 CFR 206.39. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall assure that documentation of the declaration is later assembled to comply fully with these regulations.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.37 Processing requests for declarations of a major disaster or emergency.**

(a) *Acknowledgment.* The Regional Administrator shall provide written acknowledgment of the Governor's request.

(b) *Regional summary.* Based on information obtained by FEMA/State preliminary damage assessments of the affected area(s) and consultations with appropriate State and Federal officials and other interested parties, the Regional Administrator shall promptly prepare a summary of the PDA findings. The data will be analyzed and submitted with a recommendation to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The Regional Analysis shall include a discussion of State and local resources and capabilities, and other assistance available to meet the major disaster or emergency-related needs.

(c) *FEMA recommendation.* Based on all available information, the Administrator shall formulate a recommendation which shall be forwarded to the President with the Governor's request.

(1) *Major disaster recommendation.* The recommendation will be based on a finding that the situation is or is not of such severity and magnitude as to be beyond the capabilities of the State and its local governments. It will also contain a determination of whether or not supplemental Federal assistance under the Stafford Act is necessary and appropriate. In developing a recommendation, FEMA will consider such factors as the amount and type of damages; the impact of damages on affected individuals, the State, and local governments; the available resources of the State and local governments, and other disaster relief organizations; the extent and type of insurance in effect to cover losses; assistance available from other Federal programs and other sources; imminent threats to public health and safety; recent disaster history in the State; hazard mitigation measures taken by the State or local governments, especially implementation of measures required as a result of previous major disaster declarations; and other factors pertinent to a given incident.

(2) *Emergency recommendation.* The recommendation will be based on a report which will indicate whether or not Federal emergency assistance under section 502 of the Stafford Act is necessary to supplement State and local efforts to save lives, protect property and public health and safety, or to lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe. Only after it has been determined that all other resources and authorities available to meet the crisis are inadequate, and that assistance provided in section 502 of the Stafford Act would be appropriate, will FEMA recommend an emergency declaration to the President.

(d) *Modified Federal emergency recommendation.* The recommendation will be based on a report which will indicate that an emergency does or does not exist for which assistance under section 502 of the Stafford Act would be appropriate. An emergency declaration will not be recommended in situations where the authority to respond or coordinate is within the jurisdiction of one or more Federal agencies without a Presidential declaration. However, where there are significant unmet needs of sufficient severity and magnitude, not addressed by other assistance, which could appropriately be addressed under the Stafford Act, the involvement of other Federal agencies would not preclude a declaration of an emergency under the Act.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.38 Presidential determination.**

(a) The Governor's request for a major disaster declaration may result in either a Presidential declaration of a major disaster or an emergency, or denial of the Governor's request.

(b) The Governor's request for an emergency declaration may result only in a Presidential declaration of an emergency, or denial of the Governor's request.

[55 FR 2292, Jan. 23, 1990; 55 FR 5458, Feb. 15, 1990]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.39 Notification.**

(a) The Governor will be promptly notified by the Administrator or his/her designee of a declaration by the President that an emergency or a major disaster exists. FEMA also will notify other Federal agencies and other interested parties.

(b) The Governor will be promptly notified by the Administrator or his/her designee of a determination that the Governor's request does not justify the use of the authorities of the Stafford Act.

(c) Following a major disaster or emergency declaration, the Regional Administrator or the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate will promptly notify the Governor of the designations of assistance and areas



eligible for such assistance.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.40 Designation of affected areas and eligible assistance.

(a) *Eligible assistance.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate has been delegated authority to determine and designate the types of assistance to be made available. The initial designations will usually be announced in the declaration. Determinations by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate of the types and extent of FEMA disaster assistance to be provided are based upon findings whether the damage involved and its effects are of such severity and magnitude as to be beyond the response capabilities of the State, the affected local governments, and other potential recipients of supplementary Federal assistance. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may authorize all, or only particular types of, supplementary Federal assistance requested by the Governor.

(b) *Areas eligible to receive assistance.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate also has been delegated authority to designate the affected areas eligible for supplementary Federal assistance under the Stafford Act. These designations shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. An affected area designated by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate includes all local government jurisdictions within its boundaries. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may, based upon damage assessments in any given area, designate all or only some of the areas requested by the Governor for supplementary Federal assistance.

(c) *Requests for additional designations after a declaration.* After a declaration by the President, the Governor, or the GAR, may request that additional areas or types of supplementary Federal assistance be authorized by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. Such requests shall be accompanied by appropriate verified assessments and commitments by State and local governments to demonstrate that the requested designations are justified and that the unmet needs are beyond State and local capabilities without supplementary Federal assistance. Additional assistance or areas added to the declaration will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(d) *Time limits to request.* In order to be considered, all supplemental requests under paragraph (c) of this section must be submitted within 30 days from the termination date of the incident, or 30 days after the declaration, whichever is later. The 30-day period may be extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate provided that a written request is made by the appropriate State official during this 30-day period. The request must include justification of the State's inability to meet the deadline.

[55 FR 2292, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 74 FR 60213, Nov. 20, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.41 Appointment of disaster officials.

(a) *Federal Coordinating Officer.* Upon a declaration of a major disaster or of an emergency by the President, the Administrator or Deputy Administrator shall appoint an FCO who shall initiate action immediately to assure that Federal assistance is provided in accordance with the declaration, applicable laws, regulations, and the FEMA-State Agreement.

(b) *Disaster Recovery Manager.* The Regional Administrator shall designate a DRM to exercise all the authority of the Regional Administrator in a major disaster or an emergency.

(c) *State Coordinating Officer.* Upon a declaration of a major disaster or of an emergency, the Governor of the affected State shall designate an SCO who shall coordinate State and local disaster assistance efforts with those of the Federal Government.

(d) *Governor's Authorized Representative.* In the FEMA-State Agreement, the Governor shall designate the GAR, who shall administer Federal disaster assistance programs on behalf of the State and local governments and other grant or loan recipients. The GAR is responsible for the State compliance with the FEMA-State Agreement.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.42 Responsibilities of coordinating officers.

(a) Following a declaration of a major disaster or an emergency, the FCO shall:

(1) Make an initial appraisal of the types of assistance most urgently needed;

(2) In coordination with the SCO, establish field offices and Disaster Application Centers as necessary to coordinate and monitor assistance programs, disseminate information, accept applications, and counsel individuals, families and businesses concerning available assistance;

(3) Coordinate the administration of relief, including activities of State and local governments, activities of Federal agencies, and those of the American Red Cross, the Salvation Army, the Mennonite Disaster Service, and other voluntary relief organizations which agree to operate under the FCO's advice and direction;



(4) Undertake appropriate action to make certain that all of the Federal agencies are carrying out their appropriate disaster assistance roles under their own legislative authorities and operational policies; and

(5) Take other action, consistent with the provisions of the Stafford Act, as necessary to assist citizens and public officials in promptly obtaining assistance to which they are entitled.

(b) The SCO coordinates State and local disaster assistance efforts with those of the Federal Government working closely with the FCO. The SCO is the principal point of contact regarding coordination of State and local disaster relief activities, and implementation of the State emergency plan. The functions, responsibilities, and authorities of the SCO are set forth in the State emergency plan. It is the responsibility of the SCO to ensure that all affected local jurisdictions are informed of the declaration, the types of assistance authorized, and the areas eligible to receive such assistance.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.43 Emergency support teams.

The Federal Coordinating Officer may activate emergency support teams, composed of Federal program and support personnel, to be deployed into an area affected by a major disaster or emergency. These emergency support teams assist the FCO in carrying out his/her responsibilities under the Stafford Act and these regulations. Any Federal agency can be directed to detail personnel within the agency's administrative jurisdiction to temporary duty with the FCO. Each detail shall be without loss of seniority, pay, or other employee status.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.44 FEMA-State Agreements.

(a) *General.* Upon the declaration of a major disaster or an emergency, the Governor, acting for the State, and the FEMA Regional Administrator or his/her designee, acting for the Federal Government, shall execute a FEMA-State Agreement. The FEMA-State Agreement states the understandings, commitments, and conditions for assistance under which FEMA disaster assistance shall be provided. This Agreement imposes binding obligations on FEMA, States, their local governments, and private nonprofit organizations within the States in the form of conditions for assistance which are legally enforceable. No FEMA funding will be authorized or provided to any grantees or other recipients, nor will direct Federal assistance be authorized by mission assignment, until such time as this Agreement for the Presidential declaration has been signed, except where it is deemed necessary by the Regional Administrator to begin the process of providing essential emergency services or housing assistance under the Individuals and Households Program.

(b) *Terms and conditions.* This Agreement describes the incident and the incident period for which assistance will be made available, the type and extent of the Federal assistance to be made available, and contains the commitment of the State and local government(s) with respect to the amount of funds to be expended in alleviating damage and suffering caused by the major disaster or emergency. The Agreement also contains such other terms and conditions consistent with the declaration and the provisions of applicable laws, Executive Order and regulations.

(c) *Provisions for modification.* In the event that the conditions stipulated in the original Agreement are changed or modified, such changes will be reflected in properly executed amendments to the Agreement, which may be signed by the GAR and the Regional Administrator or his/her designee for the specified major disaster or emergency. Amendments most often occur to close or amend the incident period, to add forms of assistance not originally authorized, or to designate additional areas eligible for assistance.

(d) In a modified declaration for a Federal emergency, a FEMA-State Agreement may or may not be required based on the type of assistance being provided.

[55 FR 2292, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 67 FR 61460, Sept. 30, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.45 Loans of non-Federal share.

(a) *Conditions for making loans.* At the request of the Governor, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate together with the Chief Financial Officer may lend or advance to a State, either for its own use or for the use of public or private nonprofit applicants for disaster assistance under the Stafford Act, the portion of assistance for which the State or other eligible disaster assistance applicant is responsible under the cost-sharing provisions of the Stafford Act in any case in which:

(1) The State or other eligible disaster assistance applicant is unable to assume their financial responsibility under such cost sharing provisions:

- (i) As a result of concurrent, multiple major disasters in a jurisdiction, or
- (ii) After incurring extraordinary costs as a result of a particular disaster;

(2) The damages caused by such disasters or disaster are so overwhelming and severe that it is not possible for the State or other eligible disaster assistance applicant to immediately assume their financial responsibility under the Act; and



(3) The State and the other eligible disaster applicants are not delinquent in payment of any debts to FEMA incurred as a result of Presidentially declared major disasters or emergencies.

(b) *Repayment of loans.* Any loan made to a State under paragraph (a) of this section must be repaid to the United States. The Governor must include a repayment schedule as part of the request for advance.

(1) The State shall repay the loan (the principal disbursed plus interest) in accordance with the repayment schedule approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate together with the Chief Financial Officer.

(2) If the State fails to make payments in accordance with the approved repayment schedule, FEMA will offset delinquent amounts against the current, prior, or any subsequent disasters, or monies due the State under other FEMA programs, in accordance with the established Claims Collection procedures.

(c) *Interest.* Loans or advances under paragraph (a) of this section shall bear interest at a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current market yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States with remaining periods to maturity comparable to the reimbursement period of the loan or advance. Simple interest will be computed from the date of the disbursement of each drawdown of the loan/advance by the State based on 365 days/year.

[Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.46 Appeals.

(a) *Denial of declaration request.* When a request for a major disaster declaration or for any emergency declaration is denied, the Governor may appeal the decision. An appeal must be made within 30 days after the date of the letter denying the request. This one-time request for reconsideration, along with appropriate additional information, is submitted to the President through the appropriate Regional Administrator. The processing of this request is similar to the initial request.

(b) *Denial of types of assistance or areas.* In those instances when the type of assistance or certain areas requested by the Governor are not designated or authorized, the Governor, or the GAR, may appeal the decision. An appeal must be submitted in writing within 30 days of the date of the letter denying the request. This one-time request for reconsideration, along with justification and/or additional information, is sent to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate through the appropriate Regional Administrator.

(c) *Denial of advance of non-Federal share.* In those instances where the Governor's request for an advance is denied, the Governor may appeal the decision. An appeal must be submitted in writing within 30 days of the date of the letter denying the request. This one-time request for reconsideration, along with justification and/or additional information, is sent to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate through the appropriate Regional Administrator.

(d) *Extension of time to appeal.* The 30-day period referred to in paragraphs (a), (b), or (c) of this section may be extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate provided that a written request for such an extension, citing reasons for the delay, is made during this 30-day period, and if the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate agrees that there is a legitimate basis for extension of the 30-day period. Only the Governor may request a time extension for appeals covered in paragraphs (a) and (c) of this section. The Governor, or the GAR if one has been named, may submit the time extension request for appeals covered in paragraph (b) of this section.

[Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.47 Cost-share adjustments.

(a) We pay seventy-five percent (75%) of the eligible cost of permanent restorative work under section 406 of the Stafford Act and for emergency work under section 403 and section 407 of the Stafford Act, unless the Federal share is increased under this section.

(b) We recommend an increase in the Federal cost share from seventy-five percent (75%) to not more than ninety percent (90%) of the eligible cost of permanent work under section 406 and of emergency work under section 403 and section 407 whenever a disaster is so extraordinary that actual Federal obligations under the Stafford Act, excluding FEMA administrative cost, meet or exceed a qualifying threshold of:

(1) Beginning in 1999 and effective for disasters declared on or after May 21, 1999, \$75 per capita of State population;

(2) Effective for disasters declared after January 1, 2000, and through December 31, 2000, \$85 per capita of State population;

(3) Effective for disasters declared after January 1, 2001, \$100 per capita of State population; and,

(4) Effective for disasters declared after January 1, 2002 and for later years, \$100 per capita of State population, adjusted annually for inflation using the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published annually by the Department of Labor.

(c) When we determine whether to recommend a cost-share adjustment we consider the impact of major disaster declarations in the State during the preceding twelve-month period.



(d) If warranted by the needs of the disaster, we recommend up to one hundred percent (100%) Federal funding for emergency work under section 403 and section 407, including direct Federal assistance, for a limited period in the initial days of the disaster irrespective of the per capita impact.

[64 FR 19498, Apr. 21, 1999]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.48 Factors considered when evaluating a Governor's request for a major disaster declaration.

When we review a Governor's request for major disaster assistance under the Stafford Act, these are the primary factors in making a recommendation to the President whether assistance is warranted. We consider other relevant information as well.

(a) *Public Assistance Program.* We evaluate the following factors to evaluate the need for assistance under the Public Assistance Program.

(1) *Estimated cost of the assistance.* We evaluate the estimated cost of Federal and nonfederal public assistance against the statewide population to give some measure of the per capita impact within the State. We use a figure of \$1 per capita as an indicator that the disaster is of such size that it might warrant Federal assistance, and adjust this figure annually based on the Consumer Price Index for all Urban Consumers. We are establishing a minimum threshold of \$1 million in public assistance damages per disaster in the belief that we can reasonably expect even the lowest population States to cover this level of public assistance damage.

(2) *Localized impacts.* We evaluate the impact of the disaster at the county and local government level, as well as impacts at the American Indian and Alaskan Native Tribal Government levels, because at times there are extraordinary concentrations of damages that might warrant Federal assistance even if the statewide per capita is not met. This is particularly true where critical facilities are involved or where localized per capita impacts might be extremely high. For example, we have at times seen localized damages in the tens or even hundreds of dollars per capita though the statewide per capita impact was low.

(3) *Insurance coverage in force.* We consider the amount of insurance coverage that is in force or should have been in force as required by law and regulation at the time of the disaster, and reduce the amount of anticipated assistance by that amount.

(4) *Hazard mitigation.* To recognize and encourage mitigation, we consider the extent to which State and local government measures contributed to the reduction of disaster damages for the disaster under consideration. For example, if a State can demonstrate in its disaster request that a Statewide building code or other mitigation measures are likely to have reduced the damages from a particular disaster, we consider that in the evaluation of the request. This could be especially significant in those disasters where, because of mitigation, the estimated public assistance damages fell below the per capita indicator.

(5) *Recent multiple disasters.* We look at the disaster history within the last twelve-month period to evaluate better the overall impact on the State or locality. We consider declarations under the Stafford Act as well as declarations by the Governor and the extent to which the State has spent its own funds.

(6) *Programs of other Federal assistance.* We also consider programs of other Federal agencies because at times their programs of assistance might more appropriately meet the needs created by the disaster.

(b) *Factors for the Individual Assistance Program.* We consider the following factors to measure the severity, magnitude and impact of the disaster and to evaluate the need for assistance to individuals under the Stafford Act.

(1) *Concentration of damages.* We evaluate the concentrations of damages to individuals. High concentrations of damages generally indicate a greater need for Federal assistance than widespread and scattered damages throughout a State.

(2) *Trauma.* We consider the degree of trauma to a State and to communities. Some of the conditions that might cause trauma are:

- (i) Large numbers of injuries and deaths;
- (ii) Large scale disruption of normal community functions and services; and
- (iii) Emergency needs such as extended or widespread loss of power or water.

(3) *Special populations.* We consider whether special populations, such as low-income, the elderly, or the unemployed are affected, and whether they may have a greater need for assistance. We also consider the effect on American Indian and Alaskan Native Tribal populations in the event that there are any unique needs for people in these governmental entities.

(4) *Voluntary agency assistance.* We consider the extent to which voluntary agencies and State or local programs can meet the needs of the disaster victims.

(5) *Insurance.* We consider the amount of insurance coverage because, by law, Federal disaster assistance cannot duplicate insurance coverage.

(6) *Average amount of individual assistance by State.* There is *no set threshold* for recommending Individual



Assistance, but the following averages may prove useful to States and voluntary agencies as they develop plans and programs to meet the needs of disaster victims.

AVERAGE AMOUNT OF ASSISTANCE PER DISASTER

[July 1994 to July 1999]

	Small states (under 2 million pop.)	Medium states (2-10 million pop.)	Large states (over 10 million pop.)
Average Population (1990 census data)	1,000,057	4,713,548	15,522,791
Number of Disaster Housing Applications Approved	1,507	2,747	4,679
Number of Homes Estimated Major Damage/Destroyed	173	582	801
Dollar Amount of Housing Assistance	\$2.8 million	\$4.6 million	\$9.5 million
Number of Individual and Family Grant Applications Approved	495	1,377	2,071
Dollar Amount of Individual and Family Grant Assistance	1.1 million	2.9 million	4.6 million
Disaster Housing/IFG Combined Assistance	3.9 million	7.5 million	14.1 million

NOTE: The high 3 and low 3 disasters, based on Disaster Housing Applications, are not considered in the averages. Number of Damaged/Destroyed Homes is estimated based on the number of owner-occupants who qualify for Eligible Emergency Rental Resources. Data source is FEMA's National Processing Service Centers. Data are only available from July 1994 to the present.

*Small Size States (under 2 million population, listed in order of 1990 population):* Wyoming, Alaska, Vermont, District of Columbia, North Dakota, Delaware, South Dakota, Montana, Rhode Island, Idaho, Hawaii, New Hampshire, Nevada, Maine, New Mexico, Nebraska, Utah, West Virginia. U.S. Virgin Islands and all Pacific Island dependencies.

*Medium Size States (2-10 million population, listed in order of 1990 population):* Arkansas, Kansas, Mississippi, Iowa, Oregon, Oklahoma, Connecticut, Colorado, South Carolina, Arizona, Kentucky, Alabama, Louisiana, Minnesota, Maryland, Washington, Tennessee, Wisconsin, Missouri, Indiana, Massachusetts, Virginia, Georgia, North Carolina, New Jersey, Michigan. Puerto Rico.

*Large Size States (over 10 million population, listed in order of 1990 population):* Ohio, Illinois, Pennsylvania, Florida, Texas, New York, California.

[64 FR 47698, Sept. 1, 1999]

 [Back to Top](#)

§§ 206.49-206.60 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

Subpart C—Emergency Assistance

SOURCE: 55 FR 2296, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 206.61 Purpose.

The purpose of this subpart is to identify the forms of assistance which may be made available under an emergency declaration.

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 206.62 Available assistance.

- In any emergency declaration, the Regional Administrator or Administrator may provide assistance, as follows:
- (a) Direct any Federal agency, with or without reimbursement, to utilize its authorities and the resources granted to it under Federal law (including personnel, equipment, supplies, facilities, and managerial, technical and advisory services) in support of State and local emergency assistance efforts to save lives, protect property and public health and safety, and lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe;
  - (b) Coordinate all disaster relief assistance (including voluntary assistance) provided by Federal agencies, private organizations, and State and local governments;
  - (c) Provide technical and advisory assistance to affected State and local governments for:



- (1) The performance of essential community services;
- (2) Issuance of warnings of risks or hazards;
- (3) Public health and safety information, including dissemination of such information;
- (4) Provision of health and safety measures; and
- (5) Management, control, and reduction of immediate threats to public health and safety;
- (d) Provide emergency assistance under the Stafford Act through Federal agencies;
- (e) Remove debris in accordance with the terms and conditions of section 407 of the Stafford Act;
- (f) Provide assistance in accordance with section 408 of the Stafford Act; and
- (g) Assist State and local governments in the distribution of medicine, food, and other consumable supplies, and emergency assistance.

[55 FR 2296, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 67 FR 61460, Sept. 30, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.63 Provision of assistance.**

Assistance authorized by an emergency declaration is limited to immediate and short-term assistance, essential to save lives, to protect property and public health and safety, or to lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.64 Coordination of assistance.**

After an emergency declaration by the President, all Federal agencies, voluntary organizations, and State and local governments providing assistance shall operate under the coordination of the Federal Coordinating Officer.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.65 Cost sharing.**

The Federal share for assistance provided under this title shall not be less than 75 percent of the eligible costs.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.66 Limitation on expenditures.**

Total assistance provided in any given emergency declaration may not exceed \$5,000,000, except when it is determined by the Administrator that:

- (a) Continued emergency assistance is immediately required;
- (b) There is a continuing and immediate risk to lives, property, public health and safety; and
- (c) Necessary assistance will not otherwise be provided on a timely basis.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.67 Requirement when limitation is exceeded.**

Whenever the limitation described in § 206.66 is exceeded, the Administrator must report to the Congress on the nature and extent of continuing emergency assistance requirements and shall propose additional legislation if necessary.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§§ 206.68-206.100 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)



## Subpart D—Federal Assistance to Individuals and Households

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 206.101 Temporary housing assistance for emergencies and major disasters declared on or before October 14, 2002.

(a) *Purpose.* This section prescribes the policy to be followed by the Federal Government or any other organization when implementing section 408 of the Stafford Act for Presidentially-declared emergencies and major disasters declared on or before October 14, 2002 (Note that the reference to section 408 of the Stafford Act refers to prior legislation amended by the Disaster Mitigation Act 2000).

(b) *Program intent.* Assistance under this program is made available to applicants who require temporary housing as a result of a major disaster or emergency that is declared by the President. Eligibility for assistance is based on need created by disaster-related unlivability of a primary residence or other disaster-related displacement, combined with a lack of adequate insurance coverage. Eligible applicants may be paid for authorized accommodations and/or repairs. In the interest of assisting the greatest number of people in the shortest possible time, applicants who are able to do so will be encouraged to make their own arrangements for temporary housing. Although numerous instances of minor damage may cause some inconvenience to the applicant, the determining eligibility factor must be the livability of the primary residence. FEMA has also determined that it is reasonable to expect applicants or their landlords to make some repairs of a minor nature. Temporary housing will normally consist of a check to cover housing-related costs wherever possible.

(c) *Definitions* —(1) *Adequate alternate housing* means housing that:

(i) Accommodates the needs of the occupants.

(ii) Is within reasonable commuting distance of work, school, or agricultural activities which provide over 25% of the household income.

(iii) Is within the financial ability of the occupant in the realization of a permanent housing plan.

(2) *Effective date of assistance* means the date the eligible applicant received temporary housing assistance but, where applicable, only after appropriate insurance benefits are exhausted.

(3) *Essential living area* means that area of the residence essential to normal living, i.e., kitchen, one bathroom, dining area, living room, entrances and exits, and essential sleeping areas. It does not include family rooms, guest rooms, garages, or other nonessential areas, unless hazards exist in these areas which impact the safety of the essential living area.

(4) *Fair market rent* means a reasonable amount to pay in the local area for the size and type of accommodations which meets the applicant's needs.

(5) *Financial ability* is the determination of the occupant's ability to pay housing costs. The determination is based upon the amount paid for housing before the disaster, provided the household income has not changed subsequent to or as a result of the disaster or 25 percent of gross post disaster income if the household income changed as a result of the disaster. When computing financial ability, extreme or unusual financial circumstances may be considered by the Regional Administrator.

(6) *Household* means all residents of the predisaster residence who request temporary housing assistance, plus any additions during the temporary housing period, such as infants, spouses, or part-time residents who were not present at the time of the disaster but who are expected to return during the temporary housing period.

(7) *Housing costs* means shelter rent and mortgage payments including principal, interest, real estate taxes, real property insurance, and utility costs, where appropriate.

(8) *Occupant* means an eligible applicant residing in temporary housing provided under this section.

(9) *Owner-occupied* means that the residence is occupied by: the legal owner; a person who does not hold formal title to the residence and pays no rent but is responsible for the payment of taxes, or maintenance of the residence; or a person who has lifetime occupancy rights with formal title vested in another.

(10) *Primary residence* means the dwelling where the applicant normally lives during the major portion of the calendar year, a dwelling which is required because of proximity to employment, or to agricultural activities as referenced in paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section.

(d) *Duplication of benefits* —(1) *Requirement to avoid duplication.* Temporary housing assistance shall not be provided to an applicant if such assistance has been provided by any other source. If any State or local government or voluntary agency has provided temporary housing, the assistance under this section begins at the expiration of such assistance, and may continue for a period not to exceed 18 months from the date of declaration, provided the criteria for continued assistance in paragraph (k)(3) of this section are met. If it is determined that temporary housing assistance will be provided under this section, notification shall be given those agencies which have the potential for duplicating such assistance. In the instance of insured applicants, temporary housing assistance shall be provided only when:

(i) Payment of the applicable benefits has been significantly delayed;

(ii) Applicable benefits have been exhausted;



(iii) Applicable benefits are insufficient to cover the temporary housing need; or

(iv) Housing is not available on the private market.

(2) *Recovery of funds.* Prior to provision of assistance, the applicant must agree to repay to FEMA from insurance proceeds or recoveries from any other source an amount equivalent to the value of the temporary housing assistance provided. In no event shall the amount repaid to FEMA exceed the amount recovered by the applicant. All claims shall be collected in accordance with agency procedures for debt collection.

(e) *Applications* —(1) *Application period.* The standard FEMA application period is the 60 days following the date the President declares an incident a major disaster or an emergency. The Regional Administrator may, however, extend the application period, when we anticipate that we need more time to collect applications from the affected population or to establish the same application deadline for contiguous Counties or States. After the application period has ended, FEMA will accept and process applications for an additional 60 days only from persons who can provide an acceptable explanation (and documentation to substantiate their explanation) for why they were not able to contact FEMA before the application period ended.

(2) *Household composition.* Members of a household shall be included on a single application and be provided one temporary housing residence unless it is determined by the Regional Administrator that the size of the household requires that more than one residence be provided.

(f) *General eligibility guidelines.* Temporary housing assistance may be made available to those applicants who, as a result of a major disaster or emergency declared by the President, are qualified for such assistance.

(1) *Conditions of eligibility.* Temporary housing assistance may be provided only when *both* of the following conditions are met:

(i) The applicant's primary residence has been made unlivable or the applicant has been displaced as the result of a major disaster or emergency because:

(A) The residence has been destroyed, essential utility service has been interrupted, or the essential living area has been damaged as a result of the disaster to such an extent as to constitute a serious health or safety hazard which did not exist prior to the disaster. The Regional Administrator shall prepare additional guidelines when necessary to respond to a particular disaster;

(B) The residence has been made inaccessible as a result of the incident to the extent that the applicant cannot reasonably be expected to gain entry due to the disruption or destruction of transportation routes, other impediments to access, or restrictions placed on movement by a responsible official due to continued health and safety problems;

(C) The owner of the applicant's residence requires the residence to meet their personal needs because the owner's predisaster residence was made unlivable as a result of the disaster;

(D) Financial hardship resulting from the disaster has led to eviction or dispossession; or

(E) Other circumstances resulting from the disaster, as determined by the Regional Administrator, prevent the applicant from occupying their predisaster primary residence.

(ii) Insured applicants have made every reasonable effort to secure insurance benefits, and the insured has agreed to repay FEMA from whatever insurance proceeds are later received, pursuant to paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(2) *Conditions of ineligibility.* Except as provided for in section 408(b), Temporary Housing Assistance shall not be provided:

(i) To an applicant who is displaced from other than their primary residence; or

(ii) When the residence in question is livable, i.e., only minor damage exists and it can reasonably be expected to be repaired by the applicant/owner or the landlord; or

(iii) When the applicant owns a secondary or vacation residence, or unoccupied rental property which meets their temporary housing needs; or

(iv) To an applicant who has adequate rent-free housing accommodations; or

(v) To an applicant who has adequate insurance coverage and there is no indication that benefits will be delayed; or

(vi) When a late application is not approved for processing by the Regional Administrator; or

(vii) To an applicant who evacuated the residence in response to official warnings solely as a precautionary measure, and who is able to return to the residence immediately after the incident (i.e., the applicant is not otherwise eligible for temporary housing assistance).

(g) *Forms of Temporary Housing Assistance.* All proceeds received or receivable by the applicant under § 206.101 shall be exempt from garnishment, seizure, encumbrance, levy, execution, pledge, attachment, release, or waiver. No rights under this provision are assignable or transferable.

(1) Temporary Housing Assistance is normally provided in the form of a check to cover the cost of rent or essential home repairs. The exceptions to this are when existing rental resources are not available and repairs to the home will not make it livable in a reasonable period of time, or when the eligible applicant is unable to physically leave the home due to the need to tend crops or livestock.



(i) *Government-owned, private, and commercial properties.* When an eligible applicant is unable to obtain an available temporary housing unit, FEMA may enter into a leasing agreement for the eligible applicant. Rent payments shall be in accordance with the fair market rent (FMR) rates established for each operation for the type and size residence.

(ii) *Transient accommodations.* Immediately following a Presidentially declared major disaster or emergency, disaster victims are expected to stay with family or friends without FEMA assistance, or to make use of mass shelters to the fullest extent possible for short-term housing. Transient accommodations may be provided when individual circumstances warrant such assistance for only a short period of time or pending provision of other temporary housing resources. Transient accommodations may be provided for up to 30 days unless this period is extended by the Regional Administrator. Authorized expenditures for transient accommodations shall be restricted to the rental cost including utilities except for those which are separately metered. Payment for food, telephone, or other similar services is not authorized under this section.

(2) Mobile homes, travel trailers, and other manufactured housing units. Government-owned or privately owned mobile homes, travel trailers, and other manufactured housing units may be placed on commercial, private, or group sites. The placement must comply with applicable State and local codes and ordinances as well as FEMA'S regulations at 44 CFR part 9, Floodplain Management and Protection of Wetlands, and the regulations at 44 CFR part 10, Environmental Considerations.

(i) A commercial site is a site customarily leased for a fee because it is fully equipped to accommodate a housing unit. In accordance with section 408(a)(2)(B), the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate has determined that leasing commercial sites at Federal expense is in the public interest. When the Regional Administrator determines that upgrading of commercial sites or installation of utilities on such sites will provide more cost-effective, timely, and suitable temporary housing than other types of resources, they may authorize such action at Federal expense.

(ii) A private site is a site provided or obtained by the applicant at no cost to the Federal Government. Also in accordance with section 408(a)(2)(B), the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate has determined that the cost of installation or repairs of essential utilities on private sites is authorized at Federal expense when such actions will provide more cost-effective, timely, and suitable temporary housing than other types of resources.

(iii) A group site is a site which accommodates two or more units. In accordance with section 408(a)(2)(A), locations for group sites shall be provided by State or local government complete with utilities. However, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may authorize development of group sites, including installation of essential utilities, by the Federal Government, based on a recommendation from the Regional Administrator; provided, however, that the Federal expense is limited to 75 percent of the cost of construction and development (including installation of utilities). In accordance with section 408(a)(4) of the Stafford Act, the State or local government shall pay any cost which is not paid for from the Federal share, including long-term site maintenance such as snow removal, street repairs and other services of a governmental nature.

(3) *Temporary mortgage and rental payments.* Assistance in the form of mortgage or rental payments may be paid to or be provided on behalf of eligible applicants who, as a result of a major disaster or emergency, have received written notice of dispossession or eviction from their primary residence by foreclosure of any mortgage or lien, cancellation of any contract of sale, or termination of any lease entered into prior to the disaster. Written notice, for the purpose of this paragraph, means a communication in writing by a landlord, mortgage holder, or other party authorized under State law to file such notice. The purpose of such notice is to notify a person of impending termination of a lease, foreclosure of a mortgage or lien, or cancellation of any contract of sale, which would result in the person's dispossession or eviction. Applications for this type of assistance may be filed for up to 6 months following the date of declaration. This assistance may be provided for a period not to exceed 18 months or for the duration of the period of financial hardship, as determined by the Regional Administrator, whichever is less. The location of the residence of an applicant for assistance under this section shall not be a consideration of eligibility.

(4) *Home repairs.* Repairs may be authorized to quickly repair or restore to a livable condition that portion of or areas affecting the essential living area of, or private access to, an owner-occupied primary residence which was damaged as a result of the disaster. Installation of utilities or conveniences not available in the residence prior to the disaster shall not be provided. However, repairs which are authorized shall conform to applicable local and/or State building codes; upgrading of existing damaged utilities may be authorized when required by these codes.

(i) *Options for repairs.* Eligible applicants approved for repairs may be assisted through one or a combination of the following methods:

(A) *Cash payment.* Payment shall be limited to the reasonable costs for the repairs and replacements in the locality, as determined by the Regional Administrator. This will be the method normally used, unless unusual circumstances warrant the methods listed under paragraph (g)(4), (i) (B) or (C) of this section.

(B) Provision of materials and replacement items.

(C) Government awarded repair contracts when authorized by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(ii) *Feasibility.* Repairs may be provided to those eligible applicants:

(A) Who are owner-occupants of the residence to be made livable;

(B) Whose residence can be made livable by repairs to the essential living area within 30 days following the feasibility determination. The Regional Administrator may extend this period for extenuating circumstances by determining that this type of assistance is still more cost effective, timely and otherwise suitable than other forms for



temporary housing; and

(C) Whose residence can be made livable by repairs to the essential living area, the cost of which do not exceed the dollar limitations established by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The Regional Administrator may, on a case-by-case basis, waive the dollar limitations when repairs are more cost effective and appropriate than other forms of housing assistance or when extenuating circumstances warrant.

(iii) *Scope of work.* The type of repair or replacement authorized may vary depending upon the nature of the disaster. Items will be repaired where feasible or replaced only when necessary to insure the safety or health of the occupant. Replacement items shall be of average quality, size, and capacity taking into consideration the needs of the occupant. Repairs shall be disaster related and shall be limited to:

(A) Repairs to the plumbing system, including repairs to or replacement of fixtures, providing service to the kitchen and one bathroom;

(B) Repairs to the electrical system providing service to essential living areas, including repairs to or replacement of essential fixtures;

(C) Repairs to the heating unit, including repairs to duct work, vents, and integral fuel and electrical systems. If repair or replacement through other forms of assistance cannot be accomplished before the start of the season requiring heat, home repairs may be authorized by the Regional Administrator when an inspection shows that the unit has been damaged beyond repair, or when the availability of necessary parts or components makes repair impossible;

(D) Repairs to or replacement of essential components of the fuel system to provide for cooking;

(E) Pumping and cleaning of the septic system, repairs to or replacement of the tank, drainfield, or repairs to sewer lines;

(F) Flushing and/or purifying the water well, and repairs to or replacement of the pump, controls, tank, and pipes;

(G) Repairs to or replacement of exterior doors, repair of windows and/or screens needed for health purposes;

(H) Repairs to the roof, when the damages affect the essential living area;

(I) Repairs to interior floors, when severe buckling or deterioration creates a serious safety hazard;

(J) Blocking, leveling, and anchoring of a mobile home; and reconnecting and/or resetting mobile home sewer, water, electrical and fuel lines, and tanks;

(K) Emergency repairs to private access routes, limited to those repairs that meet the minimum safety standards and using the most economical materials available. Such repairs are provided on a one-time basis when no alternative access facilities are immediately available and when the repairs are more cost effective, timely or otherwise suitable than other forms of temporary housing.

(L) Repairs to the foundation piers, walls or footings when the damages affect the structural integrity of the essential living area;

(M) Repairs to the stove and refrigerator, when feasible; and

(N) Elimination of other health and safety hazards or performance of essential repairs which are authorized by the Regional Administrator as not available through emergency services provided by voluntary or community agencies, and cannot reasonably be expected to be completed on a timely basis by the occupant without FEMA assistance.

(iv) Requirements of the Flood Disaster Protection Act. FEMA has determined that flood insurance purchase requirements need not be imposed as a condition of receiving assistance under paragraph (g)(4) of this section. Repair recipients will normally receive assistance for further repairs from other programs which will impose the purchase and maintenance requirements. Home repairs may not be provided in Zones A or V of a sanctioned or suspended community except for items that are not covered by flood insurance.

(h) *Appropriate form of temporary housing.* The form of temporary housing provided should not exceed occupants' minimum requirements, taking into consideration items such as timely availability, cost effectiveness, permanent housing plans, special needs (handicaps, the location of crops and livestock, etc.) of the occupants, and the requirements of FEMA'S floodplain management regulations at 44 CFR part 9. An eligible applicant shall receive one form of temporary housing, except for transient accommodations or when provision of an additional form is in the best interest of the Government. An eligible applicant is expected to accept the first offer of temporary housing; unwarranted refusal shall result in forfeiture of temporary housing assistance. Existing rental resources and home repairs shall be utilized to the fullest extent practicable prior to provision of government-owned mobile homes.

(i) *Utility costs and security deposits.* All utility costs shall be the responsibility of the occupant except where utility services are not metered separately and are therefore a part of the rental charge. Utility use charges and deposits shall always be the occupants responsibility. When authorized by the Regional Administrator, the Federal Government may pay security deposits; however, the owner or occupant shall reimburse the full amount of the security deposit to the Federal Government before or at the time that the temporary housing assistance is terminated.

(j) *Furniture.* An allowance for essential furniture may be provided to occupants when such assistance is required to occupy the primary or temporary housing residence. However, loss of furniture does not in and of itself constitute eligibility for temporary housing assistance. Luxury items shall not be provided.

(k) *Duration of assistance* —(1) *Commencement.* Temporary housing assistance may be provided as of the date of the incident of the major disaster or emergency as specified in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice and may continue for 18



months from the date of declaration. An effective date of assistance shall be established for each applicant.

(2) *Continued assistance.* Predisaster renters normally shall be provided no more than 1 month of assistance unless the Regional Administrator determines that continued assistance is warranted in accordance with paragraph (k)(3) of this section. All other occupants of temporary housing shall be certified eligible for continued assistance in increments not to exceed 3 months. Recertification of eligibility for continued assistance shall be in accordance with paragraph (k)(3) of this section, taking into consideration the occupant's permanent housing plan. A realistic permanent housing plan shall be established for each occupant requesting additional assistance no later than at the time of the first recertification.

(3) *Criteria for continued assistance.* A temporary housing occupant shall make every effort to obtain and occupy permanent housing at the earliest possible time. A temporary housing occupant will be required to provide receipts documenting disaster related housing costs and shall be eligible for continued assistance when:

- (i) Adequate alternate housing is not available;
- (ii) The permanent housing plan has not been realized through no fault of the occupant; or
- (iii) In the case of FEMA-owner leases, the occupant is in compliance with the terms of the lease/rental agreement.

(l) *Period of assistance.* Provided the occupant is eligible for continued assistance, assistance shall be provided for a period not to exceed 18 months from the declaration date.

(m) *Appeals.* Occupants shall have the right to appeal a program determination in accordance with the following:

(1) An applicant declared ineligible for temporary housing assistance, an applicant whose application has been cancelled for cause, an applicant whose application has been refused because of late filing, and an occupant who received a direct housing payment but is not eligible for continued assistance in accordance with paragraph (k) of this section, shall have the right to dispute such a determination within 60 calendar days following notification of such action. The Regional Administrator shall reconsider the original decision within 15 calendar days after its receipt. The appellant shall be given a written notice of the disposition of the dispute. The decision of the Regional Administrator is final.

(2) An occupant who has been notified that his/her request to purchase a mobile home or manufactured housing unit or that a request for an adjustment to the sales price has been denied shall have the right to dispute such a determination within 60 business days after receipt of such notice. The Regional Administrator shall reconsider the original decision within 15 calendar days after receipt of the appeal. The appellant shall receive written notice of the disposition of the dispute. The decision of the Regional Administrator is final.

(3) Termination of assistance provided through a FEMA lease agreement shall be initiated with a 15-day written notice after which the occupant shall be liable for such additional charges as are deemed appropriate by the Regional Administrator including, but not limited to, the fair market rental for the temporary housing residence.

(i) *Grounds for termination.* Temporary housing assistance may be terminated for reasons including, but not limited to the following:

- (A) Adequate alternate housing is available to the occupant(s);
- (B) The temporary housing assistance was obtained either through misrepresentation or fraud; or
- (C) Failure to comply with any term of the lease/rental agreement.

(ii) *Termination procedures.* These procedures shall be utilized in all instances except when a State is administering the Temporary Housing Assistance program. States shall be subject to their own procedures provided they afford the occupant(s) with due process safeguards described in paragraph (m)(2)(v)(B) of this section.

(A) *Notification to occupant.* Written notice shall be given by FEMA to the occupant(s) at least 15 days prior to the proposed termination of assistance. This notice shall specify: the reasons for termination of assistance/occupancy; the date of termination, which shall be not less than 15 days after receipt of the notice; the administrative procedure available to the occupant if they wish to dispute the action; and the occupant's liability after the termination date for additional charges.

(B) *Filing of appeal.* If the occupant desires to dispute the termination, upon receipt of the written notice specified in paragraph (m)(2)(i) of this section, he/she shall present an appeal in writing to the appropriate office in person or by mail within 60 days from the date of the termination notice. The appeal must be signed by the occupant and state the reasons why the assistance or occupancy should not be terminated. If a hearing is desired, the appeal should so state.

(C) *Response to appeal.* If a hearing pursuant to paragraph (m)(2)(ii) of this section has not been requested, the occupant has waived the right to a hearing. The appropriate program official shall deliver or mail a written response to the occupant within 5 business days after the receipt of the appeal.

(D) *Request for hearing.* If the occupant requests a hearing pursuant to paragraph (m)(2)(ii) of this section, FEMA shall schedule a hearing date within 10 business days from the receipt of the appeal, at a time and place reasonably convenient to the occupant, who shall be notified promptly thereof in writing. The notice of hearing shall specify the procedure governing the hearing.

(E) *Hearing —( 1 ) Hearing officer.* The hearing shall be conducted by a Hearing Officer, who shall be designated by the Regional Administrator, and who shall not have been involved with the decision to terminate the occupant's temporary housing assistance, nor be a subordinate of any individual who was so involved.

( 2 ) *Due process.* The occupant shall be afforded a fair hearing and provided the basic safeguards of due process,



including cross-examination of the responsible official(s), access to the documents on which FEMA is relying, the right to counsel, the right to present evidence, and the right to a written decision.

( 3 ) *Failure to appear.* If an occupant fails to appear at a hearing, the Hearing Officer may make a determination that the occupant has waived the right to a hearing, or may, for good cause shown, postpone the hearing for no more than 5 business days.

( 4 ) *Proof.* At the hearing, the occupant must first attempt to establish that continued assistance is appropriate; thereafter, FEMA must sustain the burden of proof in justifying that termination of assistance is appropriate. The occupant shall have the right to present evidence and arguments in support of their complaint, to controvert evidence relied on by FEMA, and to cross examine all witnesses on whose testimony or information FEMA relies. The hearing shall be conducted by the Hearing Officer, and any evidence pertinent to the facts and issues raised may be received without regard to its admissibility under rules of evidence employed in formal judicial proceedings.

(F) *Decision.* The decision of the Hearing Officer shall be based solely upon applicable Federal and State law, and FEMA regulations and requirements promulgated thereunder. The Hearing Officer shall prepare a written decision setting forth a statement of findings and conclusions together with the reasons therefor, concerning all material issues raised by the complainant within 5 business days after the hearing. The decision of the Hearing Officer shall be binding on FEMA, which shall take all actions necessary to carry out the decision or refrain from any actions prohibited by the decision.

( 1 ) The decision shall include a notice to the occupant that he/she must vacate the premises within 3 days of receipt of the written notice or on the termination date stated in the original notice of termination, as required in paragraph (m)(2)(i) of this section, whichever is later. If the occupant does not quit the premises, appropriate action shall be taken and, if suit is brought, the occupant may be required to pay court costs and attorney fees.

( 2 ) If the occupant is required to give a specific number of days' notice which exceeds the number of days in the termination notice, the Regional Administrator may approve the payment of rent for this period of time if requested by the occupant.

(n) *Disposition of temporary housing units —(1) Acquisition.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may purchase mobile homes or other manufactured housing units for those who require temporary housing. After such temporary housing is vacated, it shall be returned to one of the FEMA-operated Strategic Storage Centers for refurbishment and storage until needed in a subsequent major disaster or emergency. When returning the unit to a Strategic Storage Center is not feasible or cost effective, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may prescribe a different method of disposition in accordance with applicable Federal statutes and regulations.

(2) *Sales —(i) Eligibility.* When adequate alternate housing is not available, the Regional Administrator shall make available for sale directly to a temporary housing occupant(s) any mobile home or manufactured housing unit acquired by purchase, in accordance with the following:

(A) The unit is to be used as a primary residence;

(B) The purchaser has a site that complies with local codes and ordinances as well as FEMA's floodplain management regulations at 44 CFR part 9 (in particular § 9.13(e)); and

(C) The purchaser has sufficient funds to purchase and, if necessary, relocate the unit. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may approve the sale of a mobile home or manufactured housing unit to a temporary housing occupant when adequate alternate housing is available but only when such sales are clearly in the best interest of the Government.

(ii) *Sales price.* Units shall be sold at prices that are fair and equitable to the purchaser and to the Government, as determined by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The purchaser shall pay the total sales price at the time of sale.

(iii) Adjustment to the sales price.

(A) Adjustments to the sales price may be provided only when both of the following conditions are met:

( 1 ) There is a need to purchase the unit for use as the purchaser's primary residence because other adequate alternate housing is unavailable. Adequate alternate housing must meet the criteria in paragraph (c)(1) of this section, and may consist of:

( i ) Existing housing;

( ii ) Additional resources such as disaster-damaged rental accommodations which can reasonably be expected to be repaired and become available in the near future;

( iii ) New housing construction or housing to be made available through Government subsidy which is included in the immediate recovery plans for the area; and

( iv ) Residences which can be repaired by the predisaster owner/occupant through funds available from insurance, other disaster assistance programs, or through their own resources.

( 2 ) In addition to his/her resources, the purchaser cannot obtain sufficient funds through insurance proceeds, disaster loans, grants, and commercial lending institutions to cover the sales price.

(B) To determine the adjusted sales price, the current available financial resources of the purchaser shall be calculated. If the financial resources are equal to or greater than the basic sales price, then no adjustment shall be



approved. If the purchaser's financial resources are less than the basic sales price, the sales price shall be adjusted to take into consideration the financial resources available but shall include some consideration. Deviations from this rule may be reviewed on a case-by-case basis by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(C) The Regional Administrator must approve all adjustments to the sales price of a mobile home.

(iv) Other conditions of sale.

(A) A unit shall be sold "as is, where is" except for repairs necessary to protect health or safety, which are to be completed prior to sale. There shall be no implied warranties. In addition, the purchaser must be informed that he/she may have to bring the unit up to codes and standards which are applicable at the proposed site.

(B) In accordance with the Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973, Public Law 93-234, as amended, the sale of a unit for the purpose of meeting the permanent housing need of an individual or family may not be approved where the unit would be placed in a designated special flood hazard area which has been identified by the Administrator for at least 1 year as floodprone unless the community in which the unit is to be located after the sale is, at the time of approval, participating in the National Flood Insurance Program. The purchaser must agree to buy and maintain an adequate flood insurance policy for as long as the unit is occupied by the purchaser. An adequate policy for purposes of this paragraph shall mean one which provides coverage for the basic sales price of the unit. The purchaser must provide proof of purchase of the initial flood insurance policy.

(3) *Transfer.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may lend temporary housing units purchased under section 408(a) of the Act directly to States, other Governmental entities, or voluntary organizations. Such transfers may be made only in connection with a Presidential declaration of a major disaster or emergency. Donations may be made only when it is in the best interest of the Government, such as when future re-use by the Federal Government would not be economically feasible. As a condition of such transfers, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall require that the recipient:

(i) Utilize the units for the purpose of providing temporary housing for victims of major disasters or emergencies in accordance with the written agreement; and

(ii) Comply with the current applicable FEMA policies and regulations, including this section; 44 CFR part 9 (especially §§ 9.13 and 9.14), Floodplain Management and Protection of Wetlands; 44 CFR part 10, Environmental Considerations. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may order returned any temporary housing unit made available under this section which is not used in accordance with the terms of transfer.

(o) *Reports.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, Regional Administrator, or Federal Coordinating Officer may require from field operations such reports, plans, and evaluations as they deem necessary to carry out their responsibilities under the Act and these regulations.

(p) *Federal responsibility.* The Federal financial and operational responsibility for the Temporary Housing Assistance program shall not exceed 18 months from the date of the declaration of the major disaster or emergency. This period may be extended in writing by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, based on a determination that an extension is necessary and in the public interest. The Regional Administrator may authorize continued use on a non-reimbursable basis of Government property, office space, and equipment by a State, other Government entity, or voluntary organization after the 18 month period.

(q) *Applicant notification* —(1) *General.* All applicants for temporary housing assistance will be notified regarding the type and amount of assistance for which they are qualified. Whenever practicable, such notification will be provided within 7 days of their application and will be in writing.

(2) Eligible applicants for temporary housing assistance will be provided information regarding:

(i) All forms of housing assistance available;

(ii) The criteria which must be met to qualify for each type of assistance;

(iii) Any limitations which apply to each type of assistance; and

(iv) The address and telephone number of offices responsible for responding to appeals and requests for changes in the type or amount of assistance provided.

(r) *Location.* In providing temporary housing assistance, consideration will be given to the location of:

(1) The eligible applicants' home and place of business;

(2) Schools which the eligible applicant or members of the household attend; and

(3) Agricultural activities which provide 25 percent or more of the eligible applicants' annual income.

(s) *NonFederal administration of temporary housing assistance.* A State may request authority to administer all or part of the temporary housing assistance program in the Governor's request for a declaration or in a subsequent written request to the Regional Administrator from the Governor or his/her authorized representative. The Associate Director shall approve such a request based on the Regional Administrator's recommendation and based on a finding that State administration is both in the interest of the Federal Government and those needing temporary housing assistance. The State must have an approved plan prior to the incident and an approved operational annex within 3 days of the declaration in order to administer the program. When administering the program the State must comply with FEMA program regulations and policies.

(1) *State temporary housing assistance plan.* (i) States which have an interest in administering the Temporary



Housing Assistance program shall be required to develop a plan that includes, at a minimum, the items listed below:

- (A) Assignment of temporary housing assistance responsibilities to State and/or local officials and agencies;
- (B) A description of the program, its functions, goals and objectives of the program, and proposed organization and staffing plan;
- (C) Procedures for:
  - ( 1 ) Accepting applications at Disaster Application Centers and subsequently at a State established disaster housing office;
  - ( 2 ) Determining eligibility utilizing FEMA's habitability contract and notifying applicants of the determination;
  - ( 3 ) Preventing duplication of benefits between temporary housing assistance and assistance from other means, as well as a recoupment procedure when duplication occurs;
  - ( 4 ) Providing the various types of assistance (home repairs, existing rental resources, transient accommodations, and mobile homes);
  - ( 5 ) Providing furniture assistance;
  - ( 6 ) Recertifying occupants for continued assistance;
  - ( 7 ) Terminating assistance;
  - ( 8 ) Contracting for services and/or supplies;
  - ( 9 ) Quality control;
  - ( 10 ) Maintaining a management information system;
  - ( 11 ) Financial management;
  - ( 12 ) Public information;
  - ( 13 ) Processing appeals; and
  - ( 14 ) Arranging for a program review.
- (ii) The Governor or his/her designee may request the Regional Administrator to provide technical assistance in the preparation of an administrative plan.
- (iii) The Governor or designee shall submit the plan to the Regional Administrator for approval. Plans shall be revised, as necessary, and shall be reviewed at least annually by the Regional Administrator.
- (2) *Operational annex.* Prior to the State administering the program, the state must submit an operational annex which tailors the approved State plan to the particular disaster or emergency. The annex must be reviewed and approved by the Regional Administrator within 3 days of the declaration or the State shall not be permitted to administer the program. The operational annex shall include but not be limited to:
  - (i) Organization and staffing specific to the major disaster or emergency;
  - (ii) Pertinent goals and management objectives;
  - (iii) A proposed budget; and
  - (iv) A narrative which describes methods for orderly tracking and processing of applications; assuring timely delivery of assistance; identification of potential problem areas; and any deviations from the approved plan. The Regional Administrator may require additional annexes as necessary for subsequent phases of the operation.
- (3) *Evaluation of capability.* State and local government assumption of the temporary housing assistance program for a particular disaster shall be approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate based on an evaluation of the capabilities and commitment of the entity by the Regional Administrator. At a minimum, the evaluation shall include a review of the following:
  - (i) The State temporary housing assistance plan which has been approved by the Regional Administrator prior to the incident, and the specific operational annex which has been approved in accordance with paragraph (s)(2) of this section.
  - (ii) Past performance in administration of temporary housing assistance or other similar operations;
  - (iii) Management and staff capabilities; and
  - (iv) Demonstrated understanding of the tasks to be performed.
- (4) *Grant application.* Approval of funding shall be obtained through submission of a project application by the State or local government through the Governor's Authorized Representative. The State shall maintain adequate documentation according to the requirements of 44 CFR part 13, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments, to enable analysis of the program. Final reimbursement to the State, or final debt collection, shall be based on an examination of the voucher filed by the State.



(5) *Authorized costs.* All expenditures associated with administering the program are authorized if in compliance with 44 CFR 13.22, Allowable Costs, and the associated OMB Circular A-87, Cost Principles for State and Local Governments. Examples of program costs allowable under the Temporary Housing Assistance program include home repairs, costs associated with rental payments, reimbursements for temporary housing including transient accommodations and commercial site rental, mobile home installation and maintenance, mobile home private site development, cost of supplemental assistance, mortgage and rental payments, other necessary costs, when approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. All contracts require the review and approval of the Regional Administrator prior to award, in order to be considered as an authorized expenditure.

(6) *Federal monitoring and oversight.* The Regional Administrator shall monitor State-administered activities since he/she remains responsible for the overall delivery of temporary housing assistance. In addition, policy guidance and interpretations to meet specific needs of a disaster shall be provided through the oversight function.

(7) *Technical assistance.* The Regional Administrator shall provide technical assistance as necessary to support State-administered operations through training, procedural issuances, and by providing experienced personnel to assist the State and local staff.

(8) *Operational resources.* The Regional Administrator shall make available for use in State or locally administered temporary housing programs Federal stand-by contracts, memoranda of understanding with Government and voluntary agencies, and Federal property, such as government-owned mobile homes and travel trailers.

(9) *Program reviews and audits.* The State shall conduct program review of each operation. All operations are subject to Federal audit.

[55 FR 2296, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 61 FR 7224, Feb. 27, 1996; 64 FR 46853, Aug. 27, 1999; 67 FR 61460, Sept. 30, 2002; 74 FR 15347, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§§ 206.102-206.109 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.110 Federal assistance to individuals and households.**

(a) *Purpose.* This section implements the policy and procedures set forth in section 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, 42 U.S.C. 5174, as amended by the Disaster Mitigation Act of 2000. This program provides financial assistance and, if necessary, direct assistance to eligible individuals and households who, as a direct result of a major disaster or emergency, have uninsured or under-insured, necessary expenses and serious needs and are unable to meet such expenses or needs through other means.

(b) *Maximum amount of assistance.* No individual or household will receive financial assistance greater than \$25,000 under this subpart with respect to a single major disaster or emergency. FEMA will adjust the \$25,000 limit annually to reflect changes in the Consumer Price Index (CPI) for All Urban Consumers that the Department of Labor publishes.

(c) *Multiple types of assistance.* One or more types of housing assistance may be made available under this section to meet the needs of individuals and households in the particular disaster situation. FEMA shall determine the appropriate types of housing assistance to be provided under this section based on considerations of cost effectiveness, convenience to the individuals and households and the suitability and availability of the types of assistance. An applicant is expected to accept the first offer of housing assistance; unwarranted refusal of assistance may result in the forfeiture of future housing assistance. Temporary housing and repair assistance shall be utilized to the fullest extent practicable before other types of housing assistance.

(d) *Date of eligibility.* Eligibility for Federal assistance under this subpart will begin on the date of the incident that results in a presidential declaration that a major disaster or emergency exists, except that reasonable lodging expenses that are incurred in anticipation of and immediately preceding such event may be eligible for Federal assistance under this chapter.

(e) *Period of assistance.* FEMA may provide assistance under this subpart for a period not to exceed 18 months from the date of declaration. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may extend this period if he/she determines that due to extraordinary circumstances an extension would be in the public interest.

(f) *Assistance not counted as income.* Assistance under this subpart is not to be counted as income or a resource in the determination of eligibility for welfare, income assistance or income-tested benefit programs that the Federal Government funds.

(g) *Exemption from garnishment.* All assistance provided under this subpart is exempt from garnishment, seizure, encumbrance, levy, execution, pledge, attachment, release or waiver. Recipients of rights under this provision may not reassign or transfer the rights. These exemptions do not apply to FEMA recovering assistance fraudulently obtained or misapplied.

(h) *Duplication of benefits.* In accordance with the requirements of section 312 of the Stafford Act, 42 U.S.C. 5155, FEMA will not provide assistance under this subpart when any other source has already provided such assistance or when such assistance is available from any other source. In the instance of insured applicants, we will provide



assistance under this subpart only when:

- (1) Payment of the applicable benefits are significantly delayed;
- (2) Applicable benefits are exhausted;
- (3) Applicable benefits are insufficient to cover the housing or other needs; or
- (4) Housing is not available on the private market.

(i) *Cost sharing.* (1) Except as provided in paragraph (i)(2) of this section, the Federal share of eligible costs paid under this subpart shall be 100 percent.

(2) Federal and State cost shares for "Other Needs" assistance under subsections 408 (e) and (f) of the Stafford Act will be as follows;

(i) The Federal share shall be 75 percent; and

(ii) The non-federal share shall be paid from funds made available by the State. If the State does not provide the non-Federal share to FEMA before FEMA begins to provide assistance to individuals and households under subsection 408(e) of the Stafford Act, FEMA will still process applications. The State will then be obliged to reimburse FEMA for the non-Federal cost share of such assistance on a monthly basis. If the State does not provide such reimbursement on a monthly basis, then FEMA will issue a Bill for Collection to the State on a monthly basis for the duration of the program. FEMA will charge interest, penalties, and administrative fees on delinquent Bills for Collection in accordance with the Debt Collection Improvement Act. Cost shared funds, interest, penalties and fees owed to FEMA through delinquent Bills for Collections may be offset from other FEMA disaster assistance programs ( *i.e.* Public Assistance) from which the State is receiving, or future grant awards from FEMA or other Federal Agencies. Debt Collection procedures will be followed as outlined in 44 CFR part 11.

(j) *Application of the Privacy Act.* (1) All provisions of the Privacy Act of 1974, 5 U.S.C. 552a, apply to this subpart. FEMA may not disclose an applicant's record except:

(i) In response to a release signed by the applicant that specifies the purpose for the release, to whom the release is to be made, and that the applicant authorizes the release;

(ii) In accordance with one of the published routine uses in our system of records; or

(iii) As provided in paragraph (j)(2) of this section.

(2) Under section 408(f)(2) of the Stafford Act, 42 U.S.C. 5174(f)(2), FEMA must share applicant information with States in order for the States to make available any additional State and local disaster assistance to individuals and households.

(i) States receiving applicant information under this paragraph must protect such information in the same manner that the Privacy Act requires FEMA to protect it.

(ii) States receiving such applicant information shall not further disclose the information to other entities, and shall not use it for purposes other than providing additional State or local disaster assistance to individuals and households.

(k) *Flood Disaster Protection Act requirement.* (1) The Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973, Public Law 93-234, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4106), imposes certain restrictions on federal financial assistance for acquisition and construction purposes. For the purpose of this paragraph, *financial assistance for acquisition or construction purposes* means assistance to an individual or household to buy, receive, build, repair or improve insurable portions of a home and/or to purchase or repair insurable contents. For a discussion of what elements of a home and contents are insurable, *See* 44 CFR part 61, Insurance Coverage and Rates.

(2) Individuals or households that are located in a special flood hazard area may not receive Federal Assistance for National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP)—insurable real and/or personal property, damaged by a flood, unless the community in which the property is located is participating in the NFIP ( *See* 44 CFR part 59.1), or the exception in 42 U.S.C. 4105(d) applies. However, if the community in which the damaged property is located qualifies for and enters the NFIP during the six-month period following the declaration, the Governor's Authorized Representative may request a time extension for FEMA ( *See* § 206.112) to accept registrations and to process assistance applications in that community.

(3) *Flood insurance purchase requirement:* (i) As a condition of the assistance and in order to receive any Federal assistance for future flood damage to any insurable property, individuals and households named by FEMA as eligible recipients under section 408 of the Stafford Act who receive assistance, due to flood damages, for acquisition or construction purposes under this subpart must buy and maintain flood insurance, as required in 42 U.S.C. 4012a, for at least the assistance amount. This applies only to real and personal property that is in or will be in a designated Special Flood Hazard Area and that can be insured under the National Flood Insurance Program.

(A) If the applicant is a homeowner, flood insurance coverage must be maintained at the address of the flood-damaged property for as long as the address exists. The flood insurance requirement is reassigned to any subsequent owner of the flood-damaged address.

(B) If the applicant is a renter, flood insurance coverage must be maintained on the contents for as long as the renter resides at the flood-damaged rental unit. The restriction is lifted once the renter moves from the rental unit.

(C) When financial assistance is used to purchase a dwelling, flood insurance coverage must be maintained on the dwelling for as long as the dwelling exists and is located in a designated Special Flood Hazard Area. The flood



insurance requirement is reassigned to any subsequent owner of the dwelling.

(ii) FEMA may not provide financial assistance for acquisition or construction purposes to individuals or households who fail to buy and maintain flood insurance required under paragraph (k)(3)(i) of this section or required by the Small Business Administration.

(l) *Environmental requirements.* Assistance provided under this subpart must comply with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and other environmental laws and Executive Orders, consistent with 44 CFR part 10.

(m) *Historic preservation.* Assistance provided under this subpart generally does not have the potential to affect historic properties and thus is exempted from review in accordance with section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, with the exception of ground disturbing activities and construction related to §§ 206.117(b)(1)(ii) (Temporary housing), 206.117(b)(3) (Replacement housing), and 206.117(b)(4) (Permanent housing construction).

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.111 Definitions.

*Adequate, alternate housing* means housing that accommodates the needs of the occupants; is within the normal commuting patterns of the area or is within reasonable commuting distance of work, school, or agricultural activities that provide over 50 percent of the household income; and is within the financial ability of the occupant.

*Alternative housing resources* means any housing that is available or can quickly be made available in lieu of permanent housing construction and is cost-effective when compared to permanent construction costs. Some examples are rental resources, mobile homes and travel trailers.

*Applicant* means an individual or household who has applied for assistance under this subpart.

*Assistance from other* means includes monetary or in-kind contributions from voluntary or charitable organizations, insurance, other governmental programs, or from any sources other than those of the applicant.

*Dependent* means someone who is normally claimed as such on the Federal tax return of another, according to the Internal Revenue Code. It may also mean the minor children of a couple not living together, where the children live in the affected residence with the parent or guardian who does not actually claim them on the tax return.

*Displaced applicant* means one whose primary residence is uninhabitable, inaccessible, made unavailable by the landlord (to meet their disaster housing need) or not functional as a direct result of the disaster and has no other housing available in the area, *i.e.*, a secondary home or vacation home.

*Effective date of assistance* means the date that the applicant was determined eligible for assistance.

*Eligible hazard mitigation measures* are home improvements that an applicant can accomplish in order to reduce or prevent future disaster damages to essential components of the home.

*Fair market rent* means housing market-wide estimates of rents that provide opportunities to rent standard quality housing throughout the geographic area in which rental housing units are in competition. The fair market rent rates applied are those identified by the Department of Housing and Urban Development as being adequate for existing rental housing in a particular area.

*Financial ability* means the applicant's capability to pay housing costs. If the household income has not changed subsequent to or as a result of the disaster then the determination is based upon the amount paid for housing before the disaster. If the household income is reduced as a result of the disaster then the applicant will be deemed capable of paying 30 percent of gross post disaster income for housing. When computing financial ability, extreme or unusual financial circumstances may be considered by the Regional Administrator.

*Financial assistance* means cash that may be provided to eligible individuals and households, usually in the form of a check or electronic funds transfer.

*Functional* means an item or home capable of being used for its intended purpose.

*Household* means all persons (adults and children) who lived in the pre-disaster residence who request assistance under this subpart, as well as any persons, such as infants, spouse, or part-time residents who were not present at the time of the disaster, but who are expected to return during the assistance period.

*Housing costs* means rent and mortgage payments, including principal, interest, real estate taxes, real property insurance, and utility costs.

*Inaccessible* means as a result of the incident, the applicant cannot reasonably be expected to gain entry to his or her pre-disaster residence due to the disruption, or destruction, of access routes or other impediments to access, or restrictions placed on movement by a responsible official due to continued health, safety or security problems.

*In-kind contributions* mean something other than monetary assistance, such as goods, commodities or services.

*Lodging expenses* means expenses for reasonable short-term accommodations that individuals or households incur in the immediate aftermath of a disaster. Lodging expenses may include but are not limited to the cost of brief hotel stays.



*Manufactured housing sites* means those sites used for the placement of government or privately owned mobile homes, travel trailers, and other manufactured housing units, including:

- (1) *Commercial site*, a site customarily leased for a fee, which is fully equipped to accommodate a housing unit;
- (2) *Private site*, a site that the applicant provides or obtains at no cost to the Federal Government, complete with utilities; and
- (3) *Group site*, a site provided by the State or local government that accommodates two or more units and is complete with utilities.

*Necessary expense* means the cost associated with acquiring an item or items, obtaining a service, or paying for any other activity that meets a serious need.

*Occupant* means a resident of a housing unit.

*Owner-occupied* means that the residence is occupied by:

- (1) The legal owner;
- (2) A person who does not hold formal title to the residence and pays no rent, but is responsible for the payment of taxes or maintenance of the residence; or
- (3) A person who has lifetime occupancy rights with formal title vested in another.

*Permanent housing plan* means a realistic plan that, within a reasonable timeframe, puts the disaster victim back into permanent housing that is similar to the victim's pre-disaster housing situation. A reasonable timeframe includes sufficient time for securing funds, locating a permanent dwelling, and moving into the dwelling.

*Primary residence* means the dwelling where the applicant normally lives, during the major portion of the calendar year; or the dwelling that is required because of proximity to employment, including agricultural activities, that provide 50 percent of the household's income.

*Reasonable commuting distance* means a distance that does not place undue hardship on an applicant. It also takes into consideration the traveling time involved due to road conditions, e.g., mountainous regions or bridges out and the normal commuting patterns of the area.

*Safe* means secure from disaster-related hazards or threats to occupants.

*Sanitary* means free of disaster-related health hazards.

*Serious need* means the requirement for an item, or service, that is essential to an applicant's ability to prevent, mitigate, or overcome a disaster-related hardship, injury or adverse condition.

*Significantly delayed* means the process has taken more than 30 days.

*Uninhabitable* means the dwelling is not safe, sanitary or fit to occupy.

*We, our, and us* mean FEMA.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

[Back to Top](#)

## § 206.112 Registration period.

(a) *Initial period*. The standard FEMA registration period is 60 days following the date that the President declares an incident a major disaster or an emergency.

(b) *Extension of the registration period*. The regional administrator or his/her designee may extend the registration period when the State requests more time to collect registrations from the affected population. The Regional Administrator or his/her designee may also extend the standard registration period when necessary to establish the same registration deadline for contiguous counties or States.

(c) *Late registrations*. After the standard or extended registration period ends, FEMA will accept late registrations for an additional 60 days. We will process late registrations for those registrants who provide suitable documentation to support and justify the reason for the delay in their registration.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

[Back to Top](#)

## § 206.113 Eligibility factors.

(a) *Conditions of eligibility*. In general, FEMA may provide assistance to individuals and households who qualify for such assistance under section 408 of the Stafford Act and this subpart. FEMA may only provide assistance:

- (1) When the individual or household has incurred a disaster-related necessary expense or serious need in the



state in which the disaster has been declared, without regard to their residency in that state;

(2) In a situation where the applicant has insurance, when the individual or household files a claim with their insurance provider for all potentially applicable types of insurance coverage and the claim is denied;

(3) In a situation where the applicant has insurance, when the insured individual or household's insurance proceeds have been significantly delayed through no fault of his, her or their own, and the applicant has agreed to repay the assistance to FEMA or the State from insurance proceeds that he, she or they receive later;

(4) In a situation where the applicant has insurance, when the insured individual or household's insurance proceeds are less than the maximum amount of assistance FEMA can authorize and the proceeds are insufficient to cover the necessary expenses or serious needs;

(5) In a situation where the applicant has insurance, when housing is not available on the private market;

(6) In a situation where the applicant has insurance, when the insured individual or household has accepted all assistance from other sources for which he, she, or they are eligible, including insurance, when the insured individual or household's insurance proceeds and all other assistance are less than the maximum amount of assistance FEMA can authorize and the proceeds are insufficient to cover the necessary expense or serious needs;

(7) When the applicant agrees to refund to FEMA or the State any portion of the assistance that the applicant receives or is eligible to receive as assistance from another source;

(8) With respect to housing assistance, if the primary residence has been destroyed, is uninhabitable, or is inaccessible; and

(9) With respect to housing assistance, if a renter's primary residence is no longer available as a result of the disaster.

(b) *Conditions of ineligibility.* We may not provide assistance under this subpart:

(1) For housing assistance, to individuals or households who are displaced from other than their pre-disaster primary residence;

(2) For housing assistance, to individuals or households who have adequate rent-free housing accommodations;

(3) For housing assistance, to individuals or households who own a secondary or vacation residence within reasonable commuting distance to the disaster area, or who own available rental property that meets their temporary housing needs;

(4) For housing assistance, to individuals or households who evacuated the residence in response to official warnings solely as a precautionary measure and who are able to return to the residence immediately after the incident;

(5) For housing assistance, for improvements or additions to the pre-disaster condition of property, except those required to comply with local and State ordinances or eligible mitigation measures;

(6) To individuals or households who have adequate insurance coverage and where there is no indication that insurance proceeds will be significantly delayed, or who have refused assistance from insurance providers;

(7) To individuals or households whose damaged primary residence is located in a designated special flood hazard area, and in a community that is not participating in the National Flood Insurance Program, except that financial assistance may be provided to rent alternate housing and for medical, dental, funeral expenses and uninsurable items to such individuals or households. However, if the community in which the damaged property is located qualifies for and enters the NFIP during the six-month period following the declaration then the individual or household may be eligible;

(8) To individuals or households who did not fulfill the condition to purchase and maintain flood insurance as a requirement of receiving previous Federal disaster assistance;

(9) For business losses, including farm businesses and self-employment; or

(10) For any items not otherwise authorized by this section.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.114 Criteria for continued assistance.**

(a) FEMA expects all recipients of assistance under this subpart to obtain and occupy permanent housing at the earliest possible time. FEMA may provide continued housing assistance during the period of assistance, but not to exceed the maximum amount of assistance for the program, based on need, and generally only when adequate, alternate housing is not available or when the permanent housing plan has not been fulfilled through no fault of the applicant.

(b) *Additional criteria for continued assistance.* (1) All applicants requesting continued rent assistance must establish a realistic permanent housing plan no later than the first certification for continued assistance. Applicants will be required to provide documentation showing that they are making efforts to obtain permanent housing.

(2) Applicants requesting continued rent assistance must submit rent receipts to show that they have exhausted the



FEMA rent funds, and provide documentation identifying the continuing need.

(3) FEMA generally expects that pre-disaster renters will use their initial rental assistance to obtain permanent housing. However, we may certify them, during the period of assistance, for continued rent assistance when adequate, alternate housing is not available, or when they have not realized a permanent housing plan through no fault of their own.

(4) FEMA may certify pre-disaster owners for continued rent assistance, during the period of assistance, when adequate, alternate housing is not available, or when they have not realized a permanent housing plan through no fault of their own.

(5) Individuals or households requesting additional repair assistance will be required to submit information and/or documentation identifying the continuing need.

(6) Individuals or households requesting additional assistance for personal property, transportation, medical, dental, funeral, moving and storage, or other necessary expenses and serious needs will be required to submit information and/or documentation identifying the continuing need.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

### **§ 206.115 Appeals.**

(a) Under the provisions of section 423 of the Stafford Act, applicants for assistance under this subpart may appeal any determination of eligibility for assistance made under this subpart. Applicants must file their appeal within 60 days after the date that we notify the applicant of the award or denial of assistance. Applicants may appeal the following:

- (1) Eligibility for assistance, including recoupment;
- (2) Amount or type of assistance;
- (3) Cancellation of an application;
- (4) The rejection of a late application;
- (5) The denial of continued assistance under § 206.114, Criteria for continued assistance;
- (6) FEMA's intent to collect rent from occupants of a housing unit that FEMA provides;
- (7) Termination of direct housing assistance;
- (8) Denial of a request to purchase a FEMA-provided housing unit at the termination of eligibility;
- (9) The sales price of a FEMA-provided housing unit they want to purchase; or
- (10) Any other eligibility-related decision.

(b) Appeals must be in writing and explain the reason(s) for the appeal. The applicant or person who the applicant authorizes to act on his or her behalf must sign the appeal. If someone other than the applicant files the appeal, then the applicant must also submit a signed statement giving that person authority to represent him, her or them.

(c) Applicants must appeal to the Regional Administrator or his/her designee for decisions made under this subpart, unless FEMA has made a grant to the State to provide assistance to individuals and households under § 206.120(a), State administration of other needs assistance; then the applicant must appeal to the State.

(d) An applicant may ask for a copy of information in his or her file by writing to FEMA or the State as appropriate. If someone other than the applicant is submitting the request, then the applicant must also submit a signed statement giving that person authority to represent him or her.

(e) The appropriate FEMA or State program official will notify the applicant in writing of the receipt of the appeal.

(f) The Regional Administrator or his/her designee or appropriate State official will review the original decision after receiving the appeal. FEMA or the State, as appropriate, will give the appellant a written notice of the disposition of the appeal within 90 days of the receiving the appeal. The decision of the appellate authority is final.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

### **§ 206.116 Recovery of funds.**

(a) The applicant must agree to repay to FEMA (when funds are provided by FEMA) and/or the State (when funds are provided by the State) from insurance proceeds or recoveries from any other source an amount equivalent to the value of the assistance provided. In no event must the amount repaid to FEMA and/or the State exceed the amount that the applicant recovers from insurance or any other source.



(b) An applicant must return funds to FEMA and/or the State (when funds are provided by the State) when FEMA and/or the State determines that the assistance was provided erroneously, that the applicant spent the funds inappropriately, or that the applicant obtained the assistance through fraudulent means.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.117 Housing assistance.

(a) *Purpose.* FEMA may provide financial or direct assistance under this section to respond to the disaster-related housing needs of individuals and households.

(b) *Types of housing assistance* —(1) *Temporary housing assistance* —(i) *Financial assistance.* Eligible individuals and households may receive financial assistance to rent alternate housing resources, existing rental units, manufactured housing, recreational vehicles, or other readily fabricated dwellings. FEMA may also provide assistance for the reasonable cost of any transportation, utility hookups, or installation of a manufactured housing unit or recreational vehicle to be used for housing. This includes reimbursement for reasonable short-term lodging expenses that individuals or households incur in the immediate aftermath of a disaster.

(A) FEMA will include all members of a pre-disaster household in a single registration and will provide assistance for one temporary housing residence, unless the Regional Administrator or his/her designee determines that the size or nature of the household requires that we provide assistance for more than one residence.

(B) FEMA will base the rental assistance on the Department of Housing and Urban Development's current fair market rates for existing rental units. FEMA will further base the applicable rate on the household's bedroom requirement and the location of the rental unit.

(C) All utility costs and utility security deposits are the responsibility of the occupant except where the utility does not meter utility services separately and utility services are a part of the rental charge.

(D) The occupant is responsible for all housing security deposits. In extraordinary circumstances, the Regional Administrator or his/her designee may authorize the payment of security deposits; however, the owner or occupant must reimburse the full amount of the security deposit to the Federal Government before or at the time that the temporary housing assistance ends.

(ii) *Direct assistance.* (A) FEMA may provide direct assistance in the form of purchased or leased temporary housing units directly to individuals or households who lack available housing resources and would be unable to make use of the assistance provided under paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section.

(B) FEMA will include all members of a pre-disaster household in a single application and will provide assistance for one temporary housing residence, unless the Regional Administrator or his/her designee determines that the size or nature of the household requires that we provide assistance for more than one residence.

(C) Any site upon which a FEMA-provided housing unit is placed must comply with applicable State and local codes and ordinances, as well as 44 CFR part 9, Floodplain Management and Protection of Wetlands, and 44 CFR part 10, Environmental Considerations, and all other applicable environmental laws and Executive Orders.

(D) All utility costs and utility security deposits are the responsibility of the occupant except where the utility does not meter utility services separately and utility services are a part of the rental charge.

(E) FEMA-provided or funded housing units may be placed in the following locations:

( 1 ) A commercial site that is complete with utilities; when the Regional Administrator or his/her designee determines that the upgrading of commercial sites, or installation of utilities on such sites, will provide more cost-effective, timely and suitable temporary housing than other types of resources, then Federal assistance may be authorized for such actions.

( 2 ) A private site that an applicant provides, complete with utilities; when the Regional Administrator or his/her designee determines that the cost of installation or repairs of essential utilities on private sites will provide more cost effective, timely, and suitable temporary housing than other types of resources, then Federal assistance may be authorized for such actions.

( 3 ) A group site that the State or local government provides that accommodates two or more units and is complete with utilities; when the Regional Administrator or his/her designee determines that the cost of developing a group site provided by the State or local government, to include installation or repairs of essential utilities on the sites, will provide more cost effective, timely, and suitable temporary housing than other types of resources, then Federal assistance may be authorized for such actions.

( 4 ) A group site provided by FEMA, if the Regional Administrator or his/her designee determines that such a site would be more economical or accessible than one that the State or local government provides.

(F) After the end of the 18-month period of assistance, FEMA may begin to charge up to the fair market rent rate for each temporary housing unit provided. We will base the rent charged on the number of bedrooms occupied and needed by the household. When establishing the amount of rent, FEMA will take into account the financial ability of the household.

(G) We may terminate direct assistance for reasons that include, but are not limited to, the following:



- ( 1 ) The period of assistance expired under § 206.110(e) and has not been extended;
- ( 2 ) Adequate alternate housing is available to the occupant(s);
- ( 3 ) The occupant(s) obtained housing assistance through either misrepresentation or fraud;
- ( 4 ) The occupant(s) failed to comply with any term of the lease/rental agreement or other rules of the site where the unit is located.
- ( 5 ) The occupant(s) does not provide evidence documenting that they are working towards a permanent housing plan.

(H) FEMA will provide a 15 day written notice when initiating the termination of direct assistance that we provide under our lease agreements. This notice will specify the reasons for termination of assistance and occupancy, the date of termination, the procedure for appealing the determination, and the occupant's liability for such additional charges as the Regional Administrator or his/her designee deems appropriate after the termination date, including fair market rent for the unit.

(I) Duplication of benefits may occur when an applicant has additional living expense insurance benefits to cover the cost of renting alternate housing. In these instances, FEMA may provide a temporary housing unit if adequate alternate housing is not available, or if doing so is in the best interest of the household and the government. We will establish fair market rent, not to exceed insurance benefits available.

(2) *Repairs.* (i) FEMA may provide financial assistance for the repairs of uninsured disaster-related damages to an owner's primary residence. The funds are to help return owner-occupied primary residences to a safe and sanitary living or functioning condition. Repairs may include utilities and residential infrastructure (such as private access routes, privately owned bridge, wells and/or septic systems) damaged by a major disaster.

(ii) The type of repair FEMA authorizes may vary depending upon the nature of the disaster. We may authorize repair of items where feasible or replacement when necessary to insure the safety or health of the occupant and to make the residence functional.

(iii) FEMA may also provide assistance for eligible hazard mitigation measures that reduce the likelihood of future damage to damaged residences, utilities or infrastructure.

(iv) Eligible individuals or households may receive up to \$5,000 under this paragraph, adjusted annually to reflect changes in the CPI, to repair damages to their primary residence without first having to show that the assistance can be met through other means, except insurance proceeds.

(v) The individual or household is responsible for obtaining all local permits or inspections that applicable State or local building codes may require.

(3) *Replacement.* FEMA may provide financial assistance under this paragraph to replace the primary residence of an owner-occupied dwelling if the dwelling was damaged by the disaster and there was at least \$10,000 of damage (as adjusted annually to reflect changes in the CPI). The applicant may either replace the dwelling in its entirety for \$10,000 (as adjusted annually to reflect changes in the CPI) or less, or may use the assistance toward the cost of acquiring a new permanent residence that is greater in cost than \$10,000 (as adjusted annually to reflect changes in the CPI). All replacement assistance awards must be individually approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may approve replacement assistance for applicants whose damages are less than \$10,000 in extraordinary circumstances where replacement assistance is more appropriate than other forms of housing assistance.

(4) *Permanent housing construction.* FEMA may provide financial or direct assistance to applicants for the purpose of constructing permanent housing in insular areas outside the continental United States and in other remote locations when alternative housing resources are not available and the types of financial or direct temporary housing assistance described at paragraph (b)(1) of this section are unavailable, infeasible, or not cost-effective.

(c) *Eligible costs.* (1) Repairs to the primary residence or replacement of items must be disaster-related and must be of average quality, size, and capacity, taking into consideration the needs of the occupant. Repairs to the primary residence are limited to restoration of the dwelling to a safe and sanitary living or functioning condition and may include:

- (i) Repair or replacement of the structural components, including foundation, exterior walls, and roof;
- (ii) Repair or replacement of the structure's windows and doors;
- (iii) Repair or replacement of the structure's Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning System;
- (iv) Repair or replacement of the structure's utilities, including electrical, plumbing, gas, water and sewage systems;
- (v) Repair or replacement of the structure's interior, including floors, walls, ceilings, doors and cabinetry;
- (vi) Repair to the structure's access and egress, including privately owned access road and privately owned bridge;
- (vii) Blocking, leveling, and anchoring of a mobile home, and reconnecting or resetting mobile home sewer, water, electrical and fuel lines and tanks; and
- (viii) Items or services determined to be eligible hazard mitigation measures.

(2) Replacement assistance, will be based on the verified disaster-related level of damage to the dwelling, or the statutory maximum, whichever is less.



(3) Permanent housing construction, in general, must be consistent with current minimal local building codes and standards where they exist, or minimal acceptable construction industry standards in the area, including reasonable hazard mitigation measures, and federal environmental laws and regulations. Dwellings will be of average quality, size and capacity, taking into consideration the needs of the occupant.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.118 Disposal of housing units.**

(a) FEMA may sell housing units purchased under § 206.117(b)(1)(ii), Temporary housing, direct assistance, as follows:

(1) Sale to an applicant.

(i) Sale to the individual or household occupying the unit, if the occupant lacks permanent housing, has a site that complies with local codes and ordinances and part 9 of this Title.

(ii) Adjustment to the sales price. FEMA may approve adjustments to the sales price when selling a housing unit to the occupant of a unit if the purchaser is unable to pay the fair market value of the home or unit and when doing so is in the best interest of the applicant and FEMA.

(iii) FEMA may sell a housing unit to the occupant only on the condition that the purchaser agrees to obtain and maintain hazard insurance, as well as flood insurance on the unit if it is or will be in a designated Special Flood Hazard Area.

(2) Other methods of disposal:

(i) FEMA may sell, transfer, donate, or otherwise make a unit available directly to a State or other governmental entity, or to a voluntary organization, for the sole purpose of providing temporary housing to disaster victims in major disasters and emergencies. As a condition of the sale, transfer, or donation, or other method of provision, the State, governmental entity, or voluntary organization must agree to:

(A) Comply with the nondiscrimination provisions of the Stafford Act, 42 U.S.C. 5151; and

(B) Obtain and maintain hazard insurance on the unit, as well as flood insurance if the housing unit is or will be in a designated Special Flood Hazard Area.

(ii) FEMA may also sell housing units at a fair market value to any other person.

(b) A unit will be sold "as is, where is", except for repairs FEMA deems necessary to protect health or safety, which are to be completed before the sale. There will be no implied warranties. In addition, FEMA will inform the purchaser that he/she may have to bring the unit up to codes and standards that are applicable at the proposed site.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.119 Financial assistance to address other needs.**

(a) *Purpose.* FEMA and the State may provide financial assistance to individuals and households who have other disaster-related necessary expenses or serious needs. To qualify for assistance under this section, an applicant must also:

(1) Apply to the United States Small Business Administration's (SBA) Disaster Home Loan Program for all available assistance under that program; and

(2) Be declined for SBA Disaster Home Loan Program assistance; or

(3) Demonstrate that the SBA assistance received does not satisfy their total necessary expenses or serious needs arising out of the major disaster.

(b) *Types of assistance.* (1) Medical, dental, and funeral expenses. FEMA may provide financial assistance for medical, dental and funeral items or services to meet the disaster-related necessary expenses and serious needs of individuals and households.

(2) Personal property, transportation, and other expenses.

(i) FEMA may provide financial assistance for personal property and transportation items or services to meet the disaster-related necessary expenses and serious needs of individuals and households.

(ii) FEMA may provide financial assistance for other items or services that are not included in the specified categories for other assistance but which FEMA approves, in coordination with the State, as eligible to meet unique disaster-related necessary expenses and serious needs of individuals and households.

(c) *Eligible costs* —(1) *Personal property.* Necessary expenses and serious needs for repair or replacement of



personal property are generally limited to the following:

- (i) Clothing;
- (ii) Household items, furnishings or appliances;
- (iii) Tools, specialized or protective clothing, and equipment required by an employer as a condition of employment;
- (iv) Computers, uniforms, schoolbooks and supplies required for educational purposes; and
- (v) Cleaning or sanitizing any eligible personal property item.

(2) *Transportation*. Necessary expenses or serious needs for transportation are generally limited to the following:

- (i) Repairing or replacing vehicles; and
- (ii) Financial assistance for public transportation and any other transportation related costs or services.

(3) *Medical expenses*. Medical expenses are generally limited to the following:

- (i) Medical costs;
- (ii) Dental costs; and
- (iii) Repair or replacement of medical equipment.

(4) *Funeral expenses*. Funeral expenses are generally limited to the following

- (i) Funeral services;
- (ii) Burial or cremation; and
- (iii) Other related funeral expenses.

(5) *Moving and storage expenses*. Necessary expenses and serious needs related to moving and storing personal property to avoid additional disaster damage generally include storage of personal property while disaster-related repairs are being made to the primary residence, and return of the personal property to the individual or household's primary residence.

(6) *Other*. Other disaster-related expenses not addressed in this section may include:

- (i) The purchase of a Group Flood Insurance Policy as described in paragraph (d) of this section.
- (ii) Other miscellaneous items or services that FEMA, in consultation with the State, determines are necessary expenses and serious needs.

(d) *Group Flood Insurance purchase*. Individuals identified by FEMA as eligible for "Other Needs" assistance under section 408 of the Stafford Act as a result of flood damage caused by a Presidentially-declared major disaster and who reside in a special flood hazard area (SFHA) may be included in a Group Flood Insurance Policy (GFIP) established under the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) regulations at 44 CFR 61.17.

(1) The premium for the GFIP is a necessary expense within the meaning of this section. FEMA or the State shall withhold this portion of the Other Needs award and provide it to the NFIP on behalf of individuals and households who are eligible for coverage. The coverage shall be equivalent to the maximum assistance amount established under section 408 of the Stafford Act.

(2) FEMA or the State IHP staff shall provide the NFIP with records of individuals who received an "Other Needs" award and are to be insured through the GFIP. Records of "Other Needs" applicants to be insured shall be accompanied by payments to cover the premium amounts for each applicant for the 3-year policy term. The NFIP will then issue a Certificate of Flood Insurance to each applicant. Flood insurance coverage becomes effective on the 30th day following the receipt of records of GFIP insureds and their premium payments from the State or FEMA, and such coverage terminates 36 months from the inception date of the GFIP, which is 60 days from the date of the disaster declaration.

(3) Insured applicants would not be covered if they are determined to be ineligible for coverage based on a number of exclusions established by the NFIP. Therefore, once applicants/policyholders receive the Certificate of Flood Insurance that contains a list of the policy exclusions, they should review that list to see if they are ineligible for coverage. Those applicants who fail to do this may find that their property is, in fact, not covered by the insurance policy when the next flooding incident occurs and they file for losses. Once the applicants find that their damaged buildings, contents, or both, are ineligible for coverage, they should notify the NFIP in writing in order to have their names removed from the GFIP, and to have the flood insurance maintenance requirement expunged from the data-tracking system.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.120 State administration of other needs assistance.



(a) *State administration of other needs assistance.* A State may request a grant from FEMA to provide financial assistance to individuals and households in the State under § 206.119. The State may also expend administrative costs not to exceed 5 percent of the amount of the grant in accordance with section 408(f)(1)(b) of the Stafford Act. Any State that administers the program to provide financial assistance to individuals and households must administer the program consistent with § 206.119 and the State Administrative Option and the State Administrative Plan that we describe at paragraph (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) *State administrative options.* The delivery of assistance under § 206.119 is contingent upon the State choosing an administrator for the assistance. The State may either request that FEMA administer the assistance or the State may request a grant from FEMA for State administration. The Governor or designee will execute the State Administrative Option annually. During non-disaster periods the State may submit any proposed amendments to the administrative option in writing to the FEMA Regional Administrator. FEMA shall review the request and respond to the Governor or his/her designee within 45 days of receipt of the proposed amendment;

(c) *State Administrative Plan (SAP).* The delivery of assistance by a State under this section is contingent upon approval of a SAP, which describes the procedures the State will use to deliver assistance under section 408 of the Stafford Act, 42 U.S.C. 5174, when a State requests a grant to administer Other Needs assistance. All implementation procedures must be in compliance with Federal laws and requirements, State laws and procedures, and paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

(1) *Timeframe for submission of SAP.* A signed SAP, or renewal, must be provided to the FEMA Regional Administrator prior to November 30 of each year. A SAP shall be effective for at least one year, and must be resubmitted in full every three years.

(2) *Renewals.* Annual updates/revisions to the SAP must be submitted by November 30 of each year for FEMA's review and approval by December 31. If the SAP does not need to be updated/revised, a letter from the State stating the SAP is still current must be submitted by November 30 to document the SAP submission requirement.

(3) *Amendments.* The State may request amendments to the SAP at any time. An amendment is effective upon signature by the FEMA Regional Administrator and the Governor or his/her designee. The State may request an amendment to the administrative plan as follows:

(i) *During non-disaster periods.* The State may submit any proposed amendments to the SAP in writing to the FEMA Regional Administrator. FEMA shall review the request and respond to the Governor or his/her designee within 45 days of receipt of the proposed amendment;

(ii) *During Presidentially-declared disasters.* The State shall submit any proposed amendments to the SAP in writing to FEMA within three days after disaster declaration. FEMA shall review the request and respond to the Governor or his/her designee within three days of receipt.

(d) *State administrative plan requirements.* The State shall develop a plan for the administration of the Other Needs assistance that describes, at a minimum, the following items:

(1) Assignment of grant program responsibilities to State officials or agencies.

(2) Staffing Schedule that identifies the position, salary and percent of time for each staff person assigned to program administration and/or implementation.

(3) Procedures for interaction with applicants:

(i) Procedures for notifying potential applicants of the availability of the program, to include the publication of application deadlines, pertinent program descriptions, and further program information on the requirements which must be met by the applicant in order to receive assistance;

(ii) Procedures for registration and acceptance of applications, including late applications, up to the prescribed time limitations as described in § 206.112;

(iii) Procedures for damage inspection and/or other verifications.

(iv) Eligibility determinations.

(A) *Under a cooperative agreement:* The procedure for eligibility determinations when the FEMA application and inspection systems are used by the State but additional eligibility criteria are necessary to make State eligibility determinations.

(B) *Under a grant:* The procedure for eligibility determinations when the FEMA application and inspection systems are not used by the State, including the method for determination of costs for personal property and provision of a standard list for personal property items with allowable costs identified for each item.

(v) Procedures for checking compliance for mandated flood insurance in accordance with § 206.110(k);

(vi) Procedures for notifying applicants of the State's eligibility decision;

(vii) Procedures for disbursement of funds to applicants;

(viii) Procedures for applicant appeal processing. Procedures must provide for any appealable determination as identified in § 206.115(a);

(ix) Procedures for expeditious reporting of allegations of fraud, waste or abuse to DHS Office of Inspector General.

(x) Capacity to investigate allegations of waste, fraud and abuse independently if requested by DHS OIG, or in



conjunction with DHS OIG.

(xi) Provisions for safeguarding the privacy of applicants and the confidentiality of information, in accordance with § 206.110(j).

(xii) Provisions for complying with § 206.116(b), Recovery of funds.

(4) Procedures for financial management, accountability and oversight.

(i) Procedures for verifying by random sample that assistance funds are meeting applicants' needs, are not duplicating assistance from other means, and are meeting flood insurance requirements.

(ii) Provisions for specifically identifying, in the accounts of the State, all Federal and State funds committed to each grant program; and for immediately returning, upon discovery, all Federal funds that are excess to program needs.

(iii) Provisions for accounting for cash in compliance with State law and procedure and the Cash Management Improvement Act of 1990, as amended.

(iv) Reports.

(A) Procedures for preparing and submitting quarterly and final Financial Status Reports in compliance with 44 CFR 13.41.

(B) Procedures for submitting Program Status Reports in compliance with paragraph (f)(2)(iii) of this section.

(C) Procedures for preparing and submitting the PSC 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report.

(v) Procedures for inventory control, including a system for identifying and tracking placement of equipment purchased with grant funds or loaned by FEMA to the State for purposes of administering the Individuals and Households Program.

(vi) Procedures for return of funds to FEMA.

(vii) State criteria and requirements for closing out Federal grants.

(viii) Process for retention of records.

(e) *Application for assistance procedure.* This section describes the procedures that must be followed by the State to submit an application to administer the Individuals and Households Program through a Grant Award or a Cooperative Agreement.

(1) The State must submit an Other Needs assistance application to the Regional Administrator within 72 hours of the major disaster declaration before IHP assistance may be provided. FEMA will work with the State to approve the application or to modify it so it can be approved.

(2) The application shall include:

(i) Standard Form (SF) 424, Application for Federal Assistance;

(ii) FEMA Form (FF) 20-20 Budget Information—Non Construction Programs;

(iii) Copy of approved indirect cost rate from a Federal cognizant agency if indirect costs will be charged to the grant. Indirect costs will be included in the administrative costs of the grant allowed under paragraph (a) of this section; and

(iv) Disaster specific changes to the State Administrative Plan, if applicable.

(f) *Grants management oversight* —(1) *Period of assistance.* All costs must be incurred within the period of assistance, which is 18 months from the date of the disaster declaration. This period of assistance may be extended if requested in writing by the State and approved in writing by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The State must include a justification for an extension of the assistance period.

(2) *Reporting requirements.* (i) The State shall provide financial status reports, as required by 44 CFR 13.41.

(ii) The State shall provide copies of PSC 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report to FEMA. The PSC 272 is required quarterly by the Department of Health and Human Services from users of its SMARTLINK service.

(iii) The State shall provide weekly program status reports which include the number and dollar amount of applications approved, the amount of assistance disbursed and the number of appeals received.

(3) *Ineligible costs.* Funds provided to the State for the administrative costs of administering Other Needs assistance shall not be used to pay regular time for State employees, but may be used to pay overtime for those employees.

(4) *Closeout.* The State has primary responsibility to closeout the tasks approved under the Grant Award. In compliance with the period of assistance, as identified in the award, the State must reconcile costs and payments, resolve negative audit findings, and submit final reports within 90 days of the end of the period of assistance. The State must also provide an inventory of equipment purchased with grant funds and loaned to it by FEMA for purposes of administering IHP, which lists the items, dates, and costs of equipment purchased.

(5) *Recovery of funds.* The State is responsible for recovering assistance awards from applicants obtained



fraudulently, expended for unauthorized items or services, expended for items for which assistance is received from other means, and awards made in error.

(i) Adjustments to expenditures will be made as funding is recovered and will be reported quarterly on the Financial Status Report.

(ii) A list of applicants from whom recoveries are processed will be submitted on the quarterly progress report to allow FEMA to adjust its program and financial information systems.

(iii) The State will reimburse FEMA for the Federal share of awards not recovered through quarterly financial adjustments within the 90 day close out liquidation period of the grant award.

(iv) If the State does not reimburse FEMA within the 90 day close out liquidation period, a bill for collection will be issued. FEMA will charge interest, penalties, and administrative fees on delinquent bills for collection in accordance with the Debt Collection Improvement Act. Recovered funds, interest, penalties, and fees owed to FEMA through delinquent bills for collection may be offset from other FEMA disaster assistance programs from which the State is receiving funds or future grant awards from FEMA or other Federal agencies. Debt collection procedures will be followed as outlined in 44 CFR part 11.

(6) *Audit requirements.* Pursuant to 44 CFR 13.26, uniform audit requirements apply to all grants provided under this subpart.

(7) *Document retention.* Pursuant to 44 CFR 13.42, States are required to retain records, including source documentation, to support expenditures/costs incurred against the grant award, for 3 years from the date of submission to FEMA of the final Financial Status Report. The State is responsible for resolving questioned costs that may result from an audit conducted during the three-year record retention period and for returning disallowed costs from ineligible activities.

[67 FR 61452, Sept. 30, 2002; 67 FR 62896, 62897, Oct. 9, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

## §§ 206.121-206.130 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

## Subpart E—Individual and Family Grant Programs

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 206.131 Individual and Family Grant Program for major disasters declared on or before October 14, 2002.

(a) *General.* The Governor may request that a Federal grant be made to a State for the purpose of such State making grants to individuals or families who, as a result of a major disaster, are unable to meet disaster-related necessary expenses or serious needs for Presidentially-declared major disasters declared on or before October 14, 2002 (Note that the reference to section 411 of the Stafford Act refers to prior legislation amended by the Disaster Mitigation Act 2000). The total Federal grant under this section will be equal to 75 percent of the actual cost of meeting necessary expenses or serious needs of individuals and families, plus State administrative expenses not to exceed 5 percent of the Federal grant (see paragraph (g) of this section). The total Federal grant is made only on condition that the remaining 25 percent of the actual cost of meeting individuals' or families' necessary expenses or serious needs is paid from funds made available by the State. With respect to any one major disaster, an individual or family may not receive a grant or grants under this section totaling more than \$10,000 including both the Federal and State shares. The \$10,000 limit will be adjusted annually, at the beginning of each fiscal year, to reflect changes in the Consumer Price Index for all Urban Consumers. IFG assistance for damages or losses to real or personal property, or both, will be provided to individuals or families with those IFG-eligible losses totaling \$201 or more; those individuals with damages or losses of \$200 or less to real or personal property, or both, are ineligible. The Governor or his/her designee is responsible for the administration of the grant program. The provisions of this regulation are in accordance with 44 CFR Part 13, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments.

(b) *Purpose.* The grant program is intended to provide funds to individuals or families to permit them to meet those disaster-related necessary expenses or serious needs for which assistance from other means is either unavailable or inadequate. Meeting those expenses and needs as expeditiously as possible will require States to make an early commitment of personnel and resources. States may make grants in instances where the applicant has not received other benefits to which he/she may be entitled by the time of application to the IFG program, and if the applicant agrees to repay all duplicated assistance to the State. The grant program is not intended to indemnify disaster losses or to permit purchase of items or services which may generally be characterized as nonessential, luxury, or decorative. Assistance under this program is not to be counted as income or a resource in the determination of eligibility for welfare or other income-tested programs supported by the Federal Government, in that IFG assistance is intended to address only disaster-related needs.

(c) *Definitions used in this section.* (1) *Necessary expense* means the cost of a serious need.



(2) *Serious need* means the requirement for an item or service essential to an individual or family to prevent, mitigate, or overcome a disaster-related hardship, injury, or adverse condition.

(3) *Family* means a social unit living together and composed of:

- (i) Legally married individuals or those couples living together as if they were married and their dependents; or
- (ii) A single person and his/her dependents; or
- (iii) Persons who jointly own the residence and their dependents.

(4) *Individual* means anyone who is not a member of a family as described above.

(5) *Dependent* means someone who is normally claimed as such on the Federal tax return of another, according to the Internal Revenue Code. It may also mean the minor children of a couple not living together where the children live in the affected residence with the parent who does not actually claim them on the tax return.

(6) *Expendable items* means consumables, as follows: linens, clothes, and basic kitchenware (pots, pans, utensils, dinnerware, flatware, small kitchen appliances).

(7) *Assistance from other means* means assistance including monetary or in-kind contributions, from other governmental programs, insurance, voluntary or charitable organizations, or from any sources other than those of the individual or family. It does not include expendable items.

(8) *Owner-occupied* means that the residence is occupied by: The legal owner; a person who does not hold formal title to the residence but is responsible for payment of taxes, maintenance of the residence, and pays no rent; or a person who has lifetime occupancy rights in the residence with formal title vested in another. In States where documentation proving ownership is not recorded or does not exist, the State is required to include in its administrative plan a State Attorney General approved set of conditions describing adequate proof of ownership.

(9) *Flowage easement* means an area where the landowner has given the right to overflow, flood, or submerge the land to the government or other entity for a public purpose.

(d) *National eligibility criteria.* In administering the IFG program, a State shall determine the eligibility of an individual or family in accordance with the following criteria:

(1) *General.* (i) To qualify for a grant under this section, an individual or family representative must:

(A) Make application to all applicable available governmental disaster assistance programs for assistance to meet a necessary expense or serious need, and be determined not qualified for such assistance, or demonstrate that the assistance received does not satisfy the total necessary expense or serious need;

(B) Not have previously received or refused assistance from other means for the specific necessary expense or serious need, or portion thereof, for which application is made; and

(C) Certify to refund to the State that part of the grant for which assistance from other means is received, or which is not spent as identified in the grant award document.

(ii) Individuals and families who incur a necessary expense or serious need in the major disaster area may be eligible for assistance under this section without regard to their alienage, their residency in the major disaster area, or their residency within the State in which the major disaster has been declared except that for assistance in the "housing" category, ownership and residency in the declared disaster area are required (see paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section).

(iii) The Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973, Public Law 93-234, as amended, imposes certain restriction on approval of Federal financial assistance for acquisition and construction purposes. This paragraph states those requirements for the IFG program.

(A) For the purpose of this paragraph, *financial assistance for acquisition or construction purposes* means a grant to an individual or family to repair, replace, or rebuild the insurable portions of a home, and/or to purchase or repair insurable contents. For a discussion of what elements of a home and contents are insurable, see 44 CFR part 61, Insurance Coverage and Rates.

(B) A State may not make a grant for acquisition or construction purposes where the structure to which the grant assistance relates is located in a designated special flood hazard area which has been identified by the Assistant Administrator for Mitigation for at least 1 year as floodprone, unless the community in which the structure is located is participating in the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP). However, if a community qualifies for and enters the NFIP during the 6-month period following the major disaster declaration, the Governor's Authorized Representative (GAR) may request a time extension (see paragraph (j)(1)(ii) of this section) from the Regional Administrator for the purpose of accepting and processing grant applications in that community. The Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, as appropriate, may approve the State's request if those applicable governmental disaster assistance programs which were available during the original application period are available to the grant applicants during the extended application period.

(C)( 1 ) The State may not make a grant for acquisition or construction purposes in a designated special flood hazard area in which the sale of flood insurance is available under the NFIP unless the individual or family obtains adequate flood insurance and maintains such insurance for as long as they live at that property address. The coverage shall equal the maximum grant amount established under § 411(f) of the Stafford Act. If the grantee is a homeowner, flood insurance coverage must be maintained on the residence at the flood-damaged property address for as long as the structure exists if the grantee, or any subsequent owner of that real estate, ever wishes to be assisted by the



Federal government with any subsequent flood damages or losses to real or personal property, or both. If the grantee is a renter, flood insurance coverage must be maintained on the contents for as long as the renter resides at the flood-damaged property address. The restriction is lifted once the renter moves from the rental unit.

( 2 ) Individuals named by a State as eligible recipients under § 411 of the Stafford Act for an IFG program award for flood damage as a result of a Presidential major disaster declaration will be included in a Group Flood Insurance Policy (GFIP) established under the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) regulations, at 44 CFR 61.17.

( i ) The premium for the GFIP is a necessary expense within the meaning of this section. The State shall withhold this portion of the IFG award and provide it to the NFIP on behalf of individuals and families who are eligible for coverage. The coverage shall be equivalent to the maximum grant amount established under § 411(f) of the Stafford Act.

( ii ) The State IFG program staff shall provide the NFIP with records of individuals who received an IFG award and are, therefore, to be insured. Records of IFG grantees to be insured shall be accompanied by payments to cover the premium amounts for each grantee for the 3-year policy term. The NFIP will then issue a Certificate of Flood Insurance to each grantee. Flood insurance coverage becomes effective on the 30th day following the receipt of records of GFIP insureds and their premium payments from the State, and terminates 36 months from the inception date of the GFIP, i.e., 60 days from the date of the disaster declaration.

( iii ) Insured grantees would not be covered if they are determined to be ineligible for coverage based on a number of exclusions established by the NFIP. Therefore, once grantees/policyholders receive the Certificate of Flood Insurance that contains a list of the policy exclusions, they should review that list to see if they are ineligible for coverage. Those grantees who fail to do this may find that their property is, in fact, not covered by the insurance policy when the next flooding incident occurs and they file for losses. Once the grantees find that their damaged buildings, contents, or both, are ineligible for coverage, they should notify the NFIP in writing in order to have their names removed from the GFIP, and to have the flood insurance maintenance requirement expunged from the NFIP data-tracking system. (If the grantee wishes to refer to or review a Standard Flood Insurance Policy, it will be made available by the NFIP upon request.)

(D) A State may not make a grant to any individual or family who received Federal disaster assistance for flood damage occurring after September 23, 1994, if that property has already received Federal flood-disaster assistance in a disaster declared after September 23, 1994, a flood insurance purchase and maintenance requirement was levied as a condition or result of receiving that Federal disaster assistance, and flood insurance was, in fact, not maintained in an amount at least equal to the maximum IFG grant amount. However, if that property was determined to be ineligible for NFIP flood insurance coverage and is in a special flood hazard area located in a community participating in the NFIP, then the State may continue to make grants to those individuals or families that receive additional damage in all subsequent Presidentially declared major disasters involving floods.

(iv) In order to comply with the President's Executive Orders on Floodplain Management (E.O. 11988) and Protection of Wetlands (E.O. 11990), the State must implement the IFG program in accordance with FEMA regulations 44 CFR part 9. That part specifies which IFG program actions require a floodplain management decisionmaking process before a grant may be made, and also specifies the steps to follow in the decisionmaking process. Should the State determine that an individual or family is otherwise eligible for grant assistance, the State shall accomplish the necessary steps in accordance with that section, and request the Regional Administrator to make a final floodplain management determination.

(2) *Eligible categories.* Assistance under this section shall be made available to meet necessary expenses or serious needs by providing essential items or services in the following categories:

(i) Housing. With respect to primary residences (including mobile homes) which are owner-occupied at the time of the disaster, grants may be authorized to:

(A) Repair, replace, or rebuild;

(B) Provide access. When an access serves more than one individual or family, an owner-occupant whose primary residence is served by the access may be eligible for a proportionate share of the cost of jointly repairing or providing such access. The owner-occupant may combine his/her grant funds with funds made available by the other individuals or families if a joint use agreement is executed (with no cost or charge involved) or if joint ownership of the access is agreed to;

(C) Clean or make sanitary;

(D) Remove debris from such residences. Debris removal is limited to the minimum required to remove health or safety hazards from, or protect against additional damage to the residence;

(E) Provide or take minimum protective measures required to protect such residences against the immediate threat of damage, which means that the disaster damage is causing a potential safety hazard and, if not repaired, will cause actual safety hazards from common weather or environmental events (example: additional rain, flooding, erosion, wind); and

(F) Minimization measures required by owner-occupants to comply with the provision of 44 CFR part 9 (Floodplain Management and Protection of Wetlands), to enable them to receive assistance from other means, and/or to enable them to comply with a community's floodplain management regulations.

(ii) Personal property. Proof of ownership of personal property is not required. This category includes:

(A) Clothing;



(B) Household items, furnishings, or appliances. If a predisaster renter receives a grant for household items, furnishings, or appliances and these items are an integral part of mobile home or other furnished unit, the predisaster renter may apply the funds awarded for these specific items toward the purchase of the furnished unit, and toward mobile home site development, towing, set-up, connecting and/or reconnecting;

(C) Tools, specialized or protective clothing, and equipment which are required by an employer as a condition of employment;

(D) Repairing, cleaning or sanitizing any eligible personal property item; and

(E) Moving and storing to prevent or reduce damage.

(iii) Transportation. Grants may be authorized to repair, replace, or provide privately owned vehicles or to provide public transportation.

(iv) Medical or dental expenses.

(v) Funeral expenses. Grants may include funeral and burial (and/or cremation) and related expenses.

(vi) Cost of the first year's flood insurance premium to meet the requirement of this section.

(vii) Costs for estimates required for eligibility determinations under the IFG program. Housing and personal property estimates will be provided by the government. However, an applicant may appeal to the State if he/she feels the government estimate is inaccurate. The cost of an applicant-obtained estimate to support the appeal is not an eligible cost.

(viii) Other. A State may determine that other necessary expenses and serious needs are eligible for grant assistance. If such a determination is made, the State must summarize the facts of the case and thoroughly document its findings of eligibility. Should the State require technical assistance in making a determination of eligibility, it may provide a factual summary to the Regional Administrator and request guidance. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate also may determine that other necessary expenses and serious needs are eligible for grant assistance. Following such a determination, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall advise the State, through the Regional Administrator, and provide the necessary program guidance.

(3) *Ineligible categories.* Assistance under this section shall not be made available for any item or service in the following categories:

(i) Business losses, including farm businesses and self-employment;

(ii) Improvements or additions to real or personal property, except those required to comply with paragraph (d)(2)(i)(F) of this section;

(iii) Landscaping;

(iv) Real or personal property used exclusively for recreation; and

(v) Financial obligations incurred prior to the disaster.

(4) *Verification.* The State will be provided most verification data on IFG applicants who were not required to first apply to the SBA. The FEMA Regional Administrator shall be responsible for performing most of the required verifications in the categories of housing (to include documentation of home ownership and primary residency); personal property; and transportation (to include notation of the plate or title number of the vehicle; the State may wish to follow up on this). Certain verifications may still be required to be performed by the State, such as on late applicants or reverifications, when FEMA or its contractors are no longer available, and on medical/dental, funeral and "other" categories. Eligibility determination functions shall be performed by the State. The SBA will provide copies of verification performed by SBA staff on housing and personal property (including vehicles) for those applicants who were first required to apply to SBA. This will enable the State to make an eligibility determination on those applicants. When an applicant disagrees with the grant award, he/she may appeal to the State. The cost of any estimate provided by the applicant in support of his/her appeal is not eligible under the program.

(e) *State administrative plan.* (1) The State shall develop a plan for the administration of the IFG program that includes, as a minimum, the items listed below.

(i) Assignment of grant program responsibilities to State officials or agencies.

(ii) Procedures for:

(A) Notifying potential grant applicants of the availability of the program, to include the publication of application deadlines, pertinent program descriptions, and further program information on the requirements which must be met by the applicant in order to receive assistance;

(B) Participating with FEMA in the registration and acceptance of applications, including late applications, up to the prescribed time limitations;

(C) Reviewing verification data provided by FEMA and performing verifications for medical, dental, funeral, and "other" expenses, and also for all grant categories in the instance of late applications and appeals. FEMA will perform any necessary reverifications while its contract personnel are in the disaster area, and the State will perform any others;

(D) Determining applicant eligibility and grant amounts, and notifying applicants of the State's decision;

(E) Determining the requirement for flood insurance;



- (F) Preventing duplication of benefits between grant assistance and assistance from other means;
- (G) At the applicant's request, and at the State's option, reconsidering the State's determinations;
- (H) Processing applicant appeals, recognizing that the State has final authority. Such procedures must provide for:
  - ( 1 ) The receipt of oral or written evidence from the appellate or representative;
  - ( 2 ) A determination on the record; and
  - ( 3 ) A decision by an impartial person or board;
- (I) Disbursing grants in a timely manner;

(J) Verifying by random sample that grant funds are meeting applicants' needs, are not duplicating assistance from other means, and are meeting floodplain management and flood insurance requirements. Guidance on the sample size will be provided by the Regional Administrator;

(K) Recovering grant funds obtained fraudulently, expended for unauthorized items or services, expended for items for which assistance is received from other means, or authorized for acquisition or construction purposes where proof of purchase of flood insurance is not provided to the State. Except for those mentioned in the previous sentence, grants made properly by the State on the basis of federally sponsored verification information are not subject to recovery by the State, i.e., FEMA will not hold the State responsible for repaying to FEMA the Federal share of those grants. The State is responsible for its 25 percent share of those grants. As an attachment to its voucher, the State must identify each case where recovery actions have been taken or are to be taken, and the steps taken or to be taken to accomplish recovery;

(L) Conducting any State audits that might be performed in compliance with the Single Audit Act of 1984; and ensuring that appropriate corrective action is taken within 6 months after receipt of the audit report in instances of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(M) Reporting to the Regional Administrator, and to the Federal Coordinating Officer as required; and

(N) Reviewing and updating the plan each January.

(iii) National eligibility criteria as defined in paragraph (d) of this section.

(iv) Provisions for compliance with 44 CFR part 13, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments; 44 CFR part 11, Claims; the State's own debt collection procedures; and all applicable Federal laws and regulations.

(v) Pertinent time limitations for accepting applications, grant award activities, and administrative activities, to comply with Federal time limitations.

(vi) Provisions for specifically identifying, in the accounts of the State, all Federal and State funds committed to each grant program; for repaying the loaned State share as of the date agreed upon in the FEMA-State Agreement; and for immediately returning, upon discovery, all Federal funds that are excess to program needs.

(vii) Provisions for safeguarding the privacy of applicants and the confidentiality of information, except that the information may be provided to agencies or organizations who require it to make eligibility decisions for assistance programs, or to prevent duplication of benefits, to State agencies responsible for audit or program review, and to FEMA or the Government Accountability Office for the purpose of making audits or conducting program reviews.

(viii) A section identifying the management and staffing functions in the IFG program, the sources of staff to fill these functions, and the management and oversight responsibilities of:

(A) The GAR;

(B) The department head responsible for the IFG program;

(C) The Grant Coordinating Officer, i.e., the State official assigned management responsibility for the IFG program; and

(D) The IFG program manager, where management responsibilities are assigned to such a person on a day-to-day basis.

(2) The Governor or his/her designee may request the Regional Administrator to provide technical assistance in the preparation of an administrative plan to implement this program.

(3) The Governor shall submit a revised State administrative plan each January to the Regional Administrator. The Regional Administrator shall review and approve the plan annually. In each disaster for which assistance under this section is requested, the Regional Administrator shall request the State to prepare any amendments required to meet current policy guidance. The Regional Administrator must then work with the State until the plan and amendment(s) are approved.

(4) The State shall make its approved administrative plan part of the State emergency plan, as described in subpart A of these regulations.

(f) *State initiation of the IFG program.* To make assistance under this section available to disaster victims, the Governor must, either in the request of the President for a major disaster declaration or by separate letter to the



Regional Administrator, express his/her intention to implement the program. This expression of intent must include an estimate of the size and cost of the program. In addition, this expression of intent represents the Governor's agreement to the following:

(1) That the program is needed to satisfy necessary expenses and serious needs of disaster victims which cannot otherwise be met;

(2) That the State will pay its 25 percent share of all grants to individuals and families;

(3) That the State will return immediately upon discovery advanced Federal funds that exceed actual requirements;

(4) To implement an administrative plan as identified in paragraph (e) of this section;

(5) To implement the grant program throughout the area designated as eligible for assistance by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate; and

(6) To maintain close coordination with and provide reports to the Regional Administrator.

(g) *Funding.* (1) The Regional Administrator may obligate the Federal share of the IFG program based upon the determination that:

(i) The Governor has indicated the intention to implement the program, in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section;

(ii) The State's administrative plan meets the requirements of this section and current policy guidance; and

(iii) There is no excess advance of the Federal share due FEMA from a prior IFG program. The State may eliminate any such debt by paying it immediately, or by accepting an offset of the owed funds against other funds payable by FEMA to the State. When the excess Federal share has been repaid, the Regional Administrator may then obligate funds for the Federal share for the current disaster.

(2) The Regional Administrator may increase the State's letter of credit to meet the Federal share of program needs if the above conditions are met. The State may withdraw funds for the Federal share in the amount made available to it by the Regional Administrator. Advances to the State are governed by 44 CFR 13.21, Payment.

(3) The Regional Administrator may lend to the State its share in accordance with subpart A of these regulations.

(4) Payable costs are governed by 44 CFR 13.22, Allowable Costs, and the associated OMB Circular A-87, Cost Principles for State and Local Governments. Also, the costs must be in accordance with the national eligibility criteria stated in paragraph (d) of this section, and the State's administrative plan, as stated in paragraph (e) of this section. The Federal contribution to this program shall be 75 percent of program costs and shall be made in accordance with 44 CFR 13.25, Matching or Cost-Sharing.

(h) *Final payment.* Final payment to the State for the Federal share of the IFG program plus administrative costs, is governed by 44 CFR 13.21, Payment, and 44 CFR 13.50, Closeout. The voucher is Standard Form 270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement). A separate voucher for the State share will be prepared, to include all disaster programs for which the State is requesting a loan of the nonFederal share. The FEMA Regional Administrator will analyze the voucher and approve, disapprove, or suspend approval until deficiencies are corrected.

(i) *Audits.* The State should perform the audits required by the Single Audit Act of 1984. Refer to 44 CFR part 13. All programs are subject to Federal audit.

(j) *Time limitations.* (1) In the administration of the IFG program:

(i) The Governor shall indicate his/her intention to implement the IFG program no later than 7 days following the day on which the major disaster was declared and in the manner set forth in paragraph (f) of this section;

(ii) Applications shall be accepted from individuals or families for a period of 60 days following the declaration, and for no longer than 30 days thereafter when the State determines that extenuating circumstances beyond the applicants' control (such as, but not limited to, hospitalization, illness, or inaccessibility to application centers) prevented them from applying in a timely manner. *Exception:* If applicants exercising their responsibility to first apply to the Small Business Administration do so after SBA's deadline, and SBA accepts their case for processing because of "substantial causes essentially beyond the control of the applicant," and provides a formal decline or insufficient loan based on lack of repayment ability, unsatisfactory credit, or unsatisfactory experience with prior loans (i.e., the reasons a loan denial client would normally be eligible for IFG assistance), then such an application referred to the State by the SBA is considered as meeting the IFG filing deadline. The State may then apply its own criteria in determining whether to process the case for grant assistance. The State automatically has an extension of time to complete the processing, eligibility, and disbursement functions. However, the State must still complete all administrative activity within the 270-day period described in this section.

(iii) The State shall complete all grant award activity, including eligibility determinations, disbursement, and disposition of State level appeals, within 180 days following the declaration date. The Regional Administrator shall suspend all grant awards disbursed after the specified completion date; and

(iv) The State shall complete all administrative activities and submit final reports and vouchers to the Regional Administrator within 90 days of the completion of all grant award activity.

(2) The GAR may submit a request with appropriate justification for the extension of any time limitation. The Regional Administrator may approve the request for a period not to exceed 90 days. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may approve any request for a further extension of the time limitations.



(k) *Appeals* —(1) *Bills for collection (BFC's)*. The State may appeal the issuance of a BFC by the Regional Administrator. Such an appeal shall be made in writing within 60 days of the issuance of the bill. The appeal must include information justifying why the bill is incorrect. The Regional Administrator shall review the material submitted and notify the State, in writing, within 15 days of receipt of the appeal, of his/her decision. Interest on BFC's starts accruing on the date of issuance of the BFC, but is not charged if the State pays within 30 days of issuance. If the State is successful in its appeal, interest will not be charged; if unsuccessful, interest is due and payable, as above.

(2) *Other appeals*. The State may appeal any other decision of the regional Administrator. Such appeals shall be made in writing within 60 days of the Regional Administrator 's decision. The appeal must include information justifying a reversal of the decision. The Regional Administrator shall review the material submitted and notify the State, in writing, within 15 days of receipt of the appeal, of his/her decision.

(3) *Appeals to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate*. The State may further appeal the Regional Administrator 's decisions to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. This appeal shall be made in writing within 60 days of the Regional Administrator 's decision. The appeal must include information justifying a reversal of the decision. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall review the material submitted and notify the State, in writing, within 15 days of receipt of the appeal, of his/her decision.

(l) *Exemption from garnishment*. All proceeds received or receivable under the IFG program shall be exempt from garnishment, seizure, encumbrance, levy, execution, pledge, attachment, release, or waiver. No rights under this provision are assignable or transferable. The above exemptions will not apply to the requirement imposed by paragraph (e)(1)(ii)(K) of this section.

(m) *Debt collection*. If the State has been unable to recover funds as stated in paragraph (e)(1)(k) of this section, the Regional Administrator shall institute debt collection activities against the individual according to the procedures outlined in 44 CFR part 11, Claims, and 44 CFR 13.52, Collection of Amounts Due.

[54 FR 11615, Mar. 21, 1989, as amended at 55 FR 28627, July 12, 1990; 60 FR 7130, Feb. 7, 1995; 61 FR 19201, May 1, 1996; 67 FR 61460, Sept. 30, 2002; 74 FR 15348, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

§§ 206.132-206.140 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

Subpart F—Other Individual Assistance

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 206.141 Disaster unemployment assistance.

The authority to implement the disaster unemployment assistance (DUA) program authorized by section 410 of the Stafford Act, and the authority to issue regulations, are currently delegated to the Secretary of Labor.

 [Back to Top](#)

§§ 206.142-206.150 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 206.151 Food commodities.

(a) The Administrator will assure that adequate stocks of food will be ready and conveniently available for emergency mass feeding or distribution in any area of the United States which suffers a major disaster or emergency.

(b) In carrying out the responsibilities in paragraph (a) of this section, the Administrator may direct the Secretary of Agriculture to purchase food commodities in accordance with authorities prescribed in section 413(b) of the Stafford Act.

 [Back to Top](#)

§§ 206.152-206.160 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)



**§ 206.161 Relocation assistance.**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no person otherwise eligible for any kind of replacement housing payment under the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970 (Pub. L. 91-646) shall be denied such eligibility as a result of his being unable, because of a major disaster as determined by the President, to meet the occupancy requirements set by such Act.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§§ 206.162-206.163 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.164 Disaster legal services.**

(a) Legal services, including legal advice, counseling, and representation in non fee-generating cases, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, may be provided to low-income individuals who require them as a result of a major disaster. For the purpose of this section, *low-income individuals* means those disaster victims who have insufficient resources to secure adequate legal services, whether the insufficiency existed prior to or results from the major disaster. In cases where questions arise about the eligibility of an individual for legal services, the Regional Administrator or his/her representative shall make a determination.

(b) Disaster legal services shall be provided free to such individuals. Fee-generating cases shall not be accepted by lawyers operating under these regulations. For purposes of this section, a fee-generating case is one which would not ordinarily be rejected by local lawyers as a result of its lack of potential remunerative value. Where any question arises as to whether a case is fee-generating as defined in this section, the Regional Administrator or his/her representative, after any necessary consultation with local or State bar associations, shall make the determination. Any fee-generating cases shall be referred by the Regional Administrator or his/her representative to private lawyers, through existing lawyer referral services, or, where that is impractical or impossible, the Regional Director may provide a list of lawyers from which the disaster victim may choose. Lawyers who have rendered voluntary legal assistance under these regulations are not precluded from taking fee-generating cases referred to them in this manner while in their capacity as private lawyers.

(c) When the Regional Administrator determines after any necessary consultation with the State Coordinating Officer, that implementation of this section is necessary, provision of disaster legal services may be accomplished by:

- (1) Use of volunteer lawyers under the terms of appropriate agreements;
- (2) Use of Federal lawyers, provided that these lawyers do not represent an eligible disaster victim before a court or Federal agency in a matter directly involving the United States, and further provided that these lawyers do not act in a way which will violate the standards of conduct of their respective agencies or departments;
- (3) Use of private lawyers who may be paid by the Federal Emergency Management Agency when the Regional Administrator has determined that there is no other means of obtaining adequate legal assistance for qualified disaster victims; or
- (4) Any other arrangement the Regional Administrator deems appropriate.

The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall coordinate with appropriate Federal agencies and the appropriate national, state and local bar associations, as necessary, in the implementation of the disaster legal services programs.

(d) In the event it is necessary for FEMA to pay lawyers for the provision of legal services under these regulations, the Regional Administrator, in consultation with State and local bar associations, shall determine the amount of reimbursement due to the lawyers who have provided disaster legal services at the request of the Regional Administrator. At the Regional Administrator's discretion, administrative costs of lawyers providing legal services requested by him or her may also be paid.

(e) Provision of disaster legal services is confined to the securing of benefits under the Act and claims arising out of a major disaster.

(f) Any disaster legal services shall be provided in accordance with subpart A of these regulations, Non-discrimination in disaster assistance.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§§ 206.165-206.170 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.171 Crisis counseling assistance and training.**



(a) *Purpose.* This section establishes the policy, standards, and procedures for implementing section 416 of the Act, Crisis Counseling Assistance and Training. FEMA will look to the Director, National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), as the delegate of the Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS).

(b) *Definitions.* (1) *Assistant Administrator* means the head of the Disaster Assistance Directorate; the official who approves or disapproves a request for assistance under section 416 of the Act, and is the final appeal authority.

(2) *Crisis* means any life situation resulting from a major disaster or its aftermath which so affects the emotional and mental equilibrium of a disaster victim that professional mental health counseling services should be provided to help preclude possible damaging physical or psychological effects.

(3) *Crisis counseling* means the application of individual and group treatment procedures which are designed to ameliorate the mental and emotional crises and their subsequent psychological and behavioral conditions resulting from a major disaster or its aftermath.

(4) *Federal Coordinating Officer (FCO)* means the person appointed by the Administrator or Deputy Administrator to coordinate Federal assistance in an emergency or a major disaster.

(5) *Grantee* means the State mental health agency or other local or private mental health organization which is designated by the Governor to receive funds under section 416 of the Act.

(6) *Immediate services* means those screening or diagnostic techniques which can be applied to meet mental health needs immediately after a major disaster. Funds for immediate services may be provided directly by the Regional Administrator to the State or local mental health agency designated by the Governor, prior to and separate from the regular program application process of crisis counseling assistance.

(7) *Major disaster* means any natural catastrophe (including any hurricane, tornado, storm, high water, winddriven water, tidal wave, tsunami, earthquake, volcanic eruption, landslide, mudslide, snowstorm or drought), or, regardless of cause, any fire, flood, or explosion, in any part of the United States, which in the determination of the President causes damage of sufficient severity and magnitude to warrant major disaster assistance under this Act to supplement the efforts and available resources of States, local governments, and disaster relief organizations in alleviating the damage, loss, hardship, or suffering caused thereby.

(8) *Project Officer* means the person assigned by the Secretary, DHHS, to monitor a crisis counseling program, provide consultation, technical assistance, and guidance, and be the contact point within the DHHS for program matters.

(9) *Regional Administrator* means the director of a regional office of FEMA, or the Disaster Recovery Manager, as the delegate of the Regional Administrator.

(10) *Secretary* means the Secretary of DHHS or his/her delegate.

(11) *State Coordinating Officer (SCO)* means the person appointed by the Governor to act in cooperation with the FCO.

(c) *Agency policy.* (1) It is agency policy to provide crisis counseling services, when required, to victims of a major disaster for the purpose of relieving mental health problems caused or aggravated by a major disaster or its aftermath. Assistance provided under this section is short-term in nature and is provided at no cost to eligible disaster victims.

(2) The Regional Administrator and Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, in fulfilling their responsibilities under this section, shall coordinate with the Secretary.

(3) In meeting the responsibilities under this section, the Secretary or his/her delegate will coordinate with the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(d) *State initiation of the crisis counseling program.* To obtain assistance under this section, the Governor or his/her authorized representative must initiate an assessment of the need for crisis counseling services within 10 days of the date of the major disaster declaration. The purpose of the assessment is to provide an estimate of the size and cost of the program needed and to determine if supplemental Federal assistance is required. The factors of the assessment must include those described in paragraphs (f)(2) (ii) and (iii) and (g)(2) (iii) and (iv) of this section.

(e) *Public or private mental health agency programs.* If the Governor determines during the assessment that because of unusual circumstances or serious conditions within the State or local mental health network, the State cannot carry out the crisis counseling program, he/she may identify a public or private mental health agency or organization to carry out the program or request the Regional Administrator to identify, with the assistance of the Secretary, such an agency or organization. Preference should be given to the extent feasible and practicable to those public and private agencies or organizations which are located in or do business primarily in the major disaster area.

(f) *Immediate services.* If, during the course of the assessment, the State determines that immediate mental health services are required because of the severity and magnitude of the disaster, and if State or local resources are insufficient to provide these services, the State may request and the Regional Administrator, upon determining that State resources are insufficient, may provide funds to the State, separate from the application process for regular program funds (described at paragraph (g) of this section).

(1) The application must be submitted to the Regional Administrator no later than 14 days following the declaration of the major disaster. This application represents the Governor's agreement and/or certification:

(i) That the requirements are beyond the State and local governments' capabilities;

(ii) That the program, if approved, will be implemented according to the plan contained in the application approved



by the Regional Administrator;

(iii) To maintain close coordination with and provide reports to the Regional Administrator; and

(iv) To include mental health disaster planning in the State's emergency plan prepared under title II of the Stafford Act.

(2) The application must include:

(i) The geographical areas within the designated disaster area for which services will be provided;

(ii) An estimate of the number of disaster victims requiring assistance;

(iii) A description of the State and local resources and capabilities, and an explanation of why these resources cannot meet the need;

(iv) A description of response activities from the date of the disaster incident to the date of application;

(v) A plan of services to be provided to meet the identified needs; and

(vi) A detailed budget, showing the cost of proposed services separately from the cost of reimbursement for any eligible services provided prior to application.

(3) *Reporting requirements.* The State shall submit to the Regional Administrator:

(i) A mid-program report only when a regular program grant application is being prepared and submitted. This report will be included as part of the regular program grant application;

(ii) A final program report, a financial status report, and a final voucher 90 days after the last day of immediate services funding.

(4) Immediate services program funding:

(i) Shall not exceed 60 days following the declaration of the major disaster, except when a regular program grant application has been submitted;

(ii) May continue for up to 30 additional days when a regular program grant application has been submitted;

(iii) May be extended by the Regional Administrator, upon written request from the State, documenting extenuating circumstances; and

(iv) May reimburse the State for documented, eligible expenses from the date of the occurrence of the event or incurred in anticipation of and immediately preceding the disaster event which results in a declaration.

(v) Any funds granted pursuant to an immediate services program, paragraph (f) of this section, shall be expended solely for the purposes specified in the approved application and budget, these regulations, the terms and conditions of the award, and the applicable principles prescribed in 44 CFR part 13.

(5) *Appeals.* There are two levels of appeals. If a State submits appeals at both levels, the first appeal must be submitted early enough to allow the latter appeal to be submitted within 60 days following the date of the funding determination on the immediate services program application.

(i) The State may appeal the Regional Administrator's decision. This appeal must be submitted in writing within 60 days of the date of notification of the application decision, but early enough to allow for further appeal if desired. The appeal must include information justifying a reversal of the decision. The Regional Director shall review the material submitted, and after consultation with the Secretary, notify the State, in writing within 15 days of receipt of the appeal, of his/her decision;

(ii) The State may further appeal the Regional Administrator's decision to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. This appeal shall be made in writing within 60 days of the date of the Regional Administrator's notification of the decision on the immediate services application. The appeal must include information justifying a reversal of the decision. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or other impartial person, shall review the material submitted, and after consultation with the Secretary and Regional Administrator, notify the State, in writing, within 15 days of receipt of the appeal, of his/her decision.

(g) *Regular program.* (1) The application must be submitted by the Governor or his/her authorized representative to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate through the Regional Administrator, and simultaneously to the Secretary no later than 60 days following the declaration of the major disaster. This application represents the Governor's agreement and/or certification:

(i) That the requirements are beyond the State and local governments' capabilities;

(ii) That the program, if approved, will be implemented according to the plan contained in the application approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate;

(iii) To maintain close coordination with and provide reports to the Regional Administrator, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, and the Secretary; and

(iv) To include mental health disaster planning in the State's emergency plan prepared under title II of the Stafford Act.



(2) The application must include:

(i) Standard Form 424, Application for Federal Assistance;

(ii) The geographical areas within the designated disaster area for which services will be supplied;

(iii) An estimate of the number of disaster victims requiring assistance. This documentation of need should include the extent of physical, psychological, and social problems observed, the types of mental health problems encountered by victims, and a description of how the estimate was made;

(iv) A description of the State and local resources and capabilities, and an explanation of why these resources cannot meet the need;

(v) A plan of services which must include at a minimum:

(A) The manner in which the program will address the needs of the affected population, including the types of services to be offered, an estimate of the length of time for which mental health services will be required, and the manner in which long-term cases will be handled;

(B) A description of the organizational structure of the program, including designation by the Governor of an individual to serve as administrator of the program. If more than one agency will be delivering services, the plan to coordinate services must also be described;

(C) A description of the training program for project staff, indicating the number of workers needing such training;

(D) A description of the facilities to be utilized, including plans for securing office space if necessary to the project; and

(E) A detailed budget, including identification of the resources the State and local governments will commit to the project, proposed funding levels for the different agencies if more than one is involved, and an estimate of the required Federal contribution.

(3) *Reporting requirements.* The State shall submit the following reports to the Regional Administrator, the Secretary, and the State Coordinating Officer:

(i) Quarterly progress reports, as required by the Regional Administrator or the Secretary, due 30 days after the end of the reporting period. This is consistent with 44 CFR 13.40, Monitoring and Reporting Program Performance;

(ii) A final program report, to be submitted within 90 days after the end of the program period. This is also consistent with 44 CFR 13.40, Monitoring and Reporting Program Performance;

(iii) An accounting of funds, in accordance with 44 CFR 13.41, Financial Reporting, to be submitted with the final program report; and

(iv) Such additional reports as the Regional Administrator, Secretary, or SCO may require.

(4) Regular program funding:

(i) Shall not exceed 9 months from the date of the DHHS notice of grant award, except that upon the request of the State to the Regional Administrator and the Secretary, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may authorize up to 90 days of additional program period because of documented extraordinary circumstances. In limited circumstances, such as disasters of a catastrophic nature, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may extend the program period for more than 90 days where he or she deems it to be in the public interest.

(ii) The amount of the regular program grant award will take into consideration the Secretary's estimate of the sum necessary to carry out the grant purpose.

(iii) Any funds granted pursuant to a regular program, paragraph (g) of this section, shall be expended solely for the purposes specified in the approved application and budget, these regulations, the terms and conditions of the award, and the applicable cost principles prescribed in subpart Q of 45 CFR part 92.

(5) *Appeals.* The State may appeal the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate's decision, in writing, within 60 days of the date of notification of the decision. The appeal must include information justifying a reversal of the decision. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or other impartial person, in consultation with the Secretary and Regional Administrator, shall review the material submitted and notify the State, in writing within 15 days of receipt of the appeal, of his/her decision.

(h) *Eligibility guidelines.* (1) For services. An individual may be eligible for crisis counseling services if he/she was a resident of the designated major disaster areas or was located in the area at the time of the disaster event and if:

(i) He/she has a mental health problem which was caused or aggravated by the major disaster or its aftermath; or

(ii) He/she may benefit from preventive care techniques.

(2) For training. (i) The crisis counseling project staff or consultants to the project are eligible for the specific instruction that may be required to enable them to provide professional mental health crisis counseling to eligible individuals;

(ii) All Federal, State, and local disaster workers responsible for assisting disaster victims are eligible for general instruction designed to enable them to deal effectively and humanely with disaster victims.



(i) *Assignment of responsibilities.* (1) The Regional Administrator shall:

(i) In the case of an immediate services program application, acknowledge receipt of the request, verify (with assistance from the Secretary) that State resources are insufficient, approve or disapprove the State's application, obligate and advance funds for this purpose, review appeals, make a determination (with assistance from the Secretary), and notify the State;

(ii) In the case of a regular program grant application:

(A) Acknowledge receipt of the request;

(B) Request the Secretary to conduct a review to determine the extent to which assistance requested by the Governor or his/her authorized representative is warranted;

(C) Considering the Secretary's recommendation, recommend approval or disapproval of the application for assistance under this section; and forward the Regional Administrator's and Secretary's recommendations and documentation to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate;

(D) Assist the State in preliminary surveys and provide guidance and technical assistance if requested to do so; and

(E) Maintain liaison with the Secretary and look to the Secretary for program oversight and monitoring.

(2) The Secretary shall:

(i) Provide technical assistance, consultation, and guidance to the Regional Administrator in reviewing a State's application, to a State during program implementation and development, and to mental health agencies, as appropriate;

(ii) At the request of the Regional Administrator, conduct a review to verify the extent to which the requested assistance is needed and provide a recommendation on the need for supplementary Federal assistance. The review must include:

(A) A verification of the need for services with an indication of how the verification was conducted;

(B) Identification of the Federal mental health programs in the area, and the extent to which such existing programs can help alleviate the need;

(C) An identification of State, local, and private mental health resources, and the extent to which these resources can assume the workload without assistance under this section and the extent to which supplemental assistance is warranted;

(D) A description of the needs; and

(E) A determination of whether the plan adequately addresses the mental health needs;

(iii) If the application is approved, provide grant assistance to States or the designated public or private entities;

(iv) If the application is approved, monitor the progress of the program and perform program oversight;

(v) Coordinate with, and provide program reports to, the Regional Administrator, and the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate;

(vi) Make the appeal determination, for regular program grants, involving allowable costs and termination for cause as described in paragraph (j)(2) of this section;

(vii) As part of the project monitoring responsibilities, report to the Regional Administrator and Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate at least quarterly on the progress of crisis counseling programs, in a report format jointly agreed upon by the Secretary and FEMA; provide special reports, as requested by the Regional Administrator, FCO, or Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate;

(viii) Require progress reports and other reports from the grantee to facilitate his/her project monitoring responsibilities;

(ix) Properly account for all Federal funds made available to grantees under this section. Submit to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, within 120 days of completion of a program, a final accounting of all expenditures for the program and return to FEMA all excess funds. Attention is called to the reimbursement requirements of this part.

(3) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall:

(i) Approve or disapprove a State's request for assistance based on recommendations of the Regional Administrator and the Secretary;

(ii) Obligate funds and authorize advances of funds to the DHHS;

(iii) Request that the Secretary designate a Project Officer;

(iv) Maintain liaison with the Secretary and Regional Administrator; and

(v) Review and make determinations on appeals, except for regular program appeals involving allowable costs and termination for cause as described in paragraph (j)(2) of this section, and notify the State of the decision.



(j) *Grant awards.* (1) Neither the approval of any application nor the award of any grant commits or obligates the United States in any way to make any additional, supplemental, continuation, or other award with respect to any approved application or portion of any approved application.

(2) Several other regulations of the DHHS apply to grants under this section. These include, but are not limited to:

45 CFR part 16—DHHS grant appeals procedures

42 CFR part 50, subpart D—PHS grant appeals procedures

45 CFR part 74—Administration of grants

45 CFR part 75—Informal grant appeals procedures (indirect cost rates and other cost allocations)

45 CFR part 80—Nondiscrimination under programs receiving Federal assistance through the DHHS (effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964)

45 CFR part 81—Practice and procedure for hearings under part 80

45 CFR part 84—Nondiscrimination on the basis of handicap in federally assisted programs

45 CFR part 86—Nondiscrimination on the basis of sex in federally assisted programs

45 CFR part 91—Nondiscrimination on the basis of age in federally assisted programs

45 CFR part 92—Uniform administrative requirements for grants and cooperative agreements to State and local governments

(k) *Federal audits.* The crisis counseling program is subject to Federal audit. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, the Regional Administrator, the DHS Inspector General, The Secretary, and the Comptroller General of the United States, or their duly authorized representatives, shall have access to any books, documents, papers, and records that pertain to Federal funds, equipment, and supplies received under this section for the purpose of audit and examination.

[54 FR 11615, Mar. 21, 1989, as amended at 68 FR 9900, Mar. 3, 2003]

 [Back to Top](#)

## §§ 206.172-206.180 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.181 Use of gifts and bequests for disaster assistance purposes.

(a) *General.* FEMA sets forth procedures for the use of funds made possible by a bequest of funds from the late Cora C. Brown of Kansas City, Missouri, who left a portion of her estate to the United States for helping victims of natural disasters and other disasters not caused by or attributable to war. FEMA intends to use the funds, and any others that may be bequeathed under this authority, in the manner and under the conditions described below.

(b) *Purposes for awarding funds.* Money from the Cora Brown Fund may only be used to provided for disaster-related needs that have not been or will not be met by governmental agencies or any other organizations which have programs to address such needs; however, the fund is not intended to replace or supersede these programs. For example, if assistance is available from another source, including the Individual and Family Grant program and government-sponsored disaster loan assistance, then money from the Cora Brown Fund will not be available to the applicant for the same purpose. Listed below are the general categories of assistance which can be provided by the Cora Brown Fund:

(1) Disaster-related home repair and rebuilding assistance to families for permanent housing purposes, including site acquisition and development, relocation of residences out of hazardous areas, assistance with costs associated with temporary housing or permanent rehousing (e.g., utility deposits, access, transportation, connection of utilities, etc.);

(2) Disaster-related unmet needs of families who are unable to obtain adequate assistance under the Act or from other sources. Such assistance may include but is not limited to: health and safety measures; evacuation costs; assistance delineated in the Act or other Federal, State, local, or volunteer programs; hazard mitigation or floodplain management purposes; and assistance to self-employed persons (with no employees) to reestablish their businesses; and

(3) Other services which alleviate human suffering and promote the well being of disaster victims. For example, services to the elderly, to children, or to handicapped persons, such as transportation, recreational programs, provision of special ramps, or hospital or home visiting services. The funds may be provided to individual disaster victims, or to benefit a group of disaster victims.

(c) *Conditions for use of the Cora Brown Fund.* (1) The Cora Brown Fund is available only when the President declares that a major disaster or emergency exists under the Act, only in areas designated as eligible for Federal disaster assistance through notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and only at the discretion of the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The fund is limited to the initial endowment plus accrued interest, and this



assistance program will cease when the fund is used up.

(2) A disaster victim normally will receive no more than \$2,000 from this fund in any one declared disaster unless the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate determines that a larger amount is in the best interest of the disaster victim and the Federal Government. Funds to provide service which benefit a group may be awarded in an amount determined by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, based on the Regional Administrator's recommendation.

(3) The fund may not be used in a way that is inconsistent with other federally mandated disaster assistance or insurance programs, or to modify other generally applicable requirements.

(4) Funds awarded to a disaster victim may be provided by FEMA jointly to the disaster victim and to a State or local agency, or volunteer organization, to enable such an agent to assist in providing the approved assistance to an applicant. Example: Repair funds may be provided jointly to an applicant and the Mennonite Disaster Service, who will coordinate the purchase of supplies and provide the labor.

(5) Money from this fund will not duplicate assistance for which a person is eligible from other sources.

(6) In order to comply with the Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973 (Pub. L. 93-234), as amended, any award for acquisition or construction purposes shall carry a requirement that any adequate flood insurance policy be purchased and maintained. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall determine what is adequate based on the purpose of the award.

(7) The fund shall be administered in an equitable and impartial manner without discrimination on the grounds of race, color, religion, national origin, sex, age, or economic status.

(8) Funds awarded to a disaster victim from this fund may be combined with funds from other sources.

(d) *Administrative procedures.* (1) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, shall be responsible for awarding funds and authorizing disbursement.

(2) The Chief Financial Officer shall be responsible for fund accountability and, in coordination with the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, for liaison with the Department of the Treasury concerning the investment of excess money in the fund pursuant to the provisions contained in section 601 of the Act.

(3) Each FEMA Regional Administrator may submit requests to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate on a disaster victim's behalf by providing documentation describing the needs of the disaster victim, a verification of the disaster victim's claim, a record of other assistance which has been or will be available for the same purpose, and his/her recommendation as to the items and the amount. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall review the facts and make a determination. If the award amount is below \$2,000, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may appoint a designee to have approval authority; approval authority of \$2,000 or above shall be retained by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall notify the Chief Financial Officer of a decision for approval, and the Chief Financial Officer shall order a check to be sent to the disaster victim (or jointly to the disaster victim and an assistance organization), through the Regional Administrator. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall also notify the Regional Administrator of the decision, whether for approval or disapproval. The Regional Administrator shall notify the disaster victim in writing, identify any award as assistance from the Cora Brown Fund, and advise the recipient of appeal procedures.

(4) If the award is to be for a service to a group of disaster victims, the Regional Administrator shall submit his/her recommendation and supporting documentation to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate (or his/her designee if the award is below \$2,000), who shall review the information and make a determination. In cases of approval, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall request the Chief Financial Officer to send a check to the intended recipient or provider, as appropriate. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall notify the Regional Administrator of the decision. The Regional Administrator shall notify a representative of the group in writing.

(5) The Chief Financial Officer shall process requests for checks, shall keep records of disbursements and balances in the account, and shall provide the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate with quarterly reports.

(e) *Audits.* The Inspector General of DHS may audit the use of money in this account to determine whether the funds are being administered according to these regulations and whether the financial management of the account is adequate. The Inspector General shall provide his/her findings to the Administrator, for information, comments and appropriate action. A copy shall be provided to the Chief Financial Officer for the same purpose.

[↑ Back to Top](#)

## §§ 206.182-206.190 [Reserved]

[↑ Back to Top](#)

## § 206.191 Duplication of benefits.

(a) *Purpose.* This section establishes the policies for implementing section 312 of the Stafford Act, entitled



Duplication of Benefits. This section relates to assistance for individuals and families.

(b) *Government policy.* (1) Federal agencies providing disaster assistance under the Act or under their own authorities triggered by the Act, shall cooperate to prevent and rectify duplication of benefits, according to the general policy guidance of the Federal Emergency Management Agency. The agencies shall establish appropriate agency policies and procedures to prevent duplication of benefits.

(2) Major disaster and emergency assistance provided to individuals and families under the Act, and comparable disaster assistance provided by States, local governments, and disaster assistance organizations, is not considered as income or a resource when determining eligibility for or benefit levels under federally funded income assistance or resource-tested programs. Examples of federally funded income assistance or resource-tested programs are the food stamp program and welfare assistance programs.

(c) *FEMA policy.* It is FEMA policy:

(1) To prevent duplication of benefits between its own programs and insurance benefits, and between its own programs and other disaster assistance. Assistance under the Act may be provided in instances where the applicant has not received other benefits to which he/she may be entitled by the time of application and if the applicant agrees to repay all duplicated assistance to the agency providing the Federal assistance;

(2) To examine a debt resulting from duplication to determine that the likelihood of collecting the debt and the best interests of the Federal Government justify taking the necessary recovery actions to remedy duplication which has occurred when other assistance has become available;

(3) To assure uniformity in preventing duplication of benefits, by consulting with other Federal agencies and by performing selected quality control reviews, that the other disaster relief agencies establish and follow policies and procedures to prevent and remedy duplication among their programs, other programs, and insurance benefits; and

(4) To coordinate the effort of agencies providing assistance so that each agency understands the prevention and remedial policies of the others and is able to fulfill its own responsibilities regarding duplication of benefits.

(d) *Guidance to prevent duplication of benefits.* (1) Delivery sequence. FEMA provides the following policy and procedural guidance to ensure uniformity in preventing duplication of benefits.

(i) Duplication occurs when an agency has provided assistance which was the primary responsibility of another agency, and the agency with primary responsibility later provides assistance. A delivery sequence establishes the order in which disaster relief agencies and organizations provide assistance. The specific sequence, in accordance with the mandates of the assistance programs, is to be generally followed in the delivery of assistance.

(ii) When the delivery sequence has been disrupted, the disrupting agency is responsible for rectifying the duplication. The delivery sequence pertains to that period of time in the recovery phase when most of the traditional disaster assistance programs are available.

(2) The delivery sequence is, in order of delivery:

(i) Volunteer agencies' emergency assistance (except expendable items such as clothes, linens, and basic kitchenware); insurance (including flood insurance);

(ii) Housing assistance pursuant to section 408 of the Stafford Act.

(iii) Small Business Administration and Farmers Home Administration disaster loans;

(iv) Other Needs assistance, pursuant to section 408 of the Stafford Act or its predecessor program, the Individual and Family Grant Program.

(v) Volunteer agencies' "additional assistance" programs; and

(vi) The "Cora Brown Fund."

(3) Two significant points about the delivery sequence are that:

(i) Each assistance agency should, in turn, offer and be responsible for delivering assistance without regard to duplication with a program later in the sequence; and

(ii) The sequence itself determines what types of assistance can duplicate other assistance (i.e., a Federal program can duplicate insurance benefits, however, insurance benefits cannot duplicate the Federal assistance). An agency's position in the sequence determines the order in which it should provide assistance and what other resources it must consider before it does so.

(4) If following the delivery sequence concept would adversely affect the timely receipt of essential assistance by a disaster victim, an agency may offer assistance which is the primary responsibility of another agency. There also may be cases when an agency (Agency B) delivers assistance which is normally the primary responsibility of another agency (Agency A) because Agency A has, for good cause, denied assistance. After the assistance is delivered, Agency A reopens the case. If the primary response Agency A then provides assistance, that Agency A is responsible for coordinating with Agency B to either:

(i) Assist Agency B in preventing the duplication of benefits, or

(ii) In the case where the disaster victim has refused assistance from Agency A, notify Agency B that it must recover assistance previously provided.



(e) *Program guidance —(1) Programs under the Act vs. other agency assistance.* (i) In making an eligibility determination, the FEMA Regional Administrator, in the case of federally operated programs, or the State, in the case of State operated programs, shall determine whether assistance is the primary responsibility of another agency to provide, according to the delivery sequence; and determine whether that primary response agency can provide assistance in a timely way.

(ii) If it is determined that timely assistance can be provided by the agency with primary responsibility, refrain from providing assistance under the Act. If it is determined that assistance from the agency with primary responsibility will be delayed, assistance under the Act may be provided, but then must be recovered from the applicant when the other assistance becomes available.

(2) *Programs under the Act vs. insurance.* In making an eligibility determination, the FEMA Regional Administrator or State shall:

(i) Remind the applicant about his/her responsibility to pursue an adequate settlement. The applicant must provide information concerning insurance recoveries.

(ii) Determine whether the applicant's insurance settlement will be sufficient to cover the loss or need without disaster assistance; and

(iii) Determine whether insurance benefits (including flood insurance) will be provided in a timely way. Where flood insurance is involved, the Regional Administrator shall coordinate with the Federal Insurance Administration. The purpose of this coordination is to obtain information about flood insurance coverage and settlements.

(3) *Random sample.* Each disaster assistance agency is responsible for preventing and rectifying duplication of benefits under the coordination of the Federal Coordinating Officer (FCO) and the general authority of section 312. To determine whether duplication has occurred and established procedures have been followed, the Regional Administrator shall, within 90 days after the close of the disaster assistance programs application period, for selected disaster declarations, examine on a random sample basis, FEMA's and other government and voluntary agencies' case files and document the findings in writing.

(4) *Duplication when assistance under the Act is involved.* If duplication is discovered, the Regional Administrator shall determine whether the duplicating agency followed its own remedial procedures.

(i) If the duplicating agency followed its procedures and was successful in correcting the duplication, the Regional Administrator will take no further action. If the agency was not successful in correcting the duplication, and the Regional Administrator is satisfied that the duplicating agency followed its remedial procedures, no further action will be taken.

(ii) If the duplicating agency did not follow its duplication of benefits procedures, or the Regional Administrator is not satisfied that the procedures were followed in an acceptable manner, then the Regional Administrator shall provide an opportunity for the agency to take the required corrective action. If the agency cannot fulfill its responsibilities for remedial action, the Regional Administrator shall notify the recipient of the excess assistance, and after examining the debt, if it is determined that the likelihood of collecting the debt and the best interests of the Federal Government justify taking the necessary recovery actions, then take those recovery actions in conjunction with agency representatives for each identified case in the random sample (or larger universe, at the Regional Administrator's discretion).

(5) *Duplication when assistance under other authorities is involved.* When the random sample shows evidence that duplication has occurred and corrective action is required, the Regional Administrator and the FCO shall urge the duplicating agency to follow its own procedures to take corrective action, and shall work with the agency toward that end. Under his/her authority in section 312, the Regional Administrator shall require the duplicating agency to report to him/her on its attempt to correct the duplications identified in the sample.

(f) *Recovering FEMA funds: debt collection.* Funds due to FEMA are recovered in accordance with the Department of Homeland Security's Debt Collection Regulations (6 CFR part 11—Claims).

[54 FR 11615, Mar. 21, 1989, as amended at 67 FR 61460, Sept. 30, 2002; 74 FR 15350, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

§§ 206.192-206.199 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

Subpart G—Public Assistance Project Administration

SOURCE: 55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

§ 206.200 General.

(a) *Purpose.* This subpart establishes procedures for the administration of Public Assistance grants approved under the provisions of the Stafford Act.



(b) *What policies apply to FEMA public assistance grants?* (1) The Stafford Act requires that we deliver eligible assistance as quickly and efficiently as possible consistent with Federal laws and regulations. We expect the Grantee and the subgrantee to adhere to Stafford Act requirements and to these regulations when administering our public assistance grants.

(2) The regulations entitled "Uniform Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments," published at 44 CFR part 13, place requirements on the State in its role as Grantee and gives the Grantee discretion to administer federal programs under their own procedures. We expect the Grantee to:

(i) Inform subgrantees about the status of their applications, including notifications of our approvals of Project Worksheets and our estimates of when we will make payments;

(ii) Pay the full amounts due to subgrantees as soon as practicable after we approve payment, including the State contribution required in the FEMA-State Agreement; and

(iii) Pay the State contribution consistent with State laws.

[55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 63 FR 64425, Nov. 20, 1998; 64 FR 55160, Oct. 12, 1999]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.201 Definitions used in this subpart.**

(a) *Applicant* means a State agency, local government, or eligible private nonprofit organization, as identified in Subpart H of this regulation, submitting an application to the Grantee for assistance under the State's grant.

(b) *Emergency work* means that work which must be done immediately to save lives and to protect improved property and public health and safety, or to avert or lessen the threat of a major disaster.

(c) *Facility* means any publicly or privately owned building, works, system, or equipment, built or manufactured, or an improved and maintained natural feature. Land used for agricultural purposes is not a facility.

(d) *Grant* means an award of financial assistance. The grant award shall be based on the total eligible Federal share of all approved projects.

(e) *Grantee*. Grantee means the government to which a grant is awarded, and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document. Generally, except as provided in § 206.202(f), the State for which the emergency or major disaster is declared is the grantee. However, an Indian Tribal government may choose to be a grantee, or it may act as a subgrantee under the State. If an Indian Tribal government is the grantee, it will assume the responsibilities of the "grantee" or "State" as described in this part with respect to administration of the Public Assistance program.

(f) *Hazard mitigation* means any cost effective measure which will reduce the potential for damage to a facility from a disaster event.

(g) *Host-State*. A State or Indian Tribal government that by agreement with FEMA provides sheltering and/or evacuation support to evacuees from an impact-State. An Indian Tribal government may also be referred to as a "Host-Tribe."

(h) *Impact-State*. The State for which the President has declared an emergency or major disaster and that, due to a need to evacuate and/or shelter affected individuals outside the State, requests such assistance from FEMA pursuant to § 206.208.

(i) *Indian Tribal government* means any federally recognized governing body of an Indian or Alaska Native Tribe, band, nation, pueblo, village, or community that the Secretary of the Interior acknowledges to exist as an Indian Tribe under the Federally Recognized Tribe List Act of 1994, 25 U.S.C. 479a. This does not include Alaska Native corporations, the ownership of which is vested in private individuals.

(j) *Permanent work* means that restorative work that must be performed through repairs or replacement, to restore an eligible facility on the basis of its predisaster design and current applicable standards.

(k) *Predisaster design* means the size or capacity of a facility as originally designed and constructed or subsequently modified by changes or additions to the original design. It does not mean the capacity at which the facility was being used at the time the major disaster occurred if different from the most recent designed capacity.

(l) A *project* is a logical grouping of work required as a result of the declared major disaster or emergency. The scope of work and cost estimate for a project are documented on a Project Worksheet (FEMA Form 90-91).

(1) We must approve a scope of eligible work and an itemized cost estimate before funding a project.

(2) A project may include eligible work at several sites.

(m) *Project approval* means the process in which the Regional Administrator, or designee, reviews and signs an approval of work and costs on a Project Worksheet or on a batch of Project Worksheets. Such approval is also an obligation of funds to the Grantee.

(n) *Subgrant* means an award of financial assistance under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee.

(o) *Subgrantee* means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is



accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.

[55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 63 FR 64425, Nov. 20, 1998; 64 FR 55160, Oct. 12, 1999; 74 FR 60213, Nov. 20, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

## **§ 206.202 Application procedures.**

(a) *General.* This section describes the policies and procedures that we use to process public assistance grants to States. Under this section the State is the Grantee. As Grantee you are responsible for processing subgrants to applicants under 44 CFR parts 13 and 206, and your own policies and procedures.

(b) *Grantee.* You are the grant administrator for all funds provided under the Public Assistance grant program. Your responsibilities under this section include:

- (1) Providing technical advice and assistance to eligible subgrantees;
- (2) Providing State support for project identification activities to include small and large project formulation and the validation of small projects;
- (3) Ensuring that all potential applicants are aware of available public assistance; and
- (4) Submitting documents necessary for the award of grants.

(c) *Request for Public Assistance (Request).* The Grantee must send a completed *Request* (FEMA Form 90-49) to the Regional Administrator for each applicant who requests public assistance. You must send *Requests* to the Regional Administrator within 30 days after designation of the area where the damage occurred.

(d) *Project Worksheets.* (1) An applicant's authorized local representative is responsible for representing the applicant and for ensuring that the applicant has identified all eligible work and submitted all costs for disaster-related damages for funding.

(i) We or the applicant, assisted by the State as appropriate, will prepare a Project Worksheet (FEMA Form 90-91) for each project. The Project Worksheet must identify the eligible scope of work and must include a quantitative estimate for the eligible work.

(ii) The applicant will have 60 days following its first substantive meeting with us to identify and to report damage to us.

(2) When the estimated cost of work on a project is less than \$1,000, that work is not eligible and we will not approve a Project Worksheet for the project. Periodically we will review this minimum approval amount for a Project Worksheet and, if needed, will adjust the amount by regulation.

(e) *Grant approval.* (1) Before we obligate any funds to the State, the Grantee must complete and send to the Regional Administrator a Standard Form (SF) 424, Application for Federal Assistance, and a SF 424D, Assurances for Construction Programs. After we receive the SF 424 and SF 424D, the Regional Administrator will obligate funds to the Grantee based on the approved Project Worksheets. The Grantee will then approve subgrants based on the Project Worksheets approved for each applicant.

(2) When the applicant submits the Project Worksheets, we will have 45 days to obligate Federal funds. If we have a delay beyond 45 days we will explain the delay to the Grantee.

(f) *Exceptions.* The following are exceptions to the procedures and time limitations outlined in this section.

(1) *Host-State Evacuation and/or Sheltering.* (i) *General.* A grant to a host-State for sheltering and/or evacuation support is available under this section when an impact-State requests direct Federal assistance for sheltering and/or evacuation support pursuant to § 206.208. To receive this grant, a host-State must enter into a FEMA-Host-State Agreement, amend its State Administrative Plan pursuant to § 206.207, and submit a Standard Form SF424 *Application for Federal Assistance* directly to FEMA to apply for reimbursement of eligible costs for evacuating and/or sheltering individuals from an impact-State. Upon award, the host-State assumes the responsibilities of the "grantee" or "State" under this part with respect to its grant award.

(ii) *Force Account Labor Costs.* For the performance of eligible evacuation and sheltering support under sections 403 or 502 of the Stafford Act, the straight-time salaries and benefits of a host-State's permanently employed personnel are eligible for reimbursement. This is an exception to § 206.228(a)(2).

(2) *Time limitations.* The Regional Administrator may extend the time limitations shown in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section when the Grantees justifies and makes a request in writing. The justification must be based on extenuating circumstances beyond the grantee's or subgrantee's control.

[64 FR 55160, Oct. 12, 1999, as amended at 74 FR 15350, Apr. 3, 2009; 74 FR 60213, Nov. 20, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

## **§ 206.203 Federal grant assistance.**



- (a) *General.* This section describes the types and extent of Federal funding available under State disaster assistance grants, as well as limitations and special procedures applicable to each.
- (b) *Cost sharing.* All projects approved under State disaster assistance grants will be subject to the cost sharing provisions established in the FEMA-State Agreement and the Stafford Act.
- (c) *Project funding* —(1) *Large projects.* When the approved estimate of eligible costs for an individual project is \$35,000 or greater, Federal funding shall equal the Federal share of the actual eligible costs documented by a grantee. Such \$35,000 amount shall be adjusted annually to reflect changes in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Department of Labor.
- (2) *Small projects.* When the approved estimate of costs for an individual project is less than \$35,000, Federal funding shall equal the Federal share of the approved estimate of eligible costs. Such \$35,000 amount shall be adjusted annually as indicated in paragraph (c)(1) of this section.
- (d) *Funding options* —(1) *Improved projects.* If a subgrantee desires to make improvements, but still restore the predisaster function of a damaged facility, the Grantee's approval must be obtained. Federal funding for such improved projects shall be limited to the Federal share of the approved estimate of eligible costs.
- (2) *Alternate projects.* In any case where a subgrantee determines that the public welfare would not be best served by restoring a damaged public facility or the function of that facility, the Grantee may request that the Regional Administrator approve an alternate project.
- (i) The alternate project option may be taken only on permanent restorative work.
- (ii) Federal funding for alternate projects for damaged public facilities will be 90 percent of the Federal share of the Federal estimate of the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing the facility and of management expenses.
- (iii) Federal funding for alternate projects for damaged private nonprofit facilities will be 75 percent of the Federal share of the Federal estimate of the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing the facility and of management expenses.
- (iv) Funds contributed for alternate projects may be used to repair or expand other selected public facilities, to construct new facilities, or to fund hazard mitigation measures. These funds may not be used to pay the nonFederal share of any project, nor for any operating expense.
- (v) Prior to the start of construction of any alternate project the Grantee shall submit for approval by the Regional Administrator the following: a description of the proposed alternate project(s); a schedule of work; and the projected cost of the project(s). The Grantee shall also provide the necessary assurances to document compliance with special requirements, including, but not limited to floodplain management, environmental assessment, hazard mitigation, protection of wetlands, and insurance.

[55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 66 FR 22444, May 4, 2001; 73 FR 20551, Apr. 16, 2008]

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.204 Project performance.**

- (a) *General.* This section describes the policies and procedures applicable during the performance of eligible work.
- (b) *Advances of funds.* Advances of funds will be made in accordance with 44 CFR 13.21, Payment.
- (c) *Time limitations for completion of work* —(1) *Deadlines.* The project completion deadlines shown below are set from the date that a major disaster or emergency is declared and apply to all projects approved under State disaster assistance grants.

**COMPLETION DEADLINES**

Type of work	Months
Debris clearance	6
Emergency work	6
Permanent work	18

- (2) *Exceptions.* (i) The Grantee may impose lesser deadlines for the completion of work under paragraph (c)(1) of this section if considered appropriate.
- (ii) Based on extenuating circumstances or unusual project requirements beyond the control of the subgrantee, the Grantee may extend the deadlines under paragraph (c)(1) of this section for an additional 6 months for debris clearance and emergency work and an additional 30 months, on a project by project basis for permanent work.
- (d) *Requests for time extensions.* Requests for time extensions beyond the Grantee's authority shall be submitted by the Grantee to the Regional Administrator and shall include the following:
- (1) The dates and provisions of all previous time extensions on the project; and
- (2) A detailed justification for the delay and a projected completion date. The Regional Administrator shall review



the request and make a determination. The Grantee shall be notified of the Regional Administrator's determination in writing. If the Regional Administrator approves the request, the letter shall reflect the approved completion date and any other requirements the Regional Administrator may determine necessary to ensure that the new completion date is met. If the Regional Administrator denies the time extension request, the grantee may, upon completion of the project, be reimbursed for eligible project costs incurred only up to the latest approved completion date. If the project is not completed, no Federal funding will be provided for that project.

(e) *Cost Overruns.* (1) During the execution of approved work a subgrantee may find that the actual project costs exceed the approved Project Worksheet estimates. Such cost overruns normally fall into the following three categories:

- (i) Variations in unit prices;
- (ii) Change in the scope of eligible work; or
- (iii) Delays in timely starts or completion of eligible work.

(2) The subgrantee must evaluate each cost overrun and, when justified, submit a request for additional funding through the Grantee to the Regional Administrator for a final determination. All requests for the Regional Administrator's approval will contain sufficient documentation to support the eligibility of all claimed work and costs. The Grantee must include a written recommendation when forwarding the request. The Regional Administrator will notify the Grantee in writing of the final determination. FEMA will not normally review an overrun for an individual small project. The normal procedure for small projects will be that when a subgrantee discovers a significant overrun related to the total final cost for all small projects, the subgrantee may submit an appeal for additional funding in accordance with § 206.206, within 60 days following the completion of all its small projects.

(f) *Progress reports.* Progress reports will be submitted by the Grantee to the Regional Administrator quarterly. The Regional Administrator and Grantee shall negotiate the date for submission of the first report. Such reports will describe the status of those projects on which a final payment of the Federal share has not been made to the grantee and outline any problems or circumstances expected to result in noncompliance with the approved grant conditions.

[55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990; 55 FR 5458, Feb. 15, 1990, as amended at 64 FR 55161, Oct. 12, 1999]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.205 Payment of claims.**

(a) *Small Projects.* Final payment of the Federal share of these projects will be made to the Grantee upon approval of the Project Worksheet. The Grantee will make payment of the Federal share to the subgrantee as soon as practicable after Federal approval of funding. Before the closeout of the disaster contract, the Grantee must certify that all such projects were completed in accordance with FEMA approvals and that the State contribution to the non-Federal share, as specified in the FEMA-State Agreement, has been paid to each subgrantee. Such certification is not required to specify the amount spent by a subgrantee on small projects. The Federal payment for small projects shall not be reduced if all of the approved funds are not spent to complete a project. However, failure to complete a project may require that the Federal payment be refunded.

(b) *Large projects.* (1) The Grantee shall make an accounting to the Regional Administrator of eligible costs for each approved large project. In submitting the accounting the Grantee shall certify that reported costs were incurred in the performance of eligible work, that the approved work was completed, that the project is in compliance with the provisions of the FEMA-State Agreement, and that payments for that project have been made in accordance with 44 CFR 13.21, Payments. Each large project shall be submitted as soon as practicable after the subgrantee has completed the approved work and requested payment.

(2) The Regional Administrator shall review the accounting to determine the eligible amount of reimbursement for each large project and approve eligible costs. If a discrepancy between reported costs and approved funding exists, the Regional Administrator may conduct field reviews to gather additional information. If discrepancies in the claim cannot be resolved through a field review, a Federal audit may be conducted. If the Regional Administrator determines that eligible costs exceed the initial approval, he/she will obligate additional funds as necessary.

[55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 64 FR 55161, Oct. 12, 1999]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.206 Appeals.**

An eligible applicant, subgrantee, or grantee may appeal any determination previously made related to an application for or the provision of Federal assistance according to the procedures below.

(a) *Format and Content.* The applicant or subgrantee will make the appeal in writing through the grantee to the Regional Administrator. The grantee shall review and evaluate all subgrantee appeals before submission to the Regional Administrator. The grantee may make grantee-related appeals to the Regional Administrator. The appeal shall contain documented justification supporting the appellant's position, specifying the monetary figure in dispute and the provisions in Federal law, regulation, or policy with which the appellant believes the initial action was inconsistent.

(b) *Levels of Appeal.* (1) The Regional Administrator will consider first appeals for public assistance-related decisions under subparts A through L of this part.



(2) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate will consider appeals of the Regional Administrator's decision on any first appeal under paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(c) *Time Limits.* (1) Appellants must file appeals within 60 days after receipt of a notice of the action that is being appealed.

(2) The grantee will review and forward appeals from an applicant or subgrantee, with a written recommendation, to the Regional Administrator within 60 days of receipt.

(3) Within 90 days following receipt of an appeal, the Regional Administrator (for first appeals) or Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate (for second appeals) will notify the grantee in writing of the disposition of the appeal or of the need for additional information. A request by the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate for additional information will include a date by which the information must be provided. Within 90 days following the receipt of the requested additional information or following expiration of the period for providing the information, the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate will notify the grantee in writing of the disposition of the appeal. If the decision is to grant the appeal, the Regional Administrator will take appropriate implementing action.

(d) *Technical Advice.* In appeals involving highly technical issues, the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may, at his or her discretion, submit the appeal to an independent scientific or technical person or group having expertise in the subject matter of the appeal for advice or recommendation. The period for this technical review may be in addition to other allotted time periods. Within 90 days of receipt of the report, the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate will notify the grantee in writing of the disposition of the appeal.

(e) *Transition.* (1) This rule is effective for all appeals pending on and appeals from decisions issued on or after May 8, 1998, except as provided in paragraph (e)(2) of this section.

(2) Appeals pending from a decision of an Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate before May 8, 1998 may be appealed to the Administrator in accordance with 44 CFR 206.440 as it existed before May 8, 1998 (44 CFR, revised as of October 1, 1997).

(3) The decision of the FEMA official at the next higher appeal level shall be the final administrative decision of FEMA.

[63 FR 17110, Apr. 8, 1998; 63 FR 24970, May 6, 1998]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.207 Administrative and audit requirements.

(a) *General.* Uniform administrative requirements which are set forth in 44 CFR part 13 apply to all disaster assistance grants and subgrants.

(b) *State administrative plan.* (1) The State shall develop a plan for the administration of the Public Assistance program that includes at a minimum, the items listed below:

- (i) The designation of the State agency or agencies which will have the responsibility for program administration.
- (ii) The identification of staffing functions in the Public Assistance program, the sources of staff to fill these functions, and the management and oversight responsibilities of each.
- (iii) Procedures for:
  - (A) Notifying potential applicants of the availability of the program;
  - (B) Conducting briefings for potential applicants and application procedures, program eligibility guidance and program deadlines;
  - (C) Assisting FEMA in determining applicant eligibility;
  - (D) Participating with FEMA in conducting damage surveys to serve as a basis for obligations of funds to subgrantees;
  - (E) Participating with FEMA in the establishment of hazard mitigation and insurance requirements;
  - (F) Processing appeal requests, requests for time extensions and requests for approval of overruns, and for processing appeals of grantee decisions;
  - (G) Compliance with the administrative requirements of 44 CFR parts 13 and 206;
  - (H) Compliance with the audit requirements of 44 CFR part 13;
  - (I) Processing requests for advances of funds and reimbursement; and
  - (J) Determining staffing and budgeting requirements necessary for proper program management.

(K) Determining the reasonable percentage or amount of pass-through funds for management costs provided under 44 CFR part 207 that the grantee will make available to subgrantees, and the basis, criteria, or formula for determining



the subgrantee percentage or amount.

(2) The Grantee may request the Regional Administrator to provide technical assistance in the preparation of such administrative plan.

(3) In accordance with the Interim Rule published March 21, 1989, the Grantee was to have submitted an administrative plan to the RD for approval by September 18, 1989. An approved plan must be on file with FEMA before grants will be approved in a future major disaster. Thereafter, the Grantee shall submit a revised plan to the Regional Administrator annually. In each disaster for which Public Assistance is included, the Regional Administrator shall request the Grantee to prepare any amendments required to meet current policy guidance.

(4) The Grantee shall ensure that the approved administrative plan is incorporated into the State emergency plan.

(c) *Audit* —(1) *Nonfederal audit*. For grantees or subgrantees, requirements for nonfederal audit are contained in FEMA regulations at 44 CFR part 13 or OMB Circular A-110 as appropriate.

(2) *Federal audit*. In accordance with 44 CFR part 13, FEMA may elect to conduct a Federal audit of the disaster assistance grant or any of the subgrants.

[55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990; 55 FR 5458, Feb. 15, 1990, as amended at 72 FR 57875, Oct. 11, 2007; 74 FR 15350, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

## **§ 206.208 Direct Federal assistance.**

(a) *General*. When the State and local government lack the capability to perform or to contract for eligible emergency work and/or debris removal, under sections 402(1) and (4), 403, 407, 502(a)(1), (5) and (7) of the Act, the Grantee may request that the work be accomplished by a Federal agency. Such assistance is subject to the cost sharing provisions outlined in § 206.203(b) of this subpart. Direct Federal assistance is also subject to the eligibility criteria contained in Subpart H of these regulations. FEMA will reimburse other Federal agencies in accordance with Subpart A of these regulations.

(b) *Requests for assistance*. All requests for direct Federal assistance shall be submitted by the Grantee to the Regional Administrator and shall include:

(1) A written agreement that the State will:

(i) Provide without cost to the United States all lands, easements and rights-of-ways necessary to accomplish the approved work;

(ii) Hold and save the United States free from damages due to the requested work, and shall indemnify the Federal Government against any claims arising from such work;

(iii) Provide reimbursement to FEMA for the nonFederal share of the cost of such work in accordance with the provisions of the FEMA-State Agreement; and

(iv) Assist the performing Federal agency in all support and local jurisdictional matters.

(2) A statement as to the reasons the State and the local government cannot perform or contract for performance of the requested work.

(3) A written agreement from an eligible applicant that such applicant will be responsible for the items in subparagraph (b)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section, in the event that a State is legally unable to provide the written agreement.

(c) *Implementation*. (1) If the Regional Administrator approves the request, a mission assignment will be issued to the appropriate Federal agency. The mission assignment letter to the agency will define the scope of eligible work, the estimated cost of the eligible work and the billing period frequency. The Federal agency must not exceed the approved funding limit without the authorization of the Regional Administrator.

(2) If all or any part of the requested work falls within the statutory authority of another Federal agency, the Regional Administrator shall not approve that portion of the work. In such case, the unapproved portion of the request will be referred to the appropriate agency for action.

(3) If an impact-State requests assistance in providing evacuation and sheltering support outside an impact-State, FEMA may directly reimburse a host-State for such eligible costs through a grant to a host-State under an impact-State's declaration, consistent with § 206.202(f)(1). FEMA may award a grant to a host-State when FEMA determines that a host-State has sufficient capability to meet some or all of the sheltering and/or evacuation needs of an impact-State, and a host-State agrees in writing to provide such support to an impact-State.

(d) *Time limitation*. The time limitation for completion of work by a Federal agency under a mission assignment is 60 days after the President's declaration. Based on extenuating circumstances or unusual project requirements, the Regional Administrator may extend this time limitation.

(e) *Project management*. (1) The performing Federal agency shall ensure that the work is completed in accordance with the Regional Administrator's approved scope of work, costs and time limitations. The performing Federal agency shall also keep the Regional Administrator and Grantee advised of work progress and other project developments. It is the responsibility of the performing Federal agency to ensure compliance with applicable Federal, State and local legal



requirements. A final inspection report will be completed upon termination of all direct Federal assistance work. Final inspection reports shall be signed by a representative of the performing Federal agency and the State. Once the final eligible cost is determined (including Federal agency overhead), the State will be billed for the non-Federal share of the mission assignment in accordance with the cost sharing provisions of the FEMA-State Agreement.

(2) Pursuant to the agreements provided in the request for assistance the Grantee shall assist the performing Federal agency in all State and local jurisdictional matters. These matters include securing local building permits and rights of entry, control of traffic and pedestrians, and compliance with local building ordinances.

[55 FR 2304, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 64 FR 55161, Oct. 12, 1999; 74 FR 60214, Nov. 20, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.209 Arbitration for Public Assistance determinations related to Hurricanes Katrina and Rita (Major disaster declarations DR-1603, DR-1604, DR-1605, DR-1606, and DR-1607).**

(a) *Scope.* Pursuant to section 601 of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, Public Law 111-5, this section establishes procedures for arbitration to resolve disputed Public Assistance applications under the following major disaster declarations: DR-1603, DR-1604, DR-1605, DR-1606, and DR-1607.

(b) *Applicability.* An applicant or subgrantee (hereinafter “applicant” for purposes of this section) may request arbitration of a determination made by FEMA on an application for Public Assistance, provided that the total amount of the project is greater than \$500,000, and provided that:

- (1) the applicant is eligible to file an appeal under § 206.206; or
- (2) the applicant had a first or second level appeal pending with FEMA pursuant to § 206.206 on or after February 17, 2009.

(c) *Governing rules.* An applicant that elects arbitration agrees to abide by this section and applicable guidance. The arbitration will be conducted pursuant to procedure established by the arbitration panel.

(d) *Limitations* —(1) *Election of remedies.* A request for arbitration under this section is in lieu of filing or continuing an appeal under § 206.206.

(2) *Final agency action under § 206.206.* Arbitration is not available for any matter that obtained final agency action by FEMA pursuant to § 206.206 prior to February 17, 2009. Arbitration is not available for determinations for which the applicant failed to file a timely appeal under the provisions of § 206.206 prior to August 31, 2009, or for determinations which received a decision on a second appeal from FEMA prior to February 17, 2009.

(e) *Request for arbitration* —(1) *Content of request.* The request for arbitration must contain a written statement and all documentation supporting the position of the applicant, the disaster number, and the name and address of the applicant’s authorized representative or counsel.

(2) *Submission by the applicant to the Grantee, the FEMA Regional Administrator, and the arbitration administrator.* An applicant under paragraph (b)(1) of this section must submit its request for arbitration in writing simultaneously to the Grantee, the FEMA Regional Administrator, and the arbitration administrator within 30 calendar days after receipt of notice of the determination that is the subject of the arbitration request or by September 30, 2009, whichever is later. An applicant under paragraph (b)(2) of this section must make a request for arbitration in writing and, if FEMA has not issued a decision on the appeal, submit a withdrawal of the pending appeal, simultaneously to the Grantee, the FEMA Regional Administrator, and the arbitration administrator by October 30, 2009.

(3) *Submission by the Grantee to the arbitration administrator and FEMA.* Within 15 calendar days of receipt of the applicant’s request for arbitration, the Grantee must forward the name and address of the Grantee’s authorized representative or counsel, and may forward a written recommendation in support or opposition to the applicant’s request for arbitration, simultaneously to the FEMA Regional Administrator, the arbitration administrator, and the applicant.

(4) *Submission of FEMA’s response.* FEMA will submit a memorandum in support of its position, a copy of the Project Worksheet(s), and any other supporting information, as well as the name and address of its authorized representative or counsel, simultaneously to the arbitration administrator, the Grantee, and the applicant, within 30 calendar days of receipt of the applicant’s request for arbitration.

(5) *Process for submissions.* When submitting a request for arbitration, the applicant should describe its claim with sufficient detail so that the circumstances of the dispute are clear to the arbitration panel. All papers, notices, or other documents submitted to the arbitration administrator under this section by the applicant, the Grantee, or FEMA will be served on each party’s authorized representative or counsel. The submitting party will make such service by courier or overnight delivery service (such as Federal Express, DHL, United Parcel Service, or the United States Postal Service overnight delivery), addressed to the party, representative, or counsel, as applicable, at its last known address.

(f) *Selection of arbitration panel.* The arbitration administrator will select the arbitration panel for arbitration and notify the applicant, FEMA, and the Grantee of the names and identities of the arbitrators selected for the panel.

(g) *Preliminary conference.* The arbitration panel will hold a preliminary conference with the parties and/or representatives of the parties within 10 business days of the panel’s receipt of FEMA’s response to the request for arbitration. The panel and the parties will discuss the future conduct of the arbitration, including clarification of the disputed issues, request for disqualification of an arbitrator (if applicable), and any other preliminary matters. The date and place of any oral hearing will be set at the preliminary conference. The preliminary conference will be conducted by



telephone.

(h) *Hearing* —(1) *Request for hearing*. The panel will provide the applicant and FEMA with an opportunity to make an oral presentation on the substance of the applicant's claim in person, by telephone conference, or other means during which all the parties may simultaneously hear all other participants. If the applicant or FEMA would like to request an oral hearing, the request must be made no later than the preliminary conference.

(2) *Location of hearing*. If an in-person hearing is authorized, it will be held at a hearing facility of the arbitration panel's choosing.

(3) *Conduct of hearing*. Each party may present its position through oral presentations by individuals designated in advance of the hearing. These presentations may reference documents submitted pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section; the parties may not provide additional paper submissions at the hearing. If the panel deems it appropriate or necessary, it may request additional written materials from either or both parties or seek the advice or expertise of independent scientific or technical subject matter experts.

(4) *Closing of hearing*. The panel will inquire of each party whether it has any further argument. When satisfied that the record is complete, the panel will declare the hearing closed, unless a post-hearing submission of additional information or a memorandum of law is to be provided in accordance with this paragraph. The hearing will be declared closed as of the date set by the panel for the submission of the additional information or the memorandum of law.

(5) *Time limits*. The panel will endeavor to hold the hearing within 60 calendar days of the preliminary conference.

(6) *Postponement*. The arbitration panel may postpone a hearing upon agreement of the parties, or upon request of a party for good cause shown. Within 10 business days of the postponement, the arbitration panel will notify the parties of the rescheduled date of the hearing.

(7) *Record of the hearing*. There will be no recording of the hearing, unless a party specifically requests and arranges for such recording at its own expense.

(8) *Post-hearing submission of additional information*. A party may file with the arbitration panel additional information or a memorandum of law after the hearing upon the arbitration panel's request or upon the request of one of the parties with the panel's consent. The panel will set the time for submission of the additional information or the memorandum of law.

(9) *Reopening of hearing*. The hearing may be reopened on the panel's initiative under compelling circumstances at any time before the decision is made.

(i) *Review by the arbitration panel*. (1) *Determination of timeliness*. Upon notification by FEMA, or on its own initiative, the arbitration panel will determine whether the applicant timely filed a request for arbitration.

(2) *Substantive review*. The arbitration panel will consider all relevant written materials provided by the applicant, the Grantee, and FEMA, as well as oral presentations, if any. If the panel deems it appropriate or necessary, it may request additional written materials from either or both parties or seek the advice or expertise of independent scientific or technical subject matter experts.

(j) *Ex parte communications*. No party and no one acting on behalf of any party will engage in ex parte communications with a member of the arbitration panel. If a party or someone acting on behalf of any party engages in ex parte communications with a member of the arbitration panel, the party that engaged in such communication will provide a summary or a transcript of the entire communication to the other parties.

(k) *Decision* —(1) *Time limits*. The panel will make every effort to issue a written decision within 60 calendar days after the panel declares the hearing closed pursuant to paragraph (h)(4) of this section, or, if a hearing was not requested, within 60 calendar days following the receipt of FEMA's response to the request for arbitration. A decision of the panel may take longer than 60 calendar days if the arbitration involves a highly technical or complex matter.

(2) *Form and content*. The decision of the panel will be in writing and signed by each member of the panel. The panel will issue a reasoned decision that includes a brief and informal discussion of the factual and legal basis for the decision.

(3) *Finality of decision*. A decision of the majority of the panel shall constitute a final decision, binding on all parties. Final decisions are not subject to further administrative review. Final decisions are not subject to judicial review, except as permitted by 9 U.S.C. 10.

(4) *Delivery of decision*. Notice and delivery of the decision will be by facsimile or other electronic means and by regular mail to each party or its authorized representative or counsel.

(l) *Costs*. FEMA will pay the fees associated with the arbitration panel, the costs of any expert retained by the panel, and the arbitration facility costs, if any. The expenses for each party, including attorney's fees, representative fees, copying costs, costs associated with attending any hearing, or any other fees not listed in this paragraph will be paid by the party incurring such costs.

(m) *Guidance*. FEMA may issue separate guidance as necessary to supplement this section.

[FR 44767, Aug. 31, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)



**§§ 206.210-206.219 [Reserved]**[Back to Top](#)**Subpart H—Public Assistance Eligibility**

SOURCE: 55 FR 2307, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

[Back to Top](#)**§ 206.220 General.**

This subpart provides policies and procedures for determinations of eligibility of applicants for public assistance, eligibility of work, and eligibility of costs for assistance under sections 402, 403, 406, 407, 418, 419, 421(d), 502, and 503 of the Stafford Act. Assistance under this subpart must also conform to requirements of 44 CFR part 201, Mitigation Planning, and 44 CFR part 206, subparts G—Public Assistance Project Administration, I—Public Assistance Insurance Requirements, J—Coastal Barrier Resources Act, and M—Minimum Standards. Regulations under 44 CFR part 9—Floodplain Management and 44 CFR part 10—Environmental Considerations, also apply to this assistance.

[67 FR 8854, Feb. 26, 2002]

[Back to Top](#)**§ 206.221 Definitions.**

(a) *Educational institution* means:

- (1) Any elementary school as defined by section 801(c) of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965; or
- (2) Any secondary school as defined by section 801(h) of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965; or
- (3) Any institution of higher education as defined by section 1201 of the Higher Education Act of 1965.

(b) *Force account* means an applicant's own labor forces and equipment.

(c) *Immediate threat* means the threat of additional damage or destruction from an event which can reasonably be expected to occur within five years.

(d) *Improved property* means a structure, facility or item of equipment which was built, constructed or manufactured. Land used for agricultural purposes is not improved property.

(e) *Private nonprofit facility* means any private nonprofit educational, utility, emergency, medical, or custodial care facility, including a facility for the aged or disabled, and other facility providing essential governmental type services to the general public, and such facilities on Indian reservations. Further definition is as follows:

(1) *Educational facilities* means classrooms plus related supplies, equipment, machinery, and utilities of an educational institution necessary or appropriate for instructional, administrative, and support purposes, but does not include buildings, structures and related items used primarily for religious purposes or instruction.

(2) *Utility* means buildings, structures, or systems of energy, communication, water supply, sewage collection and treatment, or other similar public service facilities.

(3) *Irrigation facility* means those facilities that provide water for essential services of a governmental nature to the general public. Irrigation facilities include water for fire suppression, generating and supplying electricity, and drinking water supply; they do not include water for agricultural purposes.

(4) *Emergency facility* means those buildings, structures, equipment, or systems used to provide emergency services, such as fire protection, ambulance, or rescue, to the general public, including the administrative and support facilities essential to the operation of such emergency facilities even if not contiguous.

(5) *Medical facility* means any hospital, outpatient facility, rehabilitation facility, or facility for long term care as such terms are defined in section 645 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 2910) and any similar facility offering diagnosis or treatment of mental or physical injury or disease, including the administrative and support facilities essential to the operation of such medical facilities even if not contiguous.

(6) *Custodial care facility* means those buildings, structures, or systems including those for essential administration and support, which are used to provide institutional care for persons who require close supervision and some physical constraints on their daily activities for their self-protection, but do not require day-to-day medical care.

(7) *Other essential governmental service facility* means museums, zoos, community centers, libraries, homeless shelters, senior citizen centers, rehabilitation facilities, shelter workshops and facilities which provide health and safety services of a governmental nature. All such facilities must be open to the general public.

(f) *Private nonprofit organization* means any nongovernmental agency or entity that currently has:



(1) An effective ruling letter from the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, granting tax exemption under sections 501(c), (d), or (e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, or

(2) Satisfactory evidence from the State that the nonrevenue producing organization or entity is a nonprofit one organized or doing business under State law.

(g) *Public entity* means an organization formed for a public purpose whose direction and funding are provided by one or more political subdivisions of the State.

(h) *Public facility* means the following facilities owned by a State or local government: any flood control, navigation, irrigation, reclamation, public power, sewage treatment and collection, water supply and distribution, watershed development, or airport facility; any non-Federal aid, street, road, or highway; and any other public building, structure, or system, including those used for educational, recreational, or cultural purposes; or any park.

(i) *Standards* means codes, specifications or standards required for the construction of facilities.

[55 FR 2307, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 58 FR 47994, Sept. 14, 1993; 66 FR 22445, May 4, 2001]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.222 Applicant eligibility.

The following entities are eligible to apply for assistance under the State public assistance grant:

(a) State and local governments.

(b) Private non-profit organizations or institutions which own or operate a private nonprofit facility as defined in § 205.221(e).

(c) Indian tribes or authorized tribal organizations and Alaska Native villages or organizations, but not Alaska Native Corporations, the ownership of which is vested in private individuals.

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.223 General work eligibility.

(a) *General*. To be eligible for financial assistance, an item of work must:

(1) Be required as the result of the emergency or major disaster event;

(2) Be located within the designated area of a major disaster or emergency declaration, except that sheltering and evacuation activities may be located outside the designated area; and

(3) Be the legal responsibility of an eligible applicant.

(b) *Private nonprofit facilities*. To be eligible, all private nonprofit facilities must be owned and operated by an organization meeting the definition of a private nonprofit organization [see § 206.221(f)].

(c) *Public entities*. Facilities belonging to a public entity may be eligible for assistance when the application is submitted through the State or a political subdivision of the State.

(d) *Facilities serving a rural community or unincorporated town or village*. To be eligible for assistance, a facility not owned by an eligible applicant, as defined in § 206.222, must be owned by a private nonprofit organization; and provide an essential governmental service to the general public. Applications for these facilities must be submitted through a State or political subdivision of the State.

(e) *Negligence*. No assistance will be provided to an applicant for damages caused by its own negligence. If negligence by another party results in damages, assistance may be provided, but will be conditioned on agreement by the applicant to cooperate with FEMA in all efforts necessary to recover the cost of such assistance from the negligent party.

[55 FR 2307, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 71 FR 40027, July 14, 2006; 74 FR 60214, Nov. 20, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.224 Debris removal.

(a) *Public interest*. Upon determination that debris removal is in the public interest, the Regional Administrator may provide assistance for the removal of debris and wreckage from publicly and privately owned lands and waters. Such removal is in the public interest when it is necessary to:

(1) Eliminate immediate threats to life, public health, and safety; or

(2) Eliminate immediate threats of significant damage to improved public or private property; or



(3) Ensure economic recovery of the affected community to the benefit of the community-at-large; or

(4) Mitigate the risk to life and property by removing substantially damaged structures and associated appurtenances as needed to convert property acquired through a FEMA hazard mitigation program to uses compatible with open space, recreation, or wetlands management practices. Such removal must be completed within two years of the declaration date, unless the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate extends this period.

(b) *Debris removal from private property.* When it is in the public interest for an eligible applicant to remove debris from private property in urban, suburban and rural areas, including large lots, clearance of the living, recreational and working area is eligible except those areas used for crops and livestock or unused areas.

(c) *Assistance to individuals and private organizations.* No assistance will be provided directly to an individual or private organization, or to an eligible applicant for reimbursement of an individual or private organization, for the cost of removing debris from their own property. Exceptions to this are those private nonprofit organizations operating eligible facilities.

[55 FR 2307, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 66 FR 33901, June 26, 2001]

 [Back to Top](#)

## **§ 206.225 Emergency work.**

(a) *General.* (1) Emergency protective measures to save lives, to protect public health and safety, and to protect improved property are eligible.

(2) In determining whether emergency work is required, the Regional Administrator may require certification by local State, and/or Federal officials that a threat exists, including identification and evaluation of the threat and recommendations of the emergency work necessary to cope with the threat.

(3) In order to be eligible, emergency protective measures must:

(i) Eliminate or lessen immediate threats to live, public health or safety; or

(ii) Eliminate or lessen immediate threats of significant additional damage to improved public or private property through measures which are cost effective.

(b) *Emergency access.* An access facility that is not publicly owned or is not the direct responsibility of an eligible applicant for repair or maintenance may be eligible for emergency repairs or replacement provided that emergency repair or replacement of the facility economically eliminates the need for temporary housing. The work will be limited to that necessary for the access to remain passable through events which can be considered an immediate threat. The work must be performed by an eligible applicant and will be subject to cost sharing requirements.

(c) *Emergency communications.* Emergency communications necessary for the purpose of carrying out disaster relief functions may be established and may be made available to State and local government officials as deemed appropriate. Such communications are intended to supplement but not replace normal communications that remain operable after a major disaster. FEMA funding for such communications will be discontinued as soon as the needs have been met.

(d) *Emergency public transportation.* Emergency public transportation to meet emergency needs and to provide transportation to public places and such other places as necessary for the community to resume its normal pattern of life as soon as possible is eligible. Such transportation is intended to supplement but not replace predisaster transportation facilities that remain operable after a major disaster. FEMA funding for such transportation will be discontinued as soon as the needs have been met.

 [Back to Top](#)

## **§ 206.226 Restoration of damaged facilities.**

Work to restore eligible facilities on the basis of the design of such facilities as they existed immediately prior to the disaster and in conformity with the following is eligible:

(a) *Assistance under other Federal agency (OFA) programs.* (1) Generally, disaster assistance will not be made available under the Stafford Act when another Federal agency has specific authority to restore facilities damaged or destroyed by an event which is declared a major disaster.

(2) An exception to the policy described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section exists for public elementary and secondary school facilities which are otherwise eligible for assistance from the Department of Education (ED) under 20 U.S.C. 241-1 and 20 U.S.C. 646. Such facilities are also eligible for assistance from FEMA under the Stafford Act, and grantees shall accept applications from local educational agencies for assistance under the Stafford Act.

(3) The exception does not cover payment of increased current operating expenses or replacement of lost revenues as provided in 20 U.S.C. 241-1(a) and implemented by 34 CFR 219.14. Such assistance shall continue to be granted and administered by the Department of Education.

(b) *Mitigation planning.* In order to receive assistance under this section, the State or Indian Tribal government applying to FEMA as a grantee must have in place a FEMA approved State or Tribal Mitigation Plan, as applicable, in



accordance with 44 CFR part 201.

(c) *Private nonprofit facilities.* Eligible private nonprofit facilities may receive funding under the following conditions:

(1) The facility provides critical services, which include power, water (including water provided by an irrigation organization or facility in accordance with § 206.221(e)(3)), sewer services, wastewater treatment, communications, emergency medical care, fire department services, emergency rescue, and nursing homes; or

(2) The private nonprofit organization not falling within the criteria of § 206.226(c)(1) has applied for a disaster loan under section 7(b) of the Small Business Act (15 U.S.C.636(b)) and

(i) The Small Business Administration has declined the organization's application; or

(ii) Has eligible damages greater than the maximum amount of the loan for which it is eligible, in which case the excess damages are eligible for FEMA assistance.

(d) *Standards.* For the costs of Federal, State, and local repair or replacement standards which change the predisaster construction of facility to be eligible, the standards must:

(1) Apply to the type of repair or restoration required;

(Standards may be different for new construction and repair work)

(2) Be appropriate to the predisaster use of the facility;

(3)(i) Be found reasonable, in writing, and formally adopted and implemented by the State or local government on or before the disaster declaration date or be a legal Federal requirement applicable to the type of restoration.

(ii) This paragraph (d) applies to local governments on January 1, 1999 and to States on January 1, 2000. Until the respective applicability dates, the standards must be in writing and formally adopted by the applicant prior to project approval or be a legal Federal or State requirement applicable to the type of restoration.

(4) Apply uniformly to all similar types of facilities within the jurisdiction of owner of the facility; and

(5) For any standard in effect at the time of a disaster, it must have been enforced during the time it was in effect.

(e) *Hazard mitigation.* In approving grant assistance for restoration of facilities, the Regional Administrator may require cost effective hazard mitigation measures not required by applicable standards. The cost of any requirements for hazard mitigation placed on restoration projects by FEMA will be an eligible cost for FEMA assistance.

(f) *Repair vs. replacement.* (1) A facility is considered repairable when disaster damages do not exceed 50 percent of the cost of replacing a facility to its predisaster condition, and it is feasible to repair the facility so that it can perform the function for which it was being used as well as it did immediately prior to the disaster.

(2) If a damaged facility is not repairable in accordance with paragraph (d)(1) of this section, approved restorative work may include replacement of the facility. The applicant may elect to perform repairs to the facility, in lieu of replacement, if such work is in conformity with applicable standards. However, eligible costs shall be limited to the less expensive of repairs or replacement.

(3) An exception to the limitation in paragraph (d)(2) of this section may be allowed for facilities eligible for or on the National Register of Historic Properties. If an applicable standard requires repair in a certain manner, costs associated with that standard will be eligible.

(g) *Relocation.* (1) The Regional Administrator may approve funding for and require restoration of a destroyed facility at a new location when:

(i) The facility is and will be subject to repetitive heavy damage;

(ii) The approval is not barred by other provisions of title 44 CFR; and

(iii) The overall project, including all costs, is cost effective.

(2) When relocation is required by the Regional Administrator, eligible work includes land acquisition and ancillary facilities such as roads and utilities, in addition to work normally eligible as part of a facility reconstruction. Demolition and removal of the old facility is also an eligible cost.

(3) When relocation is required by the Regional Administrator, no future funding for repair or replacement of a facility at the original site will be approved, except those facilities which facilitate an open space use in accordance with 44 CFR part 9.

(4) When relocation is required by the Regional Administrator, and, instead of relocation, the applicant requests approval of an alternate project [see § 206.203(d)(2)], eligible costs will be limited to 90 percent of the estimate of restoration at the original location excluding hazard mitigation measures.

(5) If relocation of a facility is not feasible or cost effective, the Regional Administrator shall disapprove Federal funding for the original location when he/she determines in accordance with 44 CFR parts 9, 10, 201, or subpart M of this part 206, that restoration in the original location is not allowed. In such cases, an alternative project may be applied for.

(h) *Equipment and furnishings.* If equipment and furnishings are damaged beyond repair, comparable items are eligible as replacement items.



(i) *Library books and publications.* Replacement of library books and publications is based on an inventory of the quantities of various categories of books or publications damaged or destroyed. Cataloging and other work incidental to replacement are eligible.

(j) *Beaches.* (1) Replacement of sand on an unimproved natural beach is not eligible.

(2) Improved beaches. Work on an improved beach may be eligible under the following conditions:

(i) The beach was constructed by the placement of sand (of proper grain size) to a designed elevation, width, and slope; and

(ii) A maintenance program involving periodic renourishment of sand must have been established and adhered to by the applicant.

(k) *Restrictions* —(1) *Alternative use facilities.* If a facility was being used for purposes other than those for which it was designed, restoration will only be eligible to the extent necessary to restore the immediate predisaster alternate purpose.

(2) *Inactive facilities.* Facilities that were not in active use at the time of the disaster are not eligible except in those instances where the facilities were only temporarily inoperative for repairs or remodeling, or where active use by the applicant was firmly established in an approved budget or the owner can demonstrate to FEMA's satisfaction an intent to begin use within a reasonable time.

[55 FR 2307, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 58 FR 55022, Oct. 25, 1993; 63 FR 5897, Feb. 5, 1998; 66 FR 22445, May 4, 2001; 67 FR 8854, Feb. 26, 2002; 68 FR 61371, Oct. 28, 2003; 69 FR 55097, Sept. 13, 2004; 74 FR 15350, Apr. 3, 2009; 74 FR 47482, Sept. 16, 2009]

[Back to Top](#)

## § 206.227 Snow assistance.

Emergency or major disaster declarations based on snow or blizzard conditions will be made only for cases of record or near record snowstorms, as established by official government records. Federal assistance will be provided for all costs eligible under 44 CFR 206.225 for a specified period of time which will be determined by the circumstances of the event.

[62 FR 45330, Aug. 27, 1997]

[Back to Top](#)

## § 206.228 Allowable costs.

General policies for determining allowable costs are established in 44 CFR 13.22. Exceptions to those policies as allowed in 44 CFR 13.4 and 13.6 are explained below.

(a) *Eligible direct costs* —(1) *Applicant-owned equipment.* Reimbursement for ownership and operation costs of applicant-owned equipment used to perform eligible work shall be provided in accordance with the following guidelines:

(i) *Rates established under State guidelines.* In those cases where an applicant uses reasonable rates which have been established or approved under State guidelines, in its normal daily operations, reimbursement for applicant-owned equipment which has an hourly rate of \$75 or less shall be based on such rates. Reimbursement for equipment which has an hourly rate in excess of \$75 shall be determined on a case by case basis by FEMA.

(ii) *Rates established under local guidelines.* Where local guidelines are used to establish equipment rates, reimbursement will be based on those rates or rates in a Schedule of Equipment Rates published by FEMA, whichever is lower. If an applicant certifies that its locally established rates do not reflect actual costs, reimbursement may be based on the FEMA Schedule of Equipment Rates, but the applicant will be expected to provide documentation if requested. If an applicant wishes to claim an equipment rate which exceeds the FEMA Schedule, it must document the basis for that rate and obtain FEMA approval of an alternate rate.

(iii) *No established rates.* The FEMA Schedule of Equipment Rates will be the basis for reimbursement in all cases where an applicant does not have established equipment rates.

(2) *Force Account Labor Costs.* The straight- or regular-time salaries and benefits of a grantee's or subgrantee's permanently employed personnel are:

(i) Eligible in calculating the cost of eligible permanent repair, restoration, and replacement of facilities under section 406 of the Stafford Act;

(ii) Eligible, at the Administrator's discretion, in calculating the cost of eligible debris removal work under sections 403(a)(3)(A), 502(a)(5), and 407 of the Stafford Act for a period not to exceed 30 consecutive calendar days, provided the grantee's or subgrantee's permanently employed personnel are dedicated solely to eligible debris removal work for any major disaster or emergency declared by the President on or after October 27, 2012, in response to Hurricane Sandy; and

(iii) Not eligible in calculating the cost of other eligible emergency protective measures under sections 403 and 502



of the Stafford Act, except for those costs associated with host state evacuation and sheltering, as established in § 206.202.

(3) Administrative and management costs for major disasters and emergencies will be paid in accordance with 44 CFR part 207.

(b) [Reserved]

[55 FR 2307, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 58 FR 47996, Sept. 14, 1993; 63 FR 64426, Nov. 20, 1998; 64 FR 55161, Oct. 12, 1999; 72 FR 57875, Oct. 11, 2007; 77 FR 67290, Nov. 9, 2012]

 [Back to Top](#)

**§§ 206.229-206.249 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

**Subpart I—Public Assistance Insurance Requirements**

SOURCE: 56 FR 64560, Dec. 11, 1991, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.250 General.**

(a) Sections 311 and 406(d) of the Stafford Act, and the Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973, Public Law 93-234, set forth certain insurance requirements which apply to disaster assistance provided by FEMA. The requirements of this subpart apply to all assistance provided pursuant to section 406 of the Stafford Act with respect to any major disaster declared by the President after November 23, 1988.

(b) Insurance requirements prescribed in this subpart shall apply equally to private nonprofit (PNP) facilities which receive assistance under section 406 of the Act. PNP organizations shall submit the necessary documentation and assurances required by this subpart to the Grantee.

(c) Actual and anticipated insurance recoveries shall be deducted from otherwise eligible costs, in accordance with this subpart.

(d) The full coverage available under the standard flood insurance policy from the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) will be subtracted from otherwise eligible costs for a building and its contents within the special flood hazard area in accordance with § 206.252.

(e) The insurance requirements of this subpart should not be interpreted as a substitute for various hazard mitigation techniques which may be available to reduce the incidence and severity of future damage.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.251 Definitions.**

(a) *Assistance* means any form of a Federal grant under section 406 of the Stafford Act to replace, restore, repair, reconstruct, or construct any facility and/or its contents as a result of a major disaster.

(b) *Building* means a walled and roofed structure, other than a gas, or liquid storage tank, that is principally above ground and affixed to a permanent site, as well as a manufactured home on a permanent foundation.

(c) *Community* means any State or political subdivision thereof, or any Indian tribe or authorized tribal organization, or Alaskan Native Village or authorized native organization which has authority to adopt and enforce floodplain management regulations for the areas within its jurisdiction.

(d) *National Flood Insurance Program* (NFIP) means the program authorized by the National Flood Insurance Act of 1968, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4001 *et seq.*

(e) *Special flood hazard area* means an area having special flood, mudslide, and/or flood-related erosion hazards, and shown on a Flood Hazard Boundary map (FHBM) or the Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) issued by FEMA as Zone A, AO, A1-30, AE, A99, AH, VO, V1-30 VE, V, M, or E. "Special flood hazard area" is synonymous with "special hazard area", as defined in 44 CFR part 59.

(f) *Standard Flood Insurance Policy* means the flood insurance policy issued by the Federal Insurance Administrator, or by a Write-Your-Own Company pursuant to 44 CFR 62.23.

 [Back to Top](#)



## § 206.252 Insurance requirements for facilities damaged by flood.

(a) Where an insurable building damaged by flooding is located in a special flood hazard area identified for more than one year by the Administrator, assistance pursuant to section 406 of the Stafford Act shall be reduced. The amount of the reduction shall be the maximum amount of the insurance proceeds which would have been received had the building and its contents been fully covered by a standard flood insurance policy.

(b) The reduction stated above shall not apply to a PNP facility which could not be insured because it was located in a community not participating in the NFIP. However, the provisions of the Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973 prohibit approval of assistance for the PNP unless the community agrees to participate in the NFIP within six months after the major disaster declaration date, and the required flood insurance is purchased.

(c) Prior to approval of a Federal grant for the restoration of a facility and its contents which were damaged by a flood, the Grantee shall notify the Regional Administrator of any entitlement to an insurance settlement or recovery. The Regional Administrator shall reduce the eligible costs by the amount of insurance proceeds which the grantee receives.

(d) The grantee or subgrantee is required to obtain and maintain flood insurance in the amount of eligible disaster assistance, as a condition of receiving Federal assistance that may be available. This requirement also applies to insurable flood damaged facilities located outside a special flood hazard area when it is reasonably available, adequate, and necessary. However, the Regional Administrator shall not require greater types and amounts of insurance than are certified as reasonable by the State Insurance Commissioner. The requirement to purchase flood insurance is waived when eligible costs for an insurable facility do not exceed \$5,000.

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.253 Insurance requirements for facilities damaged by disasters other than flood.

(a) Prior to approval of a Federal grant for the restoration of a facility and its contents which were damaged by a disaster other than flood, the Grantee shall notify the Regional Administrator of any entitlement to insurance settlement or recovery for such facility and its contents. The Regional Administrator shall reduce the eligible costs by the actual amount of insurance proceeds relating to the eligible costs.

(b)(1) Assistance under section 406 of the Stafford Act will be approved only on the condition that the grantee obtain and maintain such types and amounts of insurance as are reasonable and necessary to protect against future loss to such property from the types of hazard which caused the major disaster. The extent of insurance to be required will be based on the eligible damage that was incurred to the damaged facility as a result of the major disaster. The Regional Administrator shall not require greater types and extent of insurance than are certified as reasonable by the State Insurance Commissioner.

(2) Due to the high cost of insurance, some applicants may request to insure the damaged facilities under a blanket insurance policy covering all their facilities, an insurance pool arrangement, or some combination of these options. Such an arrangement may be accepted for other than flood damages. However, if the same facility is damaged in a similar future disaster, eligible costs will be reduced by the amount of eligible damage sustained on the previous disaster.

(c) The Regional Administrator shall notify the Grantee of the type and amount of insurance required. The grantee may request that the State Insurance Commissioner review the type and extent of insurance required to protect against future loss to a disaster-damaged facility, the Regional Administrator shall not require greater types and extent of insurance than are certified as reasonable by the State Insurance Commissioner.

(d) The requirements of section 311 of the Stafford Act are waived when eligible costs for an insurable facility do not exceed \$5,000. The Regional Administrator may establish a higher waiver amount based on hazard mitigation initiatives which reduce the risk of future damages by a disaster similar to the one which resulted in the major disaster declaration which is the basis for the application for disaster assistance.

(e) The Grantee shall provide assurances that the required insurance coverage will be maintained for the anticipated life of the restorative work or the insured facility, whichever is the lesser.

(f) No assistance shall be provided under section 406 of the Stafford Act for any facility for which assistance was provided as a result of a previous major disaster unless all insurance required by FEMA as a condition of the previous assistance has been obtained and maintained.

 [Back to Top](#)

## §§ 206.254-206.339 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

## Subpart J—Coastal Barrier Resources Act

SOURCE: 55 FR 2311, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)



**§ 206.340 Purpose of subpart.**

This subpart implements the Coastal Barrier Resources Act (CBRA) (Pub. L. 97-348) as that statute applies to disaster relief granted to individuals and State and local governments under the Stafford Act. CBRA prohibits new expenditures and new financial assistance within the Coastal Barrier Resources System (CBRS) for all but a few types of activities identified in CBRA. This subpart specifies what actions may and may not be carried out within the CBRS. It establishes procedures for compliance with CBRA in the administration of disaster assistance by FEMA.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.341 Policy.**

It shall be the policy of FEMA to achieve the goals of CBRA in carrying out disaster relief on units of the Coastal Barrier Resources System. It is FEMA's intent that such actions be consistent with the purpose of CBRA to minimize the loss of human life, the wasteful expenditure of Federal revenues, and the damage to fish, wildlife and other natural resources associated with coastal barriers along the Atlantic and Gulf coasts and to consider the means and measures by which the long-term conservation of these fish, wildlife, and other natural resources may be achieved under the Stafford Act.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.342 Definitions.**

Except as otherwise provided in this subpart, the definitions set forth in part 206 of subchapter D are applicable to this subject.

(a) *Consultation* means that process by which FEMA informs the Secretary of the Interior through his/her designated agent of FEMA proposed disaster assistance actions on a designated unit of the Coastal Barrier Resources System and by which the Secretary makes comments to FEMA about the appropriateness of that action. Approval by the Secretary is not required in order that an action be carried out.

(b) *Essential link* means that portion of a road, utility, or other facility originating outside of the system unit but providing access or service through the unit and for which no alternative route is reasonably available.

(c) *Existing facility* on a unit of CBRS established by Public Law 97-348 means a publicly owned or operated facility on which the start of a construction took place prior to October 18, 1982, and for which this fact can be adequately documented. In addition, a legally valid building permit or equivalent documentation, if required, must have been obtained for the construction prior to October 18, 1982. If a facility has been substantially improved or expanded since October 18, 1982, it is not an existing facility. For any other unit added to the CBRS by amendment to Public Law 97-348, the enactment date of such amendment is substituted for October 18, 1982, in this definition.

(d) *Expansion* means changing a facility to increase its capacity or size.

(e) *Facility* means "public facility" as defined in § 206.201. This includes any publicly owned flood control, navigation, irrigation, reclamation, public power, sewage treatment and collection, water supply and distribution, watershed development, or airport facility; and nonfederal-aid street, road, or highway; and any other public building, structure, or system, including those used for educational, recreational, or cultural purposes, or any park.

(f) *Financial assistance* means any form of Federal loan, grant guaranty, insurance, payment rebate, subsidy or any other form of direct or indirect Federal assistance.

(g) *New financial assistance* on a unit of the CBRS established by Public Law 97-348 means an approval by FEMA of a project application or other disaster assistance after October 18, 1982. For any other unit added to the CBRS by amendment to Public Law 97-348, the enactment date such amendment is substituted for October 18, 1982, in this definition.

(h) *Start of construction* for a structure means the first placement of permanent construction, such as the placement of footings or slabs or any work beyond the stage of excavation. Permanent construction for a structure does not include land preparation such as clearing, grading, and placement of fill, nor does it include excavation for a basement, footings, or piers. For a facility which is not a structure, start of construction means the first activity for permanent construction of a substantial part of the facility. Permanent construction for a facility does not include land preparation such as clearing and grubbing but would include excavation and placement of fill such as for a road.

(i) *Structure* means a walled and roofed building, including a gas or liquid storage tank, that is principally above ground, as well as a mobile home.

(j) *Substantial improvement* means any repair, reconstruction or other improvement of a structure or facility, that has been damaged in excess of, or the cost of which equals or exceeds, 50 percent of the market value of the structure or placement cost of the facility (including all "public facilities") as defined in the Stafford Act) either:

(1) Before the repair or improvement is started; or

(2) If the structure or facility has been damaged and is proposed to be restored, before the damage occurred. If a facility is a link in a larger system, the percentage of damage will be based on the relative cost of repairing the



damaged facility to the replacement cost of that portion of the system which is operationally dependent on the facility. The term *substantial improvement* does not include any alternation of a structure or facility listed on the National Register of Historic Places or a State Inventory of Historic Places.

(k) *System unit* means any undeveloped coastal barrier, or combination of closely related undeveloped coastal barriers included within the Coastal Barrier Resources System as established by the section 4 of the CBRA, or as modified by the Secretary in accordance with that statute.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.343 Scope.**

(a) The limitations on disaster assistance as set forth in this subpart apply only to FEMA actions taken on a unit of the Coastal Barrier Resources System or any conduit to such unit, including, but not limited to a bridge, causeway, utility, or similar facility.

(b) FEMA assistance having a social program orientation which is unrelated to development is not subject to the requirements of these regulations. This assistance includes:

- (1) Individual and Family Grants that are not for acquisition or construction purposes;
- (2) Crisis counseling;
- (3) Disaster Legal services; and
- (4) Disaster unemployment assistance.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.344 Limitations on Federal expenditures.**

Except as provided in §§ 206.345 and 206.346, no new expenditures or financial assistance may be made available under authority of the Stafford Act for any purpose within the Coastal Barrier Resources System, including but not limited to:

- (a) Construction, reconstruction, replacement, repair or purchase of any structure, appurtenance, facility or related infrastructure;
- (b) Construction, reconstruction, replacement, repair or purchase of any road, airport, boat landing facility, or other facility on, or bridge or causeway to, any System unit; and
- (c) Carrying out of any project to prevent the erosion of, or to otherwise stabilize, any inlet, shoreline, or inshore area, except that such assistance and expenditures may be made available on units designated pursuant to Section 4 on maps numbered S01 through S08 for purposes other than encouraging development and, in all units, in cases where an emergency threatens life, land, and property immediately adjacent to that unit.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.345 Exceptions.**

The following types of disaster assistance actions are exceptions to the prohibitions of § 206.344.

(a) After consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, the Regional Administrator may make disaster assistance available within the CBRS for:

- (1) Replacement, reconstruction, or repair, but not the expansion, of publicly owned or publicly operated roads, structures, or facilities that are essential links in a larger network or system;
- (2) Repair of any facility necessary for the exploration, extraction, or transportation of energy resources which activity can be carried out only on, in, or adjacent to coastal water areas because the use or facility requires access to the coastal water body; and
- (3) Restoration of existing channel improvements and related structures, such as jetties, and including the disposal of dredge materials related to such improvements.

(b) After consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, the Regional Administrator may make disaster assistance available within the CBRS for the following types of actions, provided such assistance is consistent with the purposes of CBRA;

- (1) Emergency actions essential to the saving of lives and the protection of property and the public health and safety, if such actions are performed pursuant to sections 402, 403, and 502 of the Stafford Act and are limited to actions that are necessary to alleviate the impacts of the event;
- (2) Replacement, reconstruction, or repair, but not the expansion, of publicly owned or publicly operated roads, structures, or facilities, except as provided in § 206.347(c)(5);



(3) Repair of air and water navigation aids and devices, and of the access thereto;

(4) Repair of facilities for scientific research, including but not limited to aeronautical, atmospheric, space, geologic, marine, fish and wildlife and other research, development, and applications;

(5) Repair of facilities for the study, management, protection and enhancement of fish and wildlife resources and habitats, including but not limited to, acquisition of fish and wildlife habitats and related lands, stabilization projects for fish and wildlife habitats, and recreational projects; and

(6) Repair of nonstructural projects for shoreline stabilization that are designed to mimic, enhance, or restore natural stabilization systems.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.346 Applicability to disaster assistance.**

(a) *Emergency assistance.* The Regional Administrator may approve assistance pursuant to sections 402, 403, or 502 of the Stafford Act, for emergency actions which are essential to the saving of lives and the protection of property and the public health and safety, are necessary to alleviate the emergency, and are in the public interest. Such actions include but are not limited to:

(1) Removal of debris from public property;

(2) Emergency protection measures to prevent loss of life, prevent damage to improved property and protect public health and safety;

(3) Emergency restoration of essential community services such as electricity, water or sewer;

(4) Provision of access to a private residence;

(5) Provision of emergency shelter by means of providing emergency repair of utilities, provision of heat in the season requiring heat, or provision of minimal cooking facilities;

(6) Relocation of individuals or property out of danger, such as moving a mobile home to an area outside of the CBRS (but disaster assistance funds may not be used to relocate facilities back into the CBRS);

(7) Home repairs to private owner-occupied primary residences to make them habitable;

(8) Housing eligible families in existing resources in the CBRS; and

(9) Mortgage and rental payment assistance.

(b) *Permanent restoration assistance.* Subject to the limitations set out below, the Regional Administrator may approve assistance for the repair, reconstruction, or replacement but not the expansion of the following publicly owned or operated facilities and certain private nonprofit facilities.

(1) Roads and bridges;

(2) Drainage structures, dams, levees;

(3) Buildings and equipment;

(4) Utilities (gas, electricity, water, etc.); and

(5) Park and recreational facilities.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.347 Requirements.**

(a) *Location determination.* For each disaster assistance action which is proposed on the Atlantic or Gulf Coasts, the Regional Administrator shall:

(1) Review a proposed action's location to determine if the action is on or connected to the CBRS unit and thereby subject to these regulations. The appropriate Department of Interior map identifying units of the CBRS will be the basis of such determination. The CBRS units are also identified on FEMA Flood Insurance Maps (FIRM's) for the convenience of field personnel.

(2) If an action is determined not to be on or connected to a unit of the CBRS, no further requirements of these regulations needs to be met, and the action may be processed under other applicable disaster assistance regulations.

(3) If an action is determined to be on or connected to a unit of the CBRS, it is subject to the consultation and consistency requirements of CBRA as prescribed in §§ 206.348 and 206.349.

(b) *Emergency disaster assistance.* For each emergency disaster assistance action listed in § 206.346(a), the Regional Administrator shall perform the required consultation. CBRA requires that FEMA consult with the Secretary of the Interior before taking any action on a System unit. The purpose of such consultation is to solicit advice on whether



the action is or is not one which is permitted by section 6 of CBRA and whether the action is or is not consistent with the purposes of CBRA as defined in section 1 of that statute.

(1) FEMA has conducted advance consultation with the Department of the Interior concerning such emergency actions. The result of the consultation is that the Secretary of the Interior through the Assistance Secretary for Fish and Wildlife and Parks has concurred that the emergency work listed in § 206.346(a) is consistent with the purposes of CBRA and may be approved by FEMA without additional consultation.

(2) *Notification.* As soon as practicable, the Regional Administrator will notify the designated Department of the Interior representative at the regional level of emergency projects that have been approved. Upon request from the Secretary of the Interior, the Director, Office of Environmental Planning and Historic Preservation, Mitigation Directorate will supply reports of all current emergency actions approved on CBRS units. Notification will contain the following information:

- (i) Identification of the unit in the CBRS;
- (ii) Description of work approved;
- (iii) Amount of Federal funding; and
- (iv) Additional measures required.

(c) *Permanent restoration assistance.* For each permanent restoration assistance action including but not limited to those listed in § 206.346(b), the Regional Administrator shall meet the requirements set out below.

(1) *Essential links.* For the repair or replacement of publicly owned or operated roads, structures or facilities which are essential links in a larger network or system:

- (i) No facility may be expanded beyond its predisaster design.
- (ii) Consultation in accordance with § 206.348 shall be accomplished.

(2) *Channel improvements.* For the repair of existing channels, related structures and the disposal of dredged materials:

- (i) No channel or related structure may be repaired, reconstructed, or replaced unless funds were appropriated for the construction of such channel or structure before October 18, 1982;
- (ii) Expansion of the facility beyond its predisaster design is not permitted;
- (iii) Consultation in accordance with § 206.348 shall be accomplished.

(3) *Energy facilities.* For the repair of facilities necessary for the exploration, extraction or transportation of energy resources:

- (i) No such facility may be repaired, reconstructed or replaced unless such function can be carried out only in, on, or adjacent to a coastal water area because the use or facility requires access to the coastal water body;
- (ii) Consultation in accordance with § 206.348 shall be accomplished.

(4) *Special-purpose facilities.* For the repair of facilities used for the study, management, protection or enhancement of fish and wildlife resources and habitats and related recreational projects; air and water navigation aids and devices and access thereto; and facilities used for scientific research, including but not limited to aeronautical, atmospheric, space, geologic, marine, fish and wildlife and other research, development, and applications; and, nonstructural facilities that are designed to mimic, enhance or restore natural shoreline stabilization systems:

- (i) Consultation in accordance with § 206.348 shall be accomplished;
- (ii) No such facility may be repaired, reconstructed, or replaced unless it is otherwise consistent with the purposes of CBRA in accordance with § 206.349.

(5) *Other public facilities.* For the repair, reconstruction, or replacement of publicly owned or operated roads, structures, or facilities that do not fall within the categories identified in paragraphs (c)(1), (2), (3), and (4) of this section:

- (i) No such facility may be repaired, reconstructed, or replaced unless it is an "existing facility;"
- (ii) Expansion of the facility beyond its predisaster design is not permitted;
- (iii) Consultation in accordance with § 206.348 shall be accomplished;
- (iv) No such facility may be repaired, reconstructed, or replaced unless it is otherwise consistent with the purposes of CBRA in accordance with § 206.349.

(6) *Private nonprofit facilities.* For eligible private nonprofit facilities as defined in these regulations and of the type described in paragraphs (c)(1), (2), (3), and (4) of this section:

- (i) Consultation in accordance with § 206.348 shall be accomplished.
- (ii) No such facility may be repaired, reconstructed, or replaced unless it is otherwise consistent with the purposes of CBRA in accordance with § 206.349.



(7) *Improved project.* An improved project may not be approved for a facility in the CBRS if such grant is to be combined with other funding, resulting in an expansion of the facility beyond the predisaster design. If a facility is exempt from the expansion prohibitions of CBRA by virtue of falling into one of the categories identified in paragraph (c)(1), (2), (3), or (4) of this section, then an improved project for such facilities is not precluded.

(8) *Alternate project.* A new or enlarged facility may not be constructed on a unit of the CBRS under the provisions of the Stafford Act unless the facility is exempt from the expansion prohibition of CBRA by virtue of falling into one of the categories identified in paragraph (c)(1), (2), (3), or (4) of this section.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.348 Consultation.**

As required by section 6 of the CBRA, the FEMA Regional Administrator will consult with the designated representative of the Department of the Interior (DOI) at the regional level before approving any action involving permanent restoration of a facility or structure on or attached to a unit of the CBRS.

(a) The consultation shall be by written memorandum to the DOI representative and shall contain the following:

(1) Identification of the unit within the CBRS;

(2) Description of the facility and the proposed repair or replacement work; including identification of the facility as an exception under section 6 of CBRA; and full justification of its status as an exception;

(3) Amount of proposal Federal funding;

(4) Additional mitigation measures required; and

(5) A determination of the action's consistency with the purposes of CBRA, if required by these regulations, in accordance with § 206.349.

(b) Pursuant to FEMA understanding with DOI, the DOI representative will provide technical information and an opinion whether or not the proposed action meets the criteria for a CBRA exception, and on the consistency of the action with the purposes of CBRA (when such consistency is required). DOI is expected to respond within 12 working days from the date of the FEMA request for consultation. If a response is not received within the time limit, the FEMA Regional Administrator shall contact the DOI representative to determine if the request for consultation was received in a timely manner. If it was not, an appropriate extension for response will be given. Otherwise, he or she may assume DOI concurrence and proceed with approval of the proposed action.

(c) For those cases in which the regional DOI representative believes that the proposed action should not be taken and the matter cannot be resolved at the regional level, the FEMA Regional Administrator will submit the issue to the Director, Office of Environmental Planning and Historic Preservation, Mitigation Directorate. In coordination with the Office of Chief Counsel (OCC), consultation will be accomplished at the FEMA National Office with the DOI consultation officer. After this consultation, the Director, Office of Environmental Planning and Historic Preservation, Mitigation Directorate, determines whether or not to approve the proposed action.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.349 Consistency determinations.**

Section 6(a)(6) of CBRA requires that certain actions be consistent with the purposes of that statute if the actions are to be carried out on a unit of the CBRA. The purpose of CBRA, as stated in section 2(b) of that statute, is to minimize the loss of human life, wasteful expenditure of Federal revenues, and the damage to fish, wildlife, and other natural resources associated with the coastal barriers along with Atlantic and Gulf coasts. For those actions where a consistency determination is required, the FEMA Regional Administrator shall evaluate the action according to the following procedures, and the evaluation shall be included in the written request for consultation with DOI.

(a) *Impact identification.* FEMA shall identify impacts of the following types that would result from the proposed action:

(1) Risks to human life;

(2) Risks of damage to the facility being repaired or replaced;

(3) Risks of damage to other facilities;

(4) Risks of damage to fish, wildlife, and other natural resources;

(5) Condition of existing development served by the facility and the degree to which its redevelopment would be encouraged; and

(6) Encouragement of new development.

(b) *Mitigation.* FEMA shall modify actions by means of practicable mitigation measures to minimize adverse effects of the types listed in paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) *Conservation.* FEMA shall identify practicable measures that can be incorporated into the proposed action and



will conserve natural and wildlife resources.

(d) *Finding.* For those actions required to be consistent with the purposes of CBRA, the above evaluation must result in a finding of consistency with CBRA by the Regional Administrator before funding may be approved for that action.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§§ 206.350-206.359 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

**Subpart K—Community Disaster Loans**

SOURCE: 55 FR 2314, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.360 Purpose.**

This subpart provides policies and procedures for local governments and State and Federal officials concerning the Community Disaster Loan program under section 417 of the Stafford Act. Sections 206.360 through 206.367 of the subpart do not implement the Community Disaster Loan Act of 2005. (see § 206.370).

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005]

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.361 Loan program.**

(a) *General.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may make a Community Disaster Loan to any local government which has suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenues as a result of a major disaster and which demonstrates a need for Federal financial assistance in order to perform its governmental functions.

(b) *Amount of loan.* The amount of the loan is based upon need, not to exceed 25 percent of the operating budget of the local government for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurs, but shall not exceed \$5 million. The term *fiscal year* as used in this subpart means the local government's fiscal year.

(c) *Interest rate.* The interest rate is the rate for five year maturities as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury in effect on the date that the Promissory Note is executed. This rate is from the monthly Treasury schedule of certified interest rates which takes into consideration the current average yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States, adjusted to the nearest  $\frac{1}{8}$  percent.

(d) *Time limitation.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may approve a loan in either the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred or the fiscal year immediately following that year. Only one loan may be approved under section 417(a) for any local government as the result of a single disaster.

(e) *Term of loan.* The term of the loan is 5 years, unless otherwise extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may consider requests for an extensions of loans based on the local government's financial condition. The total term of any loan under section 417(a) normally may not exceed 10 years from the date the Promissory Note was executed. However, when extenuating circumstances exist and the Community Disaster Loan recipient demonstrates an inability to repay the loan within the initial 10 years, but agrees to repay such loan over an extended period of time, additional time may be provided for loan repayment. (See § 206.367(c).)

(f) *Use of loan funds.* The local government shall use the loaned funds to carry on existing local government functions of a municipal operation character or to expand such functions to meet disaster-related needs. The funds shall not be used to finance capital improvements nor the repair or restoration of damaged public facilities. Neither the loan nor any cancelled portion of the loans may be used as the nonFederal share of any Federal program, including those under the Act.

(g) *Cancellation.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate shall cancel repayment of all or part of a Community Disaster Loan to the extent that he/she determines that revenues of the local government during the 3 fiscal years following the disaster are insufficient to meet the operating budget of that local government because of disaster-related revenue losses and additional unreimbursed disaster-related municipal operating expenses.

(h) *Relation to other assistance.* Any community disaster loans including cancellations made under this subpart shall not reduce or otherwise affect any commitments, grants, or other assistance under the Act or these regulations.

[55 FR 2314, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 66 FR 22445, May 4, 2001]



 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.362 Responsibilities.

(a) The local government shall submit the financial information required by FEMA in the application for a Community Disaster Loan and in the application for loan cancellation, if submitted, and comply with the assurances on the application, the terms and conditions of the Promissory Note, and these regulations. The local government shall send all loan application, loan administration, loan cancellation, and loan settlement correspondence through the GAR and the FEMA Regional Office to the FEMA Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(b) The GAR shall certify on the loan application that the local government can legally assume the proposed indebtedness and that any proceeds will be used and accounted for in compliance with the FEMA-State Agreement for the major disaster. States are encouraged to take appropriate pre-disaster action to resolve any existing State impediments which would preclude a local government from incurring the increased indebtedness associated with a loan in order to avoid protracted delays in processing loan application requests in major disasters or emergencies.

(c) The Regional Administrator or designee shall review each loan application or loan cancellation request received from a local government to ensure that it contains the required documents and transmit the application to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. He/she may submit appropriate recommendations to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(d) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, or a designee, shall execute a Promissory Note with the local government, and the FEMA Finance Center, shall administer the loan until repayment or cancellation is completed and the Promissory Note is discharged.

(e) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee shall approve or disapprove each loan request, taking into consideration the information provided in the local government's request and the recommendations of the GAR and the Regional Administrator. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee shall approve or disapprove a request for loan cancellation in accordance with the criteria for cancellation in these regulations.

(f) The Chief Financial Officer shall establish and maintain a financial account for each outstanding loan and disburse funds against the Promissory Note.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.363 Eligibility criteria.

(a) *Local government.* (1) The local government must be located within the area designated by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate as eligible for assistance under a major disaster declaration. In addition, State law must not prohibit the local government from incurring the indebtedness resulting from a Federal loan.

(2) Criteria considered by FEMA in determining the eligibility of a local government for a Community Disaster Loan include the loss of tax and other revenues as result of a major disaster, a demonstrated need for financial assistance in order to perform its governmental functions, the maintenance of an annual operating budget, and the responsibility to provide essential municipal operating services to the community. Eligibility for other assistance under the Act does not, by itself, establish entitlement to such a loan.

(b) *Loan eligibility* —(1) *General.* To be eligible, the local government must show that it may suffer or has suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenues as a result of a major disaster or emergency, must demonstrate a need for financial assistance in order to perform its governmental functions, and must not be in arrears with respect to any payments due on previous loans. Loan eligibility is based on the financial condition of the local government and a review of financial information and supporting documentation accompanying the application.

(2) *Substantial loss of tax and other revenues.* The fiscal year of the disaster or the succeeding fiscal year is the base period for determining whether a local government may suffer or has suffered a substantial loss of revenue. Criteria used in determining whether a local government has or may suffer a substantial loss of tax and other revenue include the following disaster-related factors:

(i) Whether the disaster caused a large enough reduction in cash receipts from normal revenue sources, excluding borrowing, which affects significantly and adversely the level and/or categories of essential municipal services provided prior to the disaster;

(ii) Whether the disaster caused a revenue loss of over 5 percent of total revenue estimated for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred or for the succeeding fiscal year;

(3) *Demonstrated need for financial assistance.* The local government must demonstrate a need for financial assistance in order to perform its governmental functions. The criteria used in making this determination include the following:

(i) Whether there are sufficient funds to meet current fiscal year operating requirements;

(ii) Whether there is availability of cash or other liquid assets from the prior fiscal year;

(iii) Current financial condition considering projected expenditures for governmental services and availability of other



financial resources;

(iv) Ability to obtain financial assistance or needed revenue from State and other Federal agencies for direct program expenditures;

(v) Debt ratio (relationship of annual receipts to debt service);

(vi) Ability to obtain financial assistance or needed revenue from State and other Federal agencies for direct program expenditures;

(vii) Displacement of revenue-producing business due to property destruction;

(viii) Necessity to reduce or eliminate essential municipal services; and

(ix) Danger of municipal insolvency.

[55 FR 2314, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 66 FR 22445, May 4, 2001]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.364 Loan application.**

(a) *Application.* (1) The local government shall submit an application for a Community Disaster Loan through the GAR. The loan must be justified on the basis of need and shall be based on the actual and projected expenses, as a result of the disaster, for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred and for the 3 succeeding fiscal years. The loan application shall be prepared by the affected local government and be approved by the GAR. FEMA has determined that a local government, in applying for a loan as a result of having suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenue as a result of a major disaster, is not required to first seek credit elsewhere (see § 206.367(c)).

(2) The State exercises administrative authority over the local government's application. The State's review should include a determination that the applicant is legally qualified, under State law, to assume the proposed debt, and may include an overall review for accuracy for the submission. The Governor's Authorized Representative may request the Regional Administrator to waive the requirement for a State review if an otherwise eligible applicant is not subject to State administration authority and the State cannot legally participate in the loan application process.

(b) *Financial requirements.* (1) The loan application shall be developed from financial information contained in the local government's annual operating budget (see § 206.364(b)(2)) and shall include a Summary of Revenue Loss and Unreimbursed Disaster-Related Expenses, a Statement of the Applicant's Operating Results—Cash Position, a Debt History, Tax Assessment Data, Financial Projections, Other Information, a Certification, and the Assurances listed on the application.

(i) Copies of the local government's financial reports (Revenue and Expense and Balance Sheet) for the 3 fiscal years immediately prior to the fiscal year of the disaster and the applicant's most recent financial statement must accompany the application. The local government's financial reports to be submitted are those annual (or interim) consolidated and/or individual official annual financial presentations for the General Fund and all other funds maintained by the local government.

(ii) Each application for a Community Disaster Loan must also include:

(A) A statement by the local government identifying each fund (i.e. General Fund, etc.) which is included as its annual Operating budget, and

(B) A copy of the pertinent State statutes, ordinance, or regulations which prescribe the local government's system of budgeting, accounting and financial reporting, including a description of each fund account.

(2) *Operating budget.* For loan application purposes, the operating budget is that document or documents approved by an appropriating body, which contains an estimate of proposed expenditures, other than capital outlays for fixed assets for a stated period of time, and the proposed means of financing the expenditures. For loan cancellation purposes, FEMA interprets the term "operating budget" to mean actual revenues and expenditures of the local government as published in the official financial statements of the local government.

(3) *Operating budget increases.* Budget increases due to increases in the level of, or additions to, municipal services not rendered at the time of the disaster or not directly related to the disaster shall be identified.

(4) *Revenue and assessment information.* The applicant shall provide information concerning its method of tax assessment including assessment dates and the dates payments are due. Tax revenues assessed but not collected, or other revenues which the local government chooses to forgive, stay, or otherwise not exercise the right to collect, are not a legitimate revenue loss for purposes of evaluating the loan application.

(5) *Estimated disaster-related expense.* Unreimbursed disaster-related expenses of a municipal operating character should be estimated. These are discussed in § 206.366(b).

(c) *Federal review.* (1) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee shall approve a community disaster loan to the extent it is determined that the local government has suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenues and demonstrates a need for financial assistance to perform its governmental function as the result of the disaster.

(2) *Resubmission of application.* If a loan application is disapproved, in whole or in part, by the Assistant



Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate because of inadequacy of information, a revised application may be resubmitted by the local government within sixty days of the date of the disapproval. Decision by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate on the resubmission is final.

(d) *Community disaster loan.* (1) The loan shall not exceed the lesser of:

(i) The amount of projected revenue loss plus the projected unreimbursed disaster-related expenses of a municipal operating character for the fiscal year of the major disaster and the subsequent 3 fiscal years, or

(ii) 25 percent of the local government's annual operating budget for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred.

(2) *Promissory note.* (i) Upon approval of the loan by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee, he or she, or a designated Loan Officer will execute a Promissory Note with the applicant. The Note must be co-signed by the State (see § 206.364(d)(2)(ii)). The applicant should indicate its funding requirements on the Schedule of Loan Increments on the Note.

(ii) If the State cannot legally cosign the Promissory Note, the local government must pledge collateral security, acceptable to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, to cover the principal amount of the Note. The pledge should be in the form of a resolution by the local governing body identifying the collateral security.

[55 FR 2314, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 74 FR 15351, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.365 Loan administration.

(a) *Funding.* (1) FEMA will disburse funds to the local government when requested, generally in accordance with the Schedule of Loan Increments in the Promissory Note. As funds are disbursed, interest will accrue against each disbursement.

(2) When each incremental disbursement is requested, the local government shall submit a copy of its most recent financial report (if not submitted previously) for consideration by FEMA in determining whether the level and frequency of periodic payments continue to be justified. The local government shall also provide the latest available data on anticipated and actual tax and other revenue collections. Desired adjustments in the disbursement schedule shall be submitted in writing at least 10 days prior to the proposed disbursement date in order to ensure timely receipt of the funds. A sinking fund should be established to amortize the debt.

(b) *Financial management.* (1) Each local government with an approved Community Disaster Loan shall establish necessary accounting records, consistent with local government's financial management system, to account for loan funds received and disbursed and to provide an audit trail.

(2) FEMA auditors, State auditors, the GAR, the Regional Administrator, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, and the Comptroller General of the United States or their duly authorized representatives shall, for the purpose of audits and examination, have access to any books, documents, papers, and records that pertain to Federal funds, equipments, and supplies received under these regulations.

(c) *Loan servicing.* (1) The applicant annually shall submit to FEMA copies of its annual financial reports (operating statements, balance sheets, etc.) for the fiscal year of the major disaster, and for each of the 3 subsequent fiscal years.

(2) The Disaster Assistance Directorate, will review the loan periodically. The purpose of the reevaluation is to determine whether projected revenue losses, disaster-related expenses, operating budgets, and other factors have changed sufficiently to warrant adjustment of the scheduled disbursement of the loan proceeds.

(3) The Disaster Assistance Directorate, shall provide each loan recipient with a loan status report on a quarterly basis. The recipient will notify FEMA of any changes of the responsible municipal official who executed the Promissory Note.

(d) *Inactive loans.* If no funds have been disbursed from the Treasury, and if the local government does not anticipate a need for such funds, the note may be cancelled at any time upon a written request through the State and Regional Office to FEMA. However, since only one loan may be approved, cancellation precludes submission of a second loan application request by the same local government for the same disaster.

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.366 Loan cancellation.

(a) *Policies.* (1) FEMA shall cancel repayment of all or part of a Community Disaster Loan to the extent that the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate determines that revenues of the local government during the full three fiscal year period following the disaster are insufficient, as a result of the disaster, to meet the operating budget for the local government, including additional unreimbursed disaster-related expenses for a municipal operating character. For loan cancellation purposes, FEMA interprets that term *operating budget* to mean actual revenues and expenditures of the local government as published in the official financial statements of the local government.

(2) If the tax and other revenues rates or the tax assessment valuation of property which was not damaged or destroyed by the disaster are reduced during the 3 fiscal years subsequent to the major disaster, the tax and other revenue rates and tax assessment valuation factors applicable to such property in effect at the time of the major



disaster shall be used without reduction for purposes of computing revenues received. This may result in decreasing the potential for loan cancellations.

(3) If the local government's fiscal year is changed during the "full 3 year period following the disaster" the actual period will be modified so that the required financial data submitted covers an inclusive 36-month period.

(4) If the local government transfers funds from its operating funds accounts to its capital funds account, utilizes operating funds for other than routine maintenance purposes, or significantly increases expenditures which are not disaster related, except increases due to inflation, the annual operating budget or operating statement expenditures will be reduced accordingly for purposes of evaluating any request for loan cancellation.

(5) It is not the purpose of this loan program to underwrite predisaster budget or actual deficits of the local government. Consequently, such deficits carried forward will reduce any amounts otherwise eligible for loan cancellation.

(b) *Disaster-related expenses of a municipal operation character.* (1) For purpose of this loan, unreimbursed expenses of a municipal operating character are those incurred for general government purposes, such as police and fire protection, trash collection, collection of revenues, maintenance of public facilities, flood and other hazard insurance, and other expenses normally budgeted for the general fund, as defined by the Municipal Finance Officers Association.

(2) Disaster-related expenses do not include expenditures associated with debt service, any major repairs, rebuilding, replacement or reconstruction of public facilities or other capital projects, intragovernmental services, special assessments, and trust and agency fund operations. Disaster expenses which are eligible for reimbursement under project applications or other Federal programs are not eligible for loan cancellation.

(3) Each applicant shall maintain records including documentation necessary to identify expenditures for unreimbursed disaster-related expenses. Examples of such expenses include but are not limited to:

(i) Interest paid on money borrowed to pay amounts FEMA does not advance toward completion of approved Project Applications.

(ii) Unreimbursed costs to local governments for providing usable sites with utilities for mobile homes used to meet disaster temporary housing requirements.

(iii) Unreimbursed costs required for police and fire protection and other community services for mobile home parks established as the result of or for use following a disaster.

(iv) The cost to the applicant of flood insurance required under Public Law 93-234, as amended, and other hazard insurance required under section 311, Public Law 93-288, as amended, as a condition of Federal disaster assistance for the disaster under which the loan is authorized.

(4) The following expenses are not considered to be disaster-related for Community Disaster Loan purposes:

(i) The local government's share for assistance provided under the Act including flexible funding under section 406(c)(1) of the Act.

(ii) Improvements related to the repair or restoration of disaster public facilities approved on Project Applications.

(iii) Otherwise eligible costs for which no Federal reimbursement is requested as a part of the applicant's disaster response commitment, or cost sharing as specified in the FEMA-State Agreement for the disaster.

(iv) Expenses incurred by the local government which are reimbursed on the applicant's project application.

(c) *Cancellation application.* A local government which has drawn loan funds from the Treasury may request cancellation of the principal and related interest by submitting an Application for Loan Cancellation through the Governor's Authorized Representative to the Regional Administrator prior to the expiration date of the loan.

(1) Financial information submitted with the application shall include the following:

(i) Annual Operating Budgets for the fiscal year of the disaster and the 3 subsequent fiscal years;

(ii) Annual Financial Reports (Revenue and Expense and Balance Sheet) for each of the above fiscal years. Such financial records must include copies of the local government's annual financial reports, including operating statements balance sheets and related consolidated and individual presentations for each fund account. In addition, the local government must include an explanatory statement when figures in the Application for Loan Cancellation form differ from those in the supporting financial reports.

(iii) The following additional information concerning annual real estate property taxes pertaining to the community for each of the above fiscal years:

(A) The market value of the tax base (dollars);

(B) The assessment ratio (percent);

(C) The assessed valuation (dollars);

(D) The tax levy rate (mils);

(E) Taxes levied and collected (dollars).

(iv) Audit reports for each of the above fiscal years certifying to the validity of the Operating Statements. The



financial statements of the local government shall be examined in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by independent certified public accountants. The report should not include recommendations concerning loan cancellation or repayment.

(v) Other financial information specified in the Application for Loan Cancellation.

(2) *Narrative justification.* The application may include a narrative presentation to amplify the financial material accompanying the application and to present any extenuating circumstances which the local government wants the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate to consider in rendering a decision on the cancellation request.

(d) *Determination.* (1) If, based on a review of the Application for Loan Cancellation and FEMA audit, when determined necessary, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate determines that all or part of the Community Disaster Loan funds should be canceled, the principal amount which is canceled will become a grant, and the related interest will be forgiven. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate's determination concerning loan cancellation will specify that any uncanceled principal and related interest must be repaid immediately and that, if immediate repayment will constitute a financial hardship, the local government must submit for FEMA review and approval, a repayment schedule for settling the indebtedness on timely basis. Such repayments must be made to the Treasurer of the United States and be sent to FEMA, Attention: Chief Financial Officer.

(2) A loan or cancellation of a loan does not reduce or affect other disaster-related grants or other disaster assistance. However, no cancellation may be made that would result in a duplication of benefits to the applicant.

(3) The uncanceled portion of the loan must be repaid in accordance with § 206.367.

(4) *Appeals.* If an Application for Loan Cancellation is disapproved, in whole or in part, by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee, the local government may submit any additional information in support of the application within 60 days of the date of disapproval. The decision by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee on the submission is final.

[55 FR 2314, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 74 FR 15351, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

## **§ 206.367 Loan repayment.**

(a) *Prepayments.* The local government may make prepayments against loan at any time without any prepayment penalty.

(b) *Repayment.* To the extent not otherwise cancelled, Community Disaster Loan funds become due and payable in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Promissory Note. The note shall include the following provisions:

(1) The term of a loan made under this program is 5 years, unless extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. Interest will accrue on outstanding cash from the actual date of its disbursement by the Treasury.

(2) The interest amount due will be computed separately for each Treasury disbursement as follows:  $I = P \times R \times T$ , where I=the amount of simple interest, P=the principal amount disbursed; R=the interest rate of the loan; and, T=the outstanding term in years from the date of disbursement to date of repayment, with periods less than 1 year computed on the basis of 365 days/year. If any portion of the loan is cancelled, the interest amount due will be computed on the remaining principal with the shortest outstanding term.

(3) Each payment made against the loan will be applied first to the interest computed to the date of the payment, and then to the principal. Prepayments of scheduled installments, or any portion thereof, may be made at any time and shall be applied to the installments last to become due under the loan and shall not affect the obligation of the borrower to pay the remaining installments.

(4) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may defer payments of principal and interest until FEMA makes its final determination with respect to any Application for Loan Cancellation which the borrower may submit. However, interest will continue to accrue.

(5) Any costs incurred by the Federal Government in collecting the note shall be added to the unpaid balance of the loan, bear interest at the same rate as the loan, and be immediately due without demand.

(6) In the event of default on this note by the borrower, the FEMA claims collection officer will take action to recover the outstanding principal plus related interest under Federal debt collection authorities, including administrative offset against other Federal funds due the borrower and/or referral to the Department of Justice for judicial enforcement and collection.

(c) *Additional time.* In unusual circumstances involving financial hardship, the local government may request an additional period of time beyond the original 10 year term to repay the indebtedness. Such request may be approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate subject to the following conditions:

(1) The local government must submit documented evidence that it has applied for the same credit elsewhere and that such credit is not available at a rate equivalent to the current Treasury rate.

(2) The principal amount shall be the original uncanceled principal plus related interest.



(3) The interest rate shall be the Treasury rate in effect at the time the new Promissory Note is executed but in no case less than the original interest rate.

(4) The term of the new Promissory Note shall be for the settlement period requested by the local government but not greater than 10 years from the date the new note is executed.

 [Back to Top](#)

## §§ 206.368-206.369 [Reserved]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.370 Purpose and scope.

(a) *Purpose.* Sections 206.370 through 206.377 provide procedures for local governments and State and Federal officials concerning the Special Community Disaster Loans program under section 417 of the Stafford Act (42 U.S.C. 5184), the Community Disaster Loan Act of 2005, Public Law 109-88, and the Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, the Global War on Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006, Public Law 109-234.

(b) *Scope.* Sections 206.370 through 206.377 apply only to Special Community Disaster Loans issued under the Community Disaster Loan Act of 2005, Public Law 109-88, and the Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, the Global War on Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006, Public Law 109-234.

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005, as amended at 75 FR 2817, Jan. 19, 2010]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.371 Loan program.

(a) *General.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may make a Special Community Disaster Loan to any local government which has suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenues as a result of a major disaster and which demonstrates a need for Federal financial assistance in order to provide essential services.

(b) *Amount of loan.* The amount of the loan is based upon need, not to exceed 25 percent of the operating budget of the local government for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurs. The term fiscal year as used in this subpart means the local government's fiscal year.

(c) *Interest rate.* The interest rate is the rate for five year maturities as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury in effect on the date that the Promissory Note is executed. This rate is from the monthly Treasury schedule of certified interest rates which takes into consideration the current average yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States. If an applicant can demonstrate *unusual circumstances involving financial hardship*, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may approve a rate equal to the five year maturity rate plus 1 per centum, adjusted to the nearest  $\frac{1}{8}$  percent, and further reduced by one-half.

(d) *Time limitation.* The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may approve a loan in either the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred or the fiscal year immediately following that year.

(e) *Term of loan.* The term of the loan is 5 years, unless otherwise extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may consider a request for an extension of a loan based on the local government's financial condition. The total term of any loan under section 417(a) of the Stafford Act normally may not exceed 10 years from the date the Promissory Note was executed. However, when extenuating circumstances exist and the recipient demonstrates an inability to repay the loan within the initial 10 years, but agrees to repay such loan over an extended period of time, additional time may be provided for loan repayment (see § 206.377(c)).

(f) *Use of loan funds.* The local government shall use the loaned funds to assist in providing essential services. The funds shall not be used to finance capital improvements nor the repair or restoration of damaged public facilities. Neither the loan nor any cancelled portion of the loans may be used as the non-Federal share of any Federal program, including those under the Stafford Act.

(g) *Relation to other assistance.* Any Special Community Disaster Loans including cancellations of loans made under this subpart shall not reduce or otherwise affect any commitments, grants, or other assistance provided under the authority of the Stafford Act or this part.

(h) *Cancellation.* The Director of the Public Assistance Division shall cancel repayment of all or part of a Special Community Disaster Loan to the extent that he/she determines that revenues of the local government during the three full fiscal years following the disaster are insufficient to meet the operating budget of that local government because of disaster-related revenue losses and additional unreimbursed disaster-related municipal operating expenses.

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005, as amended at 75 FR 2817, Jan. 19, 2010]

 [Back to Top](#)



**§ 206.372 Responsibilities.**

(a) The local government shall submit the financial information required by FEMA in the application for a Community Disaster Loan or other format specified by FEMA and comply with the assurances on the application, the terms and conditions of the Promissory Note, the application for loan cancellation, if submitted, and §§ 206.370 through 206.377. The local government shall send all loan application, loan administration, loan cancellation, and loan settlement correspondence through the Governor's Authorized Representative (GAR) and the FEMA Regional Office to the Director of the Public Assistance Division.

(b) The GAR shall certify on the loan application that the local government can legally assume the proposed indebtedness and that any proceeds will be used and accounted for in compliance with the FEMA-State Agreement for the major disaster. States are encouraged to take appropriate pre-disaster action to resolve any existing State impediments which would preclude a local government from incurring the increased indebtedness associated with a loan in order to avoid protracted delays in processing loan application requests resulting from major disasters.

(c) The Regional Administrator or designee shall review each loan application or loan cancellation request received from a local government to ensure that it contains the required documents and transmit the application to the Director of the Public Assistance Division. He/she may also submit appropriate recommendations to the Director of the Public Assistance Division.

(d) The Director of the Public Assistance Division or a designee, shall execute a Promissory Note with the local government and shall administer the loan until repayment or cancellation is completed and the Promissory Note is discharged.

(e) The Director of the Public Assistance Division shall approve or disapprove each loan request, taking into consideration the information provided in the local government's request and the recommendations of the GAR and the Regional Administrator. The Director of the Public Assistance Division shall approve or disapprove a request for loan cancellation in accordance with the criteria for cancellation in these regulations.

(f) The FEMA Chief Financial Officer shall establish and maintain a financial account for each outstanding loan and disburse funds against the Promissory Note.

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005, as amended at 75 FR 2818, Jan. 19, 2010]

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.373 Eligibility criteria.**

(a) *Local government.* (1) The local government must be located within the area eligible for assistance under a major disaster declaration. In addition, State law must not prohibit the local government from incurring the indebtedness resulting from a Federal loan.

(2) Criteria considered by FEMA in determining the eligibility of a local government for a Special Community Disaster Loan include the loss of tax and other revenues as result of a major disaster, a demonstrated need for financial assistance in order to perform essential governmental functions, the maintenance of an annual operating budget, and the responsibility to provide essential services to the community. Eligibility for other assistance under the Stafford Act does not, by itself, establish entitlement to such a loan.

(b) *Loan eligibility* —(1) *General.* To be eligible, the local government must show that it may suffer or has suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenues as a result of a major disaster or emergency, and it must demonstrate a need for financial assistance in order to provide essential municipal services. Loan eligibility is based on the financial condition of the local government and a review of financial information and supporting documentation accompanying the application.

(2) *Substantial loss of tax and other revenues.* The fiscal year of the disaster or the succeeding fiscal year is the base period for determining whether a local government may suffer or has suffered a substantial loss of revenue. Criteria used in determining whether a local government has or may suffer a substantial loss of tax and other revenue include the following disaster-related factors:

(i) Whether the disaster caused a large enough reduction in cash receipts from normal revenue sources, excluding borrowing, which affects significantly and adversely the level and/or categories of essential services provided prior to the disaster;

(ii) Whether the disaster caused a revenue loss of over 5 percent of total revenue estimated for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred or for the succeeding fiscal year.

(3) *Demonstrated need for financial assistance.* The local government must demonstrate a need for financial assistance in order to perform essential governmental functions. The criteria used in making this determination may include some or all of the following factors:

(i) Whether there are sufficient funds to meet current fiscal year operating requirements;

(ii) Whether there is availability of cash or other liquid assets from the prior fiscal year;

(iii) Current financial condition considering projected expenditures for governmental services and availability of other financial resources;



(iv) Ability to obtain financial assistance or needed revenue from State and other Federal agencies for direct program expenditures;

(v) Debt ratio (relationship of annual receipts to debt service);

(vi) Displacement of revenue-producing business due to property destruction;

(vii) Necessity to reduce or eliminate essential services; and

(viii) Danger of municipal insolvency.

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.374 Loan application.**

(a) *Application.* (1) The local government shall submit an application for a Special Community Disaster Loan through the GAR. The loan must be justified on the basis of need and shall be based on the actual and projected expenses, as a result of the disaster, for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred and for the 3 succeeding fiscal years. The loan application shall be prepared by the affected local government and be approved by the GAR. FEMA has determined that a local government, in applying for a loan as a result of having suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenue as a result of a major disaster, is not required to first seek credit elsewhere (see § 206.377(c)).

(2) The State exercises administrative authority over the local government's application. The State's review should include a determination that the applicant is legally qualified, under State law, to assume the proposed debt, and may include an overall review for accuracy of the submission. The GAR may request the Regional Administrator to waive the requirement for a State review if an otherwise eligible applicant is not subject to State administration authority and the State cannot legally participate in the loan application process.

(b) *Financial requirements.* (1) The loan application shall be developed from financial information contained in the local government's annual operating budget (see paragraph (b)(2) of this section) and shall include a Summary of Revenue Loss and Unreimbursed Disaster-Related Expenses, a Statement of the Applicant's Operating Results—Cash Position, and certification and assurances requested by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(i) Copies of the local government's financial reports (Revenue and Expense and Balance Sheet) for the 3 fiscal years immediately prior to the fiscal year of the disaster and the applicant's most recent financial statement must, unless impracticable, accompany the application. The local government's financial reports to be submitted are those annual (or interim) consolidated and/or individual official annual financial presentations for the General Fund and all other funds maintained by the local government.

(ii) Each application for a Special Community Disaster Loan must also include:

(A) A statement by the local government identifying each fund (i.e. General Fund, etc.) which is included as its annual Operating budget, and

(B) A copy of the pertinent State statutes, ordinances, or regulations which prescribe the local government's system of budgeting, accounting and financial reporting, including a description of each fund account.

(2) *Operating budget.* For loan application purposes, the operating budget is that document or documents approved by an appropriating body, which contains an estimate of proposed expenditures, other than capital outlays for fixed assets for a stated period of time, and the proposed means of financing the expenditures. For loan cancellation purposes, FEMA interprets the term "operating budget" to mean actual revenues and expenditures of the local government as published in the official financial statements of the local government.

(3) *Operating budget increases.* Budget increases due to increases in the level of, or additions to, municipal services not rendered at the time of the disaster or not directly related to the disaster shall be identified.

(4) *Revenue and assessment information.* The applicant shall provide information concerning its method of tax assessment including assessment dates and the dates payments are due.

(5) *Estimated disaster-related expense.* Unreimbursed disaster-related expenses of a municipal operating character should be estimated.

(c) *Federal review.* (1) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee shall approve a Special Community Disaster Loan to the extent it is determined that the local government has suffered a substantial loss of tax and other revenues and demonstrates a need for financial assistance as the result of the disaster to provide essential municipal services.

(2) *Resubmission of application.* If a loan application is disapproved, in whole or in part, by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate because of inadequacy of information, a revised application may be submitted by the local government within sixty days of the date of the disapproval. Decision by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate on the resubmission is final.

(d) *Special Community Disaster Loan.* (1) The loan shall not exceed the lesser of:

(i) The amount of projected revenue loss plus the projected unreimbursed disaster-related expenses of a municipal



operating character for the fiscal year of the major disaster and the subsequent 3 fiscal years, or

(ii) 25 percent of the local government's annual operating budget for the fiscal year in which the disaster occurred.

(2) *Promissory note.* (i) Upon approval of the loan by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate or designee, he or she, or a designated Loan Officer will execute a Promissory Note with the applicant. The Note must be co-signed by the State (see paragraph (d)(2)(ii) of this section). The applicant should indicate its funding requirements on the Schedule of Loan Increments on the Note.

(ii) If the State cannot legally cosign the Promissory Note, the local government must pledge collateral security, acceptable to the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, to cover the principal amount of the Note. The pledge should be in the form of a resolution by the local governing body identifying the collateral security.

(e) *Waiver of requirements.* Notwithstanding any other provision of this or other sections promulgated pursuant to Public Law 109-88, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may, upon the request of an applicant or loan recipient, waive any specific application requirement or financial reporting requirement (see, e.g., § 206.375(a)(2)) upon a finding by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate that the effects of the major disaster prevent the applicant from fulfilling the application requirement and that waiving the requirements would be consistent with the purposes of the Community Disaster Loan Act of 2005.

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005, as amended at 75 FR 2818, Jan. 19, 2010]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.375 Loan administration.

(a) *Funding.* (1) FEMA will disburse funds to the local government when requested, generally in accordance with the Schedule of Loan Increments in the Promissory Note. As funds are disbursed, interest will accrue against each disbursement.

(2) When each incremental disbursement is requested, the local government shall submit a copy of its most recent financial report (if not submitted previously) for consideration by FEMA in determining whether the level and frequency of periodic payments continue to be justified. The local government shall also provide the latest available data on anticipated and actual tax and other revenue collections. Desired adjustments in the disbursement schedule shall be submitted in writing at least 10 days prior to the proposed disbursement date in order to ensure timely receipt of the funds.

(b) *Financial management.* (1) Each local government with an approved Special Community Disaster Loan shall establish necessary accounting records, consistent with local government's financial management system, to account for loan funds received and disbursed and to provide an audit trail.

(2) FEMA auditors, State auditors, the GAR, the Regional Administrator, the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate, the Department of Homeland Security Inspector General, and the Comptroller General of the United States or their duly authorized representatives shall, for the purpose of audits and examination, have access to any books, documents, papers, and records that pertain to Federal funds, equipments, and supplies received under §§ 206.370 through 206.377.

(c) *Loan servicing.* (1) The applicant annually shall submit to FEMA copies of its annual financial reports (operating statements, balance sheets, etc.) for the fiscal year of the major disaster, and for each of the 3 subsequent fiscal years.

(2) FEMA will review the loan periodically. The purpose of the reevaluation is to determine whether projected revenue losses, disaster-related expenses, operating budgets, and other factors have changed sufficiently to warrant adjustment of the scheduled disbursement of the loan proceeds.

(3) FEMA shall provide each loan recipient with a loan status report on a quarterly basis. The recipient will notify FEMA of any changes of the responsible municipal official who executed the Promissory Note.

(d) *Inactive loans.* If no funds have been disbursed from the loan program, and if the local government does not anticipate a need for such funds, the note may be cancelled at any time upon a written request through the State and Regional Office to FEMA.

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.376 Loan cancellation.

(a) FEMA shall cancel repayment of all or part of a Special Community Disaster Loan to the extent that the Director of the Public Assistance Division determines that revenues of the local government during the three-full-fiscal-year period following the disaster are insufficient, as a result of the disaster, to meet the operating budget for the local government, including additional unreimbursed disaster-related expenses of a municipal operating character.

(b) *Definitions.* For loan cancellation purposes,

(1) "Operating budget" means actual revenues and expenditures of the local government as published in the official financial statements of the local government.



(2) "Revenue" means any source of income from taxes, fees, fines, and other sources of income, and will be recognized only as they become susceptible to accrual (measurable and available).

(3) "Three-full-fiscal-year period following the disaster" means either a 36-month period beginning on September 1, 2005, or the 36 months of the applicant's fiscal year as established before the disaster, at the applicant's discretion.

(4) "Operating expenses" means those expenses and expenditures incurred as a result of performing services, including salaries and benefits, contractual services, and commodities. Capital expenditures and debt service payments and capital leases are not considered operating expenses. Under accrual accounting, expenses are recognized as soon as a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of related cash flows.

(c) *Revenue Calculation procedures.* (1) If the tax rates and other revenues or the tax assessment valuation of property which was not damaged or destroyed by the disaster are reduced during the three full fiscal years subsequent to the major disaster, the tax rates and other revenues and tax assessment valuation factors applicable to such property in effect at the time of the major disaster shall be used without reduction for purposes of computing revenues received.

(2) At the applicant's discretion, the three-full-fiscal-year period following the disaster is either a 36-month period beginning on September 1, 2005 or the 36 months of the applicant's fiscal year as established before the disaster. If the applicant's fiscal year is changed within the 36 months immediately following the disaster, the actual period will be modified so that the required financial data submitted covers an inclusive 36-month period. Should the applicant elect the 36-month period beginning September 1, 2005, FEMA will prorate the revenues and expenses for the partial years based on the applicant's annual financial statements.

(3) If the local government transfers funds from its operating funds accounts to its capital funds account, utilizes operating funds for other than routine maintenance purposes, or significantly increases expenditures which are not disaster related, except increases due to inflation, the annual operating budget or operating statement expenditures will be reduced accordingly for purposes of evaluating any request for loan cancellation.

(4) Notwithstanding paragraph (c)(3) of this section, the amount of property taxes that are transferred to other funds for Debt Service or Pension Obligations funding will not be excluded from the calculation of the operating budget or from expenditures in calculation of the operating deficit, to the extent that the property tax revenues in the General Fund are less than they were pre-disaster. FEMA will consider the impact of the loss of property tax revenue in Debt Service or Pension Funds (non-operating funds) if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) The entity experienced a loss of property tax revenue as a result of the disaster and the assessed value during the three years following the disaster, in the aggregate, is less than the pre-disaster assessed value;

(ii) the entity has a property tax cap limitation on the ability to raise property taxes post-disaster; and

(iii) the property taxes are levied through the General Operating Fund and transfers for obligations mandated by law are made to fund Debt Service or Pension Obligations which result in the entity experiencing a reduction of property tax revenues in the General Fund.

(5) It is not the purpose of this loan program to underwrite pre-disaster budget or actual deficits of the local government. Consequently, such deficits carried forward will reduce any amounts otherwise eligible for loan cancellation.

(6) The provisions of this section apply to all Special Community Disaster loans issued from the dates of enactment of Public Law 109-88 and Public Law 109-234.

(d) *Disaster-related expenses of a municipal operation character.* (1) For purposes of this loan, unreimbursed expenses of a municipal operating character are those incurred for general government purposes, including but not limited to police and fire protection, trash collection, collection of revenues, maintenance of public facilities, flood and other hazard insurance.

(2) Disaster-related expenses do not include expenditures associated with debt service, any major repairs, rebuilding, replacement or reconstruction of public facilities or other capital projects, intragovernmental services, special assessments, and trust and agency fund operations. Disaster expenses which are eligible for reimbursement under project applications or other Federal programs are not eligible for loan cancellation.

(3) Each applicant shall maintain records including documentation necessary to identify expenditures for unreimbursed disaster-related expenses. Examples of such expenses include but are not limited to:

(i) Interest paid on money borrowed to pay amounts FEMA does not advance toward completion of approved Project Applications.

(ii) Unreimbursed costs to local governments for providing usable sites with utilities for mobile homes used to meet disaster temporary housing requirements.

(iii) Unreimbursed costs required for police and fire protection and other community services for mobile home parks established as the result of or for use following a disaster.

(iv) The cost to the applicant of flood insurance required under Public Law 93-234, as amended, and other hazard insurance required under section 311, Public Law 93-288, as amended, as a condition of Federal disaster assistance for the disaster under which the loan is authorized.

(4) The following expenses are not considered to be disaster-related for Special Community Disaster Loan purposes:



(i) The local government's share for assistance provided under the Stafford Act including flexible funding under section 406(c)(1) of the Act (42 U.S.C. 5172).

(ii) Improvements related to the repair or restoration of disaster public facilities approved on Project Applications.

(iii) Otherwise eligible costs for which no Federal reimbursement is requested as a part of the applicant's disaster response commitment, or cost sharing as specified in the FEMA-State Agreement for the disaster.

(iv) Expenses incurred by the local government which are reimbursed on the applicant's Project Application.

(e) *Cancellation application.* A local government which has drawn loan funds from the U.S. Treasury may request cancellation of the principal and related interest by submitting an Application for Loan Cancellation through the Governor's Authorized Representative to the Regional Administrator prior to the expiration date of the loan.

(1) Financial information submitted with the application shall include the following:

(i) Annual Operating Budgets for the fiscal year of the disaster and the three subsequent fiscal years;

(ii) Annual Financial Reports (Revenue and Expense and Balance Sheet) for each of the above fiscal years. Such financial records must include copies of the local government's annual financial reports, including operating statements and balance sheets and related consolidated and individual presentations for each fund account. In addition, the local government must include an explanatory statement when figures in the Application for Loan Cancellation form differ from those in the supporting financial reports.

(iii) The following additional information concerning annual real estate property taxes pertaining to the community for each of the above fiscal years:

(A) The market value of the tax base (dollars);

(B) The assessment ratio (percent);

(C) The assessed valuation (dollars);

(D) The tax levy rate (mils);

(E) Taxes levied and collected (dollars).

(iv) Audit reports for each of the above fiscal years certifying to the validity of the Operating Statements. The financial statements of the local government shall be examined in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by independent certified public accountants. The report should not include recommendations concerning loan cancellation or repayment.

(v) Other financial information specified in the Application for Loan Cancellation.

(2) *Narrative justification.* The application may include a narrative presentation to supplement the financial material accompanying the application and to present any extenuating circumstances which the local government wants the Director of the Public Assistance Division to consider in rendering a decision on the cancellation request.

(f) *Determination.* (1) The Director of the Public Assistance Division will make a cancellation determination within 60 days of the date the applicant submits all required and requested information, including documentation in support of unreimbursed disaster related expenses.

(2) If, based on a review of the Application for Loan Cancellation and FEMA audit, the Director of the Public Assistance Division determines that all or part of the Special Community Disaster Loan funds should be canceled, the amount of principal canceled and the related interest will be forgiven. The Director of the Public Assistance Division's determination concerning loan cancellation will specify that any uncanceled principal and related interest must be repaid in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Promissory Note, and that, if repayment will constitute a financial hardship, the local government must submit for FEMA review and approval, a repayment schedule for settling the indebtedness on a timely basis. Such repayments must be made to the Treasurer of the United States and be sent to FEMA, Attention: Office of the Chief Financial Officer.

(3) A loan or cancellation of a loan does not reduce or affect other disaster-related grants or other disaster assistance. However, no cancellation may be made that would result in a duplication of benefits to the applicant.

(4) The uncanceled portion of the loan must be repaid in accordance with § 206.377.

(5) *Appeals.* If an Application for Loan Cancellation is disapproved, in whole or in part, by the Director of the Public Assistance Division, the local government may submit any additional information in support of the application within 60 days of the date of disapproval. The decision by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate on the additional information is final.

[75 FR 2818, Jan. 19, 2010]

 [Back to Top](#)

## § 206.377 Loan repayment.

(a) *Prepayments.* The local government may make prepayments against loan at any time without any prepayment penalty.



(b) *Repayment.* To the extent not otherwise cancelled, loan funds become due and payable in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Promissory Note. The note shall include the following provisions:

(1) The term of a loan made under this program is 5 years, unless extended by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate. Interest will accrue on outstanding cash from the actual date of its disbursement by FEMA or FEMA's designated Disbursing Agency.

(2) The interest amount due will be computed separately for each Treasury disbursement as follows:  $I = P \times R \times T$ , where I = the amount of simple interest, P = the principal amount disbursed; R = the interest rate of the loan; and, T = the outstanding term in years from the date of disbursement to date of repayment, with periods less than 1 year computed on the basis of 365 days/year. If any portion of the loan is cancelled, the interest amount due will be computed on the remaining principal with the shortest outstanding term.

(3) Each payment made against the loan will be applied first to the interest computed to the date of the payment, and then to the principal. Prepayments of scheduled installments, or any portion thereof, may be made at any time and shall be applied to the installments last to become due under the loan and shall not affect the obligation of the borrower to pay the remaining installments.

(4) The Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may defer payments of principal and interest until FEMA makes its final determination with respect to any Application for Loan Cancellation which the borrower may submit. However, interest will continue to accrue.

(5) Any costs incurred by the Federal Government in collecting the note shall be added to the unpaid balance of the loan, bear interest at the same rate as the loan, and be immediately due without demand.

(6) In the event of default on this note by the borrower, the FEMA claims collection officer will take action to recover the outstanding principal plus related interest under Federal debt collection authorities, including administrative offset against other Federal funds due the borrower and/or referral to the Department of Justice for judicial enforcement and collection.

(c) *Additional time.* In unusual circumstances involving financial hardship, the local government may request an additional period of time beyond the original 10 year term to repay the indebtedness. Such request may be approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate subject to the following conditions:

(1) The local government must submit documented evidence that it has applied for the same credit elsewhere and that such credit is not available at a rate equivalent to the current Treasury rate.

(2) The principal amount shall be the original uncanceled principal plus related interest less any payments made.

(3) The interest rate shall be the Treasury rate in effect at the time the new Promissory Note is executed but in no case less than the original interest rate. A reduced rate may not be applied if it was not previously applied to the loan.

(4) The term of the new Promissory Note shall be for the settlement period requested by the local government but not greater than 10 years from the date the new note is executed.

[70 FR 60446, Oct. 18, 2005, as amended at 75 FR 2820, Jan. 19, 2010]

 [Back to Top](#)

**§§ 206.378-206.389 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

**Subpart L—Fire Suppression Assistance**

SOURCE: 55 FR 2318, Jan. 23, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.390 General.**

When the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate determines that a fire or fires threaten such destruction as would constitute a major disaster, assistance may be authorized, including grants, equipment, supplies, and personnel, to any State for the suppression of any fire on publicly or privately owned forest or grassland.

 [Back to Top](#)

**§ 206.391 FEMA-State Agreement.**

Federal assistance under section 420 of the Act is provided in accordance with a continuing FEMA-State



Agreement for Fire Suppression Assistance (the Agreement) signed by the Governor and the Regional Administrator. The Agreement contains the necessary terms and conditions, consistent with the provisions of applicable laws, Executive Orders, and regulations, as the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate may require and specifies the type and extent of Federal assistance. The Governor may designate authorized representatives to execute requests and certifications and otherwise act for the State during fire emergencies. Supplemental agreements shall be executed as required to update the continuing Agreement.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.392 Request for assistance.**

When a Governor determines that fire suppression assistance is warranted, a request for assistance may be initiated. Such request shall specify in detail the factors supporting the request for assistance. In order that all actions in processing a State request are executed as rapidly as possible, the State may submit a telephone request to the Regional Administrator, promptly followed by a confirming telegram or letter.

[55 FR 2318, Jan. 23, 1990, as amended at 74 FR 15352, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.393 Providing assistance.**

Following the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate's decision on the State request, the Regional Administrator will notify the Governor and the Federal firefighting agency involved. The Regional Administrator may request assistance from Federal agencies if requested by the State. For each fire or fire situation, the State shall prepare a separate Fire Project Application based on Federal Damage Survey Reports and submit it to the Regional Administrator for approval.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.394 Cost eligibility.**

(a) *Cost principles.* See 44 CFR 13.22, Allowable Costs, and the associated OMB Circular A-87, Cost Principles for State and Local Governments.

(b) *Program specific eligible costs.* (1) Expenses to provide field camps and meals when made available to the eligible employees in lieu of per diem costs.

(2) Costs for use of publicly owned equipment used on eligible fire suppression work based on reasonable State equipment rates.

(3) Costs to the State for use of U.S. Government-owned equipment based on reasonable costs as billed by the Federal agency and paid by the State. Only direct costs for use of Federal Excess Personal Property (FEPP) vehicles and equipment on loan to State Forestry and local cooperators, can be paid.

(4) Cost of firefighting tools, materials, and supplies expended or lost, to the extent not covered by reasonable insurance.

(5) Replacement value of equipment lost in fire suppression, to the extent not covered by reasonable insurance.

(6) Costs for personal comfort and safety items normally provided by the State under field conditions for firefighter health and safety.

(7) Mobilization and demobilization costs directly relating to the Federal fire suppression assistance approved by the Assistant Administrator for the Disaster Assistance Directorate.

(8) Eligible costs of local governmental firefighting organizations which are reimbursed by the State pursuant to an existing cooperative mutual aid agreement, in suppressing an approved incident fire.

(9) State costs for suppressing fires on Federal land in cases in which the State has a responsibility under a cooperative agreement to perform such action on a nonreimbursable basis. This provision is an exception to normal FEMA policy under the Act and is intended to accommodate only those rare instances that involve State fire suppression of section 420 incident fires involving co-mingled Federal/State and privately owned forest or grassland.

(10) In those instances in which assistance under section 420 of the Act is provided in conjunction with existing Interstate Forest Fire Protection Compacts, eligible costs are reimbursed in accordance with eligibility criteria established in this section.

(c) *Program specific ineligible costs.* (1) Any costs for presuppression, salvaging timber, restoring facilities, seeding and planting operations.

(2) Any costs not incurred during the incident period as determined by the Regional Administrator other than reasonable and directly related mobilization and demobilization costs.



(3) State costs for suppressing a fire on co-mingled Federal land where such costs are reimbursable to the State by a Federal agency under another statute (see 44 CFR part 151).

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.395 Grant administration.**

(a) Project administration shall be in accordance with 44 CFR part 13, and applicable portions of subpart G, 44 CFR part 206.

(b) In those instances in which reimbursement includes State fire suppression assistance on co-mingled State and Federal lands (§ 206.394(b)(9)), the Regional Administrator shall coordinate with other Federal programs to preclude any duplication of payments. (See 44 CFR part 151.)

(c) Audits shall be in accordance with the Single Audit Act of 1984, Pub. L. 98-502. (See subpart G of this part.)

(d) A State may appeal a determination by the Regional Administrator on any action related to Federal assistance for fire suppression. Appeal procedures are contained in 44 CFR 206.206.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§§ 206.396-206.399 [Reserved]**

 [Back to Top](#)

### **Subpart M—Minimum Standards**

SOURCE: 67 FR 8852, Feb. 26, 2002, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.400 General.**

(a) As a condition of the receipt of any disaster assistance under the Stafford Act, the applicant shall carry out any repair or construction to be financed with the disaster assistance in accordance with applicable standards of safety, decency, and sanitation and in conformity with applicable codes, specifications and standards.

(b) Applicable codes, specifications, and standards shall include any disaster resistant building code that meets the minimum requirements of the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) as well as being substantially equivalent to the recommended provisions of the National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program (NEHRP). In addition, the applicant shall comply with any requirements necessary in regards to Executive Order 11988, Floodplain Management, Executive Order 12699, Seismic Safety of Federal and Federally Assisted or Regulated New Building Construction, and any other applicable Executive orders.

(c) In situations where there are no locally applicable standards of safety, decency and sanitation, or where there are no applicable local codes, specifications and standards governing repair or construction activities, or where the Regional Administrator determines that otherwise applicable codes, specifications, and standards are inadequate, then the Regional Administrator may, after consultation with appropriate State and local officials, require the use of nationally applicable codes, specifications, and standards, as well as safe land use and construction practices in the course of repair or construction activities.

(d) The mitigation planning process that is mandated by section 322 of the Stafford Act and 44 CFR part 201 can assist State and local governments in determining where codes, specifications, and standards are inadequate, and may need to be upgraded.

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.401 Local standards.**

The cost of repairing or constructing a facility in conformity with minimum codes, specifications and standards may be eligible for reimbursement under section 406 of the Stafford Act, as long as such codes, specifications, and standards meet the criteria that are listed at 44 CFR 206.226(d).

[74 FR 47482, Sept. 16, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.402 Compliance.**



A recipient of disaster assistance under the Stafford Act must document for the Regional Administrator its compliance with this subpart following the completion of any repair or construction activities.

 [Back to Top](#)

## Subpart N—Hazard Mitigation Grant Program

SOURCE: 55 FR 35537, Aug. 30, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 206.430 General.

This subpart provides guidance on the administration of hazard mitigation grants made under the provisions of section 404 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, 42 U.S.C. 5170c, hereafter Stafford Act, or the Act.

[59 FR 24356, May 11, 1994]

 [Back to Top](#)

### § 206.431 Definitions.

*Activity* means any mitigation measure, project, or action proposed to reduce risk of future damage, hardship, loss or suffering from disasters.

*Applicant* means a State agency, local government, Indian tribal government, or eligible private nonprofit organization, submitting an application to the grantee for assistance under the HMGP.

*Enhanced State Mitigation Plan* is the hazard mitigation plan approved under 44 CFR part 201 as a condition of receiving increased funding under the HMGP.

*Grant application* means the request to FEMA for HMGP funding, as outlined in § 206.436, by a State or tribal government that will act as grantee.

*Grant award* means total of Federal and non-Federal contributions to complete the approved scope of work.

*Grantee* means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document. Generally, the State for which the major disaster is declared is the grantee. However, an Indian tribal government may choose to be a grantee, or it may act as a subgrantee under the State. An Indian tribal government acting as a grantee will assume the responsibilities of a “state”, under this subpart, for the purposes of administering the grant.

*Indian Tribal government* means any Federally recognized governing body of an Indian or Alaska Native Tribe, band, nation, pueblo, village, or community that the Secretary of Interior acknowledges to exist as an Indian Tribe under the Federally Recognized Indian Tribe List Act of 1994, 25 U.S.C. 479a. This does not include Alaska Native corporations, the ownership of which is vested in private individuals.

*Local Mitigation Plan* is the hazard mitigation plan required of a local government acting as a subgrantee as a condition of receiving a project subgrant under the HMGP as outlined in 44 CFR 201.6.

*Standard State Mitigation Plan* is the hazard mitigation plan approved under 44 CFR part 201, as a condition of receiving Stafford Act assistance as outlined in § 201.4.

*State Administrative Plan for the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program* means the plan developed by the State to describe the procedures for administration of the HMGP.

*Subgrant* means an award of financial assistance under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee.

*Subgrant application* means the request to the grantee for HMGP funding by the eligible subgrantee, as outlined in § 206.436.

*Subgrantee* means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided. Subgrantees can be a State agency, local government, private non-profit organizations, or Indian tribal government as outlined in § 206.433. Indian tribal governments acting as a subgrantee are accountable to the State grantee.

*Tribal Mitigation Plan* is the hazard mitigation plan required of an Indian Tribal government acting as a grantee or subgrantee as a condition of receiving a project grant or subgrant under the HMGP as outlined in 44 CFR 201.7.

[67 FR 8852, Feb. 26, 2002, as amended at 74 FR 47482, Sept. 16, 2009; 74 FR 60214, Nov. 20, 2009]





[Back to Top](#)**§ 206.432 Federal grant assistance.**

(a) *General.* This section describes the extent of Federal funding available under the State's grant, as well as limitations and special procedures applicable to each.

(b) *Amounts of Assistance.* The total Federal contribution of funds is based on the estimated aggregate grant amount to be made under 42 U.S.C. 5170b, 5172, 5173, 5174, 5177, and 5183 of the Stafford Act for the major disaster (less associated administrative costs), and shall be as follows:

(1) *Standard percentages.* Not to exceed 15 percent for the first \$2,000,000,000 or less of such amounts; not to exceed 10 percent of the portion of such amounts over \$2,000,000,000 and not more than \$10,000,000,000; and not to exceed 7.5 percent of the portion of such amounts over \$10,000,000,000 and not more than \$35,333,000,000.

(2) *Twenty (20) percent.* A State with an approved Enhanced State Mitigation Plan, in effect before the disaster declaration, which meets the requirements outlined in § 201.5 of this subchapter shall be eligible for assistance under the HMGP not to exceed 20 percent of such amounts, for amounts not more than \$35.333 billion.

(3) The estimates of Federal assistance under this paragraph (b) shall be based on the Regional Administrator's estimate of all eligible costs, actual grants, and appropriate mission assignments.

(c) *Cost sharing.* All mitigation measures approved under the State's grant will be subject to the cost sharing provisions established in the FEMA-State Agreement. FEMA may contribute up to 75 percent of the cost of measures approved for funding under the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program for major disasters declared on or after June 10, 1993. FEMA may contribute up to 50 percent of the cost of measures approved for funding under the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program for major disasters declared before June 10, 1993. The nonFederal share may exceed the Federal share. FEMA will not contribute to costs above the Federally approved estimate.

[55 FR 35537, Aug. 30, 1990, as amended at 59 FR 24356, May 11, 1994; 67 FR 8853, Feb. 26, 2002; 67 FR 61515, Oct. 1, 2002; 69 FR 55097, Sept. 13, 2004; 72 FR 61750, Oct. 31, 2007; 74 FR 47482, Sept. 16, 2009]

[Back to Top](#)**§ 206.433 State responsibilities.**

(a) *Grantee.* The State will be the Grantee to which funds are awarded and will be accountable for the use of those funds. There may be subgrantees within the State government.

(b) *Priorities.* The State will determine priorities for funding. This determination must be made in conformance with § 206.435.

(c) *Hazard Mitigation Officer.* The State must appoint a Hazard Mitigation Officer who serves as the responsible individual for all matters related to the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program.

(d) *Administrative plan.* The State must have an approved administrative plan for the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program in conformance with § 206.437.

[55 FR 35537, Aug. 30, 1990, as amended at 72 FR 61750, Oct. 31, 2007]

[Back to Top](#)**§ 206.434 Eligibility.**

(a) *Applicants.* The following are eligible to apply for the Hazard Mitigation Program Grant:

(1) State and local governments;

(2) Private nonprofit organizations that own or operate a private nonprofit facility as defined in § 206.221(e). A qualified conservation organization as defined at § 80.3(h) of this chapter is the only private nonprofit organization eligible to apply for acquisition or relocation for open space projects;

(3) Indian tribes or authorized tribal organizations and Alaska Native villages or organizations, but not Alaska native corporations with ownership vested in private individuals.

(b) *Plan requirement.* (1) Local and Indian Tribal government applicants for project subgrants must have an approved local or Tribal Mitigation Plan in accordance with 44 CFR part 201 before receipt of HMGP subgrant funding for projects.

(2) Regional Administrators may grant an exception to this requirement in extraordinary circumstances, such as in a small and impoverished community when justification is provided. In these cases, a plan will be completed within 12 months of the award of the project grant. If a plan is not provided within this timeframe, the project grant will be terminated, and any costs incurred after notice of grant's termination will not be reimbursed by FEMA.

(c) *Minimum project criteria.* To be eligible for the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program, a project must:



(1) Be in conformance with the State Mitigation Plan and Local or Tribal Mitigation Plan approved under 44 CFR part 201; or for Indian Tribal governments acting as grantees, be in conformance with the Tribal Mitigation Plan approved under 44 CFR 201.7;

(2) Have a beneficial impact upon the designated disaster area, whether or not located in the designated area;

(3) Be in conformance with 44 CFR part 9, Floodplain Management and Protection of Wetlands, and 44 CFR part 10, Environmental Considerations;

(4) Solve a problem independently or constitute a functional portion of a solution where there is assurance that the project as a whole will be completed. Projects that merely identify or analyze hazards or problems are not eligible;

(5) Be cost-effective and substantially reduce the risk of future damage, hardship, loss, or suffering resulting from a major disaster. The grantee must demonstrate this by documenting that the project;

(i) Addresses a problem that has been repetitive, or a problem that poses a significant risk to public health and safety if left unsolved,

(ii) Will not cost more than the anticipated value of the reduction in both direct damages and subsequent negative impacts to the area if future disasters were to occur,

(iii) Has been determined to be the most practical, effective, and environmentally sound alternative after consideration of a range of options,

(iv) Contributes, to the extent practicable, to a long-term solution to the problem it is intended to address,

(v) Considers long-term changes to the areas and entities it protects, and has manageable future maintenance and modification requirements.

(d) *Eligible activities* —(1) *Planning*. Up to 7% of the State's HMGP grant may be used to develop State, tribal and/or local mitigation plans to meet the planning criteria outlined in 44 CFR part 201.

(2) *Types of projects*. Projects may be of any nature that will result in protection to public or private property. Activities for which implementation has already been initiated or completed are not eligible for funding. Eligible projects include, but are not limited to:

(i) Structural hazard control or protection projects;

(ii) Construction activities that will result in protection from hazards;

(iii) Retrofitting of facilities;

(iv) Property acquisition or relocation, as defined in paragraph (e) of this section;

(v) Development of State or local mitigation standards;

(vi) Development of comprehensive mitigation programs with implementation as an essential component;

(vii) Development or improvement of warning systems.

(e) *Property acquisitions and relocation requirements*. Property acquisitions and relocation projects for open space proposed for funding pursuant to a major disaster declared on or after December 3, 2007 must be implemented in accordance with part 80 of this chapter. For major disasters declared before December 3, 2007, a project involving property acquisition or the relocation of structures and individuals is eligible for assistance only if the applicant enters into an agreement with the FEMA Regional Administrator that provides assurances that:

(1) The following restrictive covenants shall be conveyed in the deed to any property acquired, accepted, or from which structures are removed (hereafter called in section (d) the property):

(i) The property shall be dedicated and maintained in perpetuity for uses compatible with open space, recreational, or wetlands management practices; and

(ii) No new structure(s) will be built on the property except as indicated below:

(A) A public facility that is open on all sides and functionally related to a designated open space or recreational use;

(B) A rest room; or

(C) A structure that is compatible with open space, recreational, or wetlands management usage and proper floodplain management policies and practices, which the Administrator approves in writing before the construction of the structure begins.

(iii) After completion of the project, no application for additional disaster assistance will be made for any purpose with respect to the property to any Federal entity or source, and no Federal entity or source will provide such assistance.

(2) In general, allowable open space, recreational, and wetland management uses include parks for outdoor recreational activities, nature reserves, cultivation, grazing, camping (except where adequate warning time is not available to allow evacuation), temporary storage in the open of wheeled vehicles which are easily movable (except mobile homes), unimproved, previous parking lots, and buffer zones.



(3) Any structures built on the property according to paragraph (d)(1) of this section, shall be floodproofed or elevated to the Base Flood Elevation plus one foot of freeboard.

(f) *Duplication of programs.* Section 404 funds cannot be used as a substitute or replacement to fund projects or programs that are available under other Federal authorities, except under limited circumstances in which there are extraordinary threats to lives, public health or safety or improved property.

(g) *Packaging of programs.* Section 404 funds may be packaged or used in combination with other Federal, State, local, or private funding sources when appropriate to develop a comprehensive mitigation solution, though section 404 funds cannot be used as a match for other Federal funds.

[55 FR 35537, Aug. 30, 1990, as amended at 59 FR 24356, May 11, 1994; 67 FR 8853, Feb. 26, 2002; 67 FR 61515, Oct. 1, 2002; 69 FR 55097, Sept. 13, 2004; 72 FR 61750, Oct. 31, 2007; 74 FR 47483, Sept. 16, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.435 Project identification and selection criteria.

(a) *Identification.* It is the State's responsibility to identify and select eligible hazard mitigation projects. All funded projects must be consistent with the State Mitigation Plan. Hazard Mitigation projects shall be identified and prioritized through the State, Indian tribal, and local planning process.

(b) *Selection.* The State will establish procedures and priorities for the selection of mitigation measures. At a minimum, the criteria must be consistent with the criteria stated in § 206.434(c) and include:

(1) Measures that best fit within an overall plan for development and/or hazard mitigation in the community, disaster area, or State;

(2) Measures that, if not taken, will have a severe detrimental impact on the applicant, such as potential loss of life, loss of essential services, damage to critical facilities, or economic hardship on the community;

(3) Measures that have the greatest potential impact on reducing future disaster losses;

(c) *Other considerations.* In addition to the selection criteria noted above, consideration should be given to measures that are designed to accomplish multiple objectives including damage reduction, environmental enhancement, and economic recovery, when appropriate.

[55 FR 35537, Aug. 30, 1990, as amended at 66 FR 8853, Feb. 26, 2002; 68 FR 63738, Nov. 10, 2003]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### § 206.436 Application procedures.

(a) *General.* This section describes the procedures to be used by the grantee in submitting an application for HMGP funding. Under the HMGP, the State or Indian tribal government is the grantee and is responsible for processing subgrants to applicants in accordance with 44 CFR part 13 and this part 206. Subgrantees are accountable to the grantee.

(b) *Governor's Authorized Representative.* The Governor's Authorized Representative serves as the grant administrator for all funds provided under the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program. The Governor's Authorized Representative's responsibilities as they pertain to procedures outlined in this section include providing technical advice and assistance to eligible subgrantees, and ensuring that all potential applicants are aware of assistance available and submission of those documents necessary for grant award.

(c) *Hazard mitigation application.* Upon identification of mitigation measures, the State (Governor's Authorized Representative) will submit its Hazard Mitigation Grant Program application to the FEMA Regional Administrator. The application will identify one or more mitigation measures for which funding is requested. The application must include a Standard Form (SF) 424, Application for Federal Assistance, SF 424D, Assurances for Construction Programs, if appropriate, and a narrative statement. The narrative statement will contain any pertinent project management information not included in the State's administrative plan for Hazard Mitigation. The narrative statement will also serve to identify the specific mitigation measures for which funding is requested. Information required for each mitigation measure shall include the following:

(1) Name of the subgrantee, if any;

(2) State or local contact for the measure;

(3) Location of the project;

(4) Description of the measure;

(5) Cost estimate for the measure;

(6) Analysis of the measure's cost-effectiveness and substantial risk reduction, consistent with § 206.434(c);

(7) Work schedule;



(8) Justification for selection;

(9) Alternatives considered;

(10) Environmental information consistent with 44 CFR part 9, Floodplain Management and Protection of Wetlands, and 44 CFR part 10, Environmental Considerations.

(d) *Application submission time limit.* The State's application may be amended as the State identifies and selects local project applications to be funded. The State must submit all local HMGP applications and funding requests for the purpose of identifying new projects to the Regional Administrator within 12 months of the date of disaster declaration.

(e) *Extensions.* The State may request the Regional Administrator to extend the application time limit by 30 to 90 day increments, not to exceed a total of 180 days. The grantee must include a justification in its request.

(f) *FEMA approval.* The application and supplement(s) will be submitted to the FEMA Regional Administrator for approval. FEMA has final approval authority for funding of all projects.

(g) *Indian tribal grantees.* Indian tribal governments may submit a SF 424 directly to the Regional Administrator.

[67 FR 8853, Feb. 26, 2002]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.437 State administrative plan.**

(a) *General.* The State shall develop a plan for the administration of the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program.

(b) *Minimum criteria.* At a minimum, the State administrative plan must include the items listed below:

(1) Designation of the State agency will have responsibility for program administration;

(2) Identification of the State Hazard Mitigation Officer responsible for all matters related to the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program.

(3) Determination of staffing requirements and sources of staff necessary for administration of the program;

(4) Establishment of procedures to:

(i) Identify and notify potential applicants (subgrantees) of the availability of the program;

(ii) Ensure that potential applicants are provided information on the application process, program eligibility and key deadlines;

(iii) Determine applicant eligibility;

(iv) Conduct environmental and floodplain management reviews;

(v) Establish priorities for selection of mitigation projects;

(vi) Process requests for advances of funds and reimbursement;

(vii) Monitor and evaluate the progress and completion of the selected projects;

(viii) Review and approve cost overruns;

(ix) Process appeals;

(x) Provide technical assistance as required to subgrantee(s);

(xi) Comply with the administrative and audit requirements of 44 CFR parts 13 and 206;

(xii) Provide quarterly progress reports to the Regional Administrator on approved projects.

(xiii) Determine the percentage or amount of pass-through funds for management costs provided under 44 CFR part 207 that the grantee will make available to subgrantees, and the basis, criteria, or formula for determining the subgrantee percentage or amount.

(c) *Format.* The administrative plan is intended to be a brief but substantive plan documenting the State's process for the administration of the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program and management of the section 404 funds. This administrative plan should become a part of the State's overall emergency response or operations plan as a separate annex or chapter.

(d) *Approval.* The State must submit the administrative plan to the Regional Administrator for approval. Following each major disaster declaration, the State shall prepare any updates, amendments, or plan revisions required to meet current policy guidance or changes in the administration of the Hazard Mitigation Grant Program. Funds shall not be awarded until the State administrative plan is approved by the FEMA Regional Administrator.

[55 FR 35537, Aug. 30, 1990, as amended at 55 FR 52172, Dec. 20, 1990; 72 FR 57875, Oct. 11, 2007; 74 FR 15352, Apr. 3, 2009]



 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.438 Project management.**

(a) *General.* The State serving as grantee has primary responsibility for project management and accountability of funds as indicated in 44 CFR part 13. The State is responsible for ensuring that subgrantees meet all program and administrative requirements.

(b) *Cost overruns.* During the execution of work on an approved mitigation measure the Governor's Authorized Representative may find that actual project costs are exceeding the approved estimates. Cost overruns which can be met without additional Federal funds, or which can be met by offsetting cost underruns on other projects, need not be submitted to the Regional Administrator for approval, so long as the full scope of work on all affected projects can still be met. For cost overruns which exceed Federal obligated funds and which require additional Federal funds, the Governor's Authorized Representative shall evaluate each cost overrun and shall submit a request with a recommendation to the Regional Administrator for a determination. The applicant's justification for additional costs and other pertinent material shall accompany the request. The Regional Administrator shall notify the Governor's Authorized Representative in writing of the determination and process a supplement, if necessary. All requests that are not justified shall be denied by the Governor's Authorized Representative. In no case will the total amount obligated to the State exceed the funding limits set forth in § 206.432(b). Any such problems or circumstances affecting project costs shall be identified through the quarterly progress reports required in paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) *Progress reports.* The grantee shall submit a quarterly progress report to FEMA indicating the status and completion date for each measure funded. Any problems or circumstances affecting completion dates, scope of work, or project costs which are expected to result in noncompliance with the approved grant conditions shall be described in the report.

(d) *Payment of claims.* The Governor's Authorized Representative shall make a claim to the Regional Administrator for reimbursement of allowable costs for each approved measure. In submitting such claims the Governor's Authorized Representative shall certify that reported costs were incurred in the performance of eligible work, that the approved work was completed and that the mitigation measure is in compliance with the provisions of the FEMA-State Agreement. The Regional Administrator shall determine the eligible amount of reimbursement for each claim and approve payment. If a mitigation measure is not completed, and there is not adequate justification for noncompletion, no Federal funding will be provided for that measure.

(e) *Audit requirements.* Uniform audit requirements as set forth in 44 CFR part 13 apply to all grant assistance provided under this subpart. FEMA may elect to conduct a Federal audit on the disaster assistance grant or on any of the subgrants.

[55 FR 35537, Aug. 30, 1990, as amended at 74 FR 15352, Apr. 3, 2009]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.439 Allowable costs.**

(a) General requirements for determining allowable costs are established in 44 CFR 13.22. Exceptions to those requirements as allowed in 44 CFR 13.4 and 13.6 are explained in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Administrative and management costs for major disasters will be paid in accordance with 44 CFR part 207.

(c) *Pre-award costs.* FEMA may fund eligible pre-award planning or project costs at its discretion and as funds are available. Grantees and subgrantees may be reimbursed for eligible pre-award costs for activities directly related to the development of the project or planning proposal. These costs can only be incurred during the open application period of the grant program. Costs associated with implementation of the activity but incurred prior to grant award are not eligible. Therefore, activities where implementation is initiated or completed prior to award are not eligible and will not be reimbursed.

[72 FR 57875, Oct. 11, 2007, as amended at 72 FR 61750, Oct. 31, 2007]

 [Back to Top](#)

#### **§ 206.440 Appeals.**

An eligible applicant, subgrantee, or grantee may appeal any determination previously made related to an application for or the provision of Federal assistance according to the procedures below.

(a) *Format and Content.* The applicant or subgrantee will make the appeal in writing through the grantee to the Regional Administrator. The grantee shall review and evaluate all subgrantee appeals before submission to the Regional Administrator. The grantee may make grantee-related appeals to the Regional Administrator. The appeal shall contain documented justification supporting the appellant's position, specifying the monetary figure in dispute and the provisions in Federal law, regulation, or policy with which the appellant believes the initial action was inconsistent.

(b) *Levels of Appeal.* (1) The Regional Administrator will consider first appeals for hazard mitigation grant program-related decisions under subparts M and N of this part.



(2) The Assistant Administrator for the Mitigation Directorate will consider appeals of the Regional Administrator's decision on any first appeal under paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(c) *Time Limits.* (1) Appellants must make appeals within 60 days after receipt of a notice of the action that is being appealed.

(2) The grantee will review and forward appeals from an applicant or subgrantee, with a written recommendation, to the Regional Administrator within 60 days of receipt.

(3) Within 90 days following receipt of an appeal, the Regional Administrator (for first appeals) or Assistant Administrator for the Mitigation Directorate (for second appeals) will notify the grantee in writing of the disposition of the appeal or of the need for additional information. A request by the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Mitigation Directorate for additional information will include a date by which the information must be provided. Within 90 days following the receipt of the requested additional information or following expiration of the period for providing the information, the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Mitigation Directorate will notify the grantee in writing of the disposition of the appeal. If the decision is to grant the appeal, the Regional Administrator will take appropriate implementing action.

(d) *Technical Advice.* In appeals involving highly technical issues, the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Mitigation Directorate may, at his or her discretion, submit the appeal to an independent scientific or technical person or group having expertise in the subject matter of the appeal for advice or recommendation. The period for this technical review may be in addition to other allotted time periods. Within 90 days of receipt of the report, the Regional Administrator or Assistant Administrator for the Mitigation Directorate will notify the grantee in writing of the disposition of the appeal.

(e) *Transition.* (1) This rule is effective for all appeals pending on and appeals from decisions issued on or after May 8, 1998, except as provided in paragraph (e)(2) of this section.

(2) Appeals pending from a decision of an Assistant Administrator for the Mitigation Directorate before May 8, 1998 may be appealed to the Administrator in accordance with 44 CFR 206.440 as it existed before May 8, 1998.

(3) The decision of the FEMA official at the next higher appeal level shall be the final administrative decision of FEMA.

[63 FR 17111, Apr. 8, 1998]

 [Back to Top](#)

---

For questions or comments regarding e-CFR editorial content, features, or design, email [ecfr@nara.gov](mailto:ecfr@nara.gov).  
For questions concerning e-CFR programming and delivery issues, email [webteam@gpo.gov](mailto:webteam@gpo.gov).



# Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, as amended, and Related Authorities

FEMA 592, June 2007



**FEMA**







**Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act,  
Public Law 93-288, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 5121-5207,  
and Related Authorities**

**UNITED STATES CODE  
TITLE 42. THE PUBLIC HEALTH AND WELFARE  
CHAPTER 68. DISASTER RELIEF**

**Table of Contents**

<b>Title I -- Findings, Declarations and Definitions.....</b>	<b>1</b>
Sec. 101. Congressional Findings and Declarations (42 U.S.C. 5121) .....	1
Sec. 102. Definitions (42 U.S.C. 5122)* .....	2
<b>Title II -- Disaster Preparedness and Mitigation Assistance .....</b>	<b>3</b>
Sec. 201. Federal and State Disaster Preparedness Programs (42 U.S.C. 5131) .....	3
Sec. 202. Disaster Warnings (42 U.S.C. 5132).....	4
Sec. 203. Predisaster Hazard Mitigation (42 U.S.C. 5133) .....	5
Sec. 204. Interagency Task Force (42 U.S.C. 5134).....	10
<b>Title III -- Major Disaster and Emergency Assistance Administration.....</b>	<b>10</b>
Sec. 301. Waiver of Administrative Conditions (42 U.S.C. 5141).....	10
Sec. 302. Coordinating Officers (42 U.S.C. 5143)* .....	10
Sec. 303. Emergency Support and Response Teams (42 U.S.C. 5144)* .....	11
Sec. 304. Reimbursement of Federal Agencies (42 U.S.C. 5147).....	12
Sec. 305. Nonliability of Federal Government (42 U.S.C. 5148).....	12
Sec. 306. Performance of Services (42 U.S.C. 5149).....	13
Sec. 307. Use of Local Firms and Individuals (42 U.S.C. 5150)* .....	13
Sec. 308. Nondiscrimination in Disaster Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5151)* .....	14
Sec. 309. Use and Coordination of Relief Organizations (42 U.S.C. 5152).....	15



Sec. 310. Priority to Certain Applications for Public Facility and Public Housing Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5153) .....	15
Sec. 311. Insurance (42 U.S.C. 5154) .....	16
Prohibited Flood Disaster Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5154a) .....	17
Sec. 312. Duplication of Benefits (42 U.S.C. 5155) .....	18
Sec. 313. Standard of Review (42 U.S.C. 5156) .....	19
Sec. 314. Penalties (42 U.S.C. 5157) .....	19
Sec. 315. Availability of Materials (42 U.S.C. 5158) .....	20
Sec. 316. Protection of Environment (42 U.S.C. 5159) .....	20
Sec. 317. Recovery of Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5160) .....	20
Sec. 318. Audits and Investigations (42 U.S.C. 5161) .....	21
Sec. 319. Advance of Non-Federal Share (42 U.S.C. 5162) .....	21
Sec. 320. Limitation on Use of Sliding Scale (42 U.S.C. 5163) .....	22
Sec. 321. Rules and Regulations (42 U.S.C. 5164) .....	22
Sec. 322. Mitigation Planning (42 U.S.C. 5165) .....	22
Sec. 323. Standards for Public and Private Structures (42 U.S.C. 5165a) .....	23
Sec. 324. Management Costs (42 U.S.C. 5165b) .....	24
Sec. 325. Public Notice, Comment, and Consultation Requirements (42 U.S.C. 5165c) .....	24
Sec. 326. Designation of Small State and Rural Advocate (42 U.S.C. 5165d)* .....	25
<b>Title IV -- Major Disaster Assistance Programs .....</b>	<b>26</b>
Sec. 401. Procedure for Declaration (42 U.S.C. 5170) .....	26
Sec. 402. General Federal Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5170a)* .....	26
Sec. 403. Essential Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5170b)* .....	27
Sec. 404. Hazard Mitigation (42 U.S.C. 5170c)* .....	29



Sec. 405. Federal Facilities (42 U.S.C. 5171).....	31
Sec. 406. Repair, Restoration, and Replacement of Damaged Facilities (42 U.S.C. 5172)* .....	31
Sec. 407. Debris Removal (42 U.S.C. 5173)* .....	39
Sec. 408. Federal Assistance to Individuals and Households (42 U.S.C. 5174)* .....	40
Sec. 410. Unemployment Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5177) .....	45
Sec. 412. Food Coupons and Distribution (42 U.S.C. 5179).....	46
Sec. 413. Food Commodities (42 U.S.C. 5180).....	46
Sec. 414. Relocation Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5181).....	46
Sec. 415. Legal Services (42 U.S.C. 5182).....	47
Sec. 416. Crisis Counseling Assistance and Training (42 U.S.C. 5183) .....	47
Sec. 417. Community Disaster Loans (42 U.S.C. 5184)* .....	47
Sec. 418. Emergency Communications (42 U.S.C. 5185).....	48
Sec. 419. Emergency Public Transportation (42 U.S.C. 5186) .....	48
Sec. 420. Fire Management Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5187).....	48
Sec. 421. Timber Sale Contracts (42 U.S.C. 5188) .....	48
Sec. 422. Simplified Procedures (42 U.S.C. 5189).....	49
Sec. 423. Appeals of Assistance Decisions (42 U.S.C. 5189a) .....	50
Sec. 424. Date of Eligibility; Expenses Incurred Before Date of Disaster (42 U.S.C. 5189b) .....	50
Sec. 425. Transportation Assistance to Individuals and Households (42 U.S.C. 5189c)* ....	50
Sec. 426. Case Management Services (42 U.S.C. 5189d)* .....	50
Sec. 427. Essential Service Providers (42 U.S.C. 5189e)* .....	50



<b>Title V -- Emergency Assistance Programs .....</b>	<b>51</b>
Sec. 501. Procedure for Declaration (42 U.S.C. 5191).....	51
Sec. 502. Federal Emergency Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5192)* .....	52
Sec. 503. Amount of Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5193).....	53
<b>Title VI -- Emergency Preparedness .....</b>	<b>54</b>
Sec. 601. Declaration of Policy (42 U.S.C. 5195) .....	54
Sec. 602. Definitions (42 U.S.C. 5195a).....	54
Sec. 603. Administration of Title (42 U.S.C. 5195b) .....	56
<i>SUBTITLE A – POWERS AND DUTIES .....</i>	<i>56</i>
Sec. 611. Detailed Functions or Administration (42 U.S.C. 5196)* .....	56
Sec. 612. Mutual Aid Pacts Between States and Neighboring Countries (42 U.S.C. 5196a) .....	61
Sec. 613. Contributions for Personnel and Administrative Expenses (42 U.S.C. 5196b)* ...	61
Sec. 614. Requirement for State Matching Funds for Construction of Emergency Operating Centers (42 U.S.C. 5196c) .....	63
Sec. 615. Use of Funds to Prepare for and Respond to Hazards (42 U.S.C. 5196d) .....	63
Sec. 616. Disaster Related Information Services (42 U.S.C. 5196f)* .....	63
<i>SUBTITLE B – GENERAL PROVISIONS .....</i>	<i>64</i>
Sec. 621. Administrative Authority (42 U.S.C. 5197).....	64
Sec. 622. Security Regulations (42 U.S.C. 5197a) .....	65
Sec. 623. Use of Existing Facilities (42 U.S.C. 5197b).....	67
Sec. 624. Annual Report to Congress (42 U.S.C. 5197c).....	67
Sec. 625. Applicability of Subchapter (42 U.S.C. 5197d).....	67
Sec. 626. Authorization of Appropriation and Transfers of Funds (42 U.S.C. 5197e) .....	67



Sec. 627. Relation to Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 5197f).....	68
Sec. 628. Federal Bureau of Investigation (42 U.S.C. 5197g).....	68
<b>Title VII – Miscellaneous.....</b>	<b>68</b>
Sec. 701. Rules and Regulations (42 U.S.C. 5201) .....	68
Sec. 705. Disaster Grant Closeout Procedures (42 U.S.C. 5205) .....	68
Sec. 706. Firearms Policies (42 U.S.C. 5207)* .....	69

---

*\* This section of the Stafford Act has been amended by either the Department of Homeland Security Appropriations Act of 2007, Pub. L. No. 109-295, 120 Stat.1355 (2006), signed on October 4, 2006, the Pets Evacuation and Transportation Standards Act of 2006, Pub. L. No 109-308, 120 Stat. 1725 (2006), signed on October 6, 2006, or the Security and Accountability for Every Port Act of 2006, Pub. L. No. 109-347, 120 Stat. 1884 (2006), signed on October 13, 2006. The changes are effective for emergencies or major disasters declared on or after October 4, 6, or 13, 2006. For events before those dates, please consult an earlier version of the Stafford Act.*



**MISCELLANEOUS STATUTORY PROVISIONS THAT RELATE TO THE  
STAFFORD ACT.....71**

Excess Disaster Assistance Payments as Budgetary Emergency Requirements  
(42 U.S.C. 5203) .....71

Insular Areas Disaster Survival and Recovery; Definitions  
(42 U.S.C. 5204) .....71

Authorization of Appropriations for Insular Areas (Disaster Recovery)  
(42 U.S.C. 5204a) .....71

Technical Assistance for Insular Areas (Disaster Recovery)  
(42 U.S.C. 5204b) .....72

Hazard Mitigation for Insular Areas (Limitation on Amount of Contributions,  
Local Match) (42 U.S.C. 5204c).....72

Buy American (Requirements) (42 U.S.C. 5206).....73

**U.S. Troop Readiness, Veterans’ Care, Katrina Recovery, and Iraq Accountability  
Appropriations Act, 2007, Pub. L. No. 110-28, 121 Stat. 112 (2007), Signed on May  
25, 2007.....74**

Sec. 4501. (100% Federal Share for Katrina, Wilma, Dennis, and Rita) .....74

Sec. 4502. (Allowing Community Disaster Loans To Be Canceled) .....74

Sec. 4503. (Paying Utility Costs for 2005 Hurricanes Extended to 24 Months) .....75

**Department of Homeland Security Appropriations Act, 2007, Pub. L. No. 109-295,  
120 Stat. 1355 (2006), Signed on October 4, 2006 [Includes Post-Katrina Emergency  
Reform Act (PKEMRA)] .....75**

Sec. 508. (Notifying Congressional Committees before Announcement of  
Grants FY 2007) .....75

Sec. 536. (Accounting for Needs of Individuals with Household Pets and  
Service Animals).....75

**Title VI – National Emergency Management.....76**

Sec. 601. Short Title (6 U.S.C. 701 note) .....76

Sec. 612. (References to Director of FEMA Considered to Refer to  
Administrator of FEMA) (6 U.S.C. 313 note and 6 U.S.C. 311 note).....76



Sec. 640a. Disclosure of Certain Information to Law Enforcement Agencies (6 U.S.C. 727) .....	76
Sec. 653. Federal Preparedness (Prescribed Mission Assignments) (6 U.S.C. 753) .....	76
<i>SUBTITLE E – STAFFORD ACT AMENDMENTS</i> .....	77
Sec. 682. National Disaster Recovery Strategy (6 U.S.C. 771).....	77
Sec. 683. National Disaster Housing Strategy (6 U.S.C. 772).....	78
Sec. 689. Individuals with Disabilities (6 U.S.C. 773).....	79
Sec. 689b. Reunification (Child Locator Center) (6 U.S.C. 774).....	80
Sec. 689c. National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System (6 U.S.C. 775) .....	81
Sec. 689i. Individuals and Households Pilot Program (6 U.S.C. 776) .....	82
Sec. 689j. Public Assistance Pilot Program (6 U.S.C. 777).....	84
Sec. 689k. Disposal of Unused Temporary Housing Units .....	85
<i>SUBTITLE F – PREVENTION OF FRAUD, WASTE, AND ABUSE</i> .....	86
Sec. 691. Advance Contracting (6 U.S.C. 791) .....	86
Sec. 692. Limitations on Tiering of Subcontractors (6 U.S.C. 792).....	87
Sec. 693. Oversight and Accountability of Federal Disaster Expenditures (6 U.S.C. 793) .....	87
Sec. 695. Limitation on Length of Certain Noncompetitive Contracts (6 U.S.C. 794) .....	89
Sec. 696. Fraud, Waste, and Abuse Controls (6 U.S.C. 795) .....	89
Sec. 697. Registry of Disaster Response Contractors (6 U.S.C. 796) .....	90
Sec. 698. Fraud Prevention Training Program (6 U.S.C. 797) .....	91



**Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, the Global War on  
Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006, Pub. L. No. 109-234, 120 Stat. 418 (2006),  
Signed on June 15, 2006.....91**

Sec. 2401. (Paying Utility Costs for 2005 Hurricanes) .....91

Sec. 2403 (Alternative Housing Pilot Programs).....91



<b>HOMELAND SECURITY ACT OF 2002, as amended, 6 U.S.C. 311-321j .....</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>Title V--National Emergency Management.....</b>	<b>93</b>
Sec. 501. Definitions (6 U.S.C. 311) .....	93
Sec. 502. Definition (6 U.S.C. 312).....	94
Sec. 503. Federal Emergency Management Agency (6 U.S.C. 313).....	94
Sec. 504. Authorities and Responsibilities (6 U.S.C. 314) .....	96
Sec. 505. Functions Transferred (U.S.C. 315).....	99
Sec. 506. Preserving the Federal Emergency Management Agency (6 U.S.C. 316) .....	99
Sec. 507. Regional Offices (6 U.S.C. 317) .....	100
Sec. 508. National Advisory Council (6 U.S.C. 318).....	103
Sec. 509. National Integration Center (6 U.S.C. 319) .....	104
Sec. 510. Credentialing and Typing (6 U.S.C. 320) .....	106
Sec. 511. The National Infrastructure Simulation and Analysis Center (6 U.S.C. 321) .....	106
Sec. 512. Evacuation Plans and Exercises (6 U.S.C. 321a).....	107
Sec. 513. Disability Coordinator (6 U.S.C. 321b) .....	108
Sec. 514. Department and Agency Officials (6 U.S.C. 321c) .....	109
Sec. 515. National Operations Center (6 U.S.C. 321d) .....	110
Sec. 516. Chief Medical Officer (6 U.S.C. 321e).....	110
Sec. 517. Nuclear Incident Response (6 U.S.C. 321f).....	111
Sec. 518. Conduct of Certain Public Health-related Activities (6 U.S.C. 321g) .....	111
Sec. 519. Use of National Private Sector Networks in Emergency Response (6 U.S.C. 321h) .....	111



Sec. 520. Use of Commercially Available Technology, Goods and Services (6 U.S.C. 321i) .....	112
---	-----

Sec. 521. Procurement of Security Countermeasures for Strategic National Stockpile (6 U.S.C. 321j) .....	112
---	-----



# **Title I -- Findings, Declarations and Definitions**

## **Sec. 101. Congressional Findings and Declarations (42 U.S.C. 5121)**

(a) The Congress hereby finds and declares that -

- (1) because disasters often cause loss of life, human suffering, loss of income, and property loss and damage; and
- (2) because disasters often disrupt the normal functioning of governments and communities, and adversely affect individuals and families with great severity; special measures, designed to assist the efforts of the affected States in expediting the rendering of aid, assistance, and emergency services, and the reconstruction and rehabilitation of devastated areas, are necessary.

(b) It is the intent of the Congress, by this Act, to provide an orderly and continuing means of assistance by the Federal Government to State and local governments in carrying out their responsibilities to alleviate the suffering and damage which result from such disasters by -

- (1) revising and broadening the scope of existing disaster relief programs;
- (2) encouraging the development of comprehensive disaster preparedness and assistance plans, programs, capabilities, and organizations by the States and by local governments;
- (3) achieving greater coordination and responsiveness of disaster preparedness and relief programs;
- (4) encouraging individuals, States, and local governments to protect themselves by obtaining insurance coverage to supplement or replace governmental assistance;
- (5) encouraging hazard mitigation measures to reduce losses from disasters, including development of land use and construction regulations; and
- (6) providing Federal assistance programs for both public and private losses sustained in disasters



## **Sec. 102. Definitions (42 U.S.C. 5122)\***

As used in this Act -

- (1) “Emergency” means any occasion or instance for which, in the determination of the President, Federal assistance is needed to supplement State and local efforts and capabilities to save lives and to protect property and public health and safety, or to lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe in any part of the United States.
- (2) “Major disaster” means any natural catastrophe (including any hurricane, tornado, storm, high water, winddriven water, tidal wave, tsunami, earthquake, volcanic eruption, landslide, mudslide, snowstorm, or drought), or, regardless of cause, any fire, flood, or explosion, in any part of the United States, which in the determination of the President causes damage of sufficient severity and magnitude to warrant major disaster assistance under this Act to supplement the efforts and available resources of States, local governments, and disaster relief organizations in alleviating the damage, loss, hardship, or suffering caused thereby.
- (3) “United States” means the fifty States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.
- (4) “State” means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.
- (5) “Governor” means the chief executive of any State.
- (6) “Individual with a Disability”- The term “individual with a disability” means an individual with a disability as defined in section 3(2) of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12102(2)).
- (7) The term “local government” means –
  - (A) a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority, school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (regardless of whether the council of governments is incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under State law), regional or interstate government entity, or agency or instrumentality of a local government;
  - (B) an Indian tribe or authorized tribal organization, or Alaska Native village or organization; and
  - (C) a rural community, unincorporated town or village, or other public entity, for which an application for assistance is made by a State or political subdivision of a State.
- (8) “Federal agency” means any department, independent establishment, Government corporation, or other agency of the executive branch of the Federal Government,



including the United States Postal Service, but shall not include the American National Red Cross.

(9) “Public facility” means the following facilities owned by a State or local government:

- (A) Any flood control, navigation, irrigation, reclamation, public power, sewage treatment and collection, water supply and distribution, watershed development, or airport facility.
- (B) Any non-Federal-aid street, road, or highway.
- (C) Any other public building, structure, or system, including those used for educational, recreational, or cultural purposes.
- (D) Any park.

(10) Private nonprofit facility -

- (A) In General - The term “private nonprofit facility” means private nonprofit educational, utility, irrigation, emergency, medical, rehabilitational, and temporary or permanent custodial care facilities (including those for the aged and disabled) and facilities on Indian reservations, as defined by the President.
- (B) Additional Facilities – In addition to the facilities described in subparagraph (A), the term “private nonprofit facility” includes any private nonprofit facility that provides essential services of a governmental nature to the general public (including museums, zoos, performing arts facilities, community arts centers, libraries, homeless shelters, senior citizen centers, rehabilitation facilities, shelter workshops, and facilities that provide health and safety services of a governmental nature), as defined by the President.

## **Title II -- Disaster Preparedness and Mitigation Assistance**

### **Sec. 201. Federal and State Disaster Preparedness Programs (42 U.S.C. 5131)**

(a) Utilization of services of other agencies - The President is authorized to establish a program of disaster preparedness that utilizes services of all appropriate agencies and includes -

- (1) preparation of disaster preparedness plans for mitigation, warning, emergency operations, rehabilitation, and recovery;
- (2) training and exercises;
- (3) postdisaster critiques and evaluations;
- (4) annual review of programs;



- (5) coordination of Federal, State, and local preparedness programs;
  - (6) application of science and technology;
  - (7) research.
- (b) Technical assistance for the development of plans and programs - The President shall provide technical assistance to the States in developing comprehensive plans and practicable programs for preparation against disasters, including hazard reduction, avoidance, and mitigation; for assistance to individuals, businesses, and State and local governments following such disasters; and for recovery of damages or destroyed public and private facilities.
- (c) Grants to States for development of plans and programs - Upon application by a State, the President is authorized to make grants, not to exceed in the aggregate to such State \$250,000, for the development of plans, programs, and capabilities for disaster preparedness and prevention. Such grants shall be applied for within one year from May 22, 1974. Any State desiring financial assistance under this section shall designate or create an agency to plan and administer such a disaster preparedness program, and shall, through such agency, submit a State plan to the President, which shall
- (1) set forth a comprehensive and detailed State program for preparation against and assistance following, emergencies and major disasters, including provisions for assistance to individuals, businesses, and local governments; and
  - (2) include provisions for appointment and training of appropriate staffs, formulation of necessary regulations and procedures and conduct of required exercises.
- (d) Grants for improvement, maintenance, and updating of State plans - The President is authorized to make grants not to exceed 50 per centum of the cost of improving, maintaining and updating State disaster assistance plans, including evaluations of natural hazards and development of the programs and actions required to mitigate such hazards; except that no such grant shall exceed \$50,000 per annum to any State.

## **Sec. 202. Disaster Warnings (42 U.S.C. 5132)**

- (a) Readiness of Federal agencies to issue warnings to state and local officials - The President shall insure that all appropriate Federal agencies are prepared to issue warnings of disasters to State and local officials.
- (b) Technical assistance to State and local governments for effective warnings - The President shall direct appropriate Federal agencies to provide technical assistance



to State and local governments to insure that timely and effective disaster warning is provided.

- (c) Warnings to governmental authorities and public endangered by disaster - The President is authorized to utilize or to make available to Federal, State, and local agencies the facilities of the civil defense communications system established and maintained pursuant to section 5196(c) of this title or any other Federal communications system for the purpose of providing warning to governmental authorities and the civilian population in areas endangered by disasters.
- (d) Agreements with commercial communications systems for use of facilities - The President is authorized to enter into agreements with the officers or agents of any private or commercial communications systems who volunteer the use of their systems on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis for the purpose of providing warning to governmental authorities and the civilian population endangered by disasters.

### **Sec. 203. Predisaster Hazard Mitigation (42 U.S.C. 5133)**

- (a) Definition of Small Impoverished Community - In this section, the term “small impoverished community” means a community of 3,000 or fewer individuals that is economically disadvantaged, as determined by the State in which the community is located and based on criteria established by the President.
- (b) Establishment of Program - The President may establish a program to provide technical and financial assistance to States and local governments to assist in the implementation of predisaster hazard mitigation measures that are cost-effective and are designed to reduce injuries, loss of life, and damage and destruction of property, including damage to critical services and facilities under the jurisdiction of the States or local governments.
- (c) Approval by President - If the President determines that a State or local government has identified natural disaster hazards in areas under its jurisdiction and has demonstrated the ability to form effective public-private natural disaster hazard mitigation partnerships, the President, using amounts in the National Predisaster Mitigation Fund established under subsection (i) (referred to in this section as the “Fund”), may provide technical and financial assistance to the State or local government to be used in accordance with subsection (e).
- (d) State Recommendations -
  - (1) In general -
    - (A) Recommendations -The Governor of each State may recommend to the President not fewer than five local governments to receive assistance under this section.



- (B) Deadline for submission -The recommendations under subparagraph (A) shall be submitted to the President not later than October 1, 2001, and each October 1st thereafter or such later date in the year as the President may establish.
  - (C) Criteria - In making recommendations under subparagraph (A), a Governor shall consider the criteria specified in subsection (g).
- (2) Use -
- (A) In general - Except as provided in subparagraph (B), in providing assistance to local governments under this section, the President shall select from local governments recommended by the Governors under this subsection.
  - (B) Extraordinary circumstances - In providing assistance to local governments under this section, the President may select a local government that has not been recommended by a Governor under this subsection if the President determines that extraordinary circumstances justify the selection and that making the selection will further the purpose of this section.
- (3) Effect of failure to nominate - If a Governor of a State fails to submit recommendations under this subsection in a timely manner, the President may select, subject to the criteria specified in subsection (g), any local governments of the State to receive assistance under this section.

(e) Uses of Technical and Financial Assistance -

- (1) In general - Technical and financial assistance provided under this section
- (A) shall be used by States and local governments principally to implement predisaster hazard mitigation measures that are cost-effective and are described in proposals approved by the President under this section; and
  - (B) may be used -
    - (i) to support effective public-private natural disaster hazard mitigation partnerships;
    - (ii) to improve the assessment of a community's vulnerability to natural hazards; or
    - (iii) to establish hazard mitigation priorities, and an appropriate hazard mitigation plan, for a community
- (2) Dissemination - A State or local government may use not more than 10 percent of the financial assistance received by the State or local government under this section for a fiscal year to fund activities to disseminate information regarding cost-effective mitigation technologies.



(f) Allocation of Funds - The amount of financial assistance made available to a State (including amounts made available to local governments of the State) under this section for a fiscal year -

(1) shall be not less than the lesser of -

(A) \$500,000; or

(B) the amount that is equal to 1.0 percent of the total funds appropriated to carry out this section for the fiscal year;

(2) shall not exceed 15 percent of the total funds described in paragraph (1)(B); and

(3) shall be subject to the criteria specified in subsection (g).

(g) Criteria for Assistance Awards - In determining whether to provide technical and financial assistance to a State or local government under this section, the President shall take into account -

(1) the extent and nature of the hazards to be mitigated;

(2) the degree of commitment by the State or local government to reduce damages from future natural disasters;

(3) the degree of commitment by the State or local government to support ongoing non-Federal support for the hazard mitigation measures to be carried out using the technical and financial assistance;

(4) the extent to which the hazard mitigation measures to be carried out using the technical and financial assistance contribute to the mitigation goals and priorities established by the State;

(5) the extent to which the technical and financial assistance is consistent with other assistance provided under this Act;

(6) the extent to which prioritized, cost-effective mitigation activities that produce meaningful and definable outcomes are clearly identified;

(7) if the State or local government has submitted a mitigation plan under section 5165 of this title, the extent to which the activities identified under paragraph (6) are consistent with the mitigation plan;

(8) the opportunity to fund activities that maximize net benefits to society;

(9) the extent to which assistance will fund mitigation activities in small impoverished communities; and



- (10) such other criteria as the President establishes in consultation with State and local governments.

(h) Federal Share -

- (1) In general - Financial assistance provided under this section may contribute up to 75 percent of the total cost of mitigation activities approved by the President.
- (2) Small impoverished communities - Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the President may contribute up to 90 percent of the total cost of a mitigation activity carried out in a small impoverished community.

(i) National Predisaster Mitigation Fund -

- (1) Establishment - The President may establish in the Treasury of the United States a fund to be known as the “National Predisaster Mitigation Fund”, to be used in carrying out this section.

(2) Transfers to fund - There shall be deposited in the Fund -

- (A) amounts appropriated to carry out this section, which shall remain available until expended; and
- (B) sums available from gifts, bequests, or donations of services or property received by the President for the purpose of predisaster hazard mitigation.

- (3) Expenditures from fund - Upon request by the President, the Secretary of the Treasury shall transfer from the Fund to the President such amounts as the President determines are necessary to provide technical and financial assistance under this section.

(4) Investment of amounts -

- (A) In general - The Secretary of the Treasury shall invest such portion of the Fund as is not, in the judgment of the Secretary of the Treasury, required to meet current withdrawals. Investments may be made only in interest-bearing obligations of the United States.
- (B) Acquisition of obligations - For the purpose of investments under subparagraph (A), obligations may be acquired -
  - (i) on original issue at the issue price; or
  - (ii) by purchase of outstanding obligations at the market price.
- (C) Sale of obligations - Any obligation acquired by the Fund may be sold by the Secretary of the Treasury at the market price.
- (D) Credits to fund - The interest on, and the proceeds from the sale or redemption of, any obligations held in the Fund shall be credited to and form a part of the Fund.



- (E) Transfers of amounts -
  - (i) In general - The amounts required to be transferred to the Fund under this subsection shall be transferred at least monthly from the general fund of the Treasury to the Fund on the basis of estimates made by the Secretary of the Treasury.
  - (ii) Adjustments - Proper adjustment shall be made in amounts subsequently transferred to the extent prior estimates were in excess of or less than the amounts required to be transferred.
- (j) Limitation on Total Amount of Financial Assistance - The President shall not provide financial assistance under this section in an amount greater than the amount available in the Fund.
- (k) Multihazard Advisory Maps -
  - (1) Definition of multihazard advisory map - In this subsection, the term “multihazard advisory map” means a map on which hazard data concerning each type of natural disaster is identified simultaneously for the purpose of showing areas of hazard overlap.
  - (2) Development of maps - In consultation with States, local governments, and appropriate Federal agencies, the President shall develop multihazard advisory maps for areas, in not fewer than five States, that are subject to commonly recurring natural hazards (including flooding, hurricanes and severe winds, and seismic events).
  - (3) Use of technology - In developing multihazard advisory maps under this subsection, the President shall use, to the maximum extent practicable, the most cost-effective and efficient technology available.
  - (4) Use of maps -
    - (A) Advisory nature - The multihazard advisory maps shall be considered to be advisory and shall not require the development of any new policy by, or impose any new policy on, any government or private entity.
    - (B) Availability of maps - The multihazard advisory maps shall be made available to the appropriate State and local governments for the purposes of -
      - (i) informing the general public about the risks of natural hazards in the areas described in paragraph (2);
      - (ii) supporting the activities described in subsection (e); and
      - (iii) other public uses.



- (l) Report on Federal and State Administration - Not later than Oct. 30, 2000, the President, in consultation with State and local governments, shall submit to Congress a report evaluating efforts to implement this section and recommending a process for transferring greater authority and responsibility for administering the assistance program established under this section to capable States.
- (m) Termination of Authority - The authority provided by this section terminates September 30, 2008.

#### **Sec. 204. Interagency Task Force (42 U.S.C. 5134)**

- (a) In General - The President shall establish a Federal interagency task force for the purpose of coordinating the implementation of predisaster hazard mitigation programs administered by the Federal Government.
- (b) Chairperson - The Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency shall serve as the chairperson of the task force.
- (c) Membership - The membership of the task force shall include representatives of
  - (1) relevant Federal agencies;
  - (2) State and local government organizations (including Indian tribes); and
  - (3) the American Red Cross.

### **Title III -- Major Disaster and Emergency Assistance Administration**

#### **Sec. 301. Waiver of Administrative Conditions (42 U.S.C. 5141)**

Any Federal agency charged with the administration of a Federal assistance program may, if so requested by the applicant State or local authorities, modify or waive, for a major disaster, such administrative conditions for assistance as would otherwise prevent the giving of assistance under such programs if the inability to meet such conditions is a result of the major disaster.

#### **Sec. 302. Coordinating Officers (42 U.S.C. 5143)\***

- (a) Appointment of Federal coordinating officer - Immediately upon his declaration of a major disaster or emergency, the President shall appoint a Federal coordinating officer to operate in the affected area.



- (b) Functions of Federal coordinating officer - In order to effectuate the purposes of this Act, the Federal coordinating officer, within the affected area, shall
- (1) make an initial appraisal of the types of relief most urgently needed;
  - (2) establish such field offices as he deems necessary and as are authorized by the President;
  - (3) coordinate the administration of relief, including activities of the State and local governments, the American National Red Cross, the Salvation Army, the Mennonite Disaster Service, and other relief or disaster assistance organizations, which agree to operate under his advice or direction, except that nothing contained in this Act shall limit or in any way affect the responsibilities of the American National Red Cross under the Act of January 5, 1905, as amended (33 Stat. 599) and
  - (4) take such other action, consistent with authority delegated to him by the President, and consistent with the provisions of this Act, as he may deem necessary to assist local citizens and public officials in promptly obtaining assistance to which they are entitled.
- (c) State Coordinating officer - When the President determines assistance under this Act is necessary, he shall request that the Governor of the affected State designate a State coordinating officer for the purpose of coordinating State and local disaster assistance efforts with those of the Federal Government.
- (d) Where the area affected by a major disaster or emergency includes parts of more than 1 State, the President, at the discretion of the President, may appoint a single Federal coordinating officer for the entire affected area, and may appoint such deputy Federal coordinating officers to assist the Federal coordinating officer as the President determines appropriate.

### **Sec. 303. Emergency Support and Response Teams (42 U.S.C. 5144)\***

- (a) Emergency Support Teams – The President shall form emergency support teams of Federal personnel to be deployed in an area affected by a major disaster or emergency. Such emergency support teams shall assist the Federal coordinating officer in carrying out his responsibilities pursuant to this Act. Upon request of the President, the head of any Federal agency is directed to detail to temporary duty with the emergency support teams on either a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis, as is determined necessary by the President, such personnel within the administrative jurisdiction of the head of the Federal agency as the President may need or believe to be useful for carrying out the functions of the emergency support teams, each such detail to be without loss of seniority, pay, or other employee status.



(b) Emergency Response Teams-

- (1) Establishment - In carrying out subsection (a), the President, acting through the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, shall establish-
  - (A) at a minimum 3 national response teams; and
  - (B) sufficient regional response teams, including Regional Office strike teams under section 507 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002; and
  - (C) other response teams as may be necessary to meet the incident management responsibilities of the Federal Government.
- (2) Target Capability Level - The Director shall ensure that specific target capability levels, as defined pursuant to the guidelines established under section 646(a) of the Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006, are established for Federal emergency response teams.
- (3) Personnel - The President, acting through the Director, shall ensure that the Federal emergency response teams consist of adequate numbers of properly planned, organized, equipped, trained, and exercised personnel to achieve the established target capability levels. Each emergency response team shall work in coordination with State and local officials and onsite personnel associated with a particular incident.
- (4) Readiness Reporting - The Director shall evaluate team readiness on a regular basis and report team readiness levels in the report required under section 652(a) of the Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006.

**Sec. 304. Reimbursement of Federal Agencies (42 U.S.C. 5147)**

Federal agencies may be reimbursed for expenditures under this Act from funds appropriated for the purposes of this Act. Any funds received by Federal agencies as reimbursement for services or supplies furnished under the authority of this Act shall be deposited to the credit of the appropriation or appropriations currently available for such services or supplies.

**Sec. 305. Nonliability of Federal Government (42 U.S.C. 5148)**

The Federal Government shall not be liable for any claim based upon the exercise or performance of or the failure to exercise or perform a discretionary function or duty on the part of a Federal agency or an employee of the Federal Government in carrying out the provisions of this Act.



### **Sec. 306. Performance of Services (42 U.S.C. 5149)**

- (a) Utilization of services or facilities of State and local governments - In carrying out the purposes of this Act, any Federal agency is authorized to accept and utilize the services or facilities of any State or local government, or of any agency, office, or employee thereof, with the consent of such government.
- (b) Appointment of temporary personnel, experts, and consultants; acquisition, rental, or hire of equipment, services, materials and supplies - In performing any services under this Act, any Federal agency is authorized
  - (1) to appoint and fix the compensation of such temporary personnel as may be necessary, without regard to the provisions of title 5, governing appointments in competitive service;
  - (2) to employ experts and consultants in accordance with the provisions of section 3109 of such title, without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates; and
  - (3) to incur obligations on behalf of the United States by contract or otherwise for the acquisition, rental, or hire of equipment, services, materials, and supplies for shipping, drayage, travel, and communications, and for the supervision and administration of such activities. Such obligations, including obligations arising out of the temporary employment of additional personnel, may be incurred by an agency in such amount as may be made available to it by the President.

### **Sec. 307. Use of Local Firms and Individuals (42 U.S.C. 5150)\***

- (a) Contracts or Agreements With Private Entities-
  - (1) In General - In the expenditure of Federal funds for debris clearance, distribution of supplies, reconstruction, and other major disaster or emergency assistance activities which may be carried out by contract or agreement with private organizations, firms, or individuals, preference shall be given, to the extent feasible and practicable, to those organizations, firms, and individuals residing or doing business primarily in the area affected by such major disaster or emergency.
  - (2) Construction - This section shall not be considered to restrict the use of Department of Defense resources under this Act in the provision of assistance in a major disaster.
  - (3) Specific Geographic Area - In carrying out this section, a contract or agreement may be set aside for award based on a specific geographic area.



(b) Implementation-

- (1) Contracts not to entities in area - Any expenditure of Federal funds for debris clearance, distribution of supplies, reconstruction, and other major disaster or emergency assistance activities which may be carried out by contract or agreement with private organizations, firms, or individuals, not awarded to an organization, firm, or individual residing or doing business primarily in the area affected by such major disaster shall be justified in writing in the contract file.
  - (2) Transition - Following the declaration of an emergency or major disaster, an agency performing response, relief, and reconstruction activities shall transition work performed under contracts in effect on the date on which the President declares the emergency or major disaster to organizations, firms, and individuals residing or doing business primarily in any area affected by the major disaster or emergency, unless the head of such agency determines that it is not feasible or practicable to do so.
  - (3) Formation of Requirements – The head of a Federal agency, as feasible and practicable, shall formulate appropriate requirements to facilitate compliance with this section.
- (c) Prior Contracts - Nothing in this section shall be construed to require any Federal agency to breach or renegotiate any contract in effect before the occurrence of a major disaster or emergency.

**Sec. 308. Nondiscrimination in Disaster Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5151)\***

- (a) Regulations for equitable and impartial relief operations - The President shall issue, and may alter and amend, such regulations as may be necessary for the guidance of personnel carrying out Federal assistance functions at the site of a major disaster or emergency. Such regulations shall include provisions for insuring that the distribution of supplies, the processing of applications, and other relief and assistance activities shall be accomplished in an equitable and impartial manner, without discrimination on the grounds of race, color, religion, nationality, sex, age, disability, English proficiency, or economic status.
- (b) Compliance with regulations as prerequisite to participation by other bodies in relief operations - As a condition of participation in the distribution of assistance or supplies under this Act or of receiving assistance under this Act, governmental bodies and other organizations shall be required to comply with regulations relating to nondiscrimination promulgated by the President, and such other regulations applicable to activities within an area affected by a major disaster or emergency as he deems necessary for the effective coordination of relief efforts.



### **Sec. 309. Use and Coordination of Relief Organizations (42 U.S.C. 5152)**

- (a) In providing relief and assistance under this Act, the President may utilize, with their consent, the personnel and facilities of the American National Red Cross, the Salvation Army, the Mennonite Disaster Service, and other relief or disaster assistance organizations, in the distribution of medicine, food, supplies, or other items, and in the restoration, rehabilitation, or reconstruction of community services housing and essential facilities, whenever the President finds that such utilization is necessary.
- (b) The President is authorized to enter into agreements with the American National Red Cross, the Salvation Army, the Mennonite Disaster Service, and other relief or disaster assistance organizations under which the disaster relief activities of such organizations may be coordinated by the Federal coordinating officer whenever such organizations are engaged in providing relief during and after a major disaster or emergency. Any such agreement shall include provisions assuring that use of Federal facilities, supplies, and services will be in compliance with regulations prohibiting duplication of benefits and guaranteeing nondiscrimination promulgated by the President under this Act, and such other regulation as the President may require.

### **Sec. 310. Priority to Certain Applications for Public Facility and Public Housing Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5153)**

- (a) Priority - In the processing of applications for assistance, priority and immediate consideration shall be given by the head of the appropriate Federal agency, during such period as the President shall prescribe, to applications from public bodies situated in areas affected by major disasters under the following Acts:
  - (1) The United States Housing Act of 1937 for the provision of low-income housing.
  - (2) Section 702 of the Housing Act of 1954 for assistance in public works planning.
  - (3) The Community Development Block Grant Program under title I of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974.
  - (4) Section 306 of the Consolidated Farm and Rural Development Act.
  - (5) The Public Works and Economic Development Act of 1965.
  - (6) The Appalachian Regional Development Act of 1965.
  - (7) The Federal Water Pollution Control Act.



- (b) Obligation of certain discretionary funds - In the obligation of discretionary funds or funds which are not allocated among the States or political subdivisions of a State, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development and the Secretary of Commerce shall give priority to applications for projects for major disaster areas.

### **Sec. 311. Insurance (42 U.S.C. 5154)**

- (a) Applicants for replacement of damaged facilities
  - (1) Compliance with certain regulations - An applicant for assistance under section 5172 of this title (relating to repair, restoration, and replacement of damaged facilities), section 5189 of this title (relating to simplified procedure) or section 3149(c)(2) of this title) shall comply with regulations prescribed by the President to assure that, with respect to any property to be replaced, restored, repaired, or constructed with such assistance, such types and extent of insurance will be obtained and maintained as may be reasonably available, adequate, and necessary, to protect against future loss to such property.
  - (2) Determination - In making a determination with respect to availability, adequacy, and necessity under paragraph (1), the President shall not require greater types and extent of insurance than are certified to him as reasonable by the appropriate State insurance commissioner responsible for regulation of such insurance.
- (b) Maintenance of insurance - No applicant for assistance under section 5172 of this title (relating to repair, restoration, and replacement of damaged facilities), section 5189 of this title (relating to simplified procedure), or section 3149(c)(2) of this title) may receive such assistance for any property or part thereof for which the applicant has previously received assistance under this Act unless all insurance required pursuant to this section has been obtained and maintained with respect to such property. The requirements of this subsection may not be waived under section 5141 of this title.
- (c) State acting as self-insurer - A State may elect to act as a self-insurer with respect to any or all of the facilities owned by the State. Such an election, if declared in writing at the time of acceptance of assistance under section 5172 or 5189 of this title or section 3149(c)(2) of this title) or subsequently and accompanied by a plan for self-insurance which is satisfactory to the President, shall be deemed compliance with subsection (a). No such self-insurer may receive assistance under section 5172 or 5189 of this title for any property or part thereof for which it has previously received assistance under this Act, to the extent that insurance for such property or part thereof would have been reasonably available.



## **Prohibited Flood Disaster Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5154a)**

(a) General prohibition - Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no Federal disaster relief assistance made available in a flood disaster area may be used to make a payment (including any loan assistance payment) to a person for repair, replacement, or restoration for damage to any personal, residential, or commercial property if that person at any time has received flood disaster assistance that was conditional on the person first having obtained flood insurance under applicable Federal law and subsequently having failed to obtain and maintain flood insurance as required under applicable Federal law on such property.

(b) Transfer of property -

(1) Duty to notify - In the event of the transfer of any property described in paragraph (3), the transferor shall, not later than the date on which such transfer occurs, notify the transferee in writing of the requirements to -

(A) obtain flood insurance in accordance with applicable Federal law with respect to such property, if the property is not so insured as of the date on which the property is transferred; and

(B) maintain flood insurance in accordance with applicable Federal law with respect to such property. Such written notification shall be contained in documents evidencing the transfer of ownership of the property.

(2) Failure to notify - If a transferor described in paragraph (1) fails to make a notification in accordance with such paragraph and, subsequent to the transfer of the property -

(A) the transferee fails to obtain or maintain flood insurance in accordance with applicable Federal law with respect to the property,

(B) the property is damaged by a flood disaster, and

(C) Federal disaster relief assistance is provided for the repair, replacement, or restoration of the property as a result of such damage, the transferor shall be required to reimburse the Federal Government in an amount equal to the amount of the Federal disaster relief assistance provided with respect to the property.

(3) Property described - For purposes of paragraph (1), a property is described in this paragraph if it is personal, commercial, or residential property for which Federal disaster relief assistance made available in a flood disaster area has been provided, prior to the date on which the property is transferred, for repair, replacement, or restoration of the property, if such assistance was conditioned upon obtaining flood insurance in accordance with applicable Federal law with respect to such property.

(c) [Omitted]



- (d) Definition - For purposes of this section, the term “flood disaster area” means an area with respect to which -
- (1) the Secretary of Agriculture finds, or has found, to have been substantially affected by a natural disaster in the United States pursuant to section 1961(a) of the Consolidated Farm and Rural Development Act (7 U.S.C. 1961(a)); or
  - (2) the President declares, or has declared, the existence of a major disaster or emergency pursuant to the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.), as a result of flood conditions existing in or affecting that area.
- (e) Effective date - This section and the amendments made by this section [adding this section and amending 42 U.S.C. 4012a(a)] shall apply to disasters declared after September 23, 1994.

### **Sec. 312. Duplication of Benefits (42 U.S.C. 5155)**

- (a) General prohibition - The President, in consultation with the head of each Federal agency administering any program providing financial assistance to persons, business concerns, or other entities suffering losses as a result of a major disaster or emergency, shall assure that no such person, business concern, or other entity will receive such assistance with respect to any part of such loss as to which he has received financial assistance under any other program or from insurance or any other source.
- (b) Special rules -
- (1) Limitation - This section shall not prohibit the provision of Federal assistance to a person who is or may be entitled to receive benefits for the same purposes from another source if such person has not received such other benefits by the time of application for Federal assistance and if such person agrees to repay all duplicative assistance to the agency providing the Federal assistance.
  - (2) Procedures - The President shall establish such procedures as the President considers necessary to ensure uniformity in preventing duplication of benefits.
  - (3) Effect of partial benefits - Receipt of partial benefits for a major disaster or emergency shall not preclude provision of additional Federal assistance for any part of a loss or need for which benefits have not been provided.
- (c) Recovery of duplicative benefits - A person receiving Federal assistance for a major disaster or emergency shall be liable to the United States to the extent that such assistance duplicates benefits available to the person for the same purpose



- (d) Assistance not income - Federal major disaster and emergency assistance provided to individuals and families under this Act, and comparable disaster assistance provided by States, local governments, and disaster assistance organizations, shall not be considered as income or a resource when determining eligibility for or benefit levels under federally funded income assistance or resource-tested benefit programs.

### **Sec. 313. Standard of Review (42 U.S.C. 5156)**

The President shall establish comprehensive standards which shall be used to assess the efficiency and effectiveness of Federal major disaster and emergency assistance programs administered under this Act. The President shall conduct annual reviews of the activities of Federal agencies and State and local governments in major disaster and emergency preparedness and in providing major disaster and emergency assistance in order to assure maximum coordination and effectiveness of such programs and consistency in policies for reimbursement of States under this Act.

### **Sec. 314. Penalties (42 U.S.C. 5157)**

- (a) Misuse of funds - Any person who knowingly misapplies the proceeds of a loan or other cash benefit obtained under this Act shall be fined an amount equal to one and one-half times the misapplied amount of the proceeds or cash benefit.
- (b) Civil enforcement - Whenever it appears that any person has violated or is about to violate any provision of this Act, including any civil penalty imposed under this Act, the Attorney General may bring a civil action for such relief as may be appropriate. Such action may be brought in an appropriate United States district court.
- (c) Referral to Attorney General - The President shall expeditiously refer to the Attorney General for appropriate action any evidence developed in the performance of functions under this Act that may warrant consideration for criminal prosecution.
- (d) Civil penalty - Any individual who knowingly violates any order or regulation issued under this Act shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$5,000 for each violation.



### **Sec. 315. Availability of Materials (42 U.S.C. 5158)**

The President is authorized, at the request of the Governor of an affected State, to provide for a survey of construction materials needed in the area affected by a major disaster on an emergency basis for housing repairs, replacement housing, public facilities repairs and replacement, farming operations, and business enterprises and to take appropriate action to assure the availability and fair distribution of needed materials, including, where possible, the allocation of such materials for a period of not more than one hundred and eighty days after such major disaster. Any allocation program shall be implemented by the President to the extent possible, by working with and through those companies which traditionally supply construction materials in the affected area. For the purposes of this section “construction materials” shall include building materials and materials required for repairing housing, replacement housing, public facilities repairs and replacement, and for normal farm and business operations.

### **Sec. 316. Protection of Environment (42 U.S.C. 5159)**

An action which is taken or assistance which is provided pursuant to section 5170a , 5170b, 5172, 5173, or 5192 of this title, including such assistance provided pursuant to the procedures provided for in section 5189 of this title , which has the effect of restoring a facility substantially to its condition prior to the disaster or emergency, shall not be deemed a major Federal action significantly affecting the quality of the human environment within the meaning of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (83 Stat. 852) [42 U.S.C. §4321 et seq.]. Nothing in this section shall alter or affect the applicability of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 [42 U.S.C. §4321 et seq.] to other Federal actions taken under this Act or under any other provisions of law.

### **Sec. 317. Recovery of Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5160)**

- (a) Party liable - Any person who intentionally causes a condition for which Federal assistance is provided under this Act or under any other Federal law as a result of a declaration of a major disaster or emergency under this Act shall be liable to the United States for the reasonable costs incurred by the United States in responding to such disaster or emergency to the extent that such costs are attributable to the intentional act or omission of such person which caused such condition. Such action for reasonable costs shall be brought in an appropriate United States district court.
- (b) Rendering of care - A person shall not be liable under this section for costs incurred by the United States as a result of actions taken or omitted by such person in the course of rendering care or assistance in response to a major disaster or emergency.



## **Sec. 318. Audits and Investigations (42 U.S.C. 5161)**

- (a) In general - Subject to the provisions of chapter 75 of title 31, relating to requirements for single audits, the President shall conduct audits and investigations as necessary to assure compliance with this Act, and in connection therewith may question such persons as may be necessary to carry out such audits and investigations.
- (b) Access to records - For purposes of audits and investigations under this section, the President and Comptroller General may inspect any books, documents, papers, and records of any person relating to any activity undertaken or funded under this Act.
- (c) State and local audits - The President may require audits by State and local governments in connection with assistance under this Act when necessary to assure compliance with this Act or related regulations.

## **Sec. 319. Advance of Non-Federal Share (42 U.S.C. 5162)**

- (a) In general - The President may lend or advance to an eligible applicant or a State the portion of assistance for which the State is responsible under the cost-sharing provisions of this Act in any case in which--
  - (1) the State is unable to assume its financial responsibility under such cost-sharing provisions—
    - (A) with respect to concurrent, multiple major disasters in a jurisdiction, or
    - (B) after incurring extraordinary costs as a result of a particular disaster; and
  - (2) the damages caused by such disasters or disaster are so overwhelming and severe that it is not possible for the applicant or the State to assume immediately their financial responsibility under this Act.
- (b) Terms of loans and advances -
  - (1) In general - Any loan or advance under this section shall be repaid to the United States.
  - (2) Interest - Loans and advances under this section shall bear interest at a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current market yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States with remaining periods to maturity comparable to the reimbursement period of the loan or advance.



- (c) Regulations - The President shall issue regulations describing the terms and conditions under which any loan or advance authorized by this section may be made.

### **Sec. 320. Limitation on Use of Sliding Scale (42 U.S.C. 5163)**

No geographic area shall be precluded from receiving assistance under this Act solely by virtue of an arithmetic formula or sliding scale based on income or population.

### **Sec. 321. Rules and Regulations (42 U.S.C. 5164)**

The President may prescribe such rules and regulations as may be necessary and proper to carry out the provisions of this Act, and may exercise, either directly or through such Federal agency as the President may designate, any power or authority conferred to the President by this Act.

### **Sec. 322. Mitigation Planning (42 U.S.C. 5165)**

- (a) Requirement of Mitigation Plan - As a condition of receipt of an increased Federal share for hazard mitigation measures under subsection (e), a State, local, or tribal government shall develop and submit for approval to the President a mitigation plan that outlines processes for identifying the natural hazards, risks, and vulnerabilities of the area under the jurisdiction of the government.
- (b) Local and Tribal Plans - Each mitigation plan developed by a local or tribal government shall -
  - (1) describe actions to mitigate hazards, risks, and vulnerabilities identified under the plan; and
  - (2) establish a strategy to implement those actions.
- (c) State Plans - The State process of development of a mitigation plan under this section shall -
  - (1) identify the natural hazards, risks, and vulnerabilities of areas in the State;
  - (2) support development of local mitigation plans;
  - (3) provide for technical assistance to local and tribal governments for mitigation planning; and
  - (4) identify and prioritize mitigation actions that the State will support, as resources become available.



(d) Funding -

- (1) In general - Federal contributions under section 5170c of this title may be used to fund the development and updating of mitigation plans under this section.
- (2) Maximum federal contribution - With respect to any mitigation plan, a State, local, or tribal government may use an amount of Federal contributions under section 5170c of this title not to exceed 7 percent of the amount of such contributions available to the government as of a date determined by the government.

(e) Increased Federal Share for Hazard Mitigation Measures -

- (1) In general - If, at the time of the declaration of a major disaster, a State has in effect an approved mitigation plan under this section, the President may increase to 20 percent, with respect to the major disaster, the maximum percentage specified in the last sentence of section 5170c(a) of this title.
- (2) Factors for consideration - In determining whether to increase the maximum percentage under paragraph (1), the President shall consider whether the State has established -
  - (A) eligibility criteria for property acquisition and other types of mitigation measures;
  - (B) requirements for cost effectiveness that are related to the eligibility criteria;
  - (C) a system of priorities that is related to the eligibility criteria; and
  - (D) a process by which an assessment of the effectiveness of a mitigation action may be carried out after the mitigation action is complete.

**Sec. 323. Standards for Public and Private Structures (42 U.S.C. 5165a)**

(a) In General - As a condition of receipt of a disaster loan or grant under this Act -

- (1) the recipient shall carry out any repair or construction to be financed with the loan or grant in accordance with applicable standards of safety, decency, and sanitation and in conformity with applicable codes, specifications, and standards; and
- (2) the President may require safe land use and construction practices, after adequate consultation with appropriate State and local government officials.

(b) Evidence of Compliance - A recipient of a disaster loan or grant under this Act shall provide such evidence of compliance with this section as the President may require by regulation.



*Note: Section 324 becomes effective when FEMA has promulgated a management cost rate regulation. Until then subsection 406(f) of the Stafford Act is used to establish management cost rates.*

### **Sec. 324. Management Costs (42 U.S.C. 5165b)**

- (a) Definition of Management Cost - In this section, the term “management cost” includes any indirect cost, any administrative expense, and any other expense not directly chargeable to a specific project under a major disaster, emergency, or disaster preparedness or mitigation activity or measure.
- (b) Establishment of Management Cost Rates - Notwithstanding any other provision of law (including any administrative rule or guidance), the President shall by regulation establish management cost rates, for grantees and subgrantees, that shall be used to determine contributions under this Act for management costs.
- (c) Review - The President shall review the management cost rates established under subsection (b) not later than 3 years after the date of establishment of the rates and periodically thereafter.

### **Sec. 325. Public Notice, Comment, and Consultation Requirements (42 U.S.C. 5165c)**

- (a) Public Notice and Comment Concerning New or Modified Policies -
  - (1) In general - The President shall provide for public notice and opportunity for comment before adopting any new or modified policy that -
    - (A) governs implementation of the public assistance program administered by the Federal Emergency Management Agency under this Act; and
    - (B) could result in a significant reduction of assistance under the program.
  - (2) Application - Any policy adopted under paragraph (1) shall apply only to a major disaster or emergency declared on or after the date on which the policy is adopted.
- (b) Consultation Concerning Interim Policies -
  - (1) In general - Before adopting any interim policy under the public assistance program to address specific conditions that relate to a major disaster or emergency that has been declared under this Act, the President, to the maximum extent practicable, shall solicit the views and recommendations of grantees and subgrantees with respect to the major disaster or emergency concerning the potential interim policy, if the interim policy is likely -



- (A) to result in a significant reduction of assistance to applicants for the assistance with respect to the major disaster or emergency; or
- (B) to change the terms of a written agreement to which the Federal Government is a party concerning the declaration of the major disaster or emergency.

(2) No legal right of action - Nothing in this subsection confers a legal right of action on any party.

(c) Public Access - The President shall promote public access to policies governing the implementation of the public assistance program.

**Sec. 326. Designation of Small State and Rural Advocate (42 U.S.C. 5165d)\***

(a) In General - The President shall designate in the Federal Emergency Management Agency a Small State and Rural Advocate.

(b) Responsibilities - The Small State and Rural Advocate shall be an advocate for the fair treatment of small States and rural communities in the provision of assistance under this Act.

(c) Duties - The Small State and Rural Advocate shall

- (1) participate in the disaster declaration process under section 401 and the emergency declaration process under section 501, to ensure that the needs of rural communities are being addressed;
- (2) assist small population States in the preparation of requests for major disasters or emergency declarations; and
- (3) conduct such other activities as the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency considers appropriate.



## **Title IV -- Major Disaster Assistance Programs**

### **Sec. 401. Procedure for Declaration (42 U.S.C. 5170)**

All requests for a declaration by the President that a major disaster exists shall be made by the Governor of the affected State. Such a request shall be based on a finding that the disaster is of such severity and magnitude that effective response is beyond the capabilities of the State and the affected local governments and that Federal assistance is necessary. As part of such request, and as a prerequisite to major disaster assistance under this Act, the Governor shall take appropriate response action under State law and direct execution of the State's emergency plan. The Governor shall furnish information on the nature and amount of State and local resources which have been or will be committed to alleviating the results of the disaster, and shall certify that, for the current disaster, State and local government obligations and expenditures (of which State commitments must be a significant proportion) will comply with all applicable cost-sharing requirements of this Act. Based on the request of a Governor under this section, the President may declare under this Act that a major disaster or emergency exists.

### **Sec. 402. General Federal Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5170a)\***

In any major disaster, the President may -

- (1) direct any Federal agency, with or without reimbursement, to utilize its authorities and the resources granted to it under Federal law (including personnel, equipment, supplies, facilities, and managerial, technical, and advisory services) in support of State and local assistance response and recovery efforts, including precautionary evacuations;
- (2) coordinate all disaster relief assistance (including voluntary assistance) provided by Federal agencies, private organizations, and State and local governments, including precautionary evacuations and recovery;
- (3) provide technical and advisory assistance to affected State and local governments for -
  - (A) the performance of essential community services;
  - (B) issuance of warnings of risks and hazards;
  - (C) public health and safety information, including dissemination of such information;
  - (D) provision of health and safety measures;
  - (E) management, control, and reduction of immediate threats to public health and safety; and
  - (F) recovery activities, including disaster impact assessments and planning;



- (4) assist State and local governments in the distribution of medicine, food, and other consumable supplies, and emergency assistance; and
- (5) provide accelerated Federal assistance and Federal support where necessary to save lives, prevent human suffering, or mitigate severe damage, which may be provided in the absence of a specific request and in which case the President
  - (A) shall, to the fullest extent practicable, promptly notify and coordinate with officials in a State in which such assistance or support is provided; and
  - (B) shall not, in notifying and coordinating with a State under subparagraph (A), delay or impede the rapid deployment, use, and distribution of critical resources to victims of a major disaster.

**Sec. 403. Essential Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5170b)\***

- (a) In general - Federal agencies may on the direction of the President, provide assistance essential to meeting immediate threats to life and property resulting from a major disaster, as follows:
  - (1) Federal resources, generally - Utilizing, lending, or donating to State and local governments Federal equipment, supplies, facilities, personnel, and other resources, other than the extension of credit, for use or distribution by such governments in accordance with the purposes of this Act.
  - (2) Medicine, durable medical equipment, food, and other consumables - Distributing or rendering through State and local governments, the American National Red Cross, the Salvation Army, the Mennonite Disaster Service, and other relief and disaster assistance organizations medicine, durable medical equipment, food, and other consumable supplies, and other services and assistance to disaster victims.
  - (3) Work and services to save lives and protect property - Performing on public or private lands or waters any work or services essential to saving lives and protecting and preserving property or public health and safety, including -
    - (A) debris removal;
    - (B) search and rescue, emergency medical care, emergency mass care, emergency shelter, and provision of food, water, medicine, durable medical equipment, and other essential needs, including movement of supplies or persons;
    - (C) clearance of roads and construction of temporary bridges necessary to the performance of emergency tasks and essential community services;
    - (D) provision of temporary facilities for schools and other essential community services;
    - (E) demolition of unsafe structures which endanger the public;
    - (F) warning of further risks and hazards;



- (G) dissemination of public information and assistance regarding health and safety measures;
  - (H) provision of technical advice to State and local governments on disaster management and control;
  - (I) reduction of immediate threats to life, property, and public health and safety; and
  - (J) provision of rescue, care, shelter, and essential needs -
    - (i) to individuals with household pets and service animals; and
    - (ii) to such pets and animals.
- (4) Contributions - Making contributions to State or local governments or owners or operators of private nonprofit facilities for the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this subsection.
- (b) Federal share - The Federal share of assistance under this section shall be not less than 75 percent of the eligible cost of such assistance.
- (c) Utilization of DOD resources -
  - (1) General rule - During the immediate aftermath of an incident which may ultimately qualify for assistance under this title or title V of this Act, the Governor of the State in which such incident occurred may request the President to direct the Secretary of Defense to utilize the resources of the Department of Defense for the purpose of performing on public and private lands any emergency work which is made necessary by such incident and which is essential for the preservation of life and property. If the President determines that such work is essential for the preservation of life and property, the President shall grant such request to the extent the President determines practicable. Such emergency work may only be carried out for a period not to exceed 10 days.
  - (2) Rules applicable to debris removal - Any removal of debris and wreckage carried out under this subsection shall be subject to section 5173(b) of this title, relating to unconditional authorization and indemnification for debris removal.
  - (3) Expenditures out of disaster relief funds - The cost of any assistance provided pursuant to this subsection shall be reimbursed out of funds made available to carry out this Act.
  - (4) Federal share - The Federal share of assistance under this subsection shall be not less than 75 percent.
  - (5) Guidelines - Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of the Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Amendments of 1988 [enacted Nov. 23, 1988], the President shall issue guidelines for carrying out this subsection. Such guidelines shall consider any likely effect assistance under



this subsection will have on the availability of other forms of assistance under this Act.

(6) Definitions - For purposes of this section

- (A) Department of Defense - The term “Department of Defense” has the meaning the term “department” has under section 101 of title 10.
- (B) Emergency work - The term “emergency work” includes clearance and removal of debris and wreckage and temporary restoration of essential public facilities and services.

**Sec. 404. Hazard Mitigation (42 U.S.C. 5170c)\***

(a) In General - The President may contribute up to 75 percent of the cost of hazard mitigation measures which the President has determined are cost-effective and which substantially reduce the risk of future damage, hardship, loss, or suffering in any area affected by a major disaster. Such measures shall be identified following the evaluation of natural hazards under section 5165 of this title and shall be subject to approval by the President. Subject to section 5165 of this title, the total of contributions under this section for a major disaster shall not exceed 15 percent for amounts not more than \$2,000,000,000, 10 percent for amounts of more than \$2,000,000,000 and not more than \$10,000,000,000, and 7.5 percent on amounts of more than \$10,000,000,000 and not more than \$35,333,000,000 of the estimated aggregate amount of grants to be made (less any associated administrative costs) under this Act with respect to the major disaster.

(b) Property acquisition and relocation assistance -

- (1) General authority - In providing hazard mitigation assistance under this section in connection with flooding, the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency may provide property acquisition and relocation assistance for projects that meet the requirements of paragraph (2).
- (2) Terms and conditions - An acquisition or relocation project shall be eligible to receive assistance pursuant to paragraph (1) only if -
  - (A) the applicant for the assistance is otherwise eligible to receive assistance under the hazard mitigation grant program established under subsection (a); and
  - (B) on or after December 3, 1993, the applicant for the assistance enters into an agreement with the Director that provides assurances that -
    - (i) any property acquired, accepted, or from which a structure will be removed pursuant to the project will be dedicated and maintained in perpetuity for a use that is compatible with open space, recreational, or wetlands management practices;



- (ii) no new structure will be erected on property acquired, accepted or from which a structure was removed under the acquisition or relocation program other than--
    - (I) a public facility that is open on all sides and functionally related to a designated open space;
    - (II) a rest room; or
    - (III) a structure that the Director approves in writing before the commencement of the construction of the structure; and
  - (iii) after receipt of the assistance, with respect to any property acquired, accepted or from which a structure was removed under the acquisition or relocation program--
    - (I) no subsequent application for additional disaster assistance for any purpose will be made by the recipient to any Federal entity; and
    - (II) no assistance referred to in subclause (I) will be provided to the applicant by any Federal source.
- (3) Statutory construction - Nothing in this subsection is intended to alter or otherwise affect an agreement for an acquisition or relocation project carried out pursuant to this section that was in effect on the day before December 3, 1993.

(c) Program Administration by States -

- (1) In general - A State desiring to administer the hazard mitigation grant program established by this section with respect to hazard mitigation assistance in the State may submit to the President an application for the delegation of the authority to administer the program.
- (2) Criteria - The President, in consultation and coordination with States and local governments, shall establish criteria for the approval of applications submitted under paragraph (1). The criteria shall include, at a minimum -
  - (A) the demonstrated ability of the State to manage the grant program under this section;
  - (B) there being in effect an approved mitigation plan under section 5165 of this title; and
  - (C) a demonstrated commitment to mitigation activities.
- (3) Approval - The President shall approve an application submitted under paragraph (1) that meets the criteria established under paragraph (2).
- (4) Withdrawal of approval - If, after approving an application of a State submitted under paragraph (1), the President determines that the State is not administering the hazard mitigation grant program established by this



section in a manner satisfactory to the President, the President shall withdraw the approval.

- (5) Audits - The President shall provide for periodic audits of the hazard mitigation grant programs administered by States under this subsection.

#### **Sec. 405. Federal Facilities (42 U.S.C. 5171)**

- (a) Repair, reconstruction, restoration or replacement of United States facilities - The President may authorize any Federal agency to repair, reconstruct, restore, or replace any facility owned by the United States and under the jurisdiction of such agency which is damaged or destroyed by any major disaster if he determines that such repair, reconstruction, restoration, or replacement is of such importance and urgency that it cannot reasonably be deferred pending the enactment of specific authorizing legislation or the making of an appropriation for such purposes, or the obtaining of congressional committee approval.
- (b) Availability of funds appropriated to agency for repair, reconstruction, restoration, or replacement of agency facilities - In order to carry out the provisions of this section, such repair, reconstruction, restoration, or replacement may be begun notwithstanding a lack or an insufficiency of funds appropriated for such purpose, where such lack or insufficiency can be remedied by the transfer, in accordance with law, of funds appropriated to that agency for another purpose.
- (c) Steps for mitigation of hazards - In implementing this section, Federal agencies shall evaluate the natural hazards to which these facilities are exposed and shall take appropriate action to mitigate such hazards, including safe land-use and construction practices, in accordance with standards prescribed by the President.

#### **Sec. 406. Repair, Restoration, and Replacement of Damaged Facilities (42 U.S.C. 5172)\***

- (a) Contributions -
- (1) In general -The President may make contributions -
- (A) to a State or local government for the repair, restoration, reconstruction, or replacement of a public facility damaged or destroyed by a major disaster and for associated expenses incurred by the government; and
- (B) subject to paragraph (3), to a person that owns or operates a private nonprofit facility damaged or destroyed by a major disaster for the repair, restoration, reconstruction, or replacement of the facility and for associated expenses incurred by the person.



(2) Associated expenses - For the purposes of this section, associated expenses shall include -

- (A) the costs of mobilizing and employing the National Guard for performance of eligible work;
- (B) the costs of using prison labor to perform eligible work, including wages actually paid, transportation to a worksite, and extraordinary costs of guards, food, and lodging; and
- (C) base and overtime wages for the employees and extra hires of a State, local government, or person described in paragraph (1) that perform eligible work, plus fringe benefits on such wages to the extent that such benefits were being paid before the major disaster.

(3) Conditions for assistance to private nonprofit facilities -

- (A) In general - The President may make contributions to a private nonprofit facility under paragraph (1)(B) only if -
  - (i) the facility provides critical services (as defined by the President) in the event of a major disaster; or
  - (ii) the owner or operator of the facility -
    - (I) has applied for a disaster loan under section 7(b) of the Small Business Act (15 U.S.C. 636(b)); and
    - (II) (aa) has been determined to be ineligible for such a loan; or
    - (bb) has obtained such a loan in the maximum amount for which the Small Business Administration determines the facility is eligible.
- (B) Definition of critical services - In this paragraph, the term “critical services” includes power, water (including water provided by an irrigation organization or facility), sewer, wastewater treatment, communications, education, and emergency medical care.

(4) Notification to Congress - Before making any contribution under this section in an amount greater than \$20,000,000, the President shall notify

- (A) the Committee on Environment and Public Works of the Senate;
- (B) the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives;
- (C) the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate; and
- (D) the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives.

(b) Federal Share -

- (1) Minimum federal share - Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Federal share of assistance under this section shall be not less than 75 percent of the eligible cost of repair, restoration, reconstruction, or replacement carried out under this section.



*Note: Paragraph (2) takes effect after FEMA has promulgated an implementing regulation.*

(2) Reduced federal share - The President shall promulgate regulations to reduce the Federal share of assistance under this section to not less than 25 percent in the case of the repair, restoration, reconstruction, or replacement of any eligible public facility or private nonprofit facility following an event associated with a major disaster -

- (A) that has been damaged, on more than one occasion within the preceding 10-year period, by the same type of event; and
- (B) the owner of which has failed to implement appropriate mitigation measures to address the hazard that caused the damage to the facility.

(c) Large In-Lieu Contributions -

(1) For public facilities -

- (A) In general - In any case in which a State or local government determines that the public welfare would not best be served by repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing any public facility owned or controlled by the State or local government, the State or local government may elect to receive, in lieu of a contribution under subsection (a)(1)(A), a contribution in an amount equal to 90 percent of the Federal share of the Federal estimate of the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing the facility and of management expenses.
- (B) Use of funds - Funds contributed to a State or local government under this paragraph may be used -
  - (i) to repair, restore, or expand other selected public facilities;
  - (ii) to construct new facilities; or
  - (iii) to fund hazard mitigation measures that the State or local government determines to be necessary to meet a need for governmental services and functions in the area affected by the major disaster.
- (C) Limitations - Funds made available to a State or local government under this paragraph may not be used for -
  - (i) any public facility located in a regulatory floodway (as defined in section 59.1 of title 44, Code of Federal Regulations (or a successor regulation)); or
  - (ii) any uninsured public facility located in a special flood hazard area identified by the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency under the National Flood Insurance Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 4001 et seq.).



(2) For private nonprofit facilities -

- (A) In general - In any case in which a person that owns or operates a private nonprofit facility determines that the public welfare would not best be served by repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing the facility, the person may elect to receive, in lieu of a contribution under subsection (a)(1)(B), a contribution in an amount equal to 75 percent of the Federal share of the Federal estimate of the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing the facility and of management expenses.
- (B) Use of funds - Funds contributed to a person under this paragraph may be used -
  - (i) to repair, restore, or expand other selected private nonprofit facilities owned or operated by the person;
  - (ii) to construct new private nonprofit facilities to be owned or operated by the person; or
  - (iii) to fund hazard mitigation measures that the person determines to be necessary to meet a need for the person's services and functions in the area affected by the major disaster.
- (C) Limitations - Funds made available to a person under this paragraph may not be used for--
  - (i) any private nonprofit facility located in a regulatory floodway (as defined in section 59.1 of title 44, Code of Federal Regulations (or a successor regulation)); or
  - (ii) any uninsured private nonprofit facility located in a special flood hazard area identified by the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency under the National Flood Insurance Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 4001 et seq.).

(d) Flood insurance -

- (1) Reduction of Federal assistance - If a public facility or private nonprofit facility located in a special flood hazard area identified for more than 1 year by the Director pursuant to the National Flood Insurance Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 4001 et seq.) is damaged or destroyed, after the 180th day following November 23, 1988, by flooding in a major disaster and such facility is not covered on the date of such flooding by flood insurance, the Federal assistance which would otherwise be available under this section with respect to repair, restoration, reconstruction, and replacement of such facility and associated expenses shall be reduced in accordance with paragraph (2).



- (2) Amount of reduction - The amount of a reduction in Federal assistance under this section with respect to a facility shall be the lesser of -
- (A) the value of such facility on the date of the flood damage or destruction, or
  - (B) the maximum amount of insurance proceeds which would have been payable with respect to such facility if such facility had been covered by flood insurance under the National Flood Insurance Act of 1968 on such date.
- (3) Exception - Paragraphs (1) and (2) shall not apply to a private nonprofit facility which is not covered by flood insurance solely because of the local government's failure to participate in the flood insurance program established by the National Flood Insurance Act.
- (4) Dissemination of information - The President shall disseminate information regarding the reduction in Federal assistance provided for by this subsection to State and local governments and the owners and operators of private nonprofit facilities who may be affected by such a reduction.

***Note: The following version of subsection (e) remains in effect until the cost estimation procedures established under paragraph (3) of the revised version of subsection 406(e) – see next subsection – take effect.***

(e) Net Eligible Cost –

- (1) General Rule – For purposes of this section, the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing a public facility or private nonprofit facility on the basis of the design of such facility as it existed immediately prior to the major disaster and in conformity with current applicable codes, specifications, and standards (including floodplain management and hazard mitigation criteria required by the President or by the Coastal Barrier Resources Act (16 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.)) shall, at a minimum, be treated as the net eligible cost of such repair, restoration, reconstruction, or replacement.
- (2) Special Rule – In any case in which the facility being repaired, restored, reconstructed, or replaced, under this section was under construction on the date of the major disaster, the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstruction, or replacing such facility shall include, for purposes of this section, only those costs which, under the contract for such construction, are the owner's responsibility and not the contractor's responsibility.



***Note: The following version of subsection 406(e)(1) and (2) becomes effective when the procedures established by paragraph (3) of this subsection take effect. Subsection 406(e)(4) is currently in effect.***

( e ) Eligible Cost -

(1) Determination -

- (A) In general - For the purposes of this section, the President shall estimate the eligible cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing a public facility or private nonprofit facility--
  - (i) on the basis of the design of the facility as the facility existed immediately before the major disaster; and
  - (ii) in conformity with codes, specifications, and standards (including floodplain management and hazard mitigation criteria required by the President or under the Coastal Barrier Resources Act (16 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.)) applicable at the time at which the disaster occurred.
- (B) Cost estimation procedures -
  - (i) In general - Subject to paragraph (2), the President shall use the cost estimation procedures established under paragraph (3) to determine the eligible cost under this subsection.
  - (ii) Applicability - The procedures specified in this paragraph and paragraph (2) shall apply only to projects the eligible cost of which is equal to or greater than the amount specified in section 5189 of this title.

(2) Modification of eligible cost -

- (A) Actual cost greater than ceiling percentage of estimated cost - In any case in which the actual cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing a facility under this section is greater than the ceiling percentage established under paragraph (3) of the cost estimated under paragraph (1), the President may determine that the eligible cost includes a portion of the actual cost of the repair, restoration, reconstruction, or replacement that exceeds the cost estimated under paragraph (1).
- (B) Actual cost less than estimated cost -
  - (i) Greater than or equal to floor percentage of estimated cost - In any case in which the actual cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing a facility under this section is less than 100 percent of the cost estimated under paragraph (1), but is greater than or equal to the floor percentage established under paragraph (3) of the cost estimated under paragraph (1), the State or local government or person receiving funds under this section shall use the excess funds



to carry out cost-effective activities that reduce the risk of future damage, hardship, or suffering from a major disaster.

- (ii) Less than floor percentage of estimated cost - In any case in which the actual cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing a facility under this section is less than the floor percentage established under paragraph (3) of the cost estimated under paragraph (1), the State or local government or person receiving assistance under this section shall reimburse the President in the amount of the difference.
- (C) No effect on appeals process - Nothing in this paragraph affects any right of appeal under section 5189a of this title.

(3) Expert panel -

- (A) Establishment - Not later than 18 months after October 30, 2000, the President, acting through the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, shall establish an expert panel, which shall include representatives from the construction industry and State and local government.
- (B) Duties - The expert panel shall develop recommendations concerning
  - (i) procedures for estimating the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing a facility consistent with industry practices; and
  - (ii) the ceiling and floor percentages referred to in paragraph (2).
- (C) Regulations - Taking into account the recommendations of the expert panel under subparagraph (B), the President shall promulgate regulations that establish
  - (i) cost estimation procedures described in subparagraph (B)(i); and
  - (ii) the ceiling and floor percentages referred to in paragraph (2).
- (D) Review by President - Not later than 2 years after the date of promulgation of regulations under subparagraph (C) and periodically thereafter, the President shall review the cost estimation procedures and the ceiling and floor percentages established under this paragraph.
- (E) Report to Congress - Not later than 1 year after the date of promulgation of regulations under subparagraph (C), 3 years after that date, and at the end of each 2-year period thereafter, the expert panel shall submit to Congress a report on the appropriateness of the cost estimation procedures.

- (4) Special rule - In any case in which the facility being repaired, restored, reconstructed, or replaced under this section was under construction on the date of the major disaster, the cost of repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing the facility shall include, for the purposes of this section, only



***Note: The following Subsection 406(f) will be repealed when the regulation to implement section 324 has been promulgated.***

(f) Associated Expenses – For purposes of this section, associated expenses include the following –

(1) Necessary costs – Necessary costs of requesting, obtaining, and administering Federal assistance based on a percentage of assistance provided as follows:

- (A) For an applicant whose net eligible costs equal \$100,000, 3 percent of such net eligible costs.
- (B) For an applicant whose net eligible cost equal \$100,000 or more but less than \$1,000,000, \$3,000 plus 2 percent of such net eligible costs in excess of \$100,000.
- (C) For an applicant whose net eligible costs equal \$1,000,000 or more but less than \$5,000,000, \$21,000 plus 1 percent of such net eligible costs in excess of \$1,000,000.
- (D) For an applicant whose net eligible costs equal \$5,000,000 or more, \$61,000 plus 1/2 percent of such eligible costs in excess of \$5,000,000.

(2) Extraordinary Costs – Extraordinary costs incurred by a State for preparation of damage survey reports, final inspection reports, project applications, final audits, and related field inspections by State employees, including overtime pay and per diem and travel expense of such employees, but not including pay for regular time of such employees, based on the total amount of assistance provided under section 403, 404, 406, 407, 502, and 503 in such State in connection with the major disaster as follows.

- (A) If such total amount is less than \$100,000, 3 percent of such total amount.
- (B) If such total amount is \$100,000 or more but less than \$1,000,000, \$3,000 plus 2 percent of such total amount in excess of \$100,000.
- (C) If such total amount is \$1,000,000 or more but less than \$5,000,000, \$21,000 plus 1 percent of such total amount in excess of \$1,000,000.
- (D) If such total amount is \$5,000,000 or more, \$61,000 plus 1/2 per cent of such total amount in excess of \$5,000,000.

(3) Costs of National Guard – The costs of mobilizing and employing the National Guard for performance of eligible work.



- (4) Costs of Prison Labor – The costs of using prison labor to perform eligible work, including wages actually paid, transportation to a worksite, and extraordinary costs of guards, food, and lodging.
- (5) Other Labor Costs – Base and overtime wages for an applicant’s employees and extra hires performing eligible work plus fringe benefits on such wages to the extent that such benefits were being paid before the disaster.

**Sec. 407. Debris Removal (42 U.S.C. 5173)\***

- (a) Presidential Authority - The President, whenever he determines it to be in the public interest, is authorized -
  - (1) through the use of Federal departments, agencies, and instrumentalities, to clear debris and wreckage resulting from a major disaster from publicly and privately owned lands and waters; and
  - (2) to make grants to any State or local government or owner or operator of a private non-profit facility for the purpose of removing debris or wreckage resulting from a major disaster from publicly or privately owned lands and waters.
- (b) Authorization by State or local government; indemnification agreement - No authority under this section shall be exercised unless the affected State or local government shall first arrange an unconditional authorization for removal of such debris or wreckage from public and private property, and, in the case of removal of debris or wreckage from private property, shall first agree to indemnify the Federal Government against any claim arising from such removal.
- (c) Rules relating to large lots - The President shall issue rules which provide for recognition of differences existing among urban, suburban, and rural lands in implementation of this section so as to facilitate adequate removal of debris and wreckage from large lots.
- (d) Federal share - The Federal share of assistance under this section shall be not less than 75 percent of the eligible cost of debris and wreckage removal carried out under this section.
- (e) Expedited Payments -
  - (1) Grant Assistance – In making a grant under subsection (a)(2), the President shall provide not less than 50 percent of the President’s initial estimate of the Federal share of assistance as an initial payment in accordance with paragraph (2).
  - (2) Date of Payment – Not later than 60 days after the date of the estimate described in paragraph (1) and not later than 90 days after the date on which



the State or local government or owner or operator of a private nonprofit facility applies for assistance under this section, an initial payment described in paragraph (1) shall be paid.

**Sec. 408. Federal Assistance to Individuals and Households (42 U.S.C. 5174)\***

(a) In General -

- (1) Provision of assistance - In accordance with this section, the President, in consultation with the Governor of a State, may provide financial assistance, and, if necessary, direct services, to individuals and households in the State who, as a direct result of a major disaster, have necessary expenses and serious needs in cases in which the individuals and households are unable to meet such expenses or needs through other means.
- (2) Relationship to other assistance - Under paragraph (1), an individual or household shall not be denied assistance under paragraph (1), (3), or (4) of subsection (c) solely on the basis that the individual or household has not applied for or received any loan or other financial assistance from the Small Business Administration or any other Federal agency.

(b) Housing Assistance -

- (1) Eligibility - The President may provide financial or other assistance under this section to individuals and households to respond to the disaster-related housing needs of individuals and households who are displaced from their predisaster primary residences or whose predisaster primary residences are rendered uninhabitable, or with respect to individuals with disabilities, rendered inaccessible or uninhabitable, as a result of damage caused by a major disaster.
- (2) Determination of appropriate types of assistance -
  - (A) In general - The President shall determine appropriate types of housing assistance to be provided under this section to individuals and households described in subsection (a)(1) based on considerations of cost effectiveness, convenience to the individuals and households, and such other factors as the President may consider appropriate.
  - (B) Multiple types of assistance - One or more types of housing assistance may be made available under this section, based on the suitability and availability of the types of assistance, to meet the needs of individuals and households in the particular disaster situation.



(c) Types of Housing Assistance -

(1) Temporary housing -

(A) Financial assistance -

- (i) In general - The President may provide financial assistance to individuals or households to rent alternate housing accommodations, existing rental units, manufactured housing, recreational vehicles, or other readily fabricated dwellings. Such assistance may include the payment of the cost of utilities, excluding telephone service.
- (ii) Amount - The amount of assistance under clause (i) shall be based on the fair market rent for the accommodation provided plus the cost of any transportation, utility hookups, security deposits, or unit installation not provided directly by the President.

(B) Direct assistance -

- (i) In general - The President may provide temporary housing units, acquired by purchase or lease, directly to individuals or households who, because of a lack of available housing resources, would be unable to make use of the assistance provided under subparagraph (A).
- (ii) Period of assistance - The President may not provide direct assistance under clause (i) with respect to a major disaster after the end of the 18-month period beginning on the date of the declaration of the major disaster by the President, except that the President may extend that period if the President determines that due to extraordinary circumstances an extension would be in the public interest.
- (iii) Collection of rental charges - After the end of the 18-month period referred to in clause (ii), the President may charge fair market rent for each temporary housing unit provided.

(2) Repairs -

(A) In general - The President may provide financial assistance for -

- (i) the repair of owner-occupied private residences, utilities, and residential infrastructure (such as a private access route) damaged by a major disaster to a safe and sanitary living or functioning condition; and
- (ii) eligible hazard mitigation measures that reduce the likelihood of future damage to such residences, utilities, or infrastructure.

(B) Relationship to other assistance - A recipient of assistance provided under this paragraph shall not be required to show that the assistance can be met through other means, except insurance proceeds.



(3) Replacement -

- (A) In general - The President may provide financial assistance for the replacement of owner-occupied private residences damaged by a major disaster.
  - (B) Applicability of flood insurance requirement - With respect to assistance provided under this paragraph, the President may not waive any provision of Federal law requiring the purchase of flood insurance as a condition of the receipt of Federal disaster assistance.
- (4) Permanent or semi-permanent housing construction - The President may provide financial assistance or direct assistance to individuals or households to construct permanent or semi-permanent housing in insular areas outside the continental United States and in other locations in cases in which
- (A) no alternative housing resources are available; and
  - (B) the types of temporary housing assistance described in paragraph (1) are unavailable, infeasible, or not cost-effective.

(d) Terms and Conditions Relating to Housing Assistance -

(1) Sites -

- (A) In general - Any readily fabricated dwelling provided under this section shall, whenever practicable, be located on a site that -
  - (i) is complete with utilities;
  - (ii) meets the physical accessibility requirements for individuals with disabilities; and
  - (iii) is provided by the State or local government, by the owner of the site, or by the occupant who was displaced by the major disaster.
- (B) Sites provided by the President - A readily fabricated dwelling may be located on a site provided by the President if the President determines that such a site would be more economical or accessible.

(2) Disposal of units -

- (A) Sale to occupants -
  - (i) In general - Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a temporary housing unit purchased under this section by the President for the purpose of housing disaster victims may be sold directly to the individual or household who is occupying the unit if the individual or household lacks permanent housing.
  - (ii) Sale price - A sale of a temporary housing unit under clause (i) shall be at a price that is fair and equitable.



- (iii) Deposit of proceeds - Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the proceeds of a sale under clause (i) shall be deposited in the appropriate Disaster Relief Fund account.
- (iv) Hazard and flood insurance - A sale of a temporary housing unit under clause (i) shall be made on the condition that the individual or household purchasing the housing unit agrees to obtain and maintain hazard and flood insurance on the housing unit.
- (v) Use of GSA services - The President may use the services of the General Services Administration to accomplish a sale under clause (i).
- (B) Other methods of disposal - If not disposed of under subparagraph (A), a temporary housing unit purchased under this section by the President for the purpose of housing disaster victims -
  - (i) may be sold to any person; or
  - (ii) may be sold, transferred, donated, or otherwise made available directly to a State or other governmental entity or to a voluntary organization for the sole purpose of providing temporary housing to disaster victims in major disasters and emergencies if, as a condition of the sale, transfer, or donation, the State, other governmental agency, or voluntary organization agrees -
    - (a) to comply with the nondiscrimination provisions of section 5151 of this title; and
    - (b) to obtain and maintain hazard and flood insurance on the housing unit.
- (e) Financial Assistance To Address Other Needs -
  - (1) Medical, dental, and funeral expenses - The President, in consultation with the Governor of a State, may provide financial assistance under this section to an individual or household in the State who is adversely affected by a major disaster to meet disaster-related medical, dental, and funeral expenses.
  - (2) Personal property, transportation, and other expenses - The President, in consultation with the Governor of a State, may provide financial assistance under this section to an individual or household described in paragraph (1) to address personal property, transportation, and other necessary expenses or serious needs resulting from the major disaster.



(f) State Role -

(1) Financial assistance to address other needs -

- (A) Grant to state - Subject to subsection (g), a Governor may request a grant from the President to provide financial assistance to individuals and households in the State under subsection (e).
- (B) Administrative costs - A State that receives a grant under subparagraph (A) may expend not more than 5 percent of the amount of the grant for the administrative costs of providing financial assistance to individuals and households in the State under subsection (e).

(2) Access to records - In providing assistance to individuals and households under this section, the President shall provide for the substantial and ongoing involvement of the States in which the individuals and households are located, including by providing to the States access to the electronic records of individuals and households receiving assistance under this section in order for the States to make available any additional State and local assistance to the individuals and households.

(g) Cost Sharing -

(1) Federal share - Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Federal share of the costs eligible to be paid using assistance provided under this section shall be 100 percent.

(2) Financial assistance to address other needs - In the case of financial assistance provided under subsection (e) -

- (A) the Federal share shall be 75 percent; and
- (B) the non-Federal share shall be paid from funds made available by the State.

(h) Maximum Amount of Assistance -

(1) In general - No individual or household shall receive financial assistance greater than \$25,000 under this section with respect to a single major disaster.

(2) Adjustment of limit - The limit established under paragraph (1) shall be adjusted annually to reflect changes in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Department of Labor.

(i) Verification Measures - In carrying out this section, the President shall develop a system, including an electronic database, that shall allow the President, or the designee of the President, to



- (1) verify the identity and address of recipients of assistance under this section to provide reasonable assurance that payments are made only to an individual or household that is eligible for such assistance;
  - (2) minimize the risk of making duplicative payments or payments for fraudulent claims under this section;
  - (3) collect any duplicative payment on a claim under this section, or reduce the amount of subsequent payments to offset the amount of any such duplicate payment;
  - (4) provide instructions to recipients of assistance under this section regarding the proper use of any such assistance, regardless of how such assistance is distributed; and
  - (5) conduct an expedited and simplified review and appeal process for an individual or household whose application for assistance under this section is denied.
- (j) Rules and Regulations - The President shall prescribe rules and regulations to carry out this section, including criteria, standards, and procedures for determining eligibility for assistance.

#### **Sec. 410. Unemployment Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5177)**

- (a) Benefit assistance - The President is authorized to provide to any individual unemployed as a result of a major disaster such benefit assistance as he deems appropriate while such individual is unemployed for the weeks of such unemployment with respect to which the individual is not entitled to any other unemployment compensation (as that term is defined in section 85(b) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986) or a waiting period credit. Such assistance as the President shall provide shall be available to an individual as long as the individual's unemployment caused by the major disaster continues or until the individual is reemployed in a suitable position, but no longer than 26 weeks after the major disaster is declared. Such assistance for a week of unemployment shall not exceed the maximum weekly amount authorized under the unemployment compensation law of the State in which the disaster occurred. The President is directed to provide such assistance through agreements with States which, in his judgment, have an adequate system for administering such assistance through existing State agencies.
- (b) Reemployment assistance
- (1) State assistance - A State shall provide, without reimbursement from any funds provided under this Act, reemployment assistance services under any other law administered by the State to individuals receiving benefits under this section.



- (2) Federal assistance - The President may provide reemployment assistance services under other laws to individuals who are unemployed as a result of a major disaster and who reside in a State which does not provide such services.

#### **Sec. 412. Food Coupons and Distribution (42 U.S.C. 5179)**

- (a) Persons eligible; terms and conditions - Whenever the President determines that, as a result of a major disaster, low-income households are unable to purchase adequate amounts of nutritious food, he is authorized, under such terms and conditions as he may prescribe, to distribute through the Secretary of Agriculture or other appropriate agencies coupon allotments to such households pursuant to the provisions of the Food Stamp Act of 1964 (P.L. 91-671; 84 Stat. 2048), 7 U.S.C. 2011 *et seq.*, and to make surplus commodities available pursuant to the provisions of this Act.
- (b) Duration of assistance; factors considered - The President, through the Secretary of Agriculture or other appropriate agencies, is authorized to continue to make such coupon allotments and surplus commodities available to such households for so long as he determines necessary, taking into consideration such factors as he deems appropriate, including the consequences of the major disaster on the earning power of the households, to which assistance is made available under this section.
- (c) Food Stamp Act provisions unaffected - Nothing in this section shall be construed as amending or otherwise changing the provisions of the Food Stamp Act of 1964, 7 U.S.C. 2011 *et seq.*, except as they relate to the availability of food stamps in an area affected by a major disaster.

#### **Sec. 413. Food Commodities (42 U.S.C. 5180)**

- (a) Emergency mass feeding - The President is authorized and directed to assure that adequate stocks of food will be ready and conveniently available for emergency mass feeding or distribution in any area of the United States which suffers a major disaster or emergency.
- (b) Funds for purchase of food commodities - The Secretary of Agriculture shall utilize funds appropriated under section 612c of title 7, to purchase food commodities necessary to provide adequate supplies for use in any area of the United States in the event of a major disaster or emergency in such area.

#### **Sec. 414. Relocation Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5181)**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no person otherwise eligible for any kind of replacement housing payment under the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, P.L. 91-646, 42 U.S.C. 4601 *et seq.*, shall be denied such



eligibility as a result of his being unable, because of a major disaster as determined by the President, to meet the occupancy requirements set by such Act.

#### **Sec. 415. Legal Services (42 U.S.C. 5182)**

Whenever the President determines that low-income individuals are unable to secure legal services adequate to meet their needs as a consequence of a major disaster, consistent with the goals of the programs authorized by this Act, the President shall assure that such programs are conducted with the advice and assistance of appropriate Federal agencies and State and local bar associations.

#### **Sec. 416. Crisis Counseling Assistance and Training (42 U.S.C. 5183)**

The President is authorized to provide professional counseling services, including financial assistance to State or local agencies or private mental health organizations to provide such services or training of disaster workers, to victims of major disasters in order to relieve mental health problems caused or aggravated by such major disaster or its aftermath.

#### **Sec. 417. Community Disaster Loans (42 U.S.C. 5184)\***

- (a) In General - The President is authorized to make loans to any local government which may suffer a substantial loss of tax and other revenues as a result of a major disaster, and has demonstrated a need for financial assistance in order to perform its governmental functions.
- (b) Amount - The amount of any such loan shall be based on need, shall not exceed
  - (1) 25 percent of the annual operating budget of that local government for the fiscal year in which the major disaster occurs, and shall not exceed \$5,000,000; or
  - (2) if the loss of tax and other revenues of the local government as a result of the major disaster is at least 75 percent of the annual operating budget of that local government for the fiscal year in which the major disaster occurs, 50 percent of the annual operating budget of that local government for the fiscal year in which the major disaster occurs, and shall not exceed \$5,000,000.
- (c) Repayment -
  - (1) Cancellation - Repayment of all or any part of such loan to the extent that revenues of the local government during the three full fiscal year period following the major disaster are insufficient to meet the operating budget of the local government, including additional disaster-related expenses of a municipal operation character shall be cancelled.



(2) Condition on continuing eligibility - A local government shall not be eligible for further assistance under this section during any period in which the local government is in arrears with respect to a required repayment of a loan under this section.

(d) Effect on Other Assistance - Any loans made under this section shall not reduce or otherwise affect any grants or other assistance under this Act.

#### **Sec. 418. Emergency Communications (42 U.S.C. 5185)**

The President is authorized during, or in anticipation of an emergency or major disaster to establish temporary communications systems and to make such communications available to State and local government officials and other persons as he deems appropriate.

#### **Sec. 419. Emergency Public Transportation (42 U.S.C. 5186)**

The President is authorized to provide temporary public transportation service in an area affected by a major disaster to meet emergency needs and to provide transportation to governmental offices, supply centers, stores, post offices, schools, major employment centers, and such other places as may be necessary in order to enable the community to resume its normal pattern of life as soon as possible.

#### **Sec. 420. Fire Management Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5187)**

- (a) In General - The President is authorized to provide assistance, including grants, equipment, supplies, and personnel, to any State or local government for the mitigation, management, and control of any fire on public or private forest land or grassland that threatens such destruction as would constitute a major disaster.
- (b) Coordination with State and Tribal Departments of Forestry - In providing assistance under this section, the President shall coordinate with State and tribal departments of forestry.
- (c) Essential Assistance - In providing assistance under this section, the President may use the authority provided under section 5170b of this title.
- (d) Rules and Regulations - The President shall prescribe such rules and regulations as are necessary to carry out this section.

#### **Sec. 421. Timber Sale Contracts (42 U.S.C. 5188)**

- (a) Cost-sharing arrangement - Where an existing timber sale contract between the Secretary of Agriculture or the Secretary of the Interior and a timber purchaser does not provide relief from major physical change not due to negligence of the purchaser prior to approval of construction of any section of specified road or of any other specified development facility and, as a result of a major disaster, a major



physical change results in additional construction work in connection with such road or facility by such purchaser with an estimated cost, as determined by the appropriate Secretary, (1) of more than \$ 1,000 for sales under one million board feet, (2) of more than \$1 per thousand board feet for sales of one to three million board feet, or (3) of more than \$3,000 for sales over three million board feet, such increased construction cost shall be borne by the United States.

- (b) Cancellation of authority - If the appropriate Secretary determines that damages are so great that restoration, reconstruction, or construction is not practical under the cost-sharing arrangement authorized by subsection (a) of this section, he may allow cancellation of a contract entered into by his Department notwithstanding contrary provisions therein.
- (c) Public notice of sale - The Secretary of Agriculture is authorized to reduce to seven days the minimum period of advance public notice required by section 476 of title 16, in connection with the sale of timber from national forests, whenever the Secretary determines that (1) the sale of such timber will assist in the construction of any area of a State damaged by a major disaster, (2) the sale of such timber will assist in sustaining the economy of such area, or (3) the sale of such timber is necessary to salvage the value of timber damaged in such major disaster or to protect undamaged timber.
- (d) State grants for removal of damaged timber; reimbursement of expenses limited to salvage value of removed timber - The President, when he determines it to be in the public interest, is authorized to make grants to any State or local government for the purpose of removing from privately owned lands timber damaged as a result of a major disaster, and such State or local government is authorized upon application, to make payments out of such grants to any person for reimbursement of expenses actually incurred by such person in the removal of damaged timber, not to exceed the amount that such expenses exceed the salvage value of such timber.

## **Sec. 422. Simplified Procedures (42 U.S.C. 5189)**

If the Federal estimate of the cost of -

- (1) repairing, restoring, reconstructing, or replacing under section 5172 of this title any damaged or destroyed public facility or private nonprofit facility,
- (2) emergency assistance under section 5170b or 5192 of this title, or
- (3) debris removed under section 5173 of this title, is less than \$35,000, the President (on application of the State or local government or the owner or operator of the private nonprofit facility) may make the contribution to such State or local government or owner or operator under section 5170b, 5172, 5173, or 5192 of this title, as the case may be, on the basis of such Federal estimate. Such \$35,000 amount shall be adjusted annually to reflect changes in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Department of Labor.



### **Sec. 423. Appeals of Assistance Decisions (42 U.S.C. 5189a)**

- (a) Right of appeal - Any decision regarding eligibility for, from, or amount of assistance under this title may be appealed within 60 days after the date on which the applicant for such assistance is notified of the award or denial of award of such assistance.
- (b) Period for decision - A decision regarding an appeal under subsection (a) shall be rendered within 90 days after the date on which the Federal official designated to administer such appeals receives notice of such appeal.
- (c) Rules - The President shall issue rules which provide for the fair and impartial consideration of appeals under this section.

### **Sec. 424. Date of Eligibility; Expenses Incurred Before Date of Disaster (42 U.S.C. 5189b)**

Eligibility for Federal assistance under this title shall begin on the date of the occurrence of the event which results in a declaration by the President that a major disaster exists; except that reasonable expenses which are incurred in anticipation of and immediately preceding such event may be eligible for Federal assistance under this Act.

### **Sec. 425. Transportation Assistance to Individuals and Households (42 U.S.C. 5189c)\***

The President may provide transportation assistance to relocate individuals displaced from their predisaster primary residences as a result of an incident declared under this Act or otherwise transported from their predisaster primary residences under section 403(a)(3) or 502, to and from alternative locations for short or long-term accommodation or to return an individual or household to their predisaster primary residence or alternative location, as determined necessary by the President.

### **Sec. 426. Case Management Services (42 U.S.C. 5189d)\***

The President may provide case management services, including financial assistance, to State or local government agencies or qualified private organizations to provide such services, to victims of major disasters to identify and address unmet needs.

### **Sec. 427. Essential Service Providers (42 U.S.C. 5189e)\***

- (a) Definition - In this section, the term ‘essential service provider’ means an entity that
  - (1) provides -
    - (A) telecommunications service;



- (B) electrical power;
- (C) natural gas;
- (D) water and sewer services; or
- (E) any other essential service, as determined by the President;

(2) is -

- (A) a municipal entity;
- (B) a nonprofit entity; or
- (C) a private, for profit entity; and

(3) is contributing to efforts to respond to an emergency or major disaster.

(b) Authorization for accessibility - Unless exceptional circumstances apply, in an emergency or major disaster, the head of a Federal agency, to the greatest extent practicable, shall not -

- (1) deny or impede access to the disaster site to an essential service provider whose access is necessary to restore and repair an essential service; or
- (2) impede the restoration or repair of the services described in subsection (a)(1).

(c) Implementation - In implementing this section, the head of a Federal agency shall follow all applicable Federal laws, regulation, and policies.

## **Title V -- Emergency Assistance Programs**

### **Sec. 501. Procedure for Declaration (42 U.S.C. 5191)**

- (a) Request and declaration - All requests for a declaration by the President that an emergency exists shall be made by the Governor of the affected State. Such a request shall be based on a finding that the situation is of such severity and magnitude that effective response is beyond the capabilities of the State and the affected local governments and that Federal assistance is necessary. As a part of such request, and as a prerequisite to emergency assistance under this Act, the Governor shall take appropriate action under State law and direct execution of the State's emergency plan. The Governor shall furnish information describing the State and local efforts and resources which have been or will be used to alleviate the emergency, and will define the type and extent of Federal aid required. Based upon such Governor's request, the President may declare that an emergency exists.
- (b) Certain emergencies involving Federal primary responsibility - The President may exercise any authority vested in him by section 502 or section 503 with respect to an emergency when he determines that an emergency exists for which the primary responsibility for response rests with the United States because the emergency



involves a subject area for which, under the Constitution or laws of the United States, the United States exercises exclusive or preeminent responsibility and authority. In determining whether or not such an emergency exists, the President shall consult the Governor of any affected State, if practicable. The President's determination may be made without regard to subsection (a).

**Sec. 502. Federal emergency assistance (42 U.S.C. 5192)\***

(a) Specified - In any emergency, the President may -

- (1) direct any Federal agency, with or without reimbursement, to utilize its authorities and the resources granted to it under Federal law (including personnel, equipment, supplies, facilities, and managerial, technical and advisory services) in support of State and local emergency assistance efforts to save lives, protect property and public health and safety, and lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe, including precautionary evacuations;
- (2) coordinate all disaster relief assistance (including voluntary assistance) provided by Federal agencies, private organizations, and State and local governments;
- (3) provide technical and advisory assistance to affected State and local governments for -
  - (A) the performance of essential community services;
  - (B) issuance of warnings of risks or hazards;
  - (C) public health and safety information, including dissemination of such information;
  - (D) provision of health and safety measures; and
  - (E) management, control, and reduction of immediate threats to public health and safety;
- (4) provide emergency assistance through Federal agencies;
- (5) remove debris in accordance with the terms and conditions of section 407;
- (6) provide assistance in accordance with section 408;
- (7) assist State and local governments in the distribution of medicine, food, and other consumable supplies, and emergency assistance; and
- (8) provide accelerated Federal assistance and Federal support where necessary to save lives, prevent human suffering, or mitigate severe damage, which may be provided in the absence of a specific request and in which case the President -



- (A) shall, to the fullest extent practicable, promptly notify and coordinate with a State in which such assistance or support is provided; and
  - (B) shall not, in notifying and coordinating with a State under subparagraph (A), delay or impede the rapid deployment, use, and distribution of critical resources to victims of an emergency.
- (b) General - Whenever the Federal assistance provided under subsection (a) with respect to an emergency is inadequate, the President may also provide assistance with respect to efforts to save lives, protect property and public health and safety, and lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe, including precautionary evacuations.
- (c) Guidelines - The President shall promulgate and maintain guidelines to assist Governors in requesting the declaration of an emergency in advance of a natural or man-made disaster (including for the purpose of seeking assistance with special needs and other evacuation efforts) under this section by defining the types of assistance available to affected States and the circumstances under which such requests are likely to be approved.

### **Sec. 503. Amount of Assistance (42 U.S.C. 5193)**

- (a) Federal share - The Federal share for assistance provided under this title shall be equal to not less than 75 percent of the eligible costs.
- (b) Limit on amount of assistance—
  - (1) In general - Except as provided in paragraph (2), total assistance provided under this title for a single emergency shall not exceed \$5,000,000.
  - (2) Additional assistance - The limitation described in paragraph (1) may be exceeded when the President determines that -
    - (A) continued emergency assistance is immediately required;
    - (B) there is a continuing and immediate risk to lives, property, public health or safety; and
    - (C) necessary assistance will not otherwise be provided on a timely basis.
  - (3) Report - Whenever the limitation described in paragraph (1) is exceeded, the President shall report to the Congress on the nature and extent of emergency assistance requirements and shall propose additional legislation if necessary.



# **Title VI -- Emergency Preparedness**

## **Sec. 601. Declaration of policy (42 U.S.C. 5195)**

The purpose of this title is to provide a system of emergency preparedness for the protection of life and property in the United States from hazards and to vest responsibility for emergency preparedness jointly in the Federal Government and the States and their political subdivisions. The Congress recognizes that the organizational structure established jointly by the Federal Government and the States and their political subdivisions for emergency preparedness purposes can be effectively utilized to provide relief and assistance to people in areas of the United States struck by a hazard. The Federal Government shall provide necessary direction, coordination, and guidance, and shall provide necessary assistance, as authorized in this title so that a comprehensive emergency preparedness system exists for all hazards.

## **Sec. 602. Definitions (42 U.S.C. 5195a)**

(a) Definitions - For purposes of this title only:

- (1) Hazard - The term “hazard” means an emergency or disaster resulting from—
  - (A) a natural disaster; or
  - (B) an accidental or man-caused event.
- (2) Natural disaster - The term “natural disaster” means any hurricane, tornado, storm, flood, high water, wind-driven water, tidal wave, tsunami, earthquake, volcanic eruption, landslide, mudslide, snowstorm, drought, fire, or other catastrophe in any part of the United States which causes, or which may cause, substantial damage or injury to civilian property or persons.
- (3) Emergency preparedness - The term “emergency preparedness” means all those activities and measures designed or undertaken to prepare for or minimize the effects of a hazard upon the civilian population, to deal with the immediate emergency conditions which would be created by the hazard, and to effectuate emergency repairs to, or the emergency restoration of, vital utilities and facilities destroyed or damaged by the hazard. Such term includes the following:
  - (A) Measures to be undertaken in preparation for anticipated hazards (including the establishment of appropriate organizations, operational plans, and supporting agreements, the recruitment and training of personnel, the conduct of research, the procurement and stockpiling of necessary materials and supplies, the provision of suitable warning systems, the construction or preparation of shelters,



- shelter areas, and control centers, and, when appropriate, the non-military evacuation of the civilian population).
- (B) Measures to be undertaken during a hazard (including the enforcement of passive defense regulations prescribed by duly established military or civil authorities, the evacuation of personnel to shelter areas, the control of traffic and panic, and the control and use of lighting and civil communications).
  - (C) Measures to be undertaken following a hazard (including activities for fire fighting, rescue, emergency medical, health and sanitation services, monitoring for specific dangers of special weapons, unexploded bomb reconnaissance, essential debris clearance, emergency welfare measures, and immediately essential emergency repair or restoration of damaged vital facilities).
- (4) Organizational equipment - The term “organizational equipment” means equipment determined by the Director to be necessary to an emergency preparedness organization, as distinguished from personal equipment, and of such a type or nature as to require it to be financed in whole or in part by the Federal Government. Such term does not include those items which the local community normally uses in combating local disasters, except when required in unusual quantities dictated by the requirements of the emergency preparedness plans.
  - (5) Materials - The term “materials” includes raw materials, supplies, medicines, equipment, component parts and technical information and processes necessary for emergency preparedness.
  - (6) Facilities - The term “facilities”, except as otherwise provided in this title, includes buildings, shelters, utilities, and land.
  - (7) Director - The term “Director” means the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency.
  - (8) Neighboring countries - The term “neighboring countries” includes Canada and Mexico.
  - (9) United States and States - The terms “United States “ and “States” includes the several States, the District of Columbia , and territories and possessions of the United States .
  - (10) State - The term “State” includes interstate emergency preparedness authorities established under section 5196(h) of this title.
- (b) Cross Reference - The terms “national defense” and “defense,” as used in the Defense Production Act of 1950 (50 U.S.C. App. 2061 et seq.), includes [include] emergency preparedness activities conducted pursuant to this title.



## **Sec. 603. Administration of Title (42 U.S.C. 5195b)**

This title shall be carried out by the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency.

### **SUBTITLE A – POWERS AND DUTIES**

## **Sec. 611. Detailed Functions or Administration (42 U.S.C. 5196)\***

- (a) In General - In order to carry out the policy described in section 5195 of this title, the Director shall have the authorities provided in this section.
- (b) Federal Emergency Response Plans and Programs - The Director may prepare Federal response plans and programs for the emergency preparedness of the United States and sponsor and direct such plans and programs. To prepare such plans and programs and coordinate such plans and programs with State efforts, the Director may request such reports on State plans and operations for emergency preparedness as may be necessary to keep the President, Congress, and the States advised of the status of emergency preparedness in the United States.
- (c) Delegation of emergency preparedness responsibilities - With the approval of the President, the Director may delegate to other departments and agencies of the Federal Government appropriate emergency preparedness responsibilities and review and coordinate the emergency preparedness activities of the departments and agencies with each other and with the activities of the States and neighboring countries.
- (d) Communications and warnings - The Director may make appropriate provision for necessary emergency preparedness communications and for dissemination of warnings to the civilian population of a hazard.
- (e) Emergency preparedness measures - The Director may study and develop emergency preparedness measures designed to afford adequate protection of life and property, including -
  - (1) research and studies as to the best methods of treating the effects of hazards;
  - (2) developing shelter designs and materials for protective covering or construction;
  - (3) developing equipment or facilities and effecting the standardization thereof to meet emergency preparedness requirements; and
  - (4) plans that take into account the needs of individuals with pets and service animals prior to, during, and following a major disaster or emergency.



(f) Training programs -

(1) The Director may -

- (A) conduct or arrange, by contract or otherwise, for training programs for the instruction of emergency preparedness officials and other persons in the organization, operation, and techniques of emergency preparedness;
- (B) conduct or operate schools or including the payment of travel expenses, in accordance with subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5, and the Standardized Government Travel Regulations, and per diem allowances, in lieu of subsistence for trainees in attendance or the furnishing of subsistence and quarters for trainees and instructors on terms prescribed by the Director; and
- (C) provide instructors and training aids as necessary.

(2) The terms prescribed by the Director for the payment of travel expenses and per diem allowances authorized by this subsection shall include a provision that such payment shall not exceed one-half of the total cost of such expenses.

(3) The Director may lease real property required for the purpose of carrying out this subsection, but may not acquire fee title to property unless specifically authorized by law.

(g) Public dissemination of emergency preparedness information - The Director may publicly disseminate appropriate emergency preparedness information by all appropriate means.

(h) Emergency preparedness compacts -

(1) The Director shall establish a program supporting the development of emergency preparedness compacts for acts of terrorism, disasters, and emergencies throughout the Nation, by -

- (A) identifying and cataloging existing emergency preparedness compacts for acts of terrorism, disasters, and emergencies at the State and local levels of government;
- (B) disseminating to State and local governments examples of best practices in the development of emergency preparedness compacts and models of existing emergency preparedness compacts, including agreements involving interstate jurisdictions; and
- (C) completing an inventory of Federal response capabilities for acts of terrorism, disasters, and emergencies, making such inventory available to appropriate Federal, State, and local government officials, and ensuring that such inventory is as current and accurate as practicable.



(2) The Director may -

- (A) assist and encourage the States to negotiate and enter into interstate emergency preparedness compacts;
  - (B) review the terms and conditions of such proposed compacts in order to assist, to the extent feasible, in obtaining uniformity between such compacts and consistency with Federal emergency response plans and programs;
  - (C) assist and coordinate the activities under such compacts; and
  - (D) aid and assist in encouraging reciprocal emergency preparedness legislation by the States which will permit the furnishing of mutual aid for emergency preparedness purposes in the event of a hazard which cannot be adequately met or controlled by a State or political subdivision thereof threatened with or experiencing a hazard.
- (3) A copy of each interstate emergency preparedness compact shall be transmitted promptly to the Senate and the House of Representatives. The consent of Congress is deemed to be granted to each such compact upon the expiration of the 60-day period beginning on the date on which the compact is transmitted to Congress.
- (4) Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as preventing Congress from disapproving, or withdrawing at any time its consent to, any interstate emergency preparedness compact.

(i) Materials and facilities -

- (1) The Director may procure by condemnation or otherwise, construct, lease, transport, store, maintain, renovate or distribute materials and facilities for emergency preparedness, with the right to take immediate possession thereof.
- (2) Facilities acquired by purchase, donation, or other means of transfer may be occupied, used, and improved for the purposes of this title before the approval of title by the Attorney General as required by section 255 of title 40 .
- (3) The Director may lease real property required for the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this subsection, but shall not acquire fee title to property unless specifically authorized by law.
- (4) The Director may procure and maintain under this subsection radiological, chemical, bacteriological, and biological agent monitoring and decontamination devices and distribute such devices by loan or grant to the States for emergency preparedness purposes, under such terms and conditions as the Director shall prescribe.



(j) Financial contributions -

- (1) The Director may make financial contributions, on the basis of programs or projects approved by the Director, to the States for emergency preparedness purposes, including the procurement, construction, leasing, or renovating of materials and facilities. Such contributions shall be made on such terms or conditions as the Director shall prescribe, including the method of purchase, the quantity, quality, or specifications of the materials or facilities, and such other factors or care or treatment to assure the uniformity, availability, and good condition of such materials or facilities.
- (2) The Director may make financial contributions, on the basis of programs or projects approved by the Director, to the States and local authorities for animal emergency preparedness purposes, including the procurement, construction, leasing, or renovating of emergency shelter facilities and materials that will accommodate people with pets and service animals.
- (3) No contribution may be made under this subsection for the procurement of land or for the purchase of personal equipment for State or local emergency preparedness workers.
- (4) The amounts authorized to be contributed by the Director to each State for organizational equipment shall be equally matched by such State from any source it determines is consistent with its laws.
- (5) Financial contributions to the States for shelters and other protective facilities shall be determined by taking the amount of funds appropriated or available to the Director for such facilities in each fiscal year and apportioning such funds among the States in the ratio which the urban population of the critical target areas (as determined by the Director) in each State, at the time of the determination, bears to the total urban population of the critical target areas of all of the States.
- (6) The amounts authorized to be contributed by the Director to each State for such shelters and protective facilities shall be equally matched by such State from any source it determines is consistent with its laws and, if not matched within a reasonable time, the Director may reallocate such amounts to other States under the formula described in paragraph (4). The value of any land contributed by any State or political subdivision thereof shall be excluded from the computation of the State share under this subsection.
- (7) The amounts paid to any State under this subsection shall be expended solely in carrying out the purposes set forth herein and in accordance with State emergency preparedness programs or projects approved by the Director. The Director shall make no contribution toward the cost of any program or project for the procurement, construction, or leasing of any



facility which (A) is intended for use, in whole or in part, for any purpose other than emergency preparedness, and (B) is of such kind that upon completion it will, in the judgment of the Director, be capable of producing sufficient revenue to provide reasonable assurance of the retirement or repayment of such cost; except that (subject to the preceding provisions of this subsection) the Director may make a contribution to any State toward that portion of the cost of the construction, reconstruction, or enlargement of any facility which the Director determines to be directly attributable to the incorporation in such facility of any feature of construction or design not necessary for the principal intended purpose thereof but which is, in the judgment of the Director necessary for the use of such facility for emergency preparedness purposes.

- (8) The Director shall submit to Congress a report, at least annually, regarding all contributions made pursuant to this subsection.
- (9) All laborers and mechanics employed by contractors or subcontractors in the performance of construction work financed with the assistance of any contribution of Federal funds made by the Director under this subsection shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on similar construction in the locality as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with the Act of March 3, 1931 (commonly known as the Davis-Bacon Act, 40 U.S.C. 276a - 276a-5), and every such employee shall receive compensation at a rate not less than one and 1/2 times the basic rate of pay of the employee for all hours worked in any workweek in excess of eight hours in any workday or 40 hours in the workweek, as the case may be. The Director shall make no contribution of Federal funds without first obtaining adequate assurance that these labor standards will be maintained upon the construction work. The Secretary of Labor shall have, with respect to the labor standards specified in this subsection, the authority and functions set forth in Reorganization Plan Numbered 14 of 1950 (5 U.S.C. App.) and section 276c of title 40.
- (k) Sale or disposal of certain materials and facilities - The Director may arrange for the sale or disposal of materials and facilities found by the Director to be unnecessary or unsuitable for emergency preparedness purposes in the same manner as provided for excess property under the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 ( 40 U.S.C. 471 et seq.). Any funds received as proceeds from the sale or other disposition of such materials and facilities shall be deposited into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.



## **Sec. 612. Mutual Aid Pacts Between States and Neighboring Countries (42 U.S.C. 5196a)**

The Director shall give all practicable assistance to States in arranging, through the Department of State, mutual emergency preparedness aid between the States and neighboring countries.

## **Sec. 613. Contributions for Personnel and Administrative Expenses (42 U.S.C. 5196b)\***

- (a) General authority - To further assist in carrying out the purposes of this title, the Director may make financial contributions to the States (including interstate emergency preparedness authorities established pursuant to section 5196(h) of this title) for necessary and essential State and local emergency preparedness personnel and administrative expenses, on the basis of approved plans (which shall be consistent with the Federal emergency response plans for emergency preparedness) for the emergency preparedness of the States. The financial contributions to the States under this section may not exceed one-half of the total cost of such necessary and essential State and local emergency preparedness personnel and administrative expenses.
- (b) Plan requirements - A plan submitted under this section shall -
  - (1) provide, pursuant to State law, that the plan shall be in effect in all political subdivisions of the State and be mandatory on them and be administered or supervised by a single State agency;
  - (2) provide that the State shall share the financial assistance with that provided by the Federal Government under this section from any source determined by it to be consistent with State law;
  - (3) provide for the development of State and local emergency preparedness operational plans, including a catastrophic incident annex, pursuant to standards approved by the Director;
  - (4) provide for the employment of a full-time emergency preparedness director, or deputy director, by the State;
  - (5) provide that the State shall make such reports in such form and content as the Director may require;
  - (6) make available to duly authorized representatives of the Director and the Comptroller General, books, records, and papers necessary to conduct audits for the purposes of this section; and
  - (7) include a plan for providing information to the public in a coordinated manner.



(c) Catastrophic Incident Annex -

(1) Consistency - A catastrophic incident annex submitted under subsection (b)(3) shall be -

- (A) modeled after the catastrophic incident annex of the National Response Plan; and
- (B) consistent with the national preparedness goal established under section 643 of the Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006, the National Incident Management System, the National Response Plan, and other related plans and strategies.

(2) Consultation - In developing a catastrophic incident annex submitted under subsection (b)(3), a State shall consult with and seek appropriate comments from local governments, emergency response providers, locally governed multijurisdictional councils of government, and regional planning commissions.

(d) Terms and conditions - The Director shall establish such other terms and conditions as the Director considers necessary and proper to carry out this section.

(e) Application of other provisions - In carrying out this section, the provisions of sections 5196(h) and 5197(h) of this title shall apply.

(f) Allocation of funds - For each fiscal year concerned, the Director shall allocate to each State, in accordance with regulations and the total sum appropriated under this title, amounts to be made available to the States for the purposes of this section. Regulations governing allocations to the States under this subsection shall give due regard to (1) the criticality of the areas which may be affected by hazards with respect to the development of the total emergency preparedness readiness of the United States, (2) the relative state of development of emergency preparedness readiness of the State, (3) population, and (4) such other factors as the Director shall prescribe. The Director may reallocate the excess of any allocation not used by a State in a plan submitted under this section. Amounts paid to any State or political subdivision under this section shall be expended solely for the purposes set forth in this section.

(g) Standards for State and Local Emergency Preparedness Operational Plans - In approving standards for State and local emergency preparedness operational plans pursuant to subsection (b)(3), the Director shall ensure that such plans take into account the needs of individuals with household pets and service animals prior to, during, and following a major disaster or emergency.

(h) Submission of plan - If a State fails to submit a plan for approval as required by this section within 60 days after the Director notifies the States of the allocations under this section, the Director may reallocate such funds, or portions thereof, among the other States in such amounts as, in the judgment of the Director, will



best assure the adequate development of the emergency preparedness capability of the United States.

- (i) Annual reports - The Director shall report annually to the Congress all contributions made pursuant to this section.

#### **Sec. 614. Requirement for State Matching Funds for Construction of Emergency Operating Centers (42 U.S.C. 5196c)**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this title, funds appropriated to carry out this title may not be used for the purpose of constructing emergency operating centers (or similar facilities) in any State unless such State matches in an equal amount the amount made available to such State under this title for such purpose.

#### **Sec. 615. Use of Funds to Prepare for and Respond to Hazards (42 U.S.C. 5196d)**

Funds made available to the States under this title may be used by the States for the purposes of preparing for hazards and providing emergency assistance in response to hazards. Regulations prescribed to carry out this section shall authorize the use of emergency preparedness personnel, materials, and facilities supported in whole or in part through contributions under this title for emergency preparedness activities and measures related to hazards.

#### **Sec. 616. Disaster Related Information Services (42 U.S.C. 5196f)\***

- (a) In General - Consistent with section 308(a), the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency shall -
  - (1) identify, in coordination with State and local governments, population groups with limited English proficiency and take into account such groups in planning for an emergency or major disaster;
  - (2) ensure that information made available to individuals affected by a major disaster or emergency is made available in formats that can be understood by -
    - (A) population groups identified under paragraph (1); and
    - (B) individuals with disabilities or other special needs; and
  - (3) develop and maintain an informational clearinghouse of model language assistance programs and best practices for State and local governments in providing services related to a major disaster or emergency.
- (b) Group Size - For purposes of subsection (a), the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency shall define the size of a population group.



## **SUBTITLE B – GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **Sec. 621. Administrative Authority (42 U.S.C. 5197)**

- (a) In General - For the purpose of carrying out the powers and duties assigned to the Director under this title, the Director may exercise the administrative authorities provided under this section.
- (b) Advisory personnel - The Director may employ not more than 100 part-time or temporary advisory personnel (including not to exceed 25 subjects of the United Kingdom or citizens of Canada) as the Director considers to be necessary in carrying out the provisions of this title.
  - (1) Persons holding other offices or positions under the United States for which they receive compensation, while serving as advisory personnel, shall receive no additional compensation for such service. Other part-time or temporary advisory personnel so employed may serve without compensation or may receive compensation at a rate not to exceed \$180 for each day of service, plus authorized subsistence and travel, as determined by the Director.
- (c) Services of other agency personnel and volunteers - The Director may -
  - (1) use the services of Federal agencies and, with the consent of any State or local government, accept and use the services of State and local agencies;
  - (2) establish and use such regional and other offices as may be necessary; and
  - (3) use such voluntary and uncompensated services by individuals or organizations as may from time to time be needed.
- (d) Gifts - Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Director may accept gifts of supplies, equipment, and facilities and may use or distribute such gifts for emergency preparedness purposes in accordance with the provisions of this title.
- (e) Reimbursement - The Director may reimburse any Federal agency for any of its expenditures or for compensation of its personnel and use or consumption of its materials and facilities under this title to the extent funds are available.
- (f) Printing - The Director may purchase such printing, binding, and blank-book work from public, commercial, or private printing establishments or binderies as the Director considers necessary upon orders placed by the Public Printer or upon waivers issued in accordance with section 504 of title 44.
- (g) Rules and regulations - The Director may prescribe such rules and regulations as may be necessary and proper to carry out any of the provisions of this title and perform any of the powers and duties provided by this title. The Director may perform any of the powers and duties provided by this title through or with the aid



of such officials of the Federal Emergency Management Agency as the Director may designate.

- (h) Failure to expend contributions correctly - When, after reasonable notice and opportunity for hearing to the State or other person involved, the Director finds that there is a failure to expend funds in accordance with the regulations, terms, and conditions established under this subchapter for approved emergency preparedness plans, programs, or projects, the Director may notify such State or person that further payments will not be made to the State or person from appropriations under this subchapter (or from funds otherwise available for the purposes of this subchapter for any approved plan, program, or project with respect to which there is such failure to comply) until the Director is satisfied that there will no longer be any such failure.
  - (1) When, after reasonable notice and opportunity for hearing to the State or other person involved, the Director finds that there is a failure to expend funds in accordance with the regulations, terms, and conditions established under this title for approved emergency preparedness plans, programs, or projects, the Director may notify such State or person that further payments will not be made to the State or person from appropriations under this title (or from funds otherwise available for the purposes of this title for any approved plan, program, or project with respect to which there is such failure to comply) until the Director is satisfied that there will no longer be any such failure.
  - (2) Until so satisfied, the Director shall either withhold the payment of any financial contribution to such State or person or limit payments to those programs or projects with respect to which there is substantial compliance with the regulations, terms, and conditions governing plans, programs, or projects hereunder.
  - (3) As used in this subsection, the term “person” means the political subdivision of any State or combination or group thereof or any person, corporation, association, or other entity of any nature whatsoever, including instrumentalities of States and political subdivisions.

## **Sec. 622. Security Regulations (42 U.S.C. 5197a)**

- (a) Establishment - The Director shall establish such security requirements and safeguards, including restrictions with respect to access to information and property as the Director considers necessary.
- (b) Limitation on Employee access to information - No employee of the Federal Emergency Management Agency shall be permitted to have access to information or property with respect to which access restrictions have been established under this section, until it shall have been determined that no information is contained in the files of the Federal Bureau of Investigation or any other investigative agency of



the Government indicating that such employee is of questionable loyalty or reliability for security purposes, or if any such information is so disclosed, until the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall have conducted a full field investigation concerning such person and a report thereon shall have been evaluated in writing by the Director.

- (c) National Security Positions - No employee of the Federal Emergency Management Agency shall occupy any position determined by the Director to be of critical importance from the standpoint of national security until a full field investigation concerning such employee shall have been conducted by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management and a report thereon shall have been evaluated in writing by the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency. In the event such full field investigation by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management develops any data reflecting that such applicant for a position of critical importance is of questionable loyalty or reliability for security purposes, or if the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency for any other reason considers it to be advisable, such investigation shall be discontinued and a report thereon shall be referred to the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency for evaluation in writing. Thereafter, the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency may refer the matter to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the conduct of a full field investigation by such Bureau. The result of such latter investigation by such Bureau shall be furnished to the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency for action.
- (d) Employee Oaths - Each Federal employee of the Federal Emergency Management Agency acting under the authority of this title, except the subjects of the United Kingdom and citizens of Canada specified in section 5197(b) of this title, shall execute the loyalty oath or appointment affidavits prescribed by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management. Each person other than a Federal employee who is appointed to serve in a State or local organization for emergency preparedness shall before entering upon duties, take an oath in writing before a person authorized to administer oaths, which oath shall be substantially as follows:
- (e) "I\_\_\_\_\_, do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will support and defend the Constitution of the United States against all enemies, foreign and domestic; that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the same; that I take this obligation freely, without any mental reservation or purpose of evasion; and that I will well and faithfully discharge the duties upon which I am about to enter.

"And I do further swear (or affirm) that I do not advocate, nor am I a member or an affiliate of any organization, group, or combination of persons that advocates the overthrow of the Government of the United States by force or violence; and that during such time as I am a member of \_\_\_\_\_ (name of emergency preparedness organization), I will not advocate nor become a member or an affiliate of any organization, group, or combination of persons that advocates the overthrow of the Government of the United States by force or violence."



### **Sec. 623. Use of Existing Facilities (42 U.S.C. 5197b)**

In performing duties under this title, the Director -

- (1) shall cooperate with the various departments and agencies of the Federal Government;
- (2) shall use, to the maximum extent, the existing facilities and resources of the Federal Government and, with their consent, the facilities and resources of the States and political subdivisions thereof, and of other organizations and agencies; and
- (3) shall refrain from engaging in any form of activity which would duplicate or parallel activity of any other Federal department or agency unless the Director, with the written approval of the President, shall determine that such duplication is necessary to accomplish the purposes of this title.

### **Sec. 624. Annual Report to Congress (42 U.S.C. 5197c)**

The Director shall annually submit a written report to the President and Congress covering expenditures, contributions, work, and accomplishments of the Federal Emergency Management Agency pursuant to this title, accompanied by such recommendations as the Director considers appropriate.

### **Sec. 625. Applicability of Subchapter (42 U.S.C. 5197d)**

The provisions of this title shall be applicable to the United States, its States, Territories and possessions, and the District of Columbia, and their political subdivisions.

### **Sec. 626. Authorization of Appropriation and Transfers of Funds (42 U.S.C. 5197e)**

- (a) Authorization of appropriations - There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this title.
- (b) Transfer Authority - Funds made available for the purposes of this title may be allocated or transferred for any of the purposes of this title, with the approval of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, to any agency or government corporation designated to assist in carrying out this title. Each such allocation or



## **Sec. 627. Relation to Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 5197f)**

Nothing in this title shall be construed to alter or modify the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.).

## **Sec. 628. Federal Bureau of Investigation (42 U.S.C. 5197g)**

Nothing in this title shall be construed to authorize investigations of espionage, sabotage, or subversive acts by any persons other than personnel of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

# **Title VII -- Miscellaneous**

## **Sec. 701. Rules and Regulations (42 U.S.C. 5201)**

### **(a) Rules and regulations**

(1) The President may prescribe such rules and regulations as may be necessary and proper to carry out any of the provisions of this Act, and he may exercise any power or authority conferred on him by any section of this Act either directly or through such Federal agency or agencies as he may designate.

(2) Deadline for payment of assistance - Rules and regulations authorized by paragraph (1) shall provide that payment of any assistance under this Act to a State shall be completed within 60 days after the date of approval of such assistance.

(b) In furtherance of the purposes of this Act, the President or his delegate may accept and use bequests, gifts, or donations of service, money, or property, real, personal, or mixed, tangible, or intangible. All sums received under this subsection shall be deposited in a separate fund on the books of the Treasury and shall be available for expenditure upon the certification of the President or his delegate. At the request of the President or his delegate, the Secretary of the Treasury may invest and reinvest excess monies in the fund. Such investments shall be in public debt securities with maturities suitable for the needs of the fund and shall bear interest at rates determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration current market yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturities. The interest on such investments shall be credited to, and form a part of, the fund.

## **Sec. 705. Disaster Grant Closeout Procedures (42 U.S.C. 5205)**

### **(a) Statute of Limitations -**



- (1) In general - Except as provided in paragraph (2), no administrative action to recover any payment made to a State or local government for disaster or emergency assistance under this Act shall be initiated in any forum after the date that is 3 years after the date of transmission of the final expenditure report for the disaster or emergency.
- (2) Fraud exception - The limitation under paragraph (1) shall apply unless there is evidence of civil or criminal fraud.

(b) Rebuttal of Presumption of Record Maintenance -

- (1) In general - In any dispute arising under this section after the date that is 3 years after the date of transmission of the final expenditure report for the disaster or emergency, there shall be a presumption that accounting records were maintained that adequately identify the source and application of funds provided for financially assisted activities.
- (2) Affirmative evidence - The presumption described in paragraph (1) may be rebutted only on production of affirmative evidence that the State or local government did not maintain documentation described in that paragraph.
- (3) Inability to produce documentation - The inability of the Federal, State, or local government to produce source documentation supporting expenditure reports later than 3 years after the date of transmission of the final expenditure report shall not constitute evidence to rebut the presumption described in paragraph (1).
- (4) Right of access - The period during which the Federal, State, or local government has the right to access source documentation shall not be limited to the required 3-year retention period referred to in paragraph (3), but shall last as long as the records are maintained.

(c) Binding Nature of Grant Requirements - A State or local government shall not be liable for reimbursement or any other penalty for any payment made under this Act if -

- (1) the payment was authorized by an approved agreement specifying the costs;
- (2) the costs were reasonable; and
- (3) the purpose of the grant was accomplished.

**Sec. 706. Firearms Policies (42 U.S.C. 5207)\***

- (a) Prohibition on Confiscation of Firearms - No officer or employee of the United States (including any member of the uniformed services), or person operating pursuant to or under color of Federal law, or receiving Federal funds, or under control of any Federal official, or providing services to such an officer,



- (1) temporarily or permanently seize, or authorize seizure of, any firearm the possession of which is not prohibited under Federal, State, or local law, other than for forfeiture in compliance with Federal law or as evidence in a criminal investigation;
  - (2) require registration of any firearm for which registration is not required by Federal, State, or local law;
  - (3) prohibit possession of any firearm, or promulgate any rule, regulation, or order prohibiting possession of any firearm, in any place or by any person where such possession is not otherwise prohibited by Federal, State, or local law; or
  - (4) prohibit the carrying of firearms under Federal, State, or local law, solely because such person is operating under the direction, control, or supervision of a Federal agency in support of relief from the major disaster or emergency.
- (b) Limitation - Nothing in this section shall be construed to prohibit any person in subsection (a) from requiring the temporary surrender of a firearm as a condition for entry into any mode of transportation used for rescue or evacuation during a major disaster or emergency, provided that such temporarily surrendered firearm is returned at the completion of such rescue or evacuation.
- (c) Private Rights of Action -
- (1) In General - Any individual aggrieved by a violation of this section may seek relief in an action at law, suit in equity, or other proper proceeding for redress against any person who subjects such individual, or causes such individual to be subjected, to the deprivation of any of the rights, privileges, or immunities secured by this section.
  - (2) Remedies - In addition to any existing remedy in law or equity, under any law, an individual aggrieved by the seizure or confiscation of a firearm in violation of this section may bring an action for return of such firearm in the United States district court in the district in which that individual resides or in which such firearm may be found.
  - (3) Attorney Fees - In any action or proceeding to enforce this section, the court shall award the prevailing party, other than the United States, a reasonable attorney's fee as part of the costs.



# **MISCELLANEOUS STATUTORY PROVISIONS THAT RELATE TO THE STAFFORD ACT**

## **Excess Disaster Assistance Payments as Budgetary Emergency Requirements (42 U.S.C. 5203)**

Hereafter, beginning in fiscal year 1993, and in each year thereafter, notwithstanding any other provision of law, all amounts appropriated for disaster assistance payments under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.) that are in excess of either the historical annual average obligation of \$320,000,000, or the amount submitted in the President's initial budget request, whichever is lower, shall be considered as "emergency requirements" pursuant to section 901(b)(2)(D) of title 2, and such amounts shall hereafter be so designated.

## **Insular Areas Disaster Survival and Recovery; Definitions (42 U.S.C. 5204)**

As used in sections 5204 to 5204c of this title -

(1) the term "insular area" means any of the following: American Samoa, the Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, the Marshall Islands, the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Virgin Islands;

(2) the term "disaster" means a declaration of a major disaster by the President after September 1, 1989, pursuant to section 401 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5170); and

(3) the term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Interior.

*Note: See the note preceding 48 U.S.C. § 1681 terminating the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands which effectively removes the Federated States of Micronesia and the Marshall Islands from the definition of "insular area".*

## **Authorization of Appropriations for Insular Areas (Disaster Recovery) (42 U.S.C. 5204a)**

There are hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary such sums as may be necessary to -

(1) reconstruct essential public facilities damaged by disasters in the insular areas that occurred prior to February 24, 1992; and



(2) enhance the survivability of essential public facilities in the event of disasters in the insular areas, except that with respect to the disaster declared by the President in the case of Hurricane Hugo, September 1989, amounts for any fiscal year shall not exceed 25 percent of the estimated aggregate amount of grants to be made under sections 5170b and 5172 of this title for such disaster. Such sums shall remain available until expended.

**Technical Assistance for Insular Areas (Disaster Recovery) (42 U.S.C. 5204b)**

(a) Upon the declaration by the President of a disaster in an insular area, the President, acting through the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, shall assess, in cooperation with the Secretary and chief executive of such insular area, the capability of the insular government to respond to the disaster, including the capability to assess damage; coordinate activities with Federal agencies, particularly the Federal Emergency Management Agency; develop recovery plans, including recommendations for enhancing the survivability of essential infrastructure; negotiate and manage reconstruction contracts; and prevent the misuse of funds. If the President finds that the insular government lacks any of these or other capabilities essential to the recovery effort, then the President shall provide technical assistance to the insular area which the President deems necessary for the recovery effort.

(b) One year following the declaration by the President of a disaster in an insular area, the Secretary, in consultation with the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, shall submit to the Senate Committee on Energy and Natural Resources and the House Committee on Natural Resources a report on the status of the recovery effort, including an audit of Federal funds expended in the recovery effort and recommendations on how to improve public health and safety, survivability of infrastructure, recovery efforts, and effective use of funds in the event of future disasters.

*Note: The following provision is superseded by Section 404 of the Stafford Act.*

**Hazard Mitigation for Insular Areas (Limitation on Amount of Contributions, Local Match) (42 U.S.C. 5204c)**

The total of contributions under the last sentence of section 5170c of this title for the insular areas shall not exceed 10 percent of the estimated aggregate amounts of grants to be made under sections 5170c, 5172, 5173, 5174 and 5178 of this title for any disaster: Provided, That the President shall require a 50 percent local match for assistance in excess of 10 percent of the estimated aggregate amount of grants to be made under section 5172 of this title for any disaster.



## **Buy American (Requirements) (42 U.S.C. 5206)**

(a) Compliance With Buy American Act - No funds authorized to be appropriated under this Act [Disaster Mitigation Act of 2000, Pub. L. No.106-390] or any amendment made by this Act [Disaster Mitigation Act of 2000, Pub. L. No.106-390] may be expended by an entity unless the entity, in expending the funds, complies with the Buy American Act (41 U.S.C. 10a et seq.).

(b) Debarment of Persons Convicted of Fraudulent Use of “Made in America” Labels -

(1) In general - If the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency determines that a person has been convicted of intentionally affixing a label bearing a “Made in America” inscription to any product sold in or shipped to the United States that is not made in America, the Director shall determine, not later than 90 days after determining that the person has been so convicted, whether the person should be debarred from contracting under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.).

(2) Definition of debar - In this subsection, the term “debar” has the meaning given the term in section 2393(c) of title 10, United States Code.



**U.S. Troop Readiness, Veterans' Care, Katrina Recovery, and Iraq Accountability Appropriations Act, 2007, Pub. L. No. 110-28, 121 Stat. 112 (2007), Signed on May 25, 2007.**

**Sec. 4501.**

(a) IN GENERAL – Notwithstanding any other provision of law, including any agreement, the Federal share of assistance, including any direct Federal assistance, provided for the States of Louisiana, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, and Texas in connection with Hurricanes Katrina, Wilma, Dennis, and Rita under sections 403, 406, 407, and 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5170b, 5172, 5173, and 5174) shall be 100 percent of the eligible costs under such sections.

(b) APPLICABILITY –

- (1) IN GENERAL – The Federal share provided by subsection (a) shall apply to disaster assistance applied for before the date of enactment of this Act.
- (2) LIMITATION – In the case of disaster assistance provided under sections 403, 406, and 407 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, the Federal share provided by subsection (a) shall be limited to assistance provided for projects for which a “request for public assistance form” has been submitted.

**Sec. 4502.**

(a) COMMUNITY DISASTER LOAN ACT –

- (1) IN GENERAL – Section 2(a) of the Community Disaster Loan Act of 2005 (Public Law 109-88) is amended by striking “*Provided further*, That notwithstanding section 417(c)(1) of the Stafford Act, such loans may not be canceled:”.
- (2) EFFECTIVE DATE – The amendment made by paragraph (1) shall be effective on the date of enactment of the Community Disaster Loan Act of 2005 (Public Law 109-88).

(b) EMERGENCY SUPPLEMENTAL APPROPRIATIONS ACT –

- (1) IN GENERAL – Chapter 4 of title II of the Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, the Global War on Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006 (Public Law 109-234) is amended under Federal Emergency Management Agency, “Disaster Assistance Direct Loan Program Account” by striking “*Provided further*, That notwithstanding section 417(c)(1) of such Act, such loans may not be canceled:”.
- (2) EFFECTIVE DATE – The amendment made by paragraph (1) shall be effective on the date of enactment of the Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, Global War on Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006 (Public Law 109-234).



**Sec. 4503.**

(a) IN GENERAL – Section 2401 of the Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, the Global War on Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006 (Public Law 109-234) is amended by striking “12 months” and inserting “24 months”.

*Note: Section 2401 is set forth below.*

(b) EFFECTIVE DATE – The amendment made by this section shall be effective on the date of enactment of the Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, the Global War on Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006 (Public Law 109-234).

**Department of Homeland Security Appropriations Act, 2007, Pub. L. No. 109-295, 120 Stat. 1355 (2006), Signed on October 4, 2006.**

*[Includes Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act (PKEMRA)]*

**Sec. 508.**

None of the funds in this Act may be used to make a grant allocation, discretionary grant award, discretionary contract award, or to issue a letter of intent totaling in excess of \$1,000,000, or to announce publicly the intention to make such an award, unless the Secretary of Homeland Security notifies the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives at least three full business days in advance: *Provided*, That no notification shall involve funds that are not available for obligation: *Provided further*, That the Office of Grants and Training shall brief the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives five full business days in advance of announcing publicly the intention of making an award of formula-based grants; law enforcement terrorism prevention grants; or high-threat, high-density urban areas grants.

**Sec. 536.**

The Department of Homeland Security shall, in approving standards for State and local emergency preparedness operational plans under section 613(b)(3) of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5196b(b)(3)), account for the needs of individuals with household pets and service animals before, during, and following a major disaster or emergency: *Provided*, That Federal agencies may provide assistance as described in section 403(a) of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5170b(a)) to carry out plans described in the previous proviso.



## **TITLE VI – NATIONAL EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT**

### **Sec. 601. Short Title (6 U.S.C. 701 note)**

This title may be cited as the ‘Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006’.

### **Sec. 612. (6 U.S.C. 313 note and 6 U.S.C. 311 note)**

(c) References- Any reference to the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, in any law, rule, regulation, certificate, directive, instruction, or other official paper shall be considered to refer and apply to the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency.

(f) Interim Actions-

- (1) IN GENERAL- During the period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act and ending on March 31, 2007, the Secretary, the Under Secretary for Preparedness, and the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency shall take such actions as are necessary to provide for the orderly implementation of any amendment under this subtitle that takes effect on March 31, 2007.
- (2) REFERENCES- Any reference to the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency in this title or an amendment by this title shall be considered to refer and apply to the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency until March 31, 2007.

### **Sec. 640a. Disclosure of Certain Information to Law Enforcement Agencies (6 U.S.C. 727)**

In the event of circumstances requiring an evacuation, sheltering, or mass relocation, the Administrator may disclose information in any individual assistance database of the Agency in accordance with section 552a(b) of title 5, United States Code (commonly referred to as the “Privacy Act”), to any law enforcement agency of the Federal Government or a State, local, or tribal government in order to identify illegal conduct or address public safety or security issues, including compliance with sex offender notification laws.

### **Sec. 653. Federal Preparedness (6 U.S.C. 753)**

(c) Mission Assignments – To expedite the provision of assistance under the National Response Plan, the President shall ensure that the Administrator, in coordination with Federal agencies with responsibilities under the National Response Plan, develops prescribed mission assignments, including logistics, communications, mass care, health services, and public safety.



## **Subtitle E – Stafford Act Amendments**

### **Sec. 682. National Disaster Recovery Strategy (6 U.S.C. 771)**

(a) In General – The Administrator, in coordination with the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Transportation, the Administrator of the Small Business Administration, the Assistant Secretary for Indian Affairs of the Department of the Interior, and the heads of other appropriate Federal agencies, State, local, and tribal government officials (including through the National Advisory Council), and representatives of appropriate nongovernmental organizations shall develop, coordinate, and maintain a National Disaster Recovery Strategy to serve as a guide to recovery efforts after major disasters and emergencies.

(b) Contents – The National Disaster Recovery Strategy shall –

- (1) outline the most efficient and cost-effective Federal programs that will meet the recovery needs of States, local and tribal governments, and individuals and households affected by a major disaster;
- (2) clearly define the role, programs, authorities, and responsibilities of each Federal agency that may be of assistance in providing assistance in the recovery from a major disaster;
- (3) promote the use of the most appropriate and cost-effective building materials (based on the hazards present in an area) in any area affected by a major disaster, with the goal of encouraging the construction of disaster-resistant buildings; and
- (4) describe in detail the programs that may be offered by the agencies described in paragraph (2), including –
  - (A) discussing funding issues;
  - (B) detailing how responsibilities under the National Disaster Recovery Strategy will be shared; and
  - (C) addressing other matters concerning the cooperative effort to provide recovery assistance.

(c) Report –

- (1) IN GENERAL – Not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report describing in detail the National Disaster Recovery Strategy and any additional authorities necessary to implement any portion of the National Disaster Recovery Strategy.
- (2) UPDATE – The Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report updating the report submitted under paragraph (1) –
  - (A) on the same date that any change is made to the National Disaster Recovery Strategy; and



- (B) on a periodic basis after the submission of the report under paragraph (1), but not less than once every 5 years after the date of the submission of the report under paragraph (1).

**Sec. 683. National Disaster Housing Strategy (6 U.S.C. 772)**

(a) In General – The Administrator, in coordination with representatives of the Federal agencies, governments, and organizations listed in subsection (b)(2) of this section, the National Advisory Council, the National Council on Disability, and other entities at the Administrator’s discretion, shall develop, coordinate, and maintain a National Disaster Housing Strategy.

(b) Contents – The National Disaster Housing Strategy shall –

- (1) outline the most efficient and cost effective Federal programs that will best meet the short-term and long-term housing needs of individuals and households affected by a major disaster;
- (2) clearly define the role, programs, authorities, and responsibilities of each entity in providing housing assistance in the event of a major disaster, including –
  - (A) the Agency;
  - (B) the Department of Housing and Urban Development;
  - (C) the Department of Agriculture;
  - (D) the Department of Veterans Affairs;
  - (E) the Department of Health and Human Services;
  - (F) the Bureau of Indian Affairs;
  - (G) any other Federal agency that may provide housing assistance in the event of a major disaster;
  - (H) the American Red Cross; and
  - (I) State, local, and tribal governments;
- (3) describe in detail the programs that may be offered by the entities described in paragraph (2), including –
  - (A) outlining any funding issues;
  - (B) detailing how responsibilities under the National Disaster Housing Strategy will be shared; and
  - (C) addressing other matters concerning the cooperative effort to provide housing assistance during a major disaster;
- (4) consider methods through which housing assistance can be provided to individuals and households where employment and other resources for living are available;
- (5) describe programs directed to meet the needs of special needs and low-income populations and ensure that a sufficient number of housing units are provided for individuals with disabilities;
- (6) describe plans for operation of clusters of housing provided to individuals and households, including access to public services, site management, security, and site density;



- (7) describe plans for promoting the repair or rehabilitation of existing rental housing, including through lease agreements or other means, in order to improve the provision of housing to individuals and households under section 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5174); and
  - (8) describe any additional authorities necessary to carry out any portion of the strategy.
- (c) Guidance – The Administrator should develop and make publicly available guidance on –
  - (1) types of housing assistance available under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.) to individuals and households affected by an emergency or major disaster;
  - (2) eligibility for such assistance (including, where appropriate, the continuation of such assistance); and
  - (3) application procedures for such assistance.
- (d) Report –
  - (1) IN GENERAL – Not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report describing in detail the National Disaster Housing Strategy, including programs directed to meeting the needs of special needs populations.
  - (2) UPDATED REPORT – The Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report updating the report submitted under paragraph (1) –
    - (A) on the same date that any change is made to the National Disaster Housing Strategy; and
    - (B) on a periodic basis after the submission of the report under paragraph (1), but not less than once every 5 years after the date of the submission of the report under paragraph (1).

**Sec. 689. Individuals with Disabilities (6 U.S.C. 773)**

- (a) Guidelines – Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act, and in coordination with the National Advisory Council, the National Council on Disability, the Interagency Coordinating Council on Preparedness and Individuals With Disabilities established under Executive Order No. 13347 (6 U.S.C. 312 note), and the Disability Coordinator (established under section 513 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002, as added by this Act), the Administrator shall develop guidelines to accommodate individuals with disabilities, which shall include guidelines for –
  - (1) the accessibility of, and communications and programs in, shelters, recovery centers, and other facilities; and
  - (2) devices used in connection with disaster operations, including first aid stations, mass feeding areas, portable payphone stations, portable toilets, and temporary housing.



**Sec. 689b. Reunification (6 U.S.C. 774)**

(a) Definitions – In this section:

- (1) Child Locator Center – The term “Child Locator Center” means the National Emergency Child Locator Center established under subsection (b).
- (2) Declared Event – The term “declared event” means a major disaster or emergency.
- (3) Displaced Adult – The term “displaced adult” means an individual 21 years of age or older who is displaced from the habitual residence of that individual as a result of a declared event.
- (4) Displaced Child – The term “displaced child” means an individual under 21 years of age who is displaced from the habitual residence of that individual as a result of a declared event.

(b) National Emergency Child Locator Center –

- (1) In general – Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator, in coordination with the Attorney General of the United States, shall establish within the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children the National Emergency Child Locator Center. In establishing the National Emergency Child Locator Center, the Administrator shall establish procedures to make all relevant information available to the National Emergency Child Locator Center in a timely manner to facilitate the expeditious identification and reunification of children with their families.
- (2) Purposes – The purposes of the Child Locator Center are to
  - (A) enable individuals to provide to the Child Locator Center the name of and other identifying information about a displaced child or a displaced adult who may have information about the location of a displaced child;
  - (B) enable individuals to receive information about other sources of information about displaced children and displaced adults; and
  - (C) assist law enforcement in locating displaced children.
- (3) Responsibilities and Duties – The responsibilities and duties of the Child Locator Center are to –
  - (A) establish a toll-free telephone number to receive reports of displaced children and information about displaced adults that may assist in locating displaced children;
  - (B) create a website to provide information about displaced children;
  - (C) deploy its staff to the location of a declared event to gather information about displaced children;
  - (D) assist in the reunification of displaced children with their families;
  - (E) provide information to the public about additional resources for disaster assistance;



- (F) work in partnership with Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies;
- (G) provide technical assistance in locating displaced children;
- (H) share information on displaced children and displaced adults with governmental agencies and nongovernmental organizations providing disaster assistance;
- (I) use its resources to gather information about displaced children;
- (J) refer reports of displaced adults to
  - (i) an entity designated by the Attorney General to provide technical assistance in locating displaced adults; and
  - (ii) the National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System as defined under section 689c(a);
- (K) enter into cooperative agreements with Federal and State agencies and other organizations such as the American Red Cross as necessary to implement the mission of the Child Locator Center; and
- (L) develop an emergency response plan to prepare for the activation of the Child Locator Center.

(c) Conforming Amendments – Section 403(1) of the Missing Children’s Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5772(1)) is amended –

- (1) in subparagraph (A), by striking “or” at the end;
- (2) in subparagraph (B), by adding “or” after the semicolon; and
- (3) by inserting after subparagraph (B) the following:  
 “(C) the individual is an individual under 21 years of age who is displaced from the habitual residence of that individual as a result of an emergency or major disaster (as those terms are defined in section 102 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5122)).”.

(d) Report – Not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall submit to the Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives a report describing in detail the status of the Child Locator Center, including funding issues and any difficulties or issues in establishing the Center or completing the cooperative agreements described in subsection (b)(3)(K).

**Sec. 689c. National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System (6 U.S.C. 775)**

(a) Definitions – In this section –

- (1) the term “displaced individual” means an individual displaced by an emergency or major disaster; and
- (2) the term “National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System” means the National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System established under subsection (b).



(b) Establishment – Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall establish a National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System to help reunify families separated after an emergency or major disaster.

(c) Operation of System – The National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System shall –

- (1) allow a displaced adult (including medical patients) to voluntarily register (and allow an adult that is the parent or guardian of a displaced child to register such child), by submitting personal information to be entered into a database (such as the name, current location of residence, and any other relevant information that could be used by others seeking to locate that individual);
- (2) ensure that information submitted under paragraph (1) is accessible to those individuals named by a displaced individual and to those law enforcement officials;
- (3) be accessible through the Internet and through a toll-free number, to receive reports of displaced individuals; and
- (4) include a means of referring displaced children to the National Emergency Child Locator Center established under section 689b.

(d) Publication of Information – Not later than 210 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall establish a mechanism to inform the public about the National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System and its potential usefulness for assisting to reunite displaced individuals with their families.

(e) Coordination – Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall enter a memorandum of understanding with the Department of Justice, the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children, the Department of Health and Human Services, and the American Red Cross and other relevant private organizations that will enhance the sharing of information to facilitate reuniting displaced individuals (including medical patients) with families.

(f) Report – Not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report describing in detail the status of the National Emergency Family Registry and Locator System, including any difficulties or issues in establishing the System, including funding issues.

#### **Sec. 689i. Individuals and Households Pilot Program (6 U.S.C. 776)**

(a) Pilot Program –

- (1) In general – The President, acting through the Administrator, in coordination with State, local, and tribal governments, shall establish and conduct a pilot program. The pilot program shall be designed to make better use of existing rental housing, located in areas covered by a major disaster declaration, in



order to provide timely and cost-effective temporary housing assistance to individuals and households eligible for assistance under section 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5174) where alternative housing options are less available or cost-effective.

(2) Administration –

(A) In General – For the purposes of the pilot program under this section, the Administrator may –

- (i) enter into lease agreements with owners of multi-family rental property located in areas covered by a major disaster declaration to house individuals and households eligible for assistance under section 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5174);
- (ii) make improvements to properties under such lease agreements;
- (iii) use the pilot program where the program is cost effective in that the cost to the Government for the lease agreements is in proportion to the savings to the Government by not providing alternative housing; and
- (iv) limit repairs to those required to ensure that the housing units shall meet Federal housing quality standards.

(B) Improvements to leased properties – Under the terms of any lease agreement for a property described under subparagraph (A)(ii), the value of the contribution of the Agency to such improvements –

- (i) shall be deducted from the value of the lease agreement; and
- (ii) may not exceed the value of the lease agreement.

(3) Consultation – In administering the pilot program under this section, the Administrator may consult with State, local, and tribal governments.

(4) Report –

(A) In General – Not later than March 31, 2009, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report regarding the effectiveness of the pilot program.

(B) Contents – The Administrator shall include in the report –

- (i) an assessment of the effectiveness of the pilot program under this section, including an assessment of cost-savings to the Federal Government and any benefits to individuals and households eligible for assistance under section 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5174) under the pilot program;
- (ii) findings and conclusions of the Administrator with respect to the pilot program;
- (iii) an assessment of additional authorities needed to aid the Agency in its mission of providing disaster housing assistance to individuals and households eligible for assistance under section 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5174), either under the pilot program under this section or other potential housing programs; and



(iv) any recommendations of the Administrator for additional authority to continue or make permanent the pilot program.

(b) Pilot Program Project Approval – The Administrator shall not approve a project under the pilot program after December 31, 2008.

**Sec. 689j. Public Assistance Pilot Program (6 U.S.C. 777)**

(a) Pilot Program –

(1) In General – The President, acting through the Administrator, and in coordination with State and local governments, shall establish and conduct a pilot program to –

(A) reduce the costs of the Federal Government of providing assistance to States and local governments under sections 403(a)(3)(A), 406, and 407 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 1570b(a)(3), 5172, 5172);

(B) increase flexibility in the administration of sections 403(a)(3)(A), 406, and 407 of that Act; and

(C) expedite the provision of assistance to States and local governments provided under sections 403(a)(3)(A), 406, and 407 of that Act.

(2) Participation – Only States and local governments that elect to participate in the pilot program may participate in the pilot program for a particular project.

(3) Innovative Administration –

(A) In General – For purposes of the pilot program, the Administrator shall establish new procedures to administer assistance provided under the sections referred to in paragraph (1).

(B) New Procedures – The new procedures established under subparagraph (A) may include 1 or more of the following:

(i) Notwithstanding section 406(c)(1)(A) of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 1571(c)(1)(A)), providing an option for a State or local government to elect to receive an in-lieu contribution in an amount equal to 90 percent of the Federal share of the Federal estimate of the cost of repair, restoration, reconstruction, or replacement of a public facility owned or controlled by the State or local government and of management expenses.

(ii) Making grants on the basis of estimates agreed to by the local government (or where no local government is involved, by the State government) and the Administrator to provide financial incentives and disincentives for the local government (or where no local government is involved, for the State government) for the timely or cost effective completion of projects under section 403(a)(3)(A), 406, and 407 of that Act.

(iii) Increasing the Federal share for removal of debris and wreckage for States and local governments that have a debris management plan approved by the Administrator and have pre-qualified 1 or more debris



and wreckage removal contractors before the date of declaration of the major disaster.

(iv) Using a sliding scale for the Federal share for removal of debris and wreckage based on the time it takes to complete debris and wreckage removal.

(v) Using a financial incentive to recycle debris.

(vi) Reimbursing base wages for employees and extra hires of a State or local government involved in or administering debris and wreckage removal.

- (4) Waiver – The Administrator may waive such regulations or rules applicable to the provisions of assistance under the sections referred to in paragraph (1) as the Administrator determines are necessary to carry out the pilot program under this section.

(b) Report –

- (1) In General – Not later than March 31, 2009, the Administrator shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress a report regarding the effectiveness of the pilot program under this section.

- (2) Contents – The report submitted under paragraph (1) shall include –

- (A) An assessment by the Administrator of any administrative or financial benefits of the pilot program;
- (B) An assessment by the Administrator of the effect, including any savings in time and cost, of the pilot program;
- (C) Any identified legal or other obstacles to increasing the amount of debris recycled after a major disaster;
- (D) Any other findings and conclusions of the Administrator with respect to the pilot program; and
- (E) Any recommendations of the Administrator for additional authority to continue or make permanent the pilot program.

(c) Deadline for Initiation of Implementation – The Administrator shall initiate implementation of the pilot program under this section not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of the Act.

(d) Pilot Program Project Duration – The Administrator may not approve a project under the pilot program under this section after December 31, 2008.

**Sec. 689k. Disposal of Unused Temporary Housing Units**

(a) In General – Notwithstanding section 408(d)(2)(B) of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5174(d)(2)(B)), if the Administrator authorizes the disposal of an unused temporary housing unit that is owned by the Agency on the date of enactment of this Act and is not used to house individuals or households under section 408 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5174) after that date, such unit shall be



disposed of under subchapter III of chapter 5 of subtitle I of title 40, United States Code.

(b) Tribal Governments – Housing units described in subsection (a) shall be disposed of in coordination with the Department of the Interior or other appropriate agencies in order to transfer such units to tribal governments if appropriate.

### **Subtitle F – Prevention of Fraud, Waste, and Abuse**

#### **Sec. 691. Advance Contracting (6 U.S.C. 791)**

(a) Initial Report –

(1) IN GENERAL – Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall submit a report under paragraph (2) identifying –

(A) recurring disaster response requirements, including specific goods and services, for which the Agency is capable of contracting for in advance of a natural disaster or act of terrorism or other man-made disaster in a cost effective manner;

(B) recurring disaster response requirements, including specific goods and services, for which the Agency can not contract in advance of a natural disaster or act of terrorism or other man-made disaster in a cost effective manner; and

(C) a contracting strategy that maximizes the use of advance contracts to the extent practical and cost-effective.

(2) SUBMISSION –The report under paragraph (1) shall be submitted to the appropriate committees of Congress.

(b) Entering Into Contracts –

(1) IN GENERAL – Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall enter into 1 or more contracts for each type of goods or services identified under subsection (a)(1)(A), and in accordance with the contracting strategy identified in subsection (a)(1)(C). Any contract for goods or services identified in subsection (a)(1)(A) previously awarded may be maintained in fulfilling this requirement.

(2) CONSIDERED FACTORS – Before entering into any contract under this subsection, the Administrator shall consider section 307 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5150), as amended by this Act.

(3) PRENEGOTIATED FEDERAL CONTRACTS FOR GOODS AND SERVICES – The Administrator, in coordination with State and local governments and other Federal agencies, shall establish a process to ensure that Federal prenegotiated contracts for goods and services are coordinated with State and local governments, as appropriate.

(4) PRENEGOTIATED STATE AND LOCAL CONTRACTS FOR GOODS AND SERVICES – The Administrator shall encourage State and local



governments to establish prenegotiated contracts with vendors for goods and services in advance of natural disasters and acts of terrorism or other man-made disasters.

(c) Maintenance of Contracts – After the date described under subsection (b), the Administrator shall have the responsibility to maintain contracts for appropriate levels of goods and services in accordance with subsection (a)(1)(C).

(d) Report on Contracts Not Using Competitive Procedures – At the end of each fiscal quarter, beginning with the first fiscal quarter occurring at least 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Administrator shall submit a report on each disaster assistance contract entered into by the Agency by other than competitive procedures to the appropriate committees of Congress.

#### **Sec. 692. Limitations on Tiering of Subcontractors (6 U.S.C. 792)**

(a) Regulations – The Secretary shall promulgate regulations applicable to contracts described in subsection (c) to minimize the excessive use by contractors of subcontractors or tiers of subcontractors to perform the principal work of the contract.

(b) Specific Requirement – At a minimum, the regulations promulgated under subsection (a) shall preclude a contractor from using subcontracts for more than 65 percent of the cost of the contract or the cost of any individual task or delivery order (not including overhead and profit), unless the Secretary determines that such requirement is not feasible or practicable.

(c) Covered Contracts – This section applies to any cost-reimbursement type contract or task or delivery order in an amount greater than the simplified acquisition threshold (as defined by section 4 of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 403)) entered into by the Department to facilitate response to or recovery from a natural disaster or act of terrorism or other man-made disaster.

#### **Sec. 693. Oversight and Accountability of Federal Disaster Expenditures (6 U.S.C. 793)**

(a) Authority of Administrator to Designate Funds for Oversight Activities – The Administrator may designate up to 1 percent of the total amount provided to a Federal agency for a mission assignment as oversight funds to be used by the recipient agency for performing oversight of activities carried out under the Agency reimbursable mission assignment process. Such funds shall remain available until expended.

(b) Use of Funds –

(1) TYPES OF OVERSIGHT ACTIVITIES – Oversight funds may be used for the following types of oversight activities related to Agency mission assignments:



- (A) Monitoring, tracking, and auditing expenditures of funds.
- (B) Ensuring that sufficient management and internal control mechanisms are available so that Agency funds are spent appropriately and in accordance with all applicable laws and regulations.
- (C) Reviewing selected contracts and other activities.
- (D) Investigating allegations of fraud involving Agency funds.
- (E) Conducting and participating in fraud prevention activities with other Federal, State, and local government personnel and contractors.
- (2) PLANS AND REPORTS – Oversight funds may be used to issue the plans required under subsection (e) and the reports required under subsection (f).

(c) Restriction on Use of Funds – Oversight funds may not be used to finance existing agency oversight responsibilities related to direct agency appropriations used for disaster response, relief, and recovery activities.

(d) Methods of Oversight Activities –

- (1) IN GENERAL – Oversight activities may be carried out by an agency under this section either directly or by contract. Such activities may include evaluations and financial and performance audits.
- (2) COORDINATION OF OVERSIGHT ACTIVITIES – To the extent practicable, evaluations and audits under this section shall be performed by the inspector general of the agency.

(e) Development of Oversight Plans –

- (1) IN GENERAL – If an agency receives oversight funds for a fiscal year, the head of the agency shall prepare a plan describing the oversight activities for disaster response, relief, and recovery anticipated to be undertaken during the subsequent fiscal year.
- (2) SELECTION OF OVERSIGHT ACTIVITIES – In preparing the plan, the head of the agency shall select oversight activities based upon a risk assessment of those areas that present the greatest risk of fraud, waste, and abuse.
- (3) SCHEDULE – The plan shall include a schedule for conducting oversight activities, including anticipated dates of completion.

(f) Federal Disaster Assistance Accountability Reports – A Federal agency receiving oversight funds under this section shall submit annually to the Administrator and the appropriate committees of Congress a consolidated report regarding the use of such funds, including information summarizing oversight activities and the results achieved.

(g) Definition – In this section, the term ‘oversight funds’ means funds referred to in subsection (a) that are designated for use in performing oversight activities.



**Sec. 695. Limitation on Length of Certain Noncompetitive Contracts (6 U.S.C. 794)**

(a) Regulations – The Secretary shall promulgate regulations applicable to contracts described in subsection (c) to restrict the contract period of any such contract entered into using procedures other than competitive procedures pursuant to the exception provided in paragraph (2) of section 303(c) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (41 U.S.C. 253(c)) to the minimum contract period necessary –

- (1) to meet the urgent and compelling requirements of the work to be performed under the contract; and
- (2) to enter into another contract for the required goods or services through the use of competitive procedures.

(b) Specific Contract Period – The regulations promulgated under subsection (a) shall require the contract period to not to exceed 150 days, unless the Secretary determines that exceptional circumstances apply.

(c) Covered Contracts – This section applies to any contract in an amount greater than the simplified acquisition threshold (as defined by section 4 of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 403)) entered into by the Department to facilitate response to or recovery from a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster.

**Sec. 696. Fraud, Waste, and Abuse Controls (6 U.S.C. 795)**

(a) In General – The Administrator shall ensure that –

- (1) all programs within the Agency administering Federal disaster relief assistance develop and maintain proper internal management controls to prevent and detect fraud, waste, and abuse;
- (2) application databases used by the Agency to collect information on eligible recipients must record disbursements;
- (3) such tracking is designed to highlight and identify ineligible applications; and
- (4) the databases used to collect information from applications for such assistance must be integrated with disbursement and payment records.

(b) Audits and Reviews Required – The Administrator shall ensure that any database or similar application processing system for Federal disaster relief assistance programs administered by the Agency undergoes a review by the Inspector General of the Agency to determine the existence and implementation of such internal controls required under this section and the amendments made by this section.



## **Sec. 697. Registry of Disaster Response Contractors (6 U.S.C. 796)**

### **(a) Definitions – In this section –**

- (1) the term ‘registry’ means the registry created under subsection (b); and
- (2) the terms ‘small business concern’, ‘small business concern owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals’, ‘small business concern owned and controlled by women’, and ‘small business concern owned and controlled by service-disabled veterans’ have the meanings given those terms under the Small Business Act (15 U.S.C. 631 et seq.).

### **(b) Registry –**

- (1) **IN GENERAL** – The Administrator shall establish and maintain a registry of contractors who are willing to perform debris removal, distribution of supplies, reconstruction, and other disaster or emergency relief activities.
- (2) **CONTENTS** – The registry shall include, for each business concern –
  - (A) the name of the business concern;
  - (B) the location of the business concern;
  - (C) the area served by the business concern;
  - (D) the type of good or service provided by the business concern;
  - (E) the bonding level of the business concern ;
  - (F) whether the business concern is –
    - (i) a small business concern;
    - (ii) a small business concern owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals;
    - (iii) a small business concern owned and controlled by women; or
    - (iv) a small business concern owned and controlled by service-disabled veterans.
- (3) **SOURCE OF INFORMATION** –
  - (A) **SUBMISSION** – Information maintained in the registry shall be submitted on a voluntary basis and be kept current by the submitting business concerns.
  - (B) **ATTESTATION** – Each business concern submitting information to the registry shall submit –
    - (i) an attestation that the information is true; and
    - (ii) documentation supporting such attestation.
  - (C) **VERIFICATION** – The Administrator shall verify that the documentation submitted by each business concern supports the information submitted by that business concern.
- (4) **AVAILABILITY OF REGISTRY** – The registry shall be made generally available on the Internet site of the Agency.
- (5) **CONSULTATION OF REGISTRY** – As part of the acquisition planning for contracting for debris removal, distribution of supplies in a disaster, reconstruction, and other disaster or emergency relief activities, a Federal agency shall consult the registry.



**Sec. 698 Fraud Prevention Training Program (6 U.S.C. 797)**

The Administrator shall develop and implement a program to provide training on the prevention of waste, fraud, and abuse of Federal disaster relief assistance relating to the response to or recovery from natural disasters and acts of terrorism or other man-made disasters and ways to identify such potential waste, fraud, and abuse.

**Emergency Supplemental Appropriations Act for Defense, the Global War on Terror, and Hurricane Recovery, 2006, Pub. L. No. 109-234, 120 Stat. 418 (2006), Signed on June 15, 2006.**

**Sec. 2401.**

The Federal Emergency Management Agency may provide funds to a State or local government or, as necessary, assume an existing agreement from such unit of government, to pay for utility costs resulting from the provision of temporary housing units to evacuees from Hurricane Katrina and other hurricanes of the 2005 season if the State or local government has previously arranged to pay for such utilities on behalf of the evacuees for the term of any leases, not to exceed 12 months, contracted by or prior to February 7, 2006: *Provided*, That the Federal share of the costs eligible to be paid shall be 100 percent.

*Note: Section 2401 has been extended from a period of 12 months to a period of 24 months by section 4503 of the U.S. Troop Readiness, Veterans' Care, Katrina Recovery, and Iraq Accountability Appropriations Act, 2007 (signed on May 25, 2007), set forth above.*

**Sec. 2403.**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall consider eligible under the Federal Emergency Management Agency Individual Assistance Program the costs sufficient for alternative housing pilot programs in the areas hardest hit by Hurricane Katrina and other hurricanes of the 2005 season.







# **THE HOMELAND SECURITY ACT OF 2002**

## **6 U.S.C. 311-321j**

*(As amended by the Department of Homeland Security Appropriations Act, 2007,  
Pub. L. No. 109-295)*

### **TITLE V**

#### **(National Emergency Management)**

##### **Sec. 501. Definitions (6 U.S.C. 311)**

In this title—

- (1) the term 'Administrator' means the Administrator of the Agency;
- (2) the term 'Agency' means the Federal Emergency Management Agency;
- (3) the term 'catastrophic incident' means any natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster that results in extraordinary levels of casualties or damage or disruption severely affecting the population (including mass evacuations), infrastructure, environment, economy, national morale, or government functions in an area;
- (4) the term 'Federal coordinating officer' means a Federal coordinating officer as described in section 302 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5143);
- (5) the term 'interoperable' has the meaning given the term 'interoperable communications' under section 7303(g)(1) of the Intelligence Reform and Terrorism Prevention Act of 2004 (6 U.S.C. 194(g)(1));
- (6) the term 'National Incident Management System' means a system to enable effective, efficient, and collaborative incident management;
- (7) the term 'National Response Plan' means the National Response Plan or any successor plan prepared under section 502(a)(6);
- (8) the term 'Regional Administrator' means a Regional Administrator appointed under section 507;
- (9) the term 'Regional Office' means a Regional Office established under section 507;



(10) the term 'surge capacity' means the ability to rapidly and substantially increase the provision of search and rescue capabilities, food, water, medicine, shelter and housing, medical care, evacuation capacity, staffing (including disaster assistance employees), and other resources necessary to save lives and protect property during a catastrophic incident; and

(11) the term 'tribal government' means the government of any entity described in section 2(10)(B).

## **Sec. 502. Definition (6 U.S.C. 312)**

In this subchapter, the term “Nuclear Incident Response Team” means a resource that includes—

(1) those entities of the Department of Energy that perform nuclear or radiological emergency support functions (including accident response, search response, advisory, and technical operations functions), radiation exposure functions at the medical assistance facility known as the Radiation Emergency Assistance Center/Training Site (REAC/TS), radiological assistance functions, and related functions; and

(2) those entities of the Environmental Protection Agency that perform such support functions (including radiological emergency response functions) and related functions.

## **Sec. 503. Federal Emergency Management Agency (6 U.S.C. 313)**

(a) In General— There is in the Department the Federal Emergency Management Agency, headed by an Administrator.

(b) Mission—

(1) PRIMARY MISSION— The primary mission of the Agency is to reduce the loss of life and property and protect the Nation from all hazards, including natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters, by leading and supporting the Nation in a risk-based, comprehensive emergency management system of preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation.

(2) SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES— In support of the primary mission of the Agency, the Administrator shall—

(A) lead the Nation's efforts to prepare for, protect against, respond to, recover from, and mitigate against the risk of natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters, including catastrophic incidents;

(B) partner with State, local, and tribal governments and emergency response providers, with other Federal agencies, with the private sector, and with nongovernmental organizations to build a national system of emergency



management that can effectively and efficiently utilize the full measure of the Nation's resources to respond to natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters, including catastrophic incidents;

(C) develop a Federal response capability that, when necessary and appropriate, can act effectively and rapidly to deliver assistance essential to saving lives or protecting or preserving property or public health and safety in a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster;

(D) integrate the Agency's emergency preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation responsibilities to confront effectively the challenges of a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster;

(E) develop and maintain robust Regional Offices that will work with State, local, and tribal governments, emergency response providers, and other appropriate entities to identify and address regional priorities;

(F) under the leadership of the Secretary, coordinate with the Commandant of the Coast Guard, the Director of Customs and Border Protection, the Director of Immigration and Customs Enforcement, the National Operations Center, and other agencies and offices in the Department to take full advantage of the substantial range of resources in the Department;

(G) provide funding, training, exercises, technical assistance, planning, and other assistance to build tribal, local, State, regional, and national capabilities (including communications capabilities), necessary to respond to a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster; and

(H) develop and coordinate the implementation of a risk-based, all-hazards strategy for preparedness that builds those common capabilities necessary to respond to natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters while also building the unique capabilities necessary to respond to specific types of incidents that pose the greatest risk to our Nation.

(c) Administrator—

(1) IN GENERAL— The Administrator shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(2) QUALIFICATIONS— The Administrator shall be appointed from among individuals who have—

(A) a demonstrated ability in and knowledge of emergency management and homeland security; and

(B) not less than 5 years of executive leadership and management experience in the public or private sector.

(3) REPORTING— The Administrator shall report to the Secretary, without being required to report through any other official of the Department.



(4) **PRINCIPAL ADVISOR ON EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT—**

(A) **IN GENERAL—** The Administrator is the principal advisor to the President, the Homeland Security Council, and the Secretary for all matters relating to emergency management in the United States.

(B) **ADVICE AND RECOMMENDATIONS—**

(i) **IN GENERAL—** In presenting advice with respect to any matter to the President, the Homeland Security Council, or the Secretary, the Administrator shall, as the Administrator considers appropriate, inform the President, the Homeland Security Council, or the Secretary, as the case may be, of the range of emergency preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation options with respect to that matter.

(ii) **ADVICE ON REQUEST—** The Administrator, as the principal advisor on emergency management, shall provide advice to the President, the Homeland Security Council, or the Secretary on a particular matter when the President, the Homeland Security Council, or the Secretary requests such advice.

(iii) **RECOMMENDATIONS TO CONGRESS—** After informing the Secretary, the Administrator may make such recommendations to Congress relating to emergency management as the Administrator considers appropriate.

(5) **CABINET STATUS—**

(A) **IN GENERAL—** The President may designate the Administrator to serve as a member of the Cabinet in the event of natural disasters, acts of terrorism, or other man-made disasters.

(B) **RETENTION OF AUTHORITY—** Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed as affecting the authority of the Secretary under this Act.

## **Sec. 504. Authority and Responsibilities (6 U.S.C. 314)**

(a) **In General —** The Administrator shall provide Federal leadership necessary to prepare for, protect against, respond to, recover from, or mitigate against a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster, including—

(1) helping to ensure the effectiveness of emergency response providers to terrorist attacks, major disasters, and other emergencies;

(2) with respect to the Nuclear Incident Response Team (regardless of whether it is operating as an organizational unit of the Department pursuant to this subchapter)—

(A) establishing standards and certifying when those standards have been met;

(B) conducting joint and other exercises and training and evaluating performance; and

(C) providing funds to the Department of Energy and the Environmental Protection Agency, as appropriate, for homeland security planning, exercises and training, and equipment;



(3) providing the Federal Government's response to terrorist attacks and major disasters, including—

(A) managing such response;

(B) directing the Domestic Emergency Support Team, the National Disaster Medical System, and (when operating as an organizational unit of the Department pursuant to this subchapter) the Nuclear Incident Response Team;

(C) overseeing the Metropolitan Medical Response System; and

(D) coordinating other Federal response resources, including requiring deployment of the Strategic National Stockpile, in the event of a terrorist attack or major disaster;

(4) aiding the recovery from terrorist attacks and major disasters;

(5) building a comprehensive national incident management system with Federal, State, and local government personnel, agencies, and authorities, to respond to such attacks and disasters;

(6) consolidating existing Federal Government emergency response plans into a single, coordinated national response plan;

(7) helping ensure the acquisition of operable and interoperable communications capabilities by Federal, State, local, and tribal governments and emergency response providers;

(8) assisting the President in carrying out the functions under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.) and carrying out all functions and authorities given to the Administrator under that Act;

(9) carrying out the mission of the Agency to reduce the loss of life and property and protect the Nation from all hazards by leading and supporting the Nation in a risk-based, comprehensive emergency management system of—

(A) mitigation, by taking sustained actions to reduce or eliminate long-term risks to people and property from hazards and their effects;

(B) preparedness, by planning, training, and building the emergency management profession to prepare effectively for, mitigate against, respond to, and recover from any hazard;

(C) response, by conducting emergency operations to save lives and property through positioning emergency equipment, personnel, and supplies, through evacuating potential victims, through providing food, water, shelter, and medical care to those in need, and through restoring critical public services; and

(D) recovery, by rebuilding communities so individuals, businesses, and governments can function on their own, return to normal life, and protect against future hazards;



- (10) increasing efficiencies, by coordinating efforts relating to preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation;
- (11) helping to ensure the effectiveness of emergency response providers in responding to a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster;
- (12) supervising grant programs administered by the Agency;
- (13) administering and ensuring the implementation of the National Response Plan, including coordinating and ensuring the readiness of each emergency support function under the National Response Plan;
- (14) coordinating with the National Advisory Council established under section 508;
- (15) preparing and implementing the plans and programs of the Federal Government for—
  - (A) continuity of operations;
  - (B) continuity of government; and
  - (C) continuity of plans;
- (16) minimizing, to the extent practicable, overlapping planning and reporting requirements applicable to State, local, and tribal governments and the private sector;
- (17) maintaining and operating within the Agency the National Response Coordination Center or its successor;
- (18) developing a national emergency management system that is capable of preparing for, protecting against, responding to, recovering from, and mitigating against catastrophic incidents;
- (19) assisting the President in carrying out the functions under the national preparedness goal and the national preparedness system and carrying out all functions and authorities of the Administrator under the national preparedness System;
- (20) carrying out all authorities of the Federal Emergency Management Agency and the Directorate of Preparedness of the Department as transferred under section 505; and
- (21) otherwise carrying out the mission of the Agency as described in section 503(b).

(b) All-Hazards Approach— In carrying out the responsibilities under this section, the Administrator shall coordinate the implementation of a risk-based, all-hazards strategy that



builds those common capabilities necessary to prepare for, protect against, respond to, recover from, or mitigate against natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters, while also building the unique capabilities necessary to prepare for, protect against, respond to, recover from, or mitigate against the risks of specific types of incidents that pose the greatest risk to the Nation.

### **Sec. 505. Functions Transferred (6 U.S.C. 315)**

(a) In General— Except as provided in subsection (b), there are transferred to the Agency the following:

(1) All functions of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, including existing responsibilities for emergency alert systems and continuity of operations and continuity of government plans and programs as constituted on June 1, 2006, including all of its personnel, assets, components, authorities, grant programs, and liabilities, and including the functions of the Under Secretary for Federal Emergency Management relating thereto.

(2) The Directorate of Preparedness, as constituted on June 1, 2006, including all of its functions, personnel, assets, components, authorities, grant programs, and liabilities, and including the functions of the Under Secretary for Preparedness relating thereto.

(b) Exceptions— The following within the Preparedness Directorate shall not be transferred:

(1) The Office of Infrastructure Protection.

(2) The National Communications System.

(3) The National Cybersecurity Division.

(4) The Office of the Chief Medical Officer.

(5) The functions, personnel, assets, components, authorities, and liabilities of each component described under paragraphs (1) through (4).

### **Sec. 506. Preserving the Federal Emergency Management Agency (6 U.S.C. 316)**

(a) Distinct Entity— The Agency shall be maintained as a distinct entity within the Department.

(b) Reorganization— Section 872 shall not apply to the Agency, including any function or organizational unit of the Agency.



(c) Prohibition on Changes to Missions—

(1) IN GENERAL— The Secretary may not substantially or significantly reduce the authorities, responsibilities, or functions of the Agency or the capability of the Agency to perform those missions, authorities, responsibilities, except as otherwise specifically provided in an Act enacted after the date of enactment of the Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006.

(2) CERTAIN TRANSFERS PROHIBITED— No asset, function, or mission of the Agency may be diverted to the principal and continuing use of any other organization, unit, or entity of the Department, except for details or assignments that do not reduce the capability of the Agency to perform its missions.

(d) Reprogramming and Transfer of Funds— In reprogramming or transferring funds, the Secretary shall comply with any applicable provisions of any Act making appropriations for the Department for fiscal year 2007, or any succeeding fiscal year, relating to the reprogramming or transfer of funds.

**Sec. 507. Regional Offices (6 U.S.C. 317)**

(a) In General— There are in the Agency 10 regional offices, as identified by the Administrator.

(b) Management of Regional Offices—

(1) REGIONAL ADMINISTRATOR— Each Regional Office shall be headed by a Regional Administrator who shall be appointed by the Administrator, after consulting with State, local, and tribal government officials in the region. Each Regional Administrator shall report directly to the Administrator and be in the Senior Executive Service.

(2) QUALIFICATIONS—

(A) IN GENERAL— Each Regional Administrator shall be appointed from among individuals who have a demonstrated ability in and knowledge of emergency management and homeland security.

(B) CONSIDERATIONS— In selecting a Regional Administrator for a Regional Office, the Administrator shall consider the familiarity of an individual with the geographical area and demographic characteristics of the population served by such Regional Office.

(c) Responsibilities—

(1) IN GENERAL— The Regional Administrator shall work in partnership with State, local, and tribal governments, emergency managers, emergency response providers, medical providers, the private sector, nongovernmental organizations,



multijurisdictional councils of governments, and regional planning commissions and organizations in the geographical area served by the Regional Office to carry out the responsibilities of a Regional Administrator under this section.

(2) RESPONSIBILITIES— The responsibilities of a Regional Administrator include—

- (A) ensuring effective, coordinated, and integrated regional preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation activities and programs for natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters (including planning, training, exercises, and professional development);
- (B) assisting in the development of regional capabilities needed for a national catastrophic response system;
- (C) coordinating the establishment of effective regional operable and interoperable emergency communications capabilities;
- (D) staffing and overseeing 1 or more strike teams within the region under subsection (f), to serve as the focal point of the Federal Government's initial response efforts for natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters within that region, and otherwise building Federal response capabilities to respond to natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters within that region;
- (E) designating an individual responsible for the development of strategic and operational regional plans in support of the National Response Plan;
- (F) fostering the development of mutual aid and other cooperative agreements;
- (G) identifying critical gaps in regional capabilities to respond to populations with special needs;
- (H) maintaining and operating a Regional Response Coordination Center or its successor; and
- (I) performing such other duties relating to such responsibilities as the Administrator may require.

(3) TRAINING AND EXERCISE REQUIREMENTS—

- (A) TRAINING— The Administrator shall require each Regional Administrator to undergo specific training periodically to complement the qualifications of the Regional Administrator. Such training, as appropriate, shall include training with respect to the National Incident Management System, the National Response Plan, and such other subjects as determined by the Administrator.
- (B) EXERCISES— The Administrator shall require each Regional Administrator to participate as appropriate in regional and national exercises.

(d) Area Offices—

(1) IN GENERAL— There is an Area Office for the Pacific and an Area Office for the Caribbean, as components in the appropriate Regional Offices.

(2) ALASKA— The Administrator shall establish an Area Office in Alaska, as a component in the appropriate Regional Office.



(e) Regional Advisory Council—

(1) ESTABLISHMENT— Each Regional Administrator shall establish a Regional Advisory Council.

(2) NOMINATIONS— A State, local, or tribal government located within the geographic area served by the Regional Office may nominate officials, including Adjutants General and emergency managers, to serve as members of the Regional Advisory Council for that region.

(3) RESPONSIBILITIES— Each Regional Advisory Council shall—

(A) advise the Regional Administrator on emergency management issues specific to that region;

(B) identify any geographic, demographic, or other characteristics peculiar to any State, local, or tribal government within the region that might make preparedness, protection, response, recovery, or mitigation more complicated or difficult; and

(C) advise the Regional Administrator of any weaknesses or deficiencies in preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation for any State, local, and tribal government within the region of which the Regional Advisory Council is aware.

(f) Regional Office Strike Teams—

(1) IN GENERAL— In coordination with other relevant Federal agencies, each Regional Administrator shall oversee multi-agency strike teams authorized under section 303 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5144) that shall consist of

(A) a designated Federal coordinating officer;

(B) personnel trained in incident management;

(C) public affairs, response and recovery, and communications support personnel;

(D) a defense coordinating officer;

(E) liaisons to other Federal agencies;

(F) such other personnel as the Administrator or Regional Administrator determines appropriate; and

(G) individuals from the agencies with primary responsibility for each of the emergency support functions in the National Response Plan.

(2) OTHER DUTIES— The duties of an individual assigned to a Regional Office strike team from another relevant agency when such individual is not functioning as a member of the strike team shall be consistent with the emergency preparedness activities of the agency that employs such individual.

(3) LOCATION OF MEMBERS— The members of each Regional Office strike team, including representatives from agencies other than the Department, shall be based primarily within the region that corresponds to that strike team.



(4) **COORDINATION**— Each Regional Office strike team shall coordinate the training and exercises of that strike team with the State, local, and tribal governments and private sector and nongovernmental entities which the strike team shall support when a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster occurs.

(5) **PREPAREDNESS**— Each Regional Office strike team shall be trained as a unit on a regular basis and equipped and staffed to be well prepared to respond to natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters, including catastrophic incidents.

(6) **AUTHORITIES**— If the Administrator determines that statutory authority is inadequate for the preparedness and deployment of individuals in strike teams under this subsection, the Administrator shall report to Congress regarding the additional statutory authorities that the Administrator determines are necessary.

## **Sec. 508. National Advisory Council (6 U.S.C. 318)**

(a) **Establishment**— Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of the Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006, the Secretary shall establish an advisory body under section 871(a) to ensure effective and ongoing coordination of Federal preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation for natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters, to be known as the National Advisory Council.

(b) **Responsibilities**— The National Advisory Council shall advise the Administrator on all aspects of emergency management. The National Advisory Council shall incorporate State, local, and tribal government and private sector input in the development and revision of the national preparedness goal, the national preparedness system, the National Incident Management System, the National Response Plan, and other related plans and strategies.

(c) **Membership**—

(1) **IN GENERAL**— The members of the National Advisory Council shall be appointed by the Administrator, and shall, to the extent practicable, represent a geographic (including urban and rural) and substantive cross section of officials, emergency managers, and emergency response providers from State, local, and tribal governments, the private sector, and nongovernmental organizations, including as appropriate

(A) members selected from the emergency management field and emergency response providers, including fire service, law enforcement, hazardous materials response, emergency medical services, and emergency management personnel, or organizations representing such individuals;

(B) health scientists, emergency and inpatient medical providers, and public health professionals;



- (C) experts from Federal, State, local, and tribal governments, and the private sector, representing standards-setting and accrediting organizations, including representatives from the voluntary consensus codes and standards development community, particularly those with expertise in the emergency preparedness and response field;
- (D) State, local, and tribal government officials with expertise in preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation, including Adjutants General;
- (E) elected State, local, and tribal government executives;
- (F) experts in public and private sector infrastructure protection, cybersecurity, and communications;
- (G) representatives of individuals with disabilities and other populations with special needs; and
- (H) such other individuals as the Administrator determines to be appropriate.

(2) **COORDINATION WITH THE DEPARTMENTS OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES AND TRANSPORTATION**— In the selection of members of the National Advisory Council who are health or emergency medical services professionals, the Administrator shall work with the Secretary of Health and Human Services and the Secretary of Transportation.

(3) **EX OFFICIO MEMBERS**— The Administrator shall designate 1 or more officers of the Federal Government to serve as ex officio members of the National Advisory Council.

(4) **TERMS OF OFFICE**—

(A) **IN GENERAL**— Except as provided in subparagraph (B), the term of office of each member of the National Advisory Council shall be 3 years.

(B) **INITIAL APPOINTMENTS**— Of the members initially appointed to the National Advisory Council

- (i) one-third shall be appointed for a term of 1 year; and
- (ii) one-third shall be appointed for a term of 2 years.

(d) **Applicability of Federal Advisory Committee Act**—

(1) **IN GENERAL**— Notwithstanding section 871(a) and subject to paragraph (2), the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.), including subsections (a), (b), and (d) of section 10 of such Act, and section 552b(c) of title 5, United States Code, shall apply to the National Advisory Council.

(2) **TERMINATION**— Section 14(a)(2) of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall not apply to the National Advisory Council.

## **Sec. 509. National Integration Center (6 U.S.C. 319)**

(a) **In General**— There is established in the Agency a National Integration Center.



(b) Responsibilities—

(1) IN GENERAL— The Administrator, through the National Integration Center, and in consultation with other Federal departments and agencies and the National Advisory Council, shall ensure ongoing management and maintenance of the National Incident Management System, the National Response Plan, and any successor to such system or plan.

(2) SPECIFIC RESPONSIBILITIES— The National Integration Center shall periodically review, and revise as appropriate, the National Incident Management System and the National Response Plan, including—

- (A) establishing, in consultation with the Director of the Corporation for National and Community Service, a process to better use volunteers and donations;
- (B) improving the use of Federal, State, local, and tribal resources and ensuring the effective use of emergency response providers at emergency scenes; and
- (C) revising the Catastrophic Incident Annex, finalizing and releasing the Catastrophic Incident Supplement to the National Response Plan, and ensuring that both effectively address response requirements in the event of a catastrophic incident.

(c) Incident Management—

(1) IN GENERAL—

(A) NATIONAL RESPONSE PLAN— The Secretary, acting through the Administrator, shall ensure that the National Response Plan provides for a clear chain of command to lead and coordinate the Federal response to any natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster.

(B) ADMINISTRATOR— The chain of the command specified in the National Response Plan shall

- (i) provide for a role for the Administrator consistent with the role of the Administrator as the principal emergency management advisor to the President, the Homeland Security Council, and the Secretary under section 503(c)(4) and the responsibility of the Administrator under the Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006, and the amendments made by that Act, relating to natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters; and
- (ii) provide for a role for the Federal Coordinating Officer consistent with the responsibilities under section 302(b) of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5143(b)).

(2) PRINCIPAL FEDERAL OFFICIAL— The Principal Federal Official (or the successor thereto) shall not—

- (A) direct or replace the incident command structure established at the incident; or
- (B) have directive authority over the Senior Federal Law Enforcement Official, Federal Coordinating Officer, or other Federal and State officials.



## **Sec. 510. Credentialing and Typing (6 U.S.C. 320)**

The Administrator shall enter into a memorandum of understanding with the administrators of the Emergency Management Assistance Compact, State, local, and tribal governments, and organizations that represent emergency response providers, to collaborate on developing standards for deployment capabilities, including credentialing of personnel and typing of resources likely needed to respond to natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters.

## **Sec. 511. The National Infrastructure Simulation and Analysis Center (6 U.S.C. 321)**

(a) Definition— In this section, the term 'National Infrastructure Simulation and Analysis Center' means the National Infrastructure Simulation and Analysis Center established under section 1016(d) of the USA PATRIOT Act (42 U.S.C. 5195c(d)).

(b) Authority—

(1) IN GENERAL— There is in the Department the National Infrastructure Simulation and Analysis Center which shall serve as a source of national expertise to address critical infrastructure protection and continuity through support for activities related to

- (A) counterterrorism, threat assessment, and risk mitigation; and
- (B) a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster.

(2) INFRASTRUCTURE MODELING—

(A) PARTICULAR SUPPORT— The support provided under paragraph (1) shall include modeling, simulation, and analysis of the systems and assets comprising critical infrastructure, in order to enhance preparedness, protection, response, recovery, and mitigation activities.

(B) RELATIONSHIP WITH OTHER AGENCIES— Each Federal agency and department with critical infrastructure responsibilities under Homeland Security Presidential Directive 7, or any successor to such directive, shall establish a formal relationship, including an agreement regarding information sharing, between the elements of such agency or department and the National Infrastructure Simulation and Analysis Center, through the Department.

(C) PURPOSE—

(i) IN GENERAL— The purpose of the relationship under subparagraph (B) shall be to permit each Federal agency and department described in subparagraph (B) to take full advantage of the capabilities of the National Infrastructure Simulation and Analysis Center (particularly vulnerability and consequence analysis), consistent with its work load capacity and priorities, for real-time response to reported and projected natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters.



(ii) RECIPIENT OF CERTAIN SUPPORT— Modeling, simulation, and analysis provided under this subsection shall be provided to relevant Federal agencies and departments, including Federal agencies and departments with critical infrastructure responsibilities under Homeland Security Presidential Directive 7, or any successor to such directive.

## **Sec. 512. Evacuation Plans and Exercises (6 U.S.C. 321a)**

(a) In General— Notwithstanding any other provision of law, and subject to subsection (d), grants made to States or local or tribal governments by the Department through the State Homeland Security Grant Program or the Urban Area Security Initiative may be used to—

(1) establish programs for the development and maintenance of mass evacuation plans under subsection (b) in the event of a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster;

(2) prepare for the execution of such plans, including the development of evacuation routes and the purchase and stockpiling of necessary supplies and shelters; and

(3) conduct exercises of such plans.

(b) Plan Development— In developing the mass evacuation plans authorized under subsection (a), each State, local, or tribal government shall, to the maximum extent practicable—

(1) establish incident command and decision making processes;

(2) ensure that State, local, and tribal government plans, including evacuation routes, are coordinated and integrated;

(3) identify primary and alternative evacuation routes and methods to increase evacuation capabilities along such routes such as conversion of two-way traffic to one-way evacuation routes;

(4) identify evacuation transportation modes and capabilities, including the use of mass and public transit capabilities, and coordinating and integrating evacuation plans for all populations including for those individuals located in hospitals, nursing homes, and other institutional living facilities;

(5) develop procedures for informing the public of evacuation plans before and during an evacuation, including individuals--

(A) with disabilities or other special needs;

(B) with limited English proficiency; or

(C) who might otherwise have difficulty in obtaining such information; and



(6) identify shelter locations and capabilities.

(c) Assistance—

(1) IN GENERAL— The Administrator may establish any guidelines, standards, or requirements determined appropriate to administer this section and to ensure effective mass evacuation planning for State, local, and tribal areas.

(2) REQUESTED ASSISTANCE— The Administrator shall make assistance available upon request of a State, local, or tribal government to assist hospitals, nursing homes, and other institutions that house individuals with special needs to establish, maintain, and exercise mass evacuation plans that are coordinated and integrated into the plans developed by that State, local, or tribal government under this section.

(d) Multipurpose Funds— Nothing in this section may be construed to preclude a State, local, or tribal government from using grant funds in a manner that enhances preparedness for a natural or man-made disaster unrelated to an act of terrorism, if such use assists such government in building capabilities for terrorism preparedness.

**Sec. 513. Disability Coordinator (6 U.S.C. 321b)**

(a) In General— After consultation with organizations representing individuals with disabilities, the National Council on Disabilities, and the Interagency Coordinating Council on Preparedness and Individuals with Disabilities, established under Executive Order No. 13347 (6 U.S.C. 312 note), the Administrator shall appoint a Disability Coordinator. The Disability Coordinator shall report directly to the Administrator, in order to ensure that the needs of individuals with disabilities are being properly addressed in emergency preparedness and disaster relief.

(b) Responsibilities The Disability Coordinator shall be responsible for—

(1) providing guidance and coordination on matters related to individuals with disabilities in emergency planning requirements and relief efforts in the event of a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster;

(2) interacting with the staff of the Agency, the National Council on Disabilities, the Interagency Coordinating Council on Preparedness and Individuals with Disabilities established under Executive Order No. 13347 (6 U.S.C. 312 note), other agencies of the Federal Government, and State, local, and tribal government authorities regarding the needs of individuals with disabilities in emergency planning requirements and relief efforts in the event of a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster;

(3) consulting with organizations that represent the interests and rights of individuals with disabilities about the needs of individuals with disabilities in



emergency planning requirements and relief efforts in the event of a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster;

(4) ensuring the coordination and dissemination of best practices and model evacuation plans for individuals with disabilities;

(5) ensuring the development of training materials and a curriculum for training of emergency response providers, State, local, and tribal government officials, and others on the needs of individuals with disabilities;

(6) promoting the accessibility of telephone hotlines and websites regarding emergency preparedness, evacuations, and disaster relief;

(7) working to ensure that video programming distributors, including broadcasters, cable operators, and satellite television services, make emergency information accessible to individuals with hearing and vision disabilities;

(8) ensuring the availability of accessible transportation options for individuals with disabilities in the event of an evacuation;

(9) providing guidance and implementing policies to ensure that the rights and wishes of individuals with disabilities regarding post-evacuation residency and relocation are respected;

(10) ensuring that meeting the needs of individuals with disabilities are included in the components of the national preparedness system established under section 644 of the Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act of 2006; and

(11) any other duties as assigned by the Administrator.

#### **Sec. 514. Department and Agency Officials (6 U.S.C. 321c)**

(a) Deputy Administrators— The President may appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, not more than 4 Deputy Administrators to assist the Administrator in carrying out this title.

(b) Cybersecurity and Communications— There is in the Department an Assistant Secretary for Cybersecurity and Communications.

(c) United States Fire Administration— The Administrator of the United States Fire Administration shall have a rank equivalent to an assistant secretary of the Department.



## **Sec. 515. National Operations Center (6 U.S.C. 321d)**

(a) Definition— In this section, the term `situational awareness' means information gathered from a variety of sources that, when communicated to emergency managers and decision makers, can form the basis for incident management decision making.

(b) Establishment— The National Operations Center is the principal operations center for the Department and shall—

(1) provide situational awareness and a common operating picture for the entire Federal Government, and for State, local, and tribal governments as appropriate, in the event of a natural disaster, act of terrorism, or other man-made disaster; and

(2) ensure that critical terrorism and disaster-related information reaches government decision-makers.

## **Sec. 516. Chief Medical Officer (6 U.S.C. 321e)**

(a) In General— There is in the Department a Chief Medical Officer, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(b) Qualifications— The individual appointed as Chief Medical Officer shall possess a demonstrated ability in and knowledge of medicine and public health.

(c) Responsibilities— The Chief Medical Officer shall have the primary responsibility within the Department for medical issues related to natural disasters, acts of terrorism, and other man-made disasters, including—

(1) serving as the principal advisor to the Secretary and the Administrator on medical and public health issues;

(2) coordinating the biodefense activities of the Department;

(3) ensuring internal and external coordination of all medical preparedness and response activities of the Department, including training, exercises, and equipment support;

(4) serving as the Department's primary point of contact with the Department of Agriculture, the Department of Defense, the Department of Health and Human Services, the Department of Transportation, the Department of Veterans Affairs, and other Federal departments or agencies, on medical and public health issues;

(5) serving as the Department's primary point of contact for State, local, and tribal governments, the medical community, and others within and outside the Department, with respect to medical and public health matters;



(6) discharging, in coordination with the Under Secretary for Science and Technology, the responsibilities of the Department related to Project Bioshield; and

(7) performing such other duties relating to such responsibilities as the Secretary may require.

### **Sec. 517. Nuclear incident response (6 U.S.C. 321f)**

#### **(a) In general**

At the direction of the Secretary (in connection with an actual or threatened terrorist attack, major disaster, or other emergency in the United States), the Nuclear Incident Response Team shall operate as an organizational unit of the Department. While so operating, the Nuclear Incident Response Team shall be subject to the direction, authority, and control of the Secretary.

#### **(b) Rule of construction**

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to limit the ordinary responsibility of the Secretary of Energy and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency for organizing, training, equipping, and utilizing their respective entities in the Nuclear Incident Response Team, or (subject to the provisions of this subchapter) from exercising direction, authority, and control over them when they are not operating as a unit of the Department.

### **Sec. 518. Conduct of certain public health-related activities (6 U.S.C. 321g)**

#### **(a) In general**

With respect to all public health-related activities to improve State, local, and hospital preparedness and response to chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear and other emerging terrorist threats carried out by the Department of Health and Human Services (including the Public Health Service), the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall set priorities and preparedness goals and further develop a coordinated strategy for such activities in collaboration with the Secretary.

#### **(b) Evaluation of progress**

In carrying out subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall collaborate with the Secretary in developing specific benchmarks and outcome measurements for evaluating progress toward achieving the priorities and goals described in such subsection.

### **Sec. 519. Use of national private sector networks in emergency response (6 U.S.C. 321h)**

To the maximum extent practicable, the Secretary shall use national private sector networks and infrastructure for emergency response to chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, or explosive disasters, and other major disasters.



**Sec. 520. Use of commercially available technology, goods, and services (6 U.S.C. 321i)**

It is the sense of Congress that—

(1) the Secretary should, to the maximum extent possible, use off-the-shelf commercially developed technologies to ensure that the Department's information technology systems allow the Department to collect, manage, share, analyze, and disseminate information securely over multiple channels of communication; and

(2) in order to further the policy of the United States to avoid competing commercially with the private sector, the Secretary should rely on commercial sources to supply the goods and services needed by the Department.

**Sec. 521. Procurement of security countermeasures for Strategic National Stockpile (6 U.S.C. 321j)**

**(a) Authorization of appropriations**

For the procurement of security countermeasures under section 247d–6b (c) of title 42 (referred to in this section as the “security countermeasures program”), there is authorized to be appropriated up to \$5,593,000,000 for the fiscal years 2004 through 2013. Of the amounts appropriated under the preceding sentence, not to exceed \$3,418,000,000 may be obligated during the fiscal years 2004 through 2008, of which not to exceed \$890,000,000 may be obligated during fiscal year 2004.

**(b) Special reserve fund**

For purposes of the security countermeasures program, the term “special reserve fund” means the “Biodefense Countermeasures” appropriations account or any other appropriation made under subsection (a) of this section.

**(c) Availability**

Amounts appropriated under subsection (a) of this section become available for a procurement under the security countermeasures program only upon the approval by the President of such availability for the procurement in accordance with paragraph (6)(B) of such program.

**(d) Related authorizations of appropriations**

**(1) Threat assessment capabilities**

For the purpose of carrying out the responsibilities of the Secretary for terror threat assessment under the security countermeasures program, there are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 2004 through 2006, for the hiring of professional personnel within the Directorate for Information Analysis and Infrastructure Protection, who shall be analysts responsible for chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear threat assessment



(including but not limited to analysis of chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear agents, the means by which such agents could be weaponized or used in a terrorist attack, and the capabilities, plans, and intentions of terrorists and other non-state actors who may have or acquire such agents). All such analysts shall meet the applicable standards and qualifications for the performance of intelligence activities promulgated by the Director of Central Intelligence pursuant to section 403–4 of title 50.

**(2) Intelligence sharing infrastructure**

For the purpose of carrying out the acquisition and deployment of secure facilities (including information technology and physical infrastructure, whether mobile and temporary, or permanent) sufficient to permit the Secretary to receive, not later than 180 days after July 21, 2004, all classified information and products to which the Under Secretary for Information Analysis and Infrastructure Protection is entitled under part A of subchapter II of this chapter, there are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 2004 through 2006.



DJH 11/15/12

As noted in the Homeland Security Audit Tips for Managing Disaster- Related Project Costs, citations for the most frequent audit findings include:

1. ***Poor Contracting Practices: Criteria:*** Federal regulations (44 CFR 13.36) See attached PDF of CFR Part 44 with Section 13.36 highlighted.
2. ***Unsupported Costs: Criteria: Federal cost principles (2 CFR 220, 225, and 230)*** See attached PDFs of OMB Circulars which address: 220- Cost Principles for Educational Institutions, OMB CIRCULAR A-21; 225—Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments, OMB CIRCULAR A-87, and 230—Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations, OMB CIRCULAR A-122.
3. ***Poor Project Accounting: Criteria:*** Federal regulations (44 CFR 13.20 and 206.205). See attached PDF of CFR Part 44 with Section 13.20 highlighted. See attached PDF of CFR Part 44 Section 206 Federal Disaster Assistance with Section 206.205 Payment of Claims highlighted.
4. ***Duplication of Benefits: Criteria:*** Section 312 of the Stafford Act. See citation at the end of this list. Entire Stafford Act is also enclosed as a PDF
5. ***Excessive Equipment Charges (applicability may vary with hazard mitigation projects): Criteria:*** Federal regulations (44 CFR 206.228) See attached PDF of CFR Part 206 Federal Disaster Assistance with Section 206.228 Allowable Costs highlighted
6. ***Excessive Labor and Fringe Benefit Charges: Criteria:*** Federal cost principles (2 CFR 220, 225, and 230, 44 CFR 206.228) See attached as previously noted.
7. ***Unrelated Project Charges: Criteria:*** Federal cost principles (2 CFR 220, 225, and 230) See attached as previously noted.
8. ***Unapplied Credits: Criteria:*** Federal cost principles (2 CFR 220, 225, and 230) See attached as previously noted.

### **Stafford Act FEMA 592 June 2007**

#### **Sec. 312. Duplication of Benefits (42 U.S.C. 5155)**

(a) General prohibition - The President, in consultation with the head of each Federal agency administering any program providing financial assistance to persons, business concerns, or other entities suffering losses as a result of a major disaster or emergency, shall assure that no such person, business concern, or other entity will receive such assistance with respect to any part of such loss as to which he has received financial assistance under any other program or from insurance or any other source.

(b) Special rules -



(1) Limitation - This section shall not prohibit the provision of Federal assistance to a person who is or may be entitled to receive benefits for the same purposes from another source if such person has not received such other benefits by the time of application for Federal assistance and if such person agrees to repay all duplicative assistance to the agency providing the Federal assistance.

(2) Procedures - The President shall establish such procedures as the President considers necessary to ensure uniformity in preventing duplication of benefits.

(3) Effect of partial benefits - Receipt of partial benefits for a major disaster or emergency shall not preclude provision of additional Federal assistance for any part of a loss or need for which benefits have not been provided.

(c) Recovery of duplicative benefits - A person receiving Federal assistance for a major disaster or emergency shall be liable to the United States to the extent that such assistance duplicates benefits available to the person for the same purpose

(d) Assistance not income - Federal major disaster and emergency assistance provided to individuals and families under this Act, and comparable disaster assistance provided by States, local governments, and disaster assistance organizations, shall not be considered as income or a resource when determining eligibility for or benefit levels under federally funded income assistance or resource-tested benefit